

**RICHARD CLAY & SONS,**  
**BREAD STREET HILL, LONDON, E. C.**  
*And at Bungay, Suff.*

## PREFACE.

ALTHOUGH two or three very fair Latin "First Books" are already in existence, yet the present results of Latin teaching are not so satisfactory as to necessitate an apology for a new attempt. For a very long time the Author (in the course of a weekly entrance-examination of a most elementary kind) has been in the habit of asking those boys who profess to have learned Latin—almost all of whom are over thirteen years of age, and have learned Latin two, three, four, or five years—to construe the sentence "*Oppida magna boni agricolæ habent*": and not one in five has been able to construe these few simple words correctly. The Examiner would have been well content with the translation "They have the great towns of the good husbandman": but almost all have succumbed to the temptation of treating "*oppida*" as Nominative, and have then "plunged" to the rendering "Great towns have good husbandmen"—or something worse.

One reason for these miserable results is probably that, at present (1880), a private school may be "kept" by any

one with or without any degree, or other proof of the possession either of knowledge or of the power to impart knowledge: but it is also possible that many of our elementary Latin books are to some extent responsible for these failures, because they lay scarcely sufficient stress on *parsing before construing*. The Latin sentences placed before beginners are so easy that the pupil soon finds he can *construe* without the trouble of *parsing*; and he thus early contracts the fatal habit of "plunging" at the meaning instead of reasoning it out. To provide against this evil is one of the principal objects of the *Fin Latina*. From the very first page the pupil is taught to *parse* as well as to *construe*, and not to *construe* till he has *parsed*; and throughout the book, parsing questions are put bearing on the Latin Exercises, and the answers are suggested by paragraph references.

In the preparation of the Exercises the *dictum* of Lord Bacon has been borne in mind that in all kinds of training we should imitate dancers, who practise at one time in heavy boots, at another in light shoes. A considerable experience of teaching has led the Author to the conclusion that a First Latin Book requires a great diversity of Exercises, some to illustrate special rules, others of a more general nature; some on points of Accidence, the Irregular Nouns and Verbs, and the like, others on difficulties of Syntax; and again, some difficult and accompanied with helps, others easy to be done without help; some to be written with preparation, others to be answered *viva voce*. This want he has

attempted to supply in the present volume, and at the same time to combine the Exercises with an outline of the Accidence, and the principal Rules of Syntax.

As regards the arrangement of the Exercises, some departures from the usual order have been introduced, especially in the earlier introduction of the simpler uses of the Subjunctive Mood. It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that, during all this while, they remain under the impression that "*amemus*" means *we may love*, and "*amarumus*" *we might love*—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses.

The Author has also aimed at introducing a little more variety into the examples by teaching somewhat more of *idiom* than is usually taught in First Latin Books; and some hints on the particles have not been thought out of place. In Greek a boy is taught to pay attention to particles almost from the beginning, but in Latin they are too much neglected; and, for want of them, the language too often strikes beginners as uninteresting and lifeless.

Most of the longer sentences in the Latin Exercises have been selected from classical authors, occasionally



modified: and here, as well as in the statement and explanation of several of the Rules, ample acknowledgments are due to the *Public School Grammar*. Several of them may appear at first sight somewhat difficult for beginners; but it will generally be found that the Vocabularies and the paragraph references supply all the help that is needed for a pupil who will honestly *parse before construing*. The Author has worked through most of them with a pupil ten years old, whose questions and difficulties have suggested many of the footnotes bearing on the Exercises.

The Irregular Verbs are arranged in two lists; first according to their formation, and then in alphabetical order. This repetition may appear superfluous; but the object of it is to enable the pupil to learn the Verbs according to their logical order in the first list, but afterwards to test his knowledge by repeating them when presented to him miscellaneously in the second list, which also includes a large number of the more important Compound Verbs in which boys frequently go wrong.

The Hints on Construing are intended not only as a preparation for translating a Latin author, but also as a summary of Rules for parsing the sentences in the Latin Exercises, and for translating English into Latin.

It is hoped that the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, while escaping the necessity of breaking the thread of the Accidence and Syntax by interposing continual explanations of terms, will on the other hand avoid the greater

evil of suffering the pupil to use words of the meaning of which he knows nothing.

In the Public Schools and in the better class of Preparatory Schools (to the excellence of which the Author bears willing testimony) such portentous failures as were mentioned in the beginning of this Preface are (no doubt) unknown: but even there it sometimes appears as though it were very difficult to ground boys well in Latin Grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a mechanical and monotonous word-drill. Good teachers will succeed without any books in avoiding the evil and attaining the good; but even good teachers may occasionally be helped by a book, and to them this book is offered, not as a substitute, but as a help, for good teaching.

I gratefully acknowledge much valuable help for which I am indebted to Mr. J. S. Reid, Fellow and Tutor of Caius College, Cambridge, and one of the Classical Examiners for the University of London.

## PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THIS Edition contains many corrections and modifications suggested by the use of the book in teaching. All the Exercises have been worked through with the view of detecting omissions in the Vocabulary, or difficulties that required additional help. The Exercises themselves have received very few alterations, but many references to Rules have been inserted, and the deficiencies in the Vocabularies have been supplied.

My thanks are due to Mr. J. S. Phillpotts, Head Master of Bedford Grammar School, for many useful suggestions incorporated in the present Edition.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Pronunciation . . . . .	xvi
The Cases of Nouns . . . . .	1—4
The First Declension . . . . .	6
The Second Declension . . . . .	8
Ablative of Instrument and Agent . . . . .	11
Adjectives of the First and Second Declension . . . . .	13—16
The Third Declension (Consonant Branch) . . . . .	18
Adj. governing Dative; <i>dignus</i> , g. Ablative . . . . .	19
The Abl. answering to <i>When?</i> and <i>Within what time?</i> . . . . .	21
The Acc. answering to <i>How long?</i> or <i>During what time?</i> . . . . .	21
<i>Multi</i> , <i>many</i> ( <i>men</i> ); <i>multa</i> , <i>many</i> ( <i>things</i> ) . . . . .	23
Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension (Consonant Branch) . . . . .	24
Third Declension, continued (the -i Nouns) . . . . .	25
Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	27
The Fourth Declension . . . . .	31
The Fifth Declension . . . . .	33
The Comparison of Adjectives; <i>quam</i> , or Ablative . . . . .	34—5

	PAGE
Irregular Comparison . . . . .	37—8
Numeral Adjectives . . . . .	39—42
The Dative of Possession with <i>est</i> . . . . .	42
<i>Ūnus, ullus, sōlus, āliūs, &amp;c.</i> . . . .	43—4
Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	45
A Verb agrees with its Nom. Case in Number and Person .	46
Direct Questions . . . . .	48
Demonstrative and Emphatic Pronouns . . . . .	49—50
Relative and Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	51—2
The First Conjugation (Active) . . . . .	53—5
The Second       "       " . . . . .	56—8
The Third       "       " . . . . .	58—60
The Fourth       "       " . . . . .	60—2
The Latin and English Tenses ; Apposition . . . . .	63—4
A Verb agrees with the First Person, rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third . . .	65
The Infinitive as a Subject or Object . . . . .	66
The Imperative ; the use of <i>nē</i> in Prohibition . . . . .	67
The Subjunctive expressing Purpose . . . . .	67
The Subjunctive expressing a Dependent Question . . . .	69
The Sequence of Tenses . . . . .	70
<i>Quīdem, vēro, ētiam, vēl</i> . . . . .	70—2
Verbs signifying <i>pleasing, obeying, &amp;c.</i> , take the Dative .	72
Verbs of <i>asking, commanding, advising, and striving</i> are followed by <i>ut</i> , or <i>nē</i> , with the Subjunctive . . . . .	74
Verbs of <i>preventing</i> are followed by <i>quōmīnus</i> and the Subjunctive ; <i>nōn est dūbīum quīn</i> . . . . .	75
<i>Cum</i> , with the Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	77

# CONTENTS.

xiii

	PAGE
Vēnio, vinco, vincio, rēpērio . . . . .	78
The Verb sum . . . . .	79—81
The Active Participles . . . . .	81
The Dependent Future Interrogative; quando . . . . .	82
The First Conjugation (Passive) . . . . .	83—6
The Second       "       " . . . . .	86—8
The Third       "       " . . . . .	88—91
The Fourth       "       " . . . . .	91—3
The Passive Participle . . . . .	94
An Adjective agreeing with Nouns of different Genders . . . . .	95
Impersonal Use of the Passive . . . . .	96
An Active Verb that governs the Dative retains the Dative in the Passive . . . . .	97
The Gerundive Construction with the Dative of the Agent . . . . .	99
Capio, Conjugation of . . . . .	100—1
Utrum—ān; -nē—ān . . . . .	102
The Prepositions . . . . .	104—9
The Ablative of Manner . . . . .	106
Ād with the Gerund and the Gerundive . . . . .	108
Verbs compounded with Prepositions . . . . .	110—1
Mīnimum ābest quīn, &c. . . . .	111
The Ablative Absolute . . . . .	112—4
Deponent Verbs . . . . .	115—7
Obliviscor, mīśēreor, &c.; fungor, fruor, ūtor, &c. . . . .	119
The Accusative and Infinitive; its Tenses . . . . .	120—2
Fōre ūt; sē, suus . . . . .	122—3
Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	124—5
Possum, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, fēro . . . . .	126—32

	PAGE
Indirect Questions after Verbs of <i>knowing, discovering, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	133
The Verb <i>eo</i> . . . . .	135
Supines; <i>captum iri</i> . . . . .	137—8
The Gerund and Gerundive . . . . .	139
The Verb <i>fi</i> ; The Complementary Subject . . . . .	141
Cases; The Accusative of Extension . . . . .	142
The Locative Case . . . . .	143
The Dative of Equivalence or Purpose . . . . .	144
The Ablative; of <i>Definite Price; of Quality; Plenty or Want</i> . . . . .	145—6
The Genitive of <i>Quality; Value; Indefinite Price; Plenty or Want</i> ; to express "it is the mark of"; after Adjectives used as Nouns; after Adjectives of <i>knowledge, desire, &amp;c.</i> . . . . .	147—8
The Subjunctive used to express <i>result or consequence; optatively; hortatively; concessively</i> ; in Conditional Sentences; after <i>qui</i> . . . . .	149—52
<i>Sī quis; nē quis</i> . . . . .	151
<i>Ūt nōn</i> , when used for <i>nē</i> . . . . .	152
<i>Vēreor ūt; nescio ān</i> . . . . .	153
<i>Quo</i> with Comparative; <i>suus, sē, ipsē</i> . . . . .	154—5
<i>Quisquam, aliquis, quilibet, quidam</i> . . . . .	156
Irregular Nouns . . . . .	157
Irregular Verbs and Genders of Nouns { <i>Cēlo, doceo; Adverbial antē and post</i> . . . . .	158
{ Distrib. Numerals; <i>cum...tum</i> . . . . .	159—60
{ <i>Quam qui; Historical Infinitive</i> . . . . .	161—2
{ <i>Quamquam and quamvis; jampridem</i> . . . . .	163—4
{ <i>Quam</i> with Superl.; <i>intērest, rēfert</i> . . . . .	166—7

## ZV

PAGE

## APPENDICES

I.—Irregular Verbs in Order of Formation . . . .	189
II.—    „        „        „ Alphabetical Order . . . .	200
III.—Hints on Construing . . . . .	216
IV.—A Parsing Table . . . . .	224
V.—A Table of Genders . . . . .	226
VI.—On the Latin Days of the Month . . . . .	229
VII.—Elementary Rules on Quantity . . . . .	230
VIII.—Glossary of Grammatical Terms . . . . .	232
IX.—Vocabularies for the Earlier Exercises . . . . .	240
X.—Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	248
XI.—English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	284



# SCHEME OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION.<sup>1</sup>

*Based on the nearest English Approximations.*

## VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā <sup>2</sup>	=	English	a in father.
"	ā	=	"	first a in away, or a in villa
"	e	=	"	ai in pain.
"	ae	=	"	ai in pain.
"	oe	=	"	ai in pain.
"	e	=	"	c in men.
"	i	=	"	i in machine.
"	i	=	"	i in pity.
"	o	=	"	o in home.
"	o	=	"	o in top.
"	ū	=	"	u in rule.
"	ū	=	"	u in full.
"	au	=	"	ow in power.
"	ui	=	"	ue, e.g. in Lat. qui, cui.
"	eu	=	"	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin ū (differs little from present pronunciation).
"	ei	=	"	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin i (differs little from ai in pain).

## CONSONANTS.

Latin	o, ch	=	English	k.
"	g	=	"	g in get.
"	s	=	"	s in sin.
"	t (rătŭo)	=	"	t in cat, not sh, as in nation.
"	j	=	"	y in yard.
"	v	=	"	v.
"	z, ph, th	=	"	z, ph, th.

Latin s between two vowels = (sometimes) English s in rose, e.g. "rosa."

<sup>1</sup> Taken from the *Syllabus of Latin Pronunciation*, issued by the Professors of Latin at the Universities of Cambridge and Oxford, at the request of the Head Masters of Schools. Some modifications have been made by the suppression of all Italian standards, and of all the English standards of pronunciation that contain a vowel followed by r. Consequently the Latin o is represented by the English o. The Professors give the option of pronouncing v as v or as w.

<sup>2</sup> Syllables in Latin are either long or short. A short syllable is denoted by this mark (˘), a long one by this (—). A few elementary rules about the *quant ty*, i.e. the length or shortness of syllables, are given in Appendix VII. on Prosody.

# VIA LATINA.

## THE CASES OF NOUNS.<sup>1</sup>

### THE FIRST OR -A DECLENSION.

Āquīl-ā, (an) eagle. Fēmīn-ā, (a) woman. Fīlī-ā, (a) daughter.  
Āqu-ā, water. Dextr-ā, (a) right hand. Pěcūnī-ā, money.  
Āmā-t, (he) loves. Dā-t, (he) gives. Lāvā-t, (he) washes.  
Līberā-t, (he) frees. Monstrā-t, (he) points out.  
Sūpěrā-t, (he) overcomes. Vōrā-t, (he) devours.<sup>2</sup>

- 1 English Nouns have (now) only two Cases, of which the Possessive is indicated by 'the affix 's: "John's book;" "the sun's light;" "men's clothes."

Latin Nouns have six Cases.

- 2 1. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Who?* or *What?* before a Verb (i.e. when it is the Subject of a Verb), it is put in the Nominative Case, which, in Nouns of the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -a short, -ā:

*The woman loves.*

Fēmīn-ā āmāt.

*The eagle devours.*

Āquīl-ā vōrāt.

---

<sup>1</sup> For an explanation of the terms Case, Noun, &c., see the Glossary of Grammatical Terms, Appendix VIII. p. 232.

<sup>2</sup> A vowel before t final is always short: the quantity of a-t (") will therefore not be marked for the future.

*Who loves?*—Ans., the woman, *fēmin-ă*. *What devours?*  
—Ans., the eagle, *ăquīl-ă*.

In parsing Latin, the question is generally asked as follows: *Why is fēmină Nominative?*—Ans., *because it is the Subject of (or Nominative to) ămăt.*

- 3 2. THE VOCATIVE CASE.—When a person or thing is addressed, the Noun expressing the person or thing is put in the Vocative Case, which, in the First Declension, is the same as the Nominative:

*O woman, Fēmīn-ă.*

*O eagle, Ăquīl-ă.*

*Why is fēmină (or ăquīlă) Vocative?*—Ans., *because it is a person (or thing) addressed.*

- 4 3. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.—When a Noun answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* after a Verb (i.e. when it is the Direct Object of a Verb), it is put in the Accusative Case, which is expressed, in the First Declension, by the termination *-am*:

*The daughter loves the woman.* Fīlī-ă fēmīn-am ămăt-t.

*The woman points out the eagle.* Fēmīn-ă ăquīl-am monștră-t.

*Loves whom?*—Ans., the woman. *Points out what?*—Ans., the eagle.

*Why is fēmīnam the Accusative?*—Ans., *because it is the Direct Object of (or Accusative governed by) ămăt.*

- 5 N.B. Note here that the order of the words is not the same in a Latin and in an English sentence.

In English the Object generally follows the Verb, and the Subject generally precedes the Verb, so that the order of the words shows which is Subject and which is Object.

- 5a But in Latin the Verb generally comes at the end of the sentence; and the Nominative and Accusative must be discovered, not by the order, *but by examining the Case.*

Thus, in the last example, *-am* is the Accusative termination, and *-ă* is the Nominative termination. Therefore

fēmin-ā is the Nominative, and the Subject of monstrāt; and āquīl-am is the Accusative, and the Object of monstrāt.

- 6 4. THE GENITIVE CASE.—The Latin Genitive (besides other uses) expresses the English Possessive Case, and, in the First Declension, terminates in -ae:

*The woman's daughter.*

Fēmīn-ae filiā, or (less commonly) filiā fēmīn-ae.

As the Latin Gen. expresses many other relations besides possession, it is usual, in parsing a Gen. Noun qualifying another Noun, to say that the former is *governed* by the latter.

Why is fēmīnae Genitive?—Ans., *Because it is governed by the Noun filiā.*

In English the Possessive Case *always* precedes the Noun which it qualifies.<sup>1</sup> In Latin the Genitive generally precedes, but *not always*.

- 7 5. THE DATIVE CASE.—When a Noun expresses the person (or thing) (1) *to whom* a thing is *given*, or (2) *for whom* a thing is done, the Noun is put in the Dative (i.e. *Giving*) Case, which, in the First Declension, is expressed by the termination -ae:

(1) *The daughter gives an eagle to the woman.* Filī-a āquīl-am fēmīn-ae dā-t.

(2) *The woman points out the eagle to, or for, (her) daughter.* Fēmīn-ā āquīl-am filī-ae monstra-t.

(1) Why is fēmīnae Dative?—Ans., *After a verb of Giving, or, Indirect Object of dat.*

In answer to the question (2) Why is filiāe Dative? it is usual to say *Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Distinguish the English Possessive Case "sun's" from "of the sun," which is not a Case at all, but a Phrase used instead of a Case.

- 8 6. THE ABLATIVE CASE, besides (1) *sometimes* expressing separation, or motion from, i.e. ablation, also (2) *always* expresses the instrument with or by which an action is performed. In the First Declension, the Ablative is denoted by -a long, -ā :

(1) *The woman frees the daughter from blame.* Fēmin-a fili-am culpā libēra-t.

*He hastens from Capua.* Prōpērā-t Cāpū-ā.

(2) *The woman washes the daughter with water.* Fēmin-ā fili-am āqu-ā lāva-t.

*The daughter gives money with (her) right hand.* Fili-ā pēcūnī-am dextr-ā du-t.

(1) Why is culp-ā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of Separation.*<sup>1</sup>

(2) Why is āquā the Ablative?—Ans., *Ablative of the Means or Instrument.*

#### FIRST DECLENSION, SINGULAR NUMBER.

Nom. Insūl-ā, (an or the) island (Subject).

Voc. Insūl-ā, O island.

Acc. Insūl-am, (an or the) island (Object).

Gen. Insūl-ae, (an or the) island's, or of (an or the) island.

Dat. Insūl-ae, to or for (an or the) island.

Abl. Insūl-ā, from, with, or by (an or the) island.<sup>1</sup>

- 9 THE ARTICLE.—From the above form it will be seen that what is sometimes called "the Article" in English (i.e. *a* or *the*) does not exist in Latin. Insūl-ā must be rendered "*an* island" or "*the* island," according to the sense.

#### EXERCISE I.

(Learn Vocabulary I.)

1. <sup>2</sup>Fili-ae. 2. Aquil-ā. 3. Pecuni-am. 4. <sup>3</sup>Femin-ā. 5. Reginam. 6. Aqu-ā. 7. <sup>2</sup>Puell-ae. 8. Naut-ā.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Ablative is only *sometimes* used to express separation. Most frequently it cannot be so used without a *Preposition*. The particular Verbs and Adjectives of Separation, which are followed by an Ablative without a *Preposition*, will be given later on. But the pupil must remember that insūlā, without an accompanying *Preposition*, very seldom means *from an island*.

9a <sup>2</sup> These words are capable of more than one translation. Each translation should be written down, both here and for the future.

1. *Of a sailor.* 2. *To a sailor.* 3. *Money (object).* 4. *Water (subject).* 5. *For a girl.* 6. *By water.* 7. *With money.* 8. *O sailor.*

## EXERCISE II.

Parse the Nouns in the following Exercise, stating in what Case each is, and why.

1. *Feminā naut-am aqu-ā lava-t.* 2. *Naut-ae sapienti-ā procell-am supra-t.* 3. *Naut-ae sapienti-ā procell-ae violenti-am supra-t.* 4. *Reginā insul-am fili-ae da-t.* 5. *Fili-ā pecuni-am dextr-ā dat.* 6. *Femin-ā pecuni-am naut-ae dextr-ā da-t.* 7. *Femin-ae patienti-ā naut-ae violenti-am supra-t.* 8. *Femin-ā patienti-ā naut-am supra-t.* 9. *Patienti-ā, O femin-ā, violenti-am supra-t.* 10. *Experienti-ā sapienti-am regin-ae dat.* 11. *Naut-ae dextr-ā femin-am violenti-ā (9a) liber-a-t.*<sup>1</sup>

[Words in brackets, thus (*her*), are not to be translated.]

1. *The queen gives an island to (her) daughter.*<sup>2</sup> 2. *The woman's daughter gives money to the sailor.* 3. *The sailor washes (his) daughter with (his) right hand (5a).* 4. *The sailor's violence overcomes the patience of the queen.* 5. *The woman by (her) patience overcomes the sailor's violence.* 6. *The daughter gives the queen's money to the sailor.* 7. *(Thy) daughter's patience, O woman, overcomes the violence of the queen.* 8. *Experience gives (to) the sailor wisdom.* 9. *The sailor's prudence delivers the daughter from the storm.*

(When this Exercise is turned into Latin, parse the Latin; and do the same with future Exercises.)

## THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

There are six similar cases for the Plural of each Noun, so that the Singular and Plural of *insul-ā* are thus declined :

<sup>1</sup> The Pupil should parse this Exercise *before construing it*. He should then commit the Latin to memory so as to be able to repeat the Latin of this Exercise from his own English, or from the English when read aloud to him, before he translates the next Exercise into Latin.

<sup>2</sup> The Pupil should note the order of the words in the Latin Exercise above, and imitate it by putting the Verb (for the present) *at the end*.

Words that are bracketed in the English Exercises are not to be translated into Latin, e.g. *her* in the first sentence of the English Exercise II.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Insŭl-ă, <i>an island.</i>	Insŭl-ae, <i>islands.</i>
Voc.	Insŭl-ă, <i>O island.</i>	Insŭl-ae, <i>O islands.</i>
Acc.	Insŭl-am, <i>an island.</i>	Insŭl-ās, <i>islands.</i>
Gen.	Insŭl-ae, <i>of an island.</i>	Insŭl-ārum, <i>of islands.</i>
Dat.	Insŭl-ae, <i>to or for an island.</i>	Insŭl-īs, <i>to or for islands.</i>
Abl.	Insŭl-ă, <i>from, with, or by an island.</i>	Insŭl-īs, <i>from, with, or by islands.</i>

## EXERCISE III.

1. Puell-is.<sup>1</sup> 2. Femin-ārum. 3. Femin-ă.<sup>1</sup> 4. Naut-ae.<sup>1</sup>  
 5. Violenti-ă. 6. Aquil-ae.<sup>1</sup> 7. Aquil-is.<sup>1</sup> 8. Aquil-ās.  
 9. Patienti-am. 10. Naut-ārum.

1. *To women.* 2. *From blame.* 3. *Eagles (object).* 4. *By patience.* 5. *Of eagles.* 6. *O women.* 7. *To eagles.*  
 8. *Women (subject).* 9. *From an eagle.* 10. *To sailors.*

If a Nominative is changed from the Singular to the Plural Number, the Verb changes also :

<i>The woman loves.</i>	Fēmīn-ă amă-t.
<i>The women love.</i>	Fēmīn-ae ama-nt.
<i>The eagle devours.</i>	Ăquīl-a vōră-t.
<i>The eagles devour.</i>	Ăquīl-ae vōra-nt.

The Plural of all Verbs ending in -ă-t is formed by inserting n between a and t :

Sŭpĕra-nt, *they overcome,* monstra-nt, *they point out,*  
 da-nt, *they give.*

## EXERCISE IV.

A.—Change the Singular into the Plural in the Nouns and Verbs of the following :

1. Naut-ă ama-t. 2. Regin-ă monstra-t. 3. Fili-ă lava-t.  
 4. Femin-ă da-t. 5. Naut-ă supera-t. 6. Puell-ă libera-t.

B.—Change the Plural into the Singular in the following :

1. Nautae da-nt. 2. Regin-ae supera-nt. 3. Aquil-ae vora-nt.  
 4. Fili-ae ama-nt. 5. Dextr-ae libera-nt. 6. Stell-ae monstra-nt.

---

<sup>1</sup> The words or sentences thus marked are capable of different renderings; all of which should be given.

## EXERCISE V.

1. Naut-*ũ* procell-am supera-t. 2. Naut-ae procell-am supera-nt.  
 3. Regin-*ũ* pecuni-am puell-ae da-t. 4. Reginae pecuni-am  
 puell-ae dant (9a). 5. Naut-arum patienti-*ũ* procell-as supera-t.<sup>1</sup>  
 6. Naut-ae patienti-*ũ* procellam supera-nt. 7. Femin-*ũ* naut-  
 ōrum fili-*ās* lavat. 8. Femin-*ũ* naut-ōrum fili-*ās* aqu-*ā* lava-t.  
 9. Patienti-*ũ*, O naut-ae, violenti-am super-at. 10. Naut-ae, O  
 regin-*ũ*, patienti-*ũ* procell-ōrum violenti-am supera-nt. 11.  
 Naut-arum dextr-ae regin-am procell-ae violenti-*ũ* libera-nt.<sup>2</sup>

1. *The sailor overcomes the storm.* 2. *The sailors overcome the storm.*  
 3. *The women love the girl.* 4. *The woman loves the girl.*  
 5. *The queen gives money to the sailors.* 6. *The eagles devour the sailor.*  
 7. *By patience the sailor overcomes the storms.* 8. *The sailor's daughter points out the eagle.* 9. *The sailor's daughters point out the eagle to the queen with (their) right hands.* 10. *The queen's wisdom frees the woman from blame.* 11. *The daughters of the sailors wash the women with water (5a).*

## EXERCISE VI.

- 11 After the verb "give," *to* is often not used in English, but the Dative must be retained in Latin :

*The queen gives the sailors money.*

Rēgina pēcūniām nautīs dāt.

- 12 Et, (which means *both* or *and*,) is sometimes repeated to couple together two Nouns in the same case :

*Experience gives both patience and wisdom.*

Expērientiā et pātientīam et sāpientīam dat.

Sometimes the former *et* (*both*) is omitted :

*The stars point out the way for (both) the sailors and the women.*

Stellae viam (et) nautīs et fēminīs monstrant.

<sup>1</sup> *Sūperat* is Sing. agreeing with its Nom. *pātientī-a*, and is not affected by the Plural Number of the Genitive *nautārum*. What overcomes?—Ans., *patience*.

<sup>2</sup> This and all the following Latin Exercises should be carefully parsed before being construed, and then learned, so that the pupil can readily repeat them when the English is given.

For *filiabus*, *dēabus*, &c., see Exercise LXXXIV., p. 153, and foll.



1. Fili-ŭ aqu-am naut-ae dat. 2. Sapienti-ā, o nautae, regin-ā violenti-am supera-t. 3. Regin-ā fili-ae pecuni-am dextr-ā dat. 4. Stell-ae vi-am naut-is monstra-nt. 5. Experienti-ŕ naut-is sapienti-am da-t. 6. Stell-ā naut-ae fili-ae vi-am monstra-t. 7. Regin-ae fili-ae naut-ae aqu-ā lava-nt. 8. Experienti-ā et sapienti-ā naut-ae procell-as supera-nt. 9. Regin-ā nautis et aquam et pecuni-am da-t. 10. Sapientiŭ regin-am ir-ā et intemperanti-ā libera-t.
1. *By experience and (by) patience the sailor overcomes the storm.*  
 2. *The queen gives water both to the sailors and to the women.*  
 3. *The women give to the sailors water and money.* 4. *Wisdom, O sailors, gives patience to the queen.* 5. *The stars point out the way for the daughter of the sailor.* 6. *The queen's daughter washes the woman with water.* 7. *The patience of sailors, O daughter, overcomes the storm.* 8. *The sailors, by (their) patience, overcome the violence of the storm.* 9. *The queen's daughters give the (11) sailor water.* 10. *By money the woman frees (her) daughter from the violence of the sailors.*

## THE SECOND OR O- DECLENSION.

This Declension is divided into three groups, in which the Nominative ends in :

(1)  
-ŭs(2)  
-r(3)  
-um

## 1.—NOUNS IN -ŭs.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Dŏmīn-ŭs, a lord. <sup>1</sup>	Dŏmīn-ī, lords.
<i>Voc.</i>	Dŏmīn-ē, O lord.	Dŏmīn-ī, O lords.
<i>Acc.</i>	Dŏmīn-um, a lord.	Dŏmīn-ōs, lords.
<i>Gen.</i>	Dŏmīn-ī, of a lord. <sup>2</sup>	Dŏmīn-ŏrum, of lords.
<i>Dat.</i>	Dŏmīn-ō, to or for a lord.	Dŏmīn-īs, to or for lords.
<i>Abl.</i>	Dŏmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord. <sup>3</sup>	Dŏmīn-īs, by, with, or from lords.

- 13 The Voc. Sing. of fili-ŭs, a son, and of proper names in -ŭs, contracts -ē into -ī: fili, O son; Mercūrī, O

<sup>1</sup> Dŏmīnŭs means *lord* in the sense of *owner, master*.

<sup>2</sup> The Gen. Sing. of nouns in -ŭs, -um, was generally contracted into -ī; but most English books retain -ī.

13a <sup>3</sup> N.B. A noun denoting a *living thing* is never used with *by* without the Latin Preposition *ā* or *ab*. The pupil should remember that *by a spear* may be translated *hastā*, but *by a lord* is *ā dŏmīno*.

*Mercury.* The termination -*le* was avoided even in common nouns in -*ius*, e.g. *nuntius*, a messenger. The Vocatives of these words were not used at all. The Voc. of *Deus*, *God*, is the same as the Nominative.

2.—a. NOUNS IN -*ēr* (gen. -*rī*).<sup>1</sup>

Nom.	Māgistr- <i>ēr</i> , a master.	Māgistr- <i>ī</i> , masters.
Voc.	Māgistr- <i>ēr</i> , O master.	Māgistr- <i>ī</i> , O masters.
Acc.	Māgistr- <i>um</i> , a master.	Māgistr- <i>ōs</i> , masters.
Gen.	Māgistr- <i>ī</i> , of a master.	Māgistr- <i>ōrum</i> , of masters.
Dat.	Māgistr- <i>ō</i> , to or for a master.	Māgistr- <i>īs</i> , to or for masters.
Abl.	Māgistr- <i>ō</i> , by (13a), with, or from a master.	Māgistr- <i>īs</i> , by, with, or from masters.

2.—b. NOUNS IN -*ēr* (gen. -*ērī*).<sup>2</sup>

Nom.	Pūēr, a boy.	Pūēr- <i>ī</i> , boys.
Voc.	Pūēr, O boy.	Pūēr- <i>ī</i> , O boys.
Acc.	Pūēr- <i>um</i> , a boy.	Pūēr- <i>ōs</i> , boys.
Gen.	Pūēr- <i>ī</i> , of a boy.	Pūēr- <i>ōrum</i> , of boys.
Dat.	Pūēr- <i>ō</i> , to or for a boy.	Pūēr- <i>īs</i> , to or for boys.
Abl.	Pūēr- <i>ō</i> , by (13a), with, or from a boy.	Pūēr- <i>īs</i> , by, with, or from boys. <sup>3</sup>

*Vīr*, a man, is declined like *pūēr*, except that *ī* is written for *ē*: *vīr-um*, *vīr-ī*, *vīr-ō*, and *vīr-ī*, *vīr-os*, *vīr-ōrum*, *vīr-is*.

Nouns in -*rī* and -*ērī*. The best way to remember which Nouns make -*rī* and which make -*ērī*, is to remember that

- 14 1. The *only* Nouns declined like *pūēr* are *vīr*, man; *gēnēr*, son-in-law; *sōcēr*, father-in-law; *vespēr*, evening; *Lībēr*, the god of wine (called by the Greeks *Bacchus*); also *lībēr-ī*, children (used only in the plural).<sup>3</sup>

- 15 <sup>1</sup> Nouns in -*er* once ended in -*ērus*, like *nūmēr-us*, a number. The Voc. *pūēr-ō* is found in Old Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Final -*ī*, -*ō* are always long. Also final -*is*, in the Dat. and Abl. Pl. of the Second Declension, is always long, and final -*us* in the Nom. Sing. is always short. These syllables will not therefore be always marked long or short for the future.

- 16 <sup>3</sup> The Adjective *ādulter* (used as a Noun to mean an adulterer) may also be included in this list; and so may Adjectives in -*fer* and -*ger* used as Nouns, e.g. *signifer*, standard-bearer, *armiger*, armour-bearer or squire.

2. All other Nouns in *ēr* are declined like *māgister* e.g. *āger*, *cāper*, &c.

## 3.—NOUNS IN -um.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc.	Regn-um, <i>O kingdom.</i>	Regn-ā, <i>O kingdoms.</i>
Acc.	Regn-um, <i>a kingdom.</i>	Regn-ā, <i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen.	Regn-i, <i>of a kingdom.</i>	Regn-ōrum, <i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat.	Regn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom.</i>	Regn-is, <i>to or for kingdoms.</i>
Abl.	Regn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Regn-is, <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

## EXERCISE VII.

Hābē-t, ( <i>he</i> ) <i>has.</i>	Hābe-nt, ( <i>they</i> ) <i>have.</i>
Terrē-t, ( <i>he</i> ) <i>terrifies.</i>	Terre-nt, ( <i>they</i> ) <i>terrify.</i>
Timē-t, ( <i>he</i> ) <i>fears.</i>	Time-nt, ( <i>they</i> ) <i>fear.</i>

1. Hortos habent.<sup>1</sup> 2. Dominus filio hortum dat. 3. Dominorum filii hortum habent. 4. Filii hortum dominus servo dat. 5. Servo equum dat. 6. Filii servorum equos habent. 7. Domini equum gladio torret. 8. Nauta servos experientia superat. 9. Servorum patientia dominum superat. 10. Fluvius aquam habet. 11. Servi, domine, minas timent. 12. Minae, O fili (13), servos terrent.

1. The lord has a garden. 2. The lord's son has gardens. 3. The lord's sons have gardens. 4. The lord gives a garden to (his) son. 5. The master gives the slave a horse.<sup>2</sup> 6. The slave has a sword. 7. The lord's sword terrifies the slave. 8. The slaves fear the master's sword. 9. The master terrifies the men with (his) sword. 10. The slaves overcome the man by patience. 11. Experience, O son, gives men patience. 12. The slave's patience overcomes the master's violence (5a).

## EXERCISE VIII.—NOUNS LIKE māgister.

An Active Verb in -at, -ant, or -et, -ent, can be made Passive by adding -ur; but the ā or ē of the Verb, which was shortened before t (*supērā-t*, *terrē-t*), is long before -ur.

16a <sup>1</sup> Where there is no Subject to the Verb expressed, *he* or *they* must be supplied. Here *hābent* must be translated *they have*.

<sup>2</sup> "The slave" here stands for "to the slave," and must be placed in the Dative Case. The pupil must be prepared for this in similar sentences where "to" is omitted after the word "givo."

*sūpērā-tur, he is (being) overcome; sūpērant-ur, they are (being) overcome.*

*terrē-tur, he is (being) terrified; terrent-ur, they are (being) terrified.*

- 17** **RULE.**—(1) The *instrument* is expressed by the Ablative alone; but (2) the *agent* (whether a *man* or *other animal*) requires, before the Ablative, the Proposition *ā* (*āb*, before a vowel or *h*).

*The girl is terrified (1) with (or by) a spear (2) by the sailor.* Puella (1) *hastā* (2) *ā nautā* terrētur.

1. Minister librum habet. 2. Magister agros fabris dat. 3. Aper caprum terret. 4. Minister caprum cultro terret. 5. Ager colubros habet. 6. Cancer colubros timet. 7. Canceri colubrorum violentiam timent. 8. Fabri minister Austrum timet. 9. Domini ministros arbiter sapientiā superat. 10. Pueri a colubris et ab apris terrentur. 11. Apri servorum hastis et gladiis superantur. 12. Feminas (16a) torrent.

#### EXERCISE IX.

**CAUTION.**—Distinguish between :

**Lībr-os**, books.

**Lībr-um**, a book.

**Lībēr-os**, children.

**Lībēr-um**, Liber, the god of wine.

- A. 1. Of snakes. 2. To a son-in-law. 3. To a crab. 4. To Liber. 5. By (17) goats. 6. Children (Abl.). 7. Of boys. 8. Of wild-boars. 9. Artificers (Abl.). 10. To books. 11. To children. 12. Attendants (Abl.). 13. For sons-in-law. 14. Of a father-in-law. 15. Of the South Wind. 16. To a field. 17. To a man. 18. To crabs. 19. To Liber. 20. Of children. 21. By (17) children. 22. By books. 23. By goats. 24. By wild-boars.

- B. 1. The master terrifies the servants. 2. The servant fears the master's violence. 3. The crab fears the snakes of the field. 4. The goat fears the servant's knife. 5. The umpire overcomes the lord's violence by (his) patience. 6. The artificer gives the servant a field. 7. The servant gives (his) master a knife. 8. The servants are terrified by the lord's threats. 9. The lord is overcome by the slaves.

#### EXERCISE X.—NOUNS LIKE *pūēr*.

1. Portum puero dant. 2. Vesperum puer timet. 3. Agricola Liberum amant. 4. Vesper virum terret. 5. Viri socer

feminam terret. 6. Virorum socari feminae generum terrent. 7. Puerorum violentiâ virorum patientiam superat. 8. Gener a socero gladio terretur. 9. Regina procollae violentiâ nautarum experientiâ liberatur.

1. *The boy loves Liber.* 2. *The woman's son-in-law fears the father-in-law.* 3. *The women fear the man's son-in-law.* 4. *The men's father-in-law terrifies the boys.* 5. *The woman's patience overcomes the violence of the children.* 6. *Experience gives men wisdom.* 7. *By patience children overcome the father-in-law's violence.* 8. *The wild-boars are overcome by the spears of the lords.* 9. *The queen is delivered (8) from the envy of the servants (5a).*

EXERCISE XI.—NOUNS LIKE *māgister* AND *pūer*.

18

*Nōn, not.*<sup>1</sup>

*Lauda-t, praises.*

*Nēquē, and not.*

*Culpa-t, blames.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>The lord does not blame the woman.</i>                      | 1. <i>Dōmīnus femīnam nōn culpāt.</i>                |
| 2. <i>The lord praises the man, and does not blame the woman.</i> | 2. <i>Dōmīnus vīrum laudat nēquē femīnam culpāt.</i> |

1. *Capri puerum timent.* 2. *Caper puerorum cultros timet.* 3. *Liberi minister librum non laudat.* 4. *Puer virum timet neque feminam amat.* 5. *Feminae generos culpant neque soceros laudant.* 6. *Colubri fabri ministros terrent.* 7. *Fabrorum generi arbitri patientiam culpant neque sapientiam laudant.* 8. *Liberi ministris caprum agricola dat.* 9. *Aper servos non timet neque domini hastā superatur.* 10. *Puella a capris non terretur.*

1. *The book praises Liber.* 2. *The servants of Liber do not praise books.* 3. *The boys terrify the goats and do not fear the snakes.* 4. *The boy terrifies the goat with a knife.* 5. *The man praises (his) father-in-law's field.* 6. *The snakes terrify the artificer's son-in-law.* 7. *The man fears (his) father-in-law, and does not love (his) son-in-law.* 8. *The husbandmen give Liber a goat.* 9. *The queen is not delivered from the storm by the sailors (5a).*

19

<sup>1</sup> *Nōn* always means *not*; but *not* is not always to be translated *nōn*. In commands and some other sentences, *nē* is used, see Exercise XXXVI. But *not* may always be translated by *nōn* in statements and direct questions; and these are the only sentences with which the pupil will have to do for the present.

EXERCISE XII.—NOUNS IN -um AND -ēr.

20 RULE.—Two Nominatives coupled by -et take the Verb in the Plural :

*Patience and constancy overcome violence.*      *Pātientia et constantia violentiam superant.*

1. Agricola Liberi dona laudat neque libros amat. 2. Magister argentum ministro dat. 3. Argentum, non aurum, dominus servis dat. 4. Pueri diligentiae praemiis delectantur. 5. Puerorum praemia viri non amant. 6. Tempa Liber et Neptunus habent. 7. Liberi templa argentum habent. 8. Liberi templa argentum, non libros, habent. 9. Liberi templis agricolae aurum dant. 10. Diligentia et constantia praemia habent. 11. Oppida muros et templa habent. 12. Horti et arva ab agricolis laudantur.

1. The master gives the attendants gold. 2. The master's gifts are not praised by the boys. 3. The boy and the girl love rewards. 4. The master gives the boy the reward of diligence. 5. The husbandmen are delighted by the walls and temples of the town. 6. The temples of the town have silver and gold. 7. The husbandman and the sailor give gifts to the temples of the towns. 8. The man by (his) gifts overcomes the sailor's constancy. 9. The sailors praise the husbandmen's cornfields. 10. The lord is terrified by the storm, and does not love water.

ADJECTIVIS

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

ADJECTIVES IN -ūs, -ā, -um.

Adjectives in Latin agree in Number and Case with the Nouns which they qualify :

Nom. Sing.	Bonus dōmīnus.	The good lord.
Gen. Sing.	Bonī dōmīni.	Of the good lord.
Nom. Plur.	Bonī dōmīni.	The good lords.
Gen. Plur.	Bonōrum dōmīnōrum.	Of the good lords.

But besides agreeing in number and case, most Latin Adjectives also have three forms to suit the three kinds of Noun-terminations represented by (1) dōmīnus, (2) fēmīna, (3) regnum.

*Nom. Sing.* Bōnus dōmīnus, bōna fēmīna, bōnum regnum.

*Gen. Sing.* Bōnī dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōni regni.

*Nom. Plur.* Bōni dōmīni, bōnae fēmīnae, bōna regna.

*Gen. Plur.* Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum, bōnārum fēmīnārum, bōnōrum regnōrum.

These three forms of the Adjective are called its *Genders*.

(1) The form in -ūs is called the Masculine Gender, (2) the form in -ā the Feminine, (3) the form in -um the Neuter.

**21** RULE.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
<i>Nom.</i>	Bōn- <b>us</b>	bōn- <b>ā</b>	bōn- <b>um</b>	<i>1.</i>	
<i>Voc.</i>	Bōn- <b>ē</b>	bōn- <b>ā</b>	bōn- <b>um</b>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Bōn- <b>um</b>	bōn- <b>am</b>	bōn- <b>um</b>	Bōn- <b>ī</b>	bōn- <b>ae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	Bōn- <b>ī</b>	bōn- <b>ae</b>	bōn- <b>ī</b>	Bōn- <b>ī</b>	bōn- <b>ae</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	Bōn- <b>ō</b>	bōn- <b>ae</b>	bōn- <b>ō</b>	Bōn- <b>ōs</b>	bōn- <b>ās</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	Bōn- <b>ō</b>	bōn- <b>ā</b>	bōn- <b>ō</b>	Bōn- <b>ōrum</b>	bōn- <b>ārum</b>
				Bōn- <b>īs</b>	bōn- <b>īs</b>
				Bōn- <b>īs</b>	bōn- <b>īs</b>

  

<i>2.</i>					
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
<i>N.V.</i>	Nigr- <b>ēr</b>	nigr- <b>ā</b>	nigr- <b>um</b>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Nigr- <b>um</b>	nigr- <b>am</b>	nigr- <b>um</b>	Nigr- <b>ī</b>	nigr- <b>ae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	Nigr- <b>ī</b>	nigr- <b>ae</b>	nigr- <b>ī</b>	Nigr- <b>ōs</b>	nigr- <b>ās</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	Nigr- <b>ō</b>	nigr- <b>ae</b>	nigr- <b>ō</b>	Nigr- <b>ōrum</b>	nigr- <b>ārum</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	Nigr- <b>ō</b>	nigr- <b>ā</b>	nigr- <b>ō</b>	Nigr- <b>īs</b>	nigr- <b>īs</b>
				Nigr- <b>īs</b>	nigr- <b>īs</b>

**22** GENDER OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.—Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine.

Exceptions: *nauta*, a sailor, *aurīga*, a charioteer, and other words denoting the occupations of men, are Masculine.

**23** GENDER OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.—(1) Nouns in -ūs and -ēr are Masculine, (2) Nouns in -um are Neuter.

*Exceptions.*—*Dōmus*, house, and *hūmus*, ground, are Feminine; *pēlāgus*, the sea, *vīrus*, poison, and *vulgus*, the common folk, are Neuter.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The exceptional Masculine use of *vulgus* is not to be imitated.

For the other exceptions, see the Table of Genders, p. 226.

A few Nouns (together with all those which may denote either males or

SINGULAR NUMBER.

	Feminine.		Masculine.		Neuter.
	<i>A good woman.</i>		<i>A good lord.</i>		<i>A good gift.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ā femin-ā		Bōn-us dōmīn-us		Bōn-um dōn-um
Voc.	" -ā " -ā		" -ē " -ē		" -um " -um
Acc.	" -am " -am		" -um " -um		" -um " -um
Gen.	" -ae " -ae		" -ī " -ī		" -ī " -ī
Dat.	" -ae " -ae		" -o " -o		" -o " -o
Abl.	" -ā " -ā		" -o " -o		" -o " -o

PLURAL NUMBER.

	<i>Good women.</i>		<i>Good lords.</i>		<i>Good gifts.</i>
Nom.	Bōn-ae femin-ae		Bōn-ī dōmīn-ī		Bōn-a dōn-a
Voc.	" -ae " -ae		" -ī " -ī		" -ā " -ā
Acc.	" -as " -as		" -os " -os		" -ā " -ā
Gen.	" -arum " -arum		" -orum " -orum		" -orum -orum
Dat.	" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs
Abl.	" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs		" -īs " -īs

Hitherto the terminations of the Noun and Adjective have been the same. But this is not always the case, as may be seen from the following instances :

SINGULAR.

	<i>A great man.</i>		<i>A great charioteer (m).</i>		<i>A great sea (n).</i>
Nom.	Magn-us vir		Magn-us aurig-ā		Magn-um pelāg-us
Voc.	Magn-ē vir		Magn-ē aurig-a		Magn-um pelāg-us
Acc.	" -um vir -um		Magn-um aurig-am		Magn-um pelāg-us
Gen.	" -ī " -ī		Magn-ī aurig-ae		" -ī " -ī
Dat.	" -o " -o		Magn-o aurig-ae		" -o " -o
Abl.	" -o " -o		Magn-o aurig-ā		" -o " -o

EXERCISE XIII.

1. Vir magnus a nautā strenuo laudatur.
2. Dona parva improbi pueri culpant.
3. Nautā impavidus pelagus non timet.
4. Pelagus vastum et procella magna nautas pavidos torrent.
5. Scribā strenuus docti magistri jussa non timet.
6. Aurigam probum pericula magna non terrent.
7. Nautae improbo regina dona splendida dat.
8. Nautarum proborum filii praemia magna habent.
9. Aurigae strenui patientiā nauta improbus superatur.
10. Feminam probam et nautam strenuum regina bona laudat.
11. Pericula, parve fili, viros justos non terrent.
12. Via aurigae strenuo a puellā monstratur.

females, e.g. pŕēta, poet, incōla, inhabitant) vary between the Masc. and Fem.; these are said to be of common Gender, and are indicated in the Vocabularies by c. But incōla, pŕēta, and the like, are so much more frequently Masc. than Fem., that they are marked m.



(The Adjective in Latin generally, but not always, follows its Noun.)

1. *The vigorous charioteer is not terrified by dangers.* 2. *The danger of the way, and the violence of the storm, do not terrify the fearless charioteers.* 3. *The learned master gives a long letter to the honest scribe.* 4. *The daughters of the dishonest clerk fear the commands of the good queen.* 5. *The sailor's daughter fears the vast sea.* 6. *The dangers of the long way overcome the constancy of the good charioteer.* 7. *The queen by splendid gifts overcomes the constancy of the worthy sailors.* 8. *The unworthy charioteers terrify with threats the sailor's daughter.* 9. *Storms, O fearful sailor, do not terrify fearless men.* 10. *The man points out the way with (his) right hand for the honest sailor.*

#### EXERCISE XIV.

*Est, (he, she, it) is.*

*Sunt, (they) are.*

After the Verb *est* or *sunt* the question *who?* or *what?* is answered by the NOMINATIVE.

*Britain is an island.*

*Britannia est insula.*

*Wars are the causes of evils.*

*Bella sunt malorum causae.*

- 24** RULE.—The Verb *to be* takes the same Case after it as before it.

Why are *insula* and *causae* Nom.?—*Ans.*, Because the Verb *est* takes the same Case after it as before it.

*The horses are great (horses).*

*Equi sunt magni (equi).*

*The woman is (a) good (woman).*

*Femina est bona (femina).*

- 24a** From the last examples we see that an Adjective still agrees with its Noun in Number, Gender, and Case, even when separated from the Noun by the Verb *to be*.

1. *Britanniae incolae sunt nautae.* 2. *Nautae non sunt timidi.*
3. *Agri sunt lati.* 4. *Oppidum est magnum.* 5. *Puer est validus.* 6. *Pueri patientia magna est.* 7. *Aquila est alba.*
8. *Aquilarum alae sunt albae.* 9. *Oppida parva sunt.* 10. *Oppidorum templa sunt alta.* 11. *Dominus ab equis albis delectatur.* 12. *Femina proborum generorum filias amat.*

1. *The sailor is timid.* 2. *The walls of the town are high.* 3. *The field is broad.* 4. *The towns are not great.* 5. *The experience*

of the boy is small. 6. The wings of the eagle are great. 7. The walls of the temple are white. 8. The master has black horses and white goats. 9. The master's horses are black. 10. The eagle has white wings. 11. The timid sailor is terrified both by the unjust queen and by the vast sea.

### EXERCISE XV.

#### ADJECTIVES IN -ĕr.<sup>1</sup>

Like the Nouns in -er, so also the Adjectives in -er are declined (1) some like *puer*, (2) others like *māgister*.

The pupil will find it the best course to commit to memory the former class, as being the fewer.

- 25 1. Declined like *puer*: *asper*, *rough*, *liber*, *free* (whence *liberi*, *children*), *miser*, *wretched*, *prosper*, *prosperous*, *tēner*, *tender*.<sup>2</sup>

2. Declined like *māgister*: all Adjectives in -er not contained in the above list.

- 1 *Impigrum agricolam poeta piger timet.* 2. *Regina pulchra ab improbis incolis terretur.* 3. *Agricolae vafri tenerum puerum verbis falsis laudant.* 4. *Domini prosperi macros capros habent.* 5. *Reginae liberis libros sacros pūctas dant.* 6. *Et nauta miser et auriga strenuus filios aegros habent.* 7. *Templorum sacrorum portis rubris et muris nigris viri delectantur.* 8. *Morbi agricolas miseros superant.* 9. *Agricolae vafri filius parvae puellae caprum macrum dat.* 10. *Morbum tætrum nautae pavidi timent.*

1. *The beautiful woman is overcome by the foul disease.* 2. *The slothful sailors fear the active husbandman.* 3. *The cunning boys give a lean goat to the miserable sailor.* 4. *The wretched sons of the sick husbandman fear the foul disease.* 5. *The foul disease terrifies the wretched sailors.* 6. *The sick women praise the sacred books with foolish words.* 7. *The vigorous husbandmen overcome by (their) wisdom the foul diseases (5a).* 8. *The cunning lord gives lean goats to the sick women.*

<sup>1</sup> As final -er is always short, it will not be marked short for the future.

26 <sup>2</sup> Besides these, there are (though not contained in the following Exercises), (1) *lācer*, *torn*, and (2) Adjectives derived from the Verbs *fer-o* and *ger-o*, *I bear*, viz. *frūgi-fer*, *fruit-bearing*; *corn-iger*, *horn-bearing*.

In the nom. sing. *prosperus* is more common than *prosper*.

## THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## 1. THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

In the Third Declension some Nouns have a Stem (see Glossary, Appendix VIII.) ending in a consonant, *e.g.* *c* in *judic-is*, *judic-i*, of a judge, to a judge, or *m* in *hiem-is*, *hiem-i*, of winter, to winter. This class of Nouns is called the Consonant Branch.

In the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension the Nom. Sing. endings are numerous, but *-s* (sometimes disguised in the shape of *-x*, which represents *-gs*, and *-cs*) is the most common.

## A.—MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	} [-s]	-ēs
Voc.		
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-ī	-ibus
Abl.	-ē, rarely -ī	-ibus

I. Nouns in which the Stem ends in a guttural (throat) letter, *i.e.* *-c* hard, or *-g* :

Singular.			
Leader (m).	Judge (c). <sup>1</sup>	Lavo (f)	Citadel (f)
N.V. Dux (Duc-s)	Judex (Judic-s)	Lex (Leg-s)	Arx (Arc-s)
Acc. Dūc-em	Judīc-em	Lēg-em	Arc-em
Gen. Dūc-is	Judīc-is	Lēg-is	Arc-is
Dat. Dūc-ī	Judīc-ī	Lēg-ī	Arc-ī
Abl. Dūc-ē	Judīc-ē	Lēg-ē	Arc-ē
Plural.			
N.V. Dūc-ēs	Judīc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
Acc. Dūc-ēs	Judīc-ēs	Lēg-ēs	Arc-ēs
Gen. Dūc-um	Judīc-um	Lēg-um	Arc-ium
Dat. Dūc-ibus	Judīc-ibus	Lēg-ibus	Arc-ibus
Abl. Dūc-ibus	Judīc-ibus	Lēg-ibus	Arc-ibus

<sup>1</sup> The abbreviation *c.* means that *judex* is of common gender, being mostly masculine, but sometimes feminine.

II. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a dental (tooth) letter, i.e. -t or -d :

*Singular.*

<i>Soldier (m).</i>	<i>Foot (m).</i>	<i>Summer (f).</i>
N.V. Miles (Milet-s) <sup>1</sup>	Pēs (Ped-s)	Æstās (Æstat-s)
Acc. Milit-em	Pēd-em	Æstāt-em
Gen. Milit-is	Pēd-is	Æstāt-is
Dat. Milit-i	Pēd-i	Æstāt-i
Abl. Milit-ē	Pēd-ē	Æstāt-ē

*Plural.*

N.V. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Acc. Milit-ēs	Pēd-ēs	Æstāt-ēs
Gen. Milit-um	Pēd-um	Æstāt-um
Dat. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus
Abl. Milit-ibus	Pēd-ibus	Æstāt-ibus

Nox, *f.* (for noct-s) Gen. noct-is, *night*, is declined like Æstās; but the Gen. Plur. (see Par. 40) is noct-ium.

- 27 RULE.—The Dative is used after Adjectives signifying *pleasing, displeasing, troublesome, easy, difficult*, and the like :

*Laws are not troublesome to a just judge.*      Leges iudici justo non molestae sunt.

- 28 RULE.—Dignus and indignus (*worthy and unworthy*) govern the Ablative :

*Impatience is unworthy of a leader.*      Impatientia ducē indigna est.

EXERCISE XVI.

Laed-īt, (*he*) *hurts*.      Laed-unt, (*they*) *hurt*.  
 Laedīt-ur, (*he*) *is (being) hurt*.      Laedunt-ur, (*they*) *are (being) hurt*.

1. Leges justae regibus bonis non sunt molestae.    2. Bella militibus jucunda sunt.    3. Militum ignavia ducibus clavis ingrata

- 29 <sup>1</sup> The e of the true Stem (mīlēt-) is changed into -i in all except the Nom. and Voc. Cases. Similarly, the true Stem of virgo (virgō-) is changed into virgin-. But sometimes, as in iudex above, the true Stem (iudic-) is lost in the Nom. but preserved in the other Cases.

est. 4. Lapides militum miseriorum pedes laedunt. 5. Connitit validi constantia fessus equus debetatur. 6. Equites peditem acutis gladiis terrent. 7. Regis bona latus malae indignae sunt. 8. Judicium verba injusta dominis juvenilia sunt. 9. Noctes obscuras pueri parvi timent. 10. Domini arx ab agricolâ laudatur. 11. Aetatis memoria militibus grata est. 12. Aurigae per sinistram spinam acuta laeditur. 13. Agriculae equi validi (2<sup>da</sup>) sunt.

1. The constancy of the strong soldiers is pleasing to the good king.
2. Slothfulness is unworthy of a great leader.
3. The brave landmen point out the citadel of the lord to (their) companions.
4. A dark night terrifies the timid boy.
5. The memory of the pleasant summer is agreeable to the miserable husbandmen.
6. The anger of the horsemen is displeasing to the foot-soldiers.
7. The companions of the horse-soldier hurt the good husbandman with many stones.
8. Good laws are worthy of a just king.
9. The feet of the weary companions are hurt by the sharp stones.
10. The queen gives just laws to the renowned leader and to the good judges.

III. Nouns in which the Stem ends with a labial (lip) letter, i.e. -m, -p, -b:

*Singular.*

Chief (m.).	Beam (f.).	Winter (f.).
N. Prīncip-s (Prīncip-s)	Trāb-s	Hiēm(p)-s <sup>1</sup>
Acc. Prīncip-em	Trāb-em	Hiēm-em
Gen. Prīncip-is	Trāb-is	Hiēm-is
Dat. Prīncip-i	Trāb-i	Hiēm-i
Abl. Prīncip-ē	Trāb-ē	Hiēm-ē

*Plural.*

N. Prīncip-ēs	Trāb-ēs	Hiēm-ēs
Acc. Prīncip-ēs	Trāb-ēs	Hiēm-ēs
Gen. Prīncip-um	Trāb-um	Hiēm-um
Dat. Prīncip-ibus	Trāb-ibus	Hiēm-ibus
Abl. Prīncip-ibus	Trāb-ibus	Hiēm-ibus

IV. Nouns in which the stem ends with (1) a nasal (nose) letter, i.e. -n, or (2) -u:

<sup>1</sup> P is inserted for euphony, between m and s in the Nominative of this word, so that the right spelling is hiēmps.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
<i>Lion (m.).</i>	<i>Maiden (f.).</i>	<i>Crane (c.).</i>
N.V. Leo (Leō-n)	Virgo (Virgō-n) <sup>1</sup>	Gru-s
Acc. Leon-em	Virgin-em	Grū-em
Gen. Leōn-is	Virgin-is	Grū-is
Dat. Leōn-i	Virgin-i	Grū-i
Abl. Leōn-ē	Virgin-ē	Grū-ē
	<i>Plural.</i>	
N.V. Leōn-ēs	Virgin-ēs	Grū-ēs
Acc. Leon-ēs	Virgin-ēs	Grū-ēs
Gen. Leōn-um	Virgin-um	Grū-um
Dat. Leōn-ibus	Virgin-ibus	Grū-ibus
Abl. Leōn-ibus	Virgin-ibus	Grū-ibus

EXERCISE XVII.

30 RULE.—The question *When?* or *Within what time?* is answered by the Ablative, as *hiēme, in winter, nocte, by night.*

31 RULE.—The question *How long?* or *During what time?* is answered by the Accusative, as *multos annos, for, or during, many years.*

*Vivit, (he) lives.*

*... Vivunt, (they) live.*

1. Multi homines aestatem hieme laudant. 2. Virgines aestate hiemem, hieme aestatem laudant. 3. Leones multas aestates et multas hiemes vivunt. 4. Principibus pavidis ~~quo~~ molestus est. 5. Nautae nocte magnam gruum multitudinem puellae monstrant. 6. Virgines tenerae ab improbis principum filiis minis terrentur. 7. Papiliones paucas horas, elephantem multos annos vivunt.<sup>2</sup> 8. Leoni fero equitis cornes caprum macrum dat. 9. Templum longas trabes, portas magnas, habet.<sup>3</sup> 10. Templi trabs longitudinem miram habet. 11. Comites pavidum principe indigni sunt. 12. Multa poma aestate terra habet.

1. The sailor praises land in winter, (but) blames (it) in summer.
2. For many hours the lion devours the tender goats.
3. The sailor by night points out a multitude of cranes to the maiden.
4. The daughters of the chief fear the savage lion.
5. A

<sup>1</sup> Virgo and hōmo originally kept the o throughout, and hōmōnes, for hōmines, is actually preserved, though, of course, not to be used.

<sup>2</sup> Repeat vivunt after papillōnēs, "paucas horas (vivunt)."

<sup>3</sup> In enumeration, and in other sentences, et, or some other conjunction, is often omitted where the English must insert and, but, &c.

*butterfly does not live for many hours. 6. Unjust words are unworthy of a chief. 7. By the companions of the beautiful maidens the lion is frightened with a sword. 8. The winter is troublesome to the maidens and not agreeable to the chief. 9. The queen gives praise to chiefs and gold to poets. 10. In the night the lion devours a multitude of tender goats.*

V. Nouns in which the Stem ends with (1) a liquid, *i.e.* -l, -r, or (2) a sibilant, *i.e.* -s :<sup>1</sup>

*Singular.*

Consul (m.).	Love (m.).	Tree (f.).	Flower (m.).
N.V. Consul	Āmor <sup>2</sup>	Arbor(-ōs) <sup>2</sup>	Flōs <sup>1</sup>
Acc. Consūl-em	Āmōr-em	Arbōr-em	Flōr-em
Gen. Consūl-is	Āmōr-is	Arbōr-is	Flōr-is
Dat. Consūl-i	Āmōr-i	Arbōr-i	Flōr-i
Abl. Consūl-ē	Āmōr-ē	Arbōr-ē	Flōr-ē

*Plural.*

N.V. Consūl-ēs	Āmōr-ēs	Arbōr-ēs	Flōr-ēs
Acc. Consūl-ēs	Āmōr-ēs	Arbōr-ēs	Flōr-ēs
Gen. Consūl-um	Āmōr-um	Arbōr-um	Flōr-um
Dat. Consūl-ibus	Āmōr-ibus	Arbōr-ibus	Flōr-ibus
Abl. Consūl-ibus	Āmōr-ibus	Arbōr-ibus	Flōr-ibus

Cīnīs c., makes cīnēr-em, cīnēr-is, cīnēr-i, &c.

33 Note that anser differs from pāter, as pūer from mū-  
gister; the former retains, the latter rejects, in the other  
Cases, the -e of the Nom.

*Singular.*

Goose (m.).	Father (m.).	Mother (f.).
N.V. Anser	Pāter(Pāter-)	Māter(Māter-)
Acc. Ansēr-em	Patr-em	Matr-em
Gen. Ansēr-is	Patr-is	Matr-is
Dat. Ansēr-i	Patr-i	Matr-i
Abl. Ansēr-ē	Patr-ē	Matr-ē

<sup>1</sup> (1) Many sibilant stems retain -s in the Nom. Sing., but change it to -r in the other cases: flōs, Gen. flōr-is (for flōs-is), rōs, Gen. rōr-is (for rōs-is) of *deu* (2) Others have two forms of the Nom.: labōs or labor, Gen. labōr-is, of *labour*; and so arbōs or arbor, Gen. arbōr-is, of *a tree*.

<sup>2</sup> Final -or is short, and therefore its quantity is not marked in āmor, arbor, &c.

Plural.

N.V. Ansēr-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
Acc. Ansēr-ēs	Patr-ēs	Matr-ēs
Gen. Ansēr-um	Patr-um	Matr-um
Dat. Ansēr-ibus	Patr-ibus	Matr-ibus
Abl. Ansēr-ibus	Patr-ibus	Matr-ibus <sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE XVIII.

- 34 RULE.—An Adjective is sometimes used (1) in the Masculine to agree with *men* understood; (2) in the Neuter to agree with *thing* or *things* understood.

Many (men) praise the king. Multi regem laudant.

The father gives (his) son many (things). Pater filio multa dat.

To err is (a) dangerous (thing). Errare est periculōsum.<sup>2</sup>

Sūpērā-re, to overcome. Culpā-re, to blame.

Laudā-re, to praise. Erat, (he) was, erant, (they) were.

- 35 N.B.—The Adj. is often separated from its Noun by a Gen. belonging to the Noun, e.g., the consul's clear voice, clāra consulis vox; and sometimes by other words: flōribus sō pulchris dēlectat, he delights himself with beautiful flowers.

1. Multi regem laudant neque reginam culpant.
2. Jucundum est laudāre, culpāre injucundum (est).
3. Rex pauca filio dat, filias multa (dat).
4. Puer anserem timet, patrem et matrem non timet.
5. Sepulcrum pulchrum multorum amicorum cineres habet.
6. Hiemps frigida arbores magnas et parvos flores laedit.
7. Milites magno clamore claram consulis vocem superant.
8. Pulchri florum colores virginum oculis grati sunt.
9. Anserem stultum multa terrent.
10. Femina a virgine amore magno amatur.
11. Militum clamor timoris causa est agricolis.<sup>3</sup>
12. Consulum jussa timoris causae erant militibus.
13. Timidos nocte (30) multa terrent.

- 36 <sup>1</sup> The pupil should note that in the Consonant Branch of the Third Declension, he can form the cases of any Noun without committing them to memory, if he remembers the Nom. and Gen. Singular.

All the other cases can be formed by striking off the -is from the Gen., e.g. anser-, patr-, and adding -em, -i, -ē, -es, -um, -ibus. See p. 18.

<sup>2</sup> Here, part of a Verb is treated as a Noun, and is the Subject of est. See further, Exercise XXXV.

<sup>3</sup> Agricōlis may be parsed as the "Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage." See par. 7.



1. To overcome is pleasant for soldiers. 2. The consul gives many things<sup>1</sup> to the rigorous soldier. 3. Many praise the king, few blame (him). 4. A goose fears many-things, (and) terrifies few-men.<sup>1</sup> 5. The companions of the soldiers overpower the king's voice by (their) clamour. 6. The colour of the flowers is agreeable to the eyes of the beautiful maidens. 7. The broad sepulchres have the ashes of many soldiers. 8. The flower by (its) colour and pleasant odour delights the maidens. 9. The cold winters were troublesome to the timid sons of the husbandmen. 10. To praise the bad is unpleasant and-not just. 11. For-a-few hours (31) the soldiers overcome the sailors.

### B.—NEUTER NOUNS OF THE CONSONANT BRANCH.

#### Singular.

	Head (n.).	Name (n.).	Right or Law (n.).	Work (n.).
N.V. Acc.	Cāpit	Nōmen	Jūs	Ōpus
Gen.	Cāpit-is	Nōmīn-is	Jūr-is	Ōpēr-is
Dat.	Cāpit-i	Nōmīn-i	Jūr-i	Ōpēr-i
Abl.	Cāpit-ē	Nōmīn-ē	Jūr-ē	Ōpēr-ē

#### Plural

N.V. Acc.	Cāpit-ā	Nōmīn-ā	Jūr-ā	Ōpēr-ā
Gen.	Cāpit-um	Nōmīn-um	Jūr-um	Ōpēr-um
Dat.	Cāpit-ibus	Nōmīn-ibus	Jūr-ibus	Ōpēr-ibus
Abl.	Cāpit-ibus	Nōmīn-ibus	Jūr-ibus	Ōpēr-ibus

Note also corpus, corpōr-is, corpōr-i, &c., a body.

#### EXERCISE XIX.

**37** When two Nouns of kindred meaning are connected together in one phrase, instead of et between the two Nouns, -quē is added as an extra syllable to the latter of the two Nouns: *flowers and trees*, flōres arbōresquē.

1. Fulmen arbores fruticesque et corpora hominum laedit. 2. Carmina sunt poetarum opera. 3. Jura belli agricolae timent. 4. Pueri nomen pulchrum erat. 5. Verbera iudicibus consulibusque indigna sunt. 6. Equitum peditumque multitudinem vastam mercatores jure<sup>2</sup> timent. 7. Militum opera oppidorum incolis ingrata erant. 8. Capri capita parva,

<sup>1</sup> The words *things* and *men* (here and in other passages where they are used with *many* or *few*) should not be translated. See the Rule above.

<sup>2</sup> Jure is the Abl. used as an Adverb, *by right*, i.e. *rightly, naturally*.

corpora macra, pedes longos habent. 9. Multis hominibus inultorum scelerum causa est aurum.<sup>1</sup> 10. Sidera nautis hieme grata erant. 11. Injusti iudicis verba bona (erant), facta mala erant. 12. Corpori cibum, doctrinam menti Deus dat. 13. Miles ab injusto iudice culpa (8) liberatur.

- <sup>2</sup>1. The leader's head (was) small, his body was lean. 2. The multitude of the merchants fears the horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers. 3. The works of soldiers are displeasing to husbandmen. 4. Flowers and shrubs are agreeable to the inhabitants of towns. 5. Boys give food and sleep (use -quē) to (their) bodies, learning to (their) minds. 6. The names of the boys and girls are beautiful. 7. Unjust laws are unworthy of kings and queens. 8. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers are not terrified by the crimes of (their) leaders. 9. The poet's work delights the queen with (its) beautiful name. 10. It was (a) renowned (thing) to overcome a multitude of horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers in-war (Abl. of instr.)

### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### 2.—NOUNS WHOSE STEM ENDS IN *i*.

- 39** These Nouns differ from the Consonant Branch in this respect, that they make the Gen. Plur. in *-ium*; whereas, in the Consonant Branch, the Gen. Plur. mostly ends in *-um*.<sup>2</sup> But the Stem *i* (being very variable, often dropped, and often changed into *e*,) frequently disappears.

<sup>1</sup> What case is *hominibus*, and why? See Par 7.

<sup>2</sup> For the Genders of Nouns of the Third Declension see page 220; and for Exercises on the Exceptions see Exercises LXXXIV to XCII.

- 40** <sup>3</sup> The more advanced pupil will find that several Nouns of the Consonant Branch take *-ium* in the Gen. Pl. The following rules will be found useful:—

1. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is *-i* (as *dūc-i*), take *-um* (*dūc-um*).

Examples: *pātr-um*, *sēn-um*, *pēd-um*, *grēg-um*, *āp-um*, &c.

2. Nouns whose Gen. Sing. is *-ie* (as *āre-ie*) take *-ium*.

Examples: *falc-ium*, *urb-ium*, *art-ium*, *lit-ium*, *font-ium*, *pont-ium*, *mont-ium*, *noct-ium*, &c.

Exceptions are *vōc-um*, *lēg-um*, *rēg-um*, *jūr-um*, and a few others.

## B.—1. MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS.

## Singular.

	<i>Ship (f.).</i>	<i>Shower (m.).</i>	<i>Cloud (f.).</i>
N. F.	Nāv-īs	Imber (Imbri-)	Nūb-ēs (Nubi-)
Acc.	Nāv-em	Imbr-em	Nūb-em
Gen.	Nāv-īs	Imbr-īs	Nūb-īs
Dat.	Nāv-i	Imbr-i	Nūb-i
Abl.	Nāv-i or -ē	Imbr-i (-ē) <sup>1</sup>	Nūb-ē

## Plural.

N. F.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Acc.	Nāv-ēs	Imbr-ēs	Nūb-ēs
Gen.	Nāv-ium	Imbr-ium	Nūb-ium
Dat.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus
Abl.	Nāv-ibus	Imbr-ibus	Nūb-ibus

## 2.—NEUTER NOUNS.

## Singular.

	<i>Sea (n.).</i>	<i>Animal (n.).</i>	<i>Spur (n.).</i>	<i>Bone (n.).</i>
N. F.	Acc. Mār-ē	Ānimāl	Calcār	Ōs <sup>2</sup>
Gen.	Mār-is	Ānimāl-is	Calcār-is	Oss-īs
Dat.	Mār-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-i
Abl.	Mār-i	Ānimāl-i	Calcār-i	Oss-ē

## Plural.

N. F.	Acc. Marī-ā	Ānimāl-īā	Calcār-īā	Oss-ā
Gen.	Marī-um	Ānimāl-ium	Calcār-ium	Oss-ium
Dat.	Marī-bus	Ānimāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus
Abl.	Marī-bus	Ānimāl-ibus	Calcār-ibus	Oss-ibus

41 Nēque or nēc, when repeated, means *neither . . . nor*.

Consūm-it, (*he*) *consumes*.

Consūm-unt, (*they*) *consume*.

## EXERCISE XX.

1. Nautae validi neque imbres crebros neque maria saeva timent.

2. Imbri longo et fulmine crebro pastores terrentur. 3. Hominum sapientiā et animalium robur et maris furor superantur. 4. Navem rapidam mare avidum vorat. 5. Naves

42 <sup>1</sup> A few Nouns in -is take only -im in the Acc., and only -i in the Abl.: sītis, *thirst*; tussis, *cough*; vīs, *violence*; and names of towns and rivers, e.g., Tibēris, *the Tiber*. The following commonly take -im. febris, *fever*; pelvis, *basin*; puppis, *poop*; restis, *rope*; turris, *tower*; scōluris, *axe*.

43 Ignis makes Abl. in -i, except in poetry: and Abl. -i is always found in those Nouns that always make Acc. -im.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguish this word from ōs, ōris, *n., mouth*, or *countenance*. Ānimāl, calcār, and almost all other Neuters with Abl. in -ī, are derived from Adjectives.

validas maris furor et tempestatis violentia superant. 6. Duces aurea calcaria et decora magna equitibus dant. 7. Hostium urbem dux igni ferroque consumit. 8. Nauta navi valida pelagi furorem superat. 9. Britannorum naves multis urbibus multisque gentibus notae sunt. 10. Ducum certamina prosperis civitatibus saepe causa exitii sunt. 11. Equus ignavus calcar tinet. 12. Multa genera et animalium et lapidum mare habet. 13. Morbus capros totam aestatem (31) consumit.

1. Strong horses often fear the spur. 2. The soldiers consume the cities with fire and sword. 3. Repeated lightning and a great storm terrify the merchants. 4. The animals of the sea are many and wonderful. 5. Men by (their) wisdom overcome the threats of seas and the madness of savage animals. 6. Both to leaders and to states strife is often the cause of destruction. 7. Golden spurs give great honour to horse-soldiers. 8. The strength of the ships overcomes both the madness of the sea and the violence of the storms. 9. The bones of small animals are small. 10. The tempest terrifies the citizens with a great cloud. 11. By wisdom and experience men are freed from the violence of savage animals. 12. He lives a few hours.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

- 44** These are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension; except that in almost all of them the Abl. Sing. is -i and not -e; and the Gen. Plur. -ium and not -um.

A.—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -i, and Gen. Plur. in -ium.

#### 1.—ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

			Ācer, sharp.		
			Singular.	Plural.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N. V.	Ācer	ācr-īs	ācr-ē	Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
Acc.	Ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-ē	Ācr-ēs	ācr-īā
Gen.	Ācr-īs	ācr-īs	ācr-īs	Ācr-ium	ācr-ium
Dat.	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
Abl.	Ācr-i	ācr-i	ācr-i	Ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus <sup>1</sup>

- 45** <sup>1</sup> Other similar Adjectives are sālūb-er, healthy, ālāc-er, brisk, ēquest-er, equestrian. In the Nom. Masc. Sing., the forms ācr-is, sālūbr-is, ālāc-is &c. are sometimes used, but more often in poetry than in prose. Ōl-er retains the ē in the Fem. cōlōr-is and in the Neut. cōlēr-e.

## 2.—ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

*Tristis, sad.*

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Trist-īs	trist-ě	Trist-ēs	trist-īā
<i>Acc.</i> Trist-em	trist-ě	Trist-ēs	trist-īā
<i>Gen.</i> Trist-īs	trist-īs	Trist-ium	trist-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ibus	trist-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Trist-ī	trist-ī	Trist-ibus	trist-ibus

## 3.—ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION.

*Felix, happy.*

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M., F., and N.</i>		<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Fēlix		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
<i>Acc.</i> Fēlic-em		Fēlic-ēs	fēlic-īā
<i>Gen.</i> Fēlic-is		Fēlic-ium	fēlic-ium
<i>Dat.</i> Fēlic-ī		Fēlic-ibus	fēlic-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Fēlic-ī		Fēlic-ibus	fēlic-ibus

46 *B.*—Adjectives with Abl. Sing. in -ě, and Gen. Plur. in -um.

These are mostly Comparatives ending in -ior (*m. and f.*), -ius (*n.*): trist-ior, *sadder*, fēlic-ior, *happier*.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.V.</i> Tristiōr	tristiūs	Tristiōr-ēs	tristiōr-ā
<i>Acc.</i> Tristiōr-em	tristiūs	Tristiōr-ēs	tristiōr-ā
<i>Gen.</i> Tristiōr-īs	tristiōr-īs	Tristiōr-um	tristiōr-um
<i>Dat.</i> Tristiōr-ī	tristiōr-ī	Tristiōr-ibus	tristiōr-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Tristiōr-ě	tristiōr-ě	Tristiōr-ibus	tristiōr-ibus

47 Besides Comparatives, a few other words make the Abl. Sing. in -ě and the Gen. Plur. in -um. Most of them are capable of being used as Nouns: divēs, (*a*) *rich* (*man*), supplex, *a suppliant*, vīgīl, *a watchman*, princeps *a chief*, pauper, *a poor man*, superstēs, *a survivor*.<sup>1</sup>48 <sup>1</sup> A useful Rule is given (*Public School Grammar*) that:—  
i. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. short, make -um in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* supplex, Gen. Sing. supplicis, Gen. Pl. supplicum.  
ii. Adjectives in which the Gen. Sing. has the penult. long, make -ium in the Gen. Pl., *e.g.* fēlix, Gen. Sing. fēlicis, Gen. Pl. fēlicium.

1.—Cēlēr ēquus, *the swift horse.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	Cēlēr ēqu-us	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
Voc.	Cēlēr ēqu-e	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ī
Acc.	Cēlēr-em ēqu-um	Cēlēr-ēs ēqu-ōs
Gen.	Cēlēr-īs ēqu-i	Cēlēr-ium ēqu-ōrum <sup>1</sup>
Dat.	Cēlēr-i ēqu-o	Cēlēr-ibus ēqu-īs
Abl.	Cēlēr-i ēqu-o	Cēlēr-ibus ēqu-īs

2.—Mēliūs dōnum, *the better gift.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.V. Acc.	Mēliūs dōn-um	Mēlior-ā dōn-ā
Gen.	Mēlior-īs dōn-ī	Mēlior-um dōn-ōrum
Dat.	Mēlior-i dōn-o	Mēlior-ibus dōn-īs
Abl.	Mēlior-ē dōn-o	Mēlior-ibus dōn-īs

3.—Fēlix jūdex, *a happy judge.*

49 Note the two points of difference in the Noun and Adjective (1) Noun -ē, -um; Adj. -ī, -ium:

(1) Fēlic-ī jūdīc-ē, *by* (13a), *with*, or *from* the happy judge.

(2) Fēlic-ium jūdīc-um, *of* happy judges.

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. Mater bona meliore filio digna est. 2. Celerium equorum terga ab aurigis verberibus laeduntur. 3. Patres lacti meliora dona filiis dant. 4. Poeta sapiens regem insignem tristiore carmine delectat. 5. Rex insignis infelici morte indignus est. 6. Agricolarum vita salubris est; scribae diligentis labor non est saluber. 7. Equus acer certamen equestre amat. 8. Mercatorum divitum vitam miles fortis non amat. 9. Ira acri ducum tristium cives timidi terrentur. 10. Dulce carmen poeta insigni dignum est. 11. Puer tristis donum melius amat. 12. Principes justī fortibus militibus agros feraces dant. 13. Regina prudenti animo et audacibus consiliis seditionem superat. 14. Eques comitem culpā (8) liberat.

1. *The joyful father gives a better gift to (his) son.* 2. *The life of a soldier is not agreeable to the son of the rich merchant.*

<sup>1</sup> The Gen. Pl. Cēlēr-um is only used when the word is used as a Noun, to signify the ancient body-guard in Rome; just as we speak of the "Blues," the "Scots Greys."

3. By (his) sweet poem the good poet delights the great king.  
 4. A keen contest is pleasant to strong soldiers. 5. The labours of the unhappy judges were displeasing to the just king.  
 6. The keen anger of the citizens terrifies the companions of the sad leaders. 7. The diligent husbandman is worthy of a fruitful field. 8. The just judges give rewards to the chariot-cers of the swift horses. 9. The healthy life of the happy sailors was pleasing to the brave boy. 10. The good king is delighted by the songs of the sad poets and (17) by the brave boy.<sup>1</sup> 11. The master frees the boys from blame.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION WITH NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**Saevus hostis, a cruel enemy.**

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Saevus hostis	Saevi hostēs
<i>Voc.</i>	Saevē hostis	Saevi hostēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Saeuum hostem	Saevos hostēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Saevi hostis	Saevōrum hostium
<i>Dat.</i>	Saevo hosti	Saevīs hostibūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Saevo hostē	Saevīs hostibūs

**Almā māter, loving mother.**

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Almā māter	Almae matrēs
<i>Acc.</i>	Almam matrē	Almās matrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	Almae matrīs	Almarum matrum
<i>Dat.</i>	Almae matrī	Almīs matrībūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Almā matrē	Almīs matrībūs

**Magnum ōpus, a great work.**

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.V. Acc.</i>	Magnum ōpus	Magnā ōpera
<i>Gen.</i>	Magnī ōpēris	Magnōrum ōpērum
<i>Dat.</i>	Magno ōpērī	Magnīs ōpēribūs
<i>Abl.</i>	Magno ōpērē	Magnīs ōpēribūs

### EXERCISE XXII.

Quis? What (man)? Who (Nom.)? Quem? What (man)? Whom (Acc.)? Quid? What (thing)? What (Nom. and Acc.)?

1. Bonorum operum memoria forti viro dulcis erat. 2. Virgines pulchrae ducis iracundi minas timent. 3. Milites primae

<sup>1</sup> Numbers bracketed thus (17) in the Exercises refer to the Paragraphs indicated by the figures in the margin.

cohortis hostibus iracundis terga dant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Quis vinum vetus pnero, quis seni verbera dat? 5. Benigno patri acris filiorum ira molesta erat. 6. Gladios breves, (32) longas hastas milites habent. 7. Mater alma filiarum tristium poenitentiam laudat. 8. Hostium saevorum feritas atrox cives timidos terret. 9. Senes infirmi regum minis atrocibus terrentur. 10. Tempestas atris nubibus et crebro fulmine virgines teneras terret. 11. Quis non virtutem amat? Quem non honorum operum memoria delectat? 12. Senex probus inhonesta morte et turpi fama indignus est.

1. *Brave men fear a dishonourable reputation.* 2. *A disgraceful death terrifies strong soldiers.* 3. *Who loves vice? Who is not delighted by (trans. Whom delights not) the memory of virtue?* 4. *Who (gives) swords to weak old-men? who gives wine to boys?* 5. *The enemy (use pl.), by (their) savageness and cruel threats, terrify the timid hostages.* 6. *The tender maidens fear the dark-black clouds and the frequent lightning.* 7. *The memory of a good work is pleasing to all (men).* 8. *The citizens flee before the strong cohort (trans. give their backs to the strong cohort).* 9. *The loving mothers are delighted by the brave deeds of the bold boys.* 10. *The sad woman is worthy of a better death.* 11. *(He) is-terrified in the night.*

## THE FOURTH OP:-II DECLENSION.

	<i>Singular.</i>	
<i>Step (m.).</i>	<i>Hand (f.).</i>	<i>Knee (n.).</i>
<i>N. V.</i> Grād-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ū
<i>Acc.</i> Grād-um	Măn-um	Gěn-ū
<i>Gen.</i> Grād-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ūs
<i>Dat.</i> Grād-ūi	Măn-ūi	Gěn-ūi
<i>Abl.</i> Grād-ū	Măn-ū	Gěn-ū

	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>N. V.</i> Grād-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ūā
<i>Acc.</i> Grād-ūs	Măn-ūs	Gěn-ūā
<i>Gen.</i> Grād-ūum	Măn-ūum	Gěn-ūum
<i>Dat.</i> Grād-ibus	Măn-ibus	Gěn-ibus
<i>Abl.</i> Grād-ibus	Măn-ibus	Gěn-ibus

1. The Dat. Sing. in -ūi is sometimes contracted into -ū.

<sup>1</sup> "To give backs to an enemy" means "to flee from an enemy."



- 52** 2. Some names of trees, e.g. *pīnus*, *pine-tree*, vary between the 2nd and 4th Decl. in Gen. and Abl. Singular, and in Nom. and Acc. Plural.
- 53** 3. The Dat. Plur. is formed in *-ūbus* (not *-ibus*) by *arcus*, m., *bow*, *artus*, m., *limb*, and *partus*, m., *birth*, so as not to be confounded with the Dat. Plur. of *arx*, f., *citadel*, *ars*, f., *art*, and *pars*, f., *part*. The Dat. in *-ūbus* is also formed by *ācus*, f., *needle*, *portus*, m., *harbour*, and *trib-us*, f., *tribe*. (See also Par. 311.)
- 54** All nouns of the Fourth Declension that have nom. *-us*, are masculine, except the names of trees, and five others (see Appendix V. p. 226); those in *-ū* are neuter.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

- 55** Carefully distinguish the different constructions of the Preposition *in* :

*In* (foll. by Abl.) *in* :      *In* (foll. by Acc.) *into, to, towards* :

(*My*) *father is in the garden.*

*Pater in horto est.*

*The leader leads the soldiers into the city.*

*Dux milites in urbem ducit.*

1. *Pinus altae fructum non habent; glandes sunt quercuum fructus.* 2. *Hostes magnam copiam arcuum et sagittarum comparant.* 3. *Imbres quercui dant aquam.* 4. *Scythiae arcu dux vulneratur.* 5. *Equi albi sinistrum genu durum est.* 6. *Acus longa digitum mulieris vulnerat.* 7. *Naves longae in tuto portu ventos secundos expectant.* 8. *Naves longas in portus diversos tempestas agit.* 9. *Nautae, in portu pelagus, in pelago portum laudant.* 10. *Auditus visusque utilitatem quis non intelligit?* 11. *Romanae plebis tribubus frumentum a Caesaro datur.* 12. *Hiemis gelu myrto perniciosum erat; pinui et quercui non erat (perniciosum).* 13. *Multa (34) totam noctem (31) timet (16a).*

1. *The Scythian overcomes (his) enemy with (his) strong bow.*  
 2. *The diligent women have sharp needles.* 3. *Adverse winds drive the ships into safe harbours.* 4. *The frost of winter is not destructive to pines.* 5. *The ships of-war are awaiting favourable winds in the safe harbour.* 6. *Stags by their running, foxes by (their) subtlety, overcome the hunter.*  
 7. *The branches of the tall oaks have many acorns.* 8. *By*

hearing and by sight men avoid destructive (things), (and) obtain useful (things). 9. The stag (has) long horns, the bull<sup>1</sup> has short (horns). 10. The bull with his left horn wounds the shepherd. 11. He was sick for-the-whole winter (31).

## THE FIFTH OR -Ē DECLENSION.

Day (m.).		Thing (f.).	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N.V. Dī-ēs	Dī-ēs	R-ēs <sup>1</sup>	R-ēs
Acc. Dī-em	Dī-ēs	R-em	R-ēs
Gen. Dī-ei	Dī-ērum	R-ei <sup>2</sup>	R-ērum
Dat. Dī-ei	Dī-ēbus	R-ei	R-ēbus
Abl. Dī-ē	Dī-ēbus	R-ē	R-ēbus

56 In the Gen. and Dat., final -ei is sometimes contracted into -ē; diē, fidē.

57 All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine, except diēs, day, and mēridiēs, midday, which are Masculine.<sup>3</sup>

## EXERCISE XXIV.

Āg-it, (he) drives, or leads. Āg-itur, (he) is (being) driven.

1. Agricola spē fructuum in laborem agitur. 2. Acies densa ab hostibus in fugam agitur. 3. Magna pars exercitūs in planitiē erat. 4. Tanta vitiā tam pulchra facie indigna sunt. 5. Memoria pulchrae faciēi hominibus jucunda est. 6. Mora spei inimica est. 7. Rex justus melioribus rebus dignus est. 8. Rebus adversis vir fortis in dolorem agitur. 9. Exercitus omnis in spem novam a forti duce agitur. 10. In Britannia apricorum dierum numerus non magnus est. 11. Fluminis rapidi cursus interdum glacie superatur. 12. Rerum adversarum memoria in rebus secundis interdum jucunda est.

1. In summer the hours of the day are many, in winter (the hours) of the night (30). 2. There-were many horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers (use -quē) in the line of the enemy. 3. The light of mid-day is (being) overcome by a dark-black cloud. 4. The

<sup>1</sup> This Noun is printed thus (as also in the *Public School Grammar*) to exhibit the Case Terminations more clearly. But the true Stem of rēs is not r- but re-. See p. 239, 'Stem.'

<sup>2</sup> The quantity of r-ei varies.

<sup>3</sup> Diēs should not be used by the beginner in the Feminine, except poetically; to signify, not a literal day, but a season, e.g. *The evil day has come*, *Atra diēs venit*.

Diēs and rēs are the only Nouns in the Fifth Declension that are fully declined; and all (but nine) have no Plural.

long line of the enemy (trans. enemies) is being overcome by the fearless soldiers. 5. The memory of prosperity is sometimes unpleasing to the wretched. 6. The heat of the sun was destructive to the thin ice. 7. The memory of joyful days was pleasing to the just judge. 8. Great is the utility of hope. 9. The hostage is being driven into the citadel by the bold leader. 10. The queen shows (her) grief by (her) sad face.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

### I.—REGULAR.

58 1. The Comparative Degree, if regular, is formed from the Gen. Sing. by taking away -i, (alt-i, alt-) or -is (ferac-is, ferac-), and adding -ior: alt-ior, *higher*, ferac-ior, *more fruitful*.

59 2. The Superlative Degree is formed by taking away -i or -is and adding -issimus: alt-issimus, fērac-issimus.

Gen. Sing.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Trist-is,	trist-ior, <i>sadder</i> ,	trist-issimūs, <i>saddest</i> .
Rēcent-is,	rēcent-ior, <i>more recent</i> ,	rēcent-issimūs, <i>most recent</i> .

### II.—IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.

#### 1. -līmus.

60 1. Six Adj. in -ilis, form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -līmus instead of -issimus.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Făcil-is, <i>easy</i>	facil-ior	facil-līmus
Difficil-is, <i>difficult</i>	difficil-ior	difficil-līmus
Sīmil-is, <i>like</i>	sīmil-ior	sīmil-līmus
Dissīmil-is, <i>unlike</i>	dissīmil-ior	dissīmil-līmus
Grăcil-is, <i>thin</i>	grăcil-ior	grăcil-līmus
Hūmil-is, <i>low</i>	hūmil-ior	hūmil-līmus

The rest, fertīl-is, ūtīl-is &c., have either no Superlative or -issimus; fertīl-issimus, ūtīl-issimus, &c.

2. -rīmus.

- 61 2. All Adj. ending in -er form the Compar. regularly, but the Superl. by adding -rīmus to the Nominative :

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
Nom.	Gen.		
Liber, liber-i, free		liber-ior	liber-rīmus
Celer, celer-is, swift		celer-ior	celer-rīmus
Pulcher, pulchr-i, beautiful		pulchr-ior	pulcher-rīmus
Acet, acet-is, sharp		acet-ior	acet-rīmus

The Adjective vētūs, Gen. vētēr-is, *old*, has Comp. vētast-ior, Superl. veter-rīmus.<sup>1</sup>

Quam, than.

- 62 RULE.—Nouns coupled by quam (*than*) and a Comparative Adj. or Adv., are in the same case :

1. Nom. { Œqui utiliores sunt quam capri (sunt).  
Horses are more useful than goats (are).
2. Gen. { Pudor flagitii, magis quam erroris, hominem complet.  
Shame for the crime, rather than for the error, possesses the man : lit. of the crime, of the error.
3. Dat. { Puero dat meliora dona quam puellae (dat).  
To the boy he gives better gifts than (he gives) to the girl.
4. Acc. { Malus folia habet densiora quam mala (habet).<sup>2</sup>  
The apple-tree has leaves thicker than (it has) apples.

- 63 RULE.—When the first Noun is in the Nominative or Accusative, the second Noun is generally put in the Ablative without quam :

Nothing is more lovable than Nihil est virtute amabilius.  
virtue.

<sup>1</sup> The Comparative vētērior is rare and archaic.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguish between mala, apples, and mala, evils.

*N.B.* Superlatives and Comparatives have each more meanings than one :

- 64 I. Tard-issimus means (1) *slowest*, (2) *very slow*.  
 65 II. Tard-ior means (1) *slower*, (2) *rather*, or *somewhat*, *slow*, or (3) *too slow*.

#### EXERCISE XXV.

- 66 RULE.—SĪMĪLIS, *like*, takes a (1) Gen. or (2) Dat. :<sup>1</sup>—

(1) *The boys are like (i.e., the likenesses of) (their) father.* Pūri patris sĭmĭles sunt.

(2) *All things were more like (to) a camp than (to) a city.* Omnĭa castris quam urbi sĭmĭliora erant.

- 67 Quidem, *on the one hand; indeed*. Autem, *on the other hand; however; but*. Neither of these words can stand first in a clause. They must be placed after some emphatic word. See Sentence 9 below.

1. Vallis humilior erat campo. 2. Nihil est virtute pulchrius, nihil amicitia dulcius. 3. Puer omnibus praeceptoris discipulis procerior erat. 4. Latori vir melius donum quam sorori dat. 5. Amor patrio magis quam filiorum ducem acerrimum complet. 6. Cervus animal est celerissimum, et testudini dissimillimum.<sup>2</sup> 7. Hieme dies breviores sunt noctibus. 8. Iter puellae difficilior est quam puero. 9. Turdus quidem avis tardior (65) est, aquila autem velocissima. 10. In regione aspera itinera hieme difficiliora quam aestate sunt. 11. Puer aegerrius crura et brachia graciliora habet. 12. Puellae patris quam matris similiores erant. 13. Puellam quidem totum diem (31) culpam (16a), puerum autem laudat.

1. *Nothing is more useful to men than sight and hearing.* 2. *The husbandman's garden is more fertile than the rich king's fields.* 3. *Who is bolder than a soldier? who (is) juster than a judge?* 4. *The ass is a somewhat-foolish (65) animal; the dog is very sagacious.* 5. *The boy's sisters were more like (their) mother than (their) father.* 6. *The anger of the king was keener than the madness of the soldiers.* 7. *By very swift journeys*

<sup>1</sup> The Dative is rare in Cicero, but very common in later writers.

<sup>2</sup> Two Adjectives coupled by et can agree with the same Noun.

*the general leads (his) soldiers into a most rugged region.*  
8. *Very beautiful trees fill the very low<sup>1</sup> valleys of (the) most<sup>1</sup> fertile region.* 9. *The very brave soldiers are being driven into the city by (a) very keen and bold leader.<sup>1</sup>* 10. *The very<sup>1</sup> ailing boy has very thin legs in winter.*

# IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

	Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
68	bōnus, good	mēlior	optimus
	mālus, bad	pēior	peſsimus
	magnus, great	māior	maximus
	parvus, small	mīior	minimus
	multi, (pl.), many	plūres	plūrimi <sup>2</sup>
	nēquam, (indecl.) worthless	nēquior	nēquissimus

68<sup>a</sup> Adjectives ending in -dīcus, -speaking, -ficus, -doing, -vōlus, wishing, form the Comp. in -entīior, the Superl. in -entissimus:

mālē-dīcus, ill-speaking, -dīcentīior, -dīcentissimus.  
mūnī-ficus, gift-making, -fīcentīior, -fīcentissimus.  
bēnē-vōlus, well-wishing, -vōlentīior, -vōlentissimus.

(These forms are really derived from Verbal forms in -ens, which will be recognised when the Verbs are mastered.)

68<sup>b</sup> Adjectives ending in -ēus, -īus, -ūus, seldom have a Compar. or Superl. form of their own, but are compared by appending the adverbs māgis, more, maxīmē, most: pīus, dutiful, māgis pīus, more dutiful, maxīmē pīus, most dutiful.

69 In the following the Positive is defective, and is represented by a Noun, Adjective, or Preposition:

70 <sup>1</sup> In Latin the Superlative is more frequently used than in English. We should say "the brave soldiers," "a bold leader." But in Latin the Superlatives must be expressed.

71 <sup>2</sup> Multum, plūs, and plūrimum are also used in the Neut. Sing. as Nouns governing a Genitive Case.

They have much	} (of) money.	Multum	} pecūniāe hābent.
more		Plūs	
very much		Plūrimum	

[Sēnex], an old man	sēnior <sup>1</sup>	nātu maximus, oldest.
[Jūvēnis], a young man	jūnior <sup>1</sup>	nātu minimus, youngest.
[Sūpērus], upper	sūpērior	supremus, summus, highest.
[Infērus], lower	infērior	infimus, imus, lowest.
[Extērus], outside	extērior	extrēmus, (outermost or last).
[prep. Intrā], inside	intērior	intimus, inmost.
[Postērus], after, behind	postērior	postrēmus, (hindmost or last).
[prep. Prae], before	priōr	primus, (foremost or first).
[prep. Prōpē], near	prōpior <sup>1</sup>	proximus, (nearest or next). <sup>2</sup>
[prep. Ultrā], beyond	ultērior	ultimus, (furthest or last).

## 72 Plūs, more, is thus declined :

Singular : a Noun.

Plural : an Adjective.

	Neuter.		Masc. and Fem.		Neut.
Nom. and Acc.	Plūs		Plūrēs		Plūrā
Gen.	Plūrīs		Plūrīum		Plūrīum
Dat.	Plūrī		Plūrībus		Plūrībus
Abl.	Plūrē		Plūrībus		Plūrībus

Māgis means *more in degree* and is used with Adjectives ;  
plūs, *more in quantity*, and is used with Verbs.

Balbus is *more dutiful*, but Balbus māgis pius est, sed  
Tullius delights (his) father Tullius patrem plūs delectat.  
*more.*

### EXERCISE XXVI.

## 73 RULE.—A Superlative, in agreement with a Noun understood, is followed by the Genitive :

The horse is the most useful Equus utilissimum (animal)  
(animal) of animals. animalium est.

1. Alexander erat ducum praestantissimus.<sup>2</sup>
2. Optimorum virorum filii interdum pessimi sunt.
3. Quid pejus erat Balbi contione ! Quid optimae (35) Tullii contioni (66) simile habet ?<sup>3</sup>
4. Majores natu ratio, non spes, agit.
5. Junioribus

<sup>1</sup> Nātu māior and nātu mīnor are also used. Nātu means *by birth*, and is not declined.

<sup>2</sup> Why is ducum Gen. ? Ans. governed by aux understood.

<sup>3</sup> An Adj. e.g. optimae, is often separated from its Noun by an intervening Genitive e.g. Tullii. (Par. 35.) Quid (Exercise XXII) is Acc. gov. by habet.

The Nom. to habet is it, i.e. the speech of Balbus, understood.

seniores dona dant. 6. Ducis optimi dies ultimus erat felicissimus. 7. Socrates optimus Graccorum erat. 8. Castrorum pars exterior parte intimā major erat. 9. Plus erat (71) modestiae quam sapientiae in viro benevolentissimo.<sup>1</sup> 10. Plurimorum facta nequissima, optima verba sunt. 11. Minima pars propioris regionis maximā parte regionis ulterioris major erat. 12. Senes priora (34) laudant, juniorum facta culpant. 13. Proximo die imperator maximam partem hostium superat. 14. Virgo a milite hasta totum diem terretur.

1. *The king, (who was) worse than (his) father, has a (still) more worthless son.*
2. *Very old men praise former times.*
3. *The greater part of the outermost wall was nearest to the citadel.*
4. *The most benevolent of the younger (men) were inferior to (trans. as if to were than) the worst of the elder (men).*
5. *He gives more gifts to the worst of the sisters than to the most dutiful of the brothers.*
6. *The lowest part of the mountain was higher (comp. and superl. of superus) than the highest part of the citadel.*
7. *The younger rightly give reverence to (their) elders.*
8. *The younger of the brothers was very like the elder sister.*
9. *Very many praise what is best (trans. best-things).*
10. *On the last (30) day of (his) life the old-man was most happy.*
11. *He is-blamed the whole day (long).*

#### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

**74** Numeral Adjectives are either (1) Cardinal, denoting *how many*, or (2) Ordinal, denoting *in what order*.<sup>2</sup> All the Ordinal Adjectives are declined like bonus; but of the Cardinal Adjectives only a few are declined.

##### 1. Ūnus, one.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Gen. Sing.	Ūn-ūs	un-ūs	un-ūs
Dat. Sing.	Un-i	un-i	un-i

In the other cases, Sing. and Plur., it is like bonus.

**75** <sup>1</sup> Why is modestiae Gen? Ans. governed by plus, Adj. used as Noun. Why is sapientiae Gen.? Because quam (Par. 62) takes the same Case after it as before it. In translating benevolentissimo add the or that.

**76** The Gen. after pars, plus, multum, &c., is often called the *Partitive Genitive*.

**77** <sup>2</sup> For the Distributive Numeral Adjectives see Exercise LXXXV. They are all declined like boni, -ae, -a: (1) singūli, *one a-piece*; (2) bini, *two a-piece*; (3) terni or trīni; (4) quāterni; (5) quīni; (6) sēni; (7) septēni; (8) octōni; (9) nōvēni; (10) dēni; (11) undēni; (100) centēni; (101) centēni singūli; (200) dūcēni; (300) trecēni; (400) quādringēni; (500) quingēni; (1,000) singūla milla.



78

2. Dŭo, *two*.3. Trēs, *three*.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.V.</i>	Dŭ-ō	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ō		Trēs	triā
<i>Acc.</i>	Dŭ-os <sup>1</sup>	dŭ-as	dŭ-ō		Trēs <sup>2</sup>	triā
<i>Gen.</i>	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum		Trium	triūm
<i>Dat.</i>	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus		Tribus	tribus
<i>Abl.</i>	Dŭ-ōbus	dŭ-ābus	dŭ-ōbus		Tribus	tribus

*Ambo, both*, is declined like *dŭo*.

79 The Cardinal Numbers, from *four* to a *hundred*, are indeclinable.

The compounds of a *hundred* are declined like *hōnus*:  
Of *two hundred men*, Dŭcentōrum hōmīnum.

4. Millē, *thousand*.

80 The two uses of *millē* (*a*) Sing. (*b*) Plural, must be carefully distinguished:

*a. Singular, an indeclinable Adjective:*

Millē passus, *a thousand paces*.

Millē passibus, *to a thousand paces, &c.*

*b. Plural, a Noun of the Third Declension, having an Adjective agreeing with it in Number and Case, and governing another Noun in the Genitive:*

*N.V. and Acc.* Multa mīlia passuum, *many thousands of paces*.

*Gen.* Multōrum mīlium passuum, *of many thousands of paces*.

*Dat.* Multis mīlibus passuum, *to many thousands of paces*.

*Abl.* Multis mīlibus passuum, *by many thousands of paces*.

<sup>1</sup> Less commonly, dŭ-o.

<sup>2</sup> Less commonly, tria.

81

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus
2	II	dūō, -æ, -o	sēcundus or altēr
3	III	trēs, -tria	tertius
4	IV	quattuōr (quātūōr)	quartus
5	V	quinqūē	quintus
6	VI	sex	sextus
7	VII	septem	septīmus
8	VIII	ocīō	octāvus
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus
10	X	dēcem	dēcīmus
11	XI	undēcim	undēcīmus
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus
13	XIII	trēdēcim	tertius dēcīmus
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcīmus
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septīmus dēcīmus
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus
20	XX	vigintī	vicēsīmus
21	XXI	ūnus et vigintī or vigintī-ūnus	unus et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus prīmus
22	XXII	duō et vigintī or vigintī duo	alter et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus alter
23	XXIII	trēs et vigintī or vigintī trēs	tertius et vicēsīmus, or vicēsīmus tertius
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētricēsīmus
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētricēsīmus
30	XXX	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50	L	quingūāgintā	quingūāgēsīmus
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100	C	centum	centēsīmus
101	CI	centum et unus or centum unus	centēsīmus prīmus
136	CXXXVI	centum et trīginta sex or centum, trīginta sex	centēsīmus tricēsīmus sextus
200	CC	ducentī, -æ, -ā	ducentēsīmus
300	CCC	trecentī, -æ, -ā	trecentēsīmus

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
400	CCCC	quadringenti, -ae, -ā	quadringentēsīmus
500	ID or D	quingenti, -ae, -ā	quingentēsīmus
600	DC	sescenti, -ae, -ā	sexcentēsīmus
700	DCC	septingenti, -ae, -ā	septingentēsīmus
800	DCCC	octingenti, -ae, -ā	octingentēsīmus
900	DCCCC	nongenti, -ae, -ā	nongentēsīmus
1,000	CI <sub>0</sub> or M	millē	millēsīmus
2,000	MM	duō miliā	bis millēsīmus
100,000	CCCI <sub>000</sub>	centum miliā	centiēs millēsīmus <sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE XXVII.

**82** RULE.—The Possessor is often expressed by the Dative Case with the Verb *est*, (*sunt*, *erat*, *erant*, &c.):

*Ballus has, or had a book, i.e. Balbo est, or erat, there was a book for Balbus. liber.*

1. Duos consules decem tribunorum constantia superat. 2. Militi veterrimo unus solus oculus et novem digiti erant.<sup>2</sup> 3. In legione Romana decem cohortes erant. 4. Mensis September quondam septimus (erat), nunc nonus anni mensis est.<sup>3</sup> 5. Juvenis alteram et vicesimam partem patrimonii pauperibus dat. 6. Arbori centum et triginta sex poma tunc erant. 7. Agricola sedecim nuces, (32) nonaginta octo cerasa mulieri dat. 8. Centuria erat altera pars manipuli, sexta pars cohortis, legionis sexagesima (pars). 9. Legio trecentos equites habet. 10. In hostium exercitu sunt mille nongenti equites,

**83** <sup>1</sup> The number 500, ID, is multiplied by 10 as often as 0 is subjoined:—

$$ID0 = 10 \times 500 = 5,000.$$

$$ID00 = 10 \times 5,000 = 50,000.$$

In order to double ID, or ID0, you must prefix C as many times as it is suffixed:—

$$CII0 = 2 \times 500 = 1,000.$$

$$CCII00 = 2 \times 5,000 = 10,000.$$

**84** <sup>2</sup> Why is *militi* Dat? Ans., *Dat of the Posters' re after est.*

<sup>3</sup> *Jānuārius* and *September* are Adjectives agreeing with *mensis*. The adjectival names of the months are sometimes used as Nouns, *mensis* being understood, e.g. *Febrūarii* in sentence 11. See p. 229.

peditum tria millia. 11. Januarii mensis unus dies est pars una et tricesima; Februarii, duodetricesima.<sup>1</sup> 12. Undetriginta verberibus miles a centurione castigatur.

*The general had (erant) three hundred and seven foot-soldiers. 2. The enemy had six hundred foot-soldiers, (and) two thousand horse-soldiers. 3. The husbandman gives twenty-five eggs to the wretched sailor. 4. There were on (in) the oak many thousand acorns. 5. On the sixth month of the year, in the seventh hour, there were in the city three thousand Germans. 6. The general leads into the city the twentieth legion and the third part of the thirtieth legion. 7. A century was the sixth part of a cohort; a cohort (was) the tenth part of a legion. 8. Once a legion had three thousand soldiers. 9. There were then in the legion six thousand foot-soldiers (and) three hundred horse-soldiers. 10. Once March was the first month of the year, November (was) the ninth, (and) December the tenth. 11. The old soldier had thirty-three wounds.*

# IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

- 85 The following adjectives (most of them capable of being used as Pronouns) are declined regularly (like *bōnus*) in the Plural, and in all cases of the Singular, except the Gen. and Dat.; but (like the Pronouns) they make the Gen. Sing. in *-ius* (*-ūs*) or *-riūs*, and the Dat. Sing. in *-i*:

1. *-ius* (*-ūs*).  
*Ūnus*, one, one only.  
*Ullus*, any.<sup>2</sup>  
*Nullus*, no, not any, none.  
*Sōlus*, alone.  
*Tōtus*, whole.

2. *-riūs*.  
*Alter*, Gen. *altēriūs*, one (of two), the other (of two).  
*Ūter?* *utr-riūs?* which (of the two)?  
*Neuter*, *neutr-riūs*, neither.

- 86 *Ālius*, other, makes the Neut. Sing. in *-ud*. When twice used co-ordinately (*i.e.* so that *and*, *but*, &c., might be inserted), it means, in the Sing., one . . . another, or, in the Plur., some . . . others; and *alter* . . . *alter* mean, similarly, one of the two . . . the other of the two.

<sup>1</sup> Why is *Febrūārīi* (mensis) Gen.? Ans. governed by *pars* understood. You must repeat "unus dies est pars" with *dūdētrīcēsīma*.

The pupil may henceforth (with the aid of Appendix VI.) write the Latin day of the month on his exercise.

<sup>2</sup> *Ullus* is only used in (1) negative and (2) comparative sentences, or in (3) questions that expect a negative answer.

- (1) *He blames one thing, (and) praises another.*     *Ālūd culpāt, ālūd laudat.*  
 (2) *Some overcome, (but) others are overcome.*     *Ālī supērant, ālī supērantur.*  
 (3) *He gives one of the two sisters a pear, the other an apple.*     *Altēri sōrōrum pīrum, altēri pōmum dat.*

<i>Ālius, other.</i>				<i>Nullus, no.</i>			
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom.	Ālius	ālīa	ālūd	Nullus	nullā	nullum	
Voc.	Wanting			[Nulle	nulla	nullum]	
Acc.	Ālūm	ālīam	ālūd	Nullum	nullam	nullum	
Gen.	Ālius	ālīus	ālīus	Nullius	nullius	nullius	
Dat.	Ālī	ālī	ālī	Nulli	nulli	nulli	
Abl.	Ālīo	ālīa	ālīo	Nullō	nullā	nullō	

88 When *ālius* is repeated *not co-ordinately* (see Par. 86), it is sometimes construed as follows :—

*Some women praise some things, others praise others.*     *Mulieres āliac ālīa laudant.*

The Nom. of *ālius* has *ī*, the Gen. has *ī*:

*One man praises one man's conduct, another man another's.*     *Ālius ālius mōrēs laudat.*

89 Note *alt-ērīus*, but *ut-rīus*; so *asp-ērī*, but *pulch-ri*.

### EXERCISE XXVIII.

90 Adjectives signifying *nearness, dearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.*, and their opposites, govern the Dative.

1. *Utri senum filia viam monstrat?*<sup>1</sup> 2. *Neutrius exercitus dux timidus erat.* 3. *Uni soli tot militum dux coronam dat.*<sup>2</sup>  
 4. *Fratrum optimorum alter alterius filium valde amat.*  
 5. *Pater alteri filiorum equum validissimum, alteri ensem dat.* 6. *Mulieres aliae alia clamant.* 7. *Milites (88) alius agros, alius armenta et equos laudant.* 8. *Mater puellis dona diversa dat; alii dat aurum, alii argentum.* 9. *Nemini*

91 <sup>1</sup> *Senum* is Gen., governed by *utri*. But the Gen. after *uter*, neuter, *unus*, &c. and also after the Numerals generally, is often called a *Partitive Genitive*, because it implies a *part* belonging to a larger number or whole.  
<sup>2</sup> What sort of a Gen. is *militum*? *Soli* agrees with *uni*, which (85) is used as a Pronoun.

molestus erat; nullius mores culpat.<sup>1</sup> 10. Pater majora dona filiae quam ulli filiorum dat.<sup>2</sup> 11. Homo avarus est, neque (18) ulli carus.<sup>2</sup> 12. Utrique genti facile (34) erat belli mala vitare (36a).

1. Which of the (two) brothers is the dearer to (their) mother?
2. The man is very worthless (68), and not dear to any of the citizens.
3. To one of the (two) brothers he gives blame; to the other praise.
4. To neither of the leaders was the cowardice of the armies pleasing.
5. Virtue is agreeable to one, pleasure (is agreeable) to another.
6. One (man's) constancy, another (man's) prudence, is praised by the leader.
7. To one alone of the women does the queen give praise.
8. He gives to (his) brother a better gift than to any (87) of his sisters.
9. Some had (82) shields, others had swords; (but) no one had horses.
10. The woman was very worthless, and (18) not dear to any of (her) sisters.
11. The butterfly lives one day.

### PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

1. FIRST PERSON.		2. SECOND PERSON.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>I, me, &amp;c.</i>	<i>We, us, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Thou, thee, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Ye, you, &amp;c.</i>
Nom. <i>Ēgō</i>	<i>Nōs</i>	N. and V. <i>Tū</i>	<i>Vōs</i>
Acc. <i>Mē</i>	<i>Nōs</i>	<i>Tē</i>	<i>Vōs</i>
Gen. <i>Mēi</i>	<i>Nostri</i> <sup>3</sup> (-trum)	<i>Tui</i>	<i>Vestri</i> <sup>3</sup> (-trum)
Dat. <i>Mihī</i>	<i>Nōbīs</i>	<i>Tibi</i>	<i>Vōbīs</i>
Abl. <i>Mē</i>	<i>Nōbīs</i>	<i>Tē</i>	<i>Vōbīs</i>

### 3. THIRD PERSON.

To express *he, she, it*, use is made of the Adjective (1) *is, m., that (man)*, (2) *ea, f., that (woman)*, (3) *id, n., that (thing)*.

92 <sup>1</sup> Nullius, nullo are used for *nēmīnis* and *nēmīne* :

From *nēmo* let me never see  
*Nēmīnis* and *nēmīne*.

93 <sup>2</sup> In what sort of sentences is *ullus* used? Why is it used (87) here?  
<sup>3</sup> The Genitives Plural *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are used only in such phrases as "*nēmo nostrum, vestrum, no one of us, of you; the wisest of us; some of us, &c.*" It is then called a Partitive Genitive: see above, Par. 70, 91. *Nostri, vestri* are really Adjectives in Gen. Sing. agreeing with a Noun understood: *mēmō est nostri, He is mindful of our (business) i.e. of us.*

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>	
	<i>He</i>	<i>She</i>	<i>It</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>They</i>	<i>Those</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>Īs</b>	<b>ēā</b>	<b>īd</b>	<b>Ei (ii)</b>	<b>eae</b>	<b>ēā</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Ēum</b>	<b>ēam</b>	<b>īd</b>	<b>Ēos</b>	<b>ēas</b>	<b>ēā</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Ēius</b>	<b>ēius</b>	<b>ēius</b>	<b>Ēorum</b>	<b>ēārum</b>	<b>ēōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Ei</b>	<b>ei</b>	<b>ei</b>	<b>Eis (iis)</b>	<b>eis (iis)</b>	<b>eis (iis)</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Ēo</b>	<b>ēā</b>	<b>ēo</b>	<b>Eis (iis)</b>	<b>eis (iis)</b>	<b>eis (iis)</b> <sup>1</sup>

- 94 The Gen. *eius*, *eōrum*, is often used for *his*, *her*, *their*:  
 “*liber eius*,” *his*, or *her book*; “*eōrum liber*,” *their book*.

#### 4. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

This Pronoun has no Nominative nor Vocative, and the Plural is the same as the Singular.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Sō</b> <i>himself, herself, itself</i> <sup>2</sup>	<b>semetipsos</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Sui</b> <i>of</i> “ ” “ ”	”
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Sibi</b> <i>to or for</i> “ ” “ ”	”
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Sē</b> <sup>2</sup> <i>by (17), with, from</i> “ ” “ ”	”

#### EXERCISE XXIX.

*I* (or *we*), *thou* (or *ye*), *he* (or *they*) are said to be respectively the First, Second, and Third Persons. All ordinary Nouns are said to be in the Third Person (see page 237).

The form of the Verb in Latin must be altered to suit the Person as well as the Number of its Subject:

Person.	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1st	<i>I love,</i> (ēgō) ām-o	<i>We</i> } <i>love,</i> {	(nōs) āmā-mus
2nd	<i>Thou lovest,</i> (tū) āmā-s		(vōs) āmā-tis
3rd	<i>He loves,</i> (is) āma-t		(ei) āma-nt

- 95 RULE.—The Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person.

All the Verbs that make the 3rd Pers. Sing. in -at (such as *sūpĕra-t*, *lauda-t*, &c.), are changed in the same way as *āmo* above: but *da-t* has the *a* short, *dāmus*, *dātis*.

<sup>1</sup> The quantity of the *e* in *ei*, *eis* is doubtful.

<sup>2</sup> Instead of *sē* there is sometimes used the emphatic form *sēsē*. The pupil must be prepared hereafter to find that *sēsē* is used in some instances for *he*, *him*. But, for the present, it will be only used for *himself*, *herself* &c. (never for *thyselves*, *yourselves*).

**96** *Ūnus* is sometimes used in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun to mean *alone* or *only* :—

*Only Tullius loves me.*

*Ūnus Tullius mē āmat.*

1. Ego cum amo. 2. Tu eius fratrem amas. 3. Nos eorum fratrem amamus. 4. Vc. eius sorores amatis. 5. Dona eius mihi uni (96) grata sunt. 6. Agri agricolarum eis grati sunt. 7. Mater siliū amat, ego cum laudo. 8. Matri filius poma dat, ego cum laudo. 9. Poma talia mihi grata non sunt; ego porcis eā do. 10. Tu mihi et ei dona meliora quam eis das. 11. Vos eorum dona laudatis, eorum (dona) culpatis. 12. Omnes sese amant. 13. Nemo non sibi benignus est.

1. *I love her, she loves me.* 2. *Thou lovest her<sup>1</sup> father.* 3. *Ye love their (94) gifts.* 4. *We love them, ye love us.* 5. *They give us better gifts than (they give) to him.* 6. *His patience is pleasing to me.* 7. *Their patience is pleasing to him.* 8. *Her constancy is pleasing to them.* 9. *No one blames himself.* 10. *His folly is pleasing to thee (96) alone.*

#### PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

**97** The Genitives *ēius, ēōrum*, are used for *his, her, their*; but the Genitives *mēi, tūi, nostri, vestri, &c.*, are hardly ever used for *my, thy, our, your, &c.* For this purpose the following Pronominal Adjectives are used :

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Mēus</i>	<i>mēā</i>	<i>mēum</i>	<i>my, mine</i>
<i>Tūus</i>	<i>tūā</i>	<i>tūum</i>	<i>thy, thine</i>
<i>Noster</i>	<i>nostrā</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>our, ours</i>
<i>Vester</i>	<i>vestrā</i>	<i>vestrum</i>	<i>your, yours</i>
<i>Sūus</i>	<i>sūā</i>	<i>sūum</i>	<i>his own, her own, its own, their own</i>

**98** *Eius* and *Sūus*. Note the difference. *Sūus* may be used (for the present) where you can insert *own* in the English.

- (1) *The mother loves her (own) son.* *Māter filiū sūum āmat.*
- (2) *Gaius and his brother love me.* (Sec page 328.) *Gaius et frātēr ēius mē āmant.*
- (3) *I love her son.* *Āmo ēius filiū.*

<sup>1</sup> Note the ambiguity in Latin: *eius* is used both for *her* and for *his*. In practice, of course, the ambiguity would be generally removed by the context. On the other hand, the ambiguity of the English *their* is removed by the Latin use of *ēōrum* and *ēārum*.



- 99 *Ēgo, tū, is, nōs, &c., are generally omitted as the Subjects of a Verb: āmās, thou lovest, āmāmus, we love, &c.*
- 99<sup>a</sup> But if emphasis is intended to be laid on the Pronouns, they are inserted: "*ēgo tō ūmo, tū mō nōn ūmās.*"

## EXERCISE XXX.

- 100 A question is asked by *nōnne, num* or *-nē*; *-nē* is added to, and emphasizes, *the first word in the Sentence.*

*Do you blame me?*

*Tūnē mē culpās?*

*Do you blame ME?*

*Mēnē culpās?*

- 101 *Nōnnē?* (i. e. *nōn-nē?*) expects *yes*; *num?* expects *no*.<sup>1</sup>

*Does he not blame me?*

*Nōnnē mē culpāt?*

*He does not blame me, does he?*

*Num mē culpāt?*

- 102 RULE.—Adjectives signifying *mindfulness, knowledge, or forgetfulness and ignorance*, take the Genitive.

1. Mercator sua laudat (32), aliena culpāt. 2. Puer vobis carus est; nonne sororem eius amatis? 3. Non omnes semper sui memores sunt. 4. Puellae patrem non habent: omnes eis benigni sunt. 5. Nonne omnes sibi benigni sunt, aliorum immemores? 6. Amici mei Tullium valde amant, et semper eius memores sunt. 7. Soror tua, O amice, patrem suum non amat. 8. Nos sumus vestri memores; sed nemo vestrum nostri memoretur est.<sup>2</sup> 9. Mater tua non est tibi carior quam meus pater mihi.<sup>3</sup> 10. Laudamus aliena (34), nostra non curamus. 11. Cur non agros vestros curatis, agricolae ignavissimi? 12. Tunc, O filiarum pessima, patris tui virtutem culpās? 13. Num tu, virgo ignarus, viam aliis monstras? 14. Interdum sui immemor (16a) est.

1. <sup>4</sup> Balbus is not mindful of us; but (67) we love him. 2. No one of us praises his folly. 3. The girl is dear to us; we love her

<sup>1</sup> With *cūr? why? quīs? who?* and other interrogatives, *-nē, nōnne, num*, are omitted: *Why does he not blame? Cūr nō mē culpāt?* When *nonne* and *num* are used in direct questions, they generally stand at the beginning of the Sentence.

<sup>2</sup> What case is *vestrum*, and why? Why not *vestri*? What case is *nostri*, and why? Why not *nostrum*? See Par. 91.

<sup>3</sup> *Mihi* is Dat., governed by "*cārus* (est)" understood.

<sup>4</sup> Before doing this exercise, the pupil should read through all the sentences and ask which of the Pronominal Adjectives of the 3rd Pers., *his, her, their, &c.*, can have *own* added to it. Whenever *own* can be added, *sūus* is the word to be used. But of course this does not apply to Pronouns not of the 3rd Pers. (*my own, your own*), which are to be rendered *mēus, &c.*

exceedingly. 4. Thy sister does not love her father. 5. His brothers do not love their father. 6. Ye praise the fields of others, ye do not take care of your (own) (fields). 7. Our sisters are dearer to us, O most cruel (men), than your brothers to you. 8. Do ye, (being) ignorant of the way, point-out the way to us, O most foolish (men)? 9. Why dost thou blame thy father, and dost not (18) praise his virtue? 10. The generals overcome the anger of the soldiers by their wisdom.

103

DEMONSTRATIVE AND EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

1. Illē, *that (yonder)*; pl. *those*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illud	illi	illae	illā
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illā
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Abl.	illo	illā	illo	illis	illis	illis

2. Istē, *that (near you, or of yours)*, often used contemptuously; declined like illē.

3. Hic (-ī or -i), *this (near me)*; pl. *these*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hōc	Hi	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hos	has	haec
Gen.	Huius	huius	huius	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic	huic	huic	His	his	his
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	His	his	his

4. Ipsē, *-self, himself, herself, itself*; pl. *themselves*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum <sup>1</sup>	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	Ipsū	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsos	ipsas	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	Ipsorum	ipsarum	ipsorum
Dat.	Ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	Ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipso	Ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

Note that ipsē differs from illō only in the Neut. Nom. Singular.

5. *Idem*, *the same* (declined like *is*; but *is-dem* is written *idem*, *id-dem* is written *idem*, and *m* before *-dem* is changed into *n*).

## Singular.

## Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Idem	ēadem	idem	Iidem	ēaedem	ēādem
Acc.	Eūdem	ēandem	dem	Eosdem	ēasdem	ēādem
Gen.	Eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	Eorundem	ēarundem	ēorunde
Dat.	Eidem	eidem	eidem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem
Abl.	Eodem	ēādem	ēodem	Eisdem	eisdem	eisdem <sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE XXXI.

- 104 [Do not, for the future, use *thou* or *ye* in translating the Exercises, unless the language is poetical. *You* in English is commonly used of the Singular Number, and will be so used in future Exercises; it should therefore be rendered by *tu*, not by *vos*, unless the context shows that it is Plural].
- 105 *Ipsē* is an Adj., agreeing in Gender, Number and Case with (1) a Noun or Pronoun understood; or (2) a Noun or Pronoun expressed.

- (1) *(She) herself loves me.* Ipsa mē amat.  
 (2) *I give this to you yourself,* Tibi ipsi, O filia, hūc do.  
     *O daughter.*  
 (3) *The queen herself loves.* Rēgīna ipsa amat.

1. Non idem labor eisdem semper iucundus est. 2. Amicus iste fratrem suum non amat. 3. Huic equum, illi canem, isti asinum pigrum agricola dat. 4. In te ipso fons est laetitiae. 5. Non idem donum agricolis et nautis gratum est. 6. Viti-osi vitium ipsum amant. 7. Homeri et Vergilii opera vobis nota sunt; ille<sup>2</sup> Graecus erat, hic Romanus. 8. Eorundem agricularum agri non semper pariter fertiles sunt. 9. Num amicorum ipsorum mores culpatis? 10. Cur huic mulieri dona meliora quam ipsi matri tuae das? 11. Vestis eadem eidem mulieri non semper grata est. 12. Alexandri et Darii nomina nota sunt omnibus: illi laudem, huic misericordiam dāmus.<sup>2</sup> 13. Quis centum (31) annos vivit?
1. *That gift of-yours is more pleasing to you yourself than to Balbus.* 2. *We all love the same native-land.* 3. *You, O friends, love the same (things), the same danger terrifies*

106

<sup>1</sup> For eisdem there is sometimes used isdem.

<sup>2</sup> (1) *Ille...* (2) *hic*, when thus used together, mean (1) *that which is furthest, first-mentioned...* (2) *that which is nearest, last-mentioned*: hence (1) *the former...* (2) *the latter.*

107. 4. *This man we love, this man's conduct we praise.*  
 5. *The same-things are not always pleasing to the same-persons*  
 (31). 6. *Why do you give larger gifts to this woman than to your*  
*own mother* (trans. *to your mother herself*)? 7. *The children*  
*of the same parents are not always equally beautiful.* 8. *The*  
*same vice is worse in a learned man than in an unlearned.*  
 9. *Do you blame us, O foolish (man)? In you yourself is*  
*the cause of these evils.* 10. *Do you give to yourself the best*  
*gift?* 11. *Do you blame us the whole (85) day (long) (31)?*

## THE RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

107

1. Quī, which (man, woman, thing); who; that.

Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cuius	cuius	cuius-	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	Quībus	quībus	quībus <sup>1</sup>
Abi.	Quō	quā	quō	Quībus	quībus	quībus <sup>1</sup>

The Relative in Latin often (1) precedes its Antecedent, and sometimes (2) is placed with it like an Adjective.

- (1) *He whom all love is praised by all.* Quem omnes amant is ab omnibus laudatur.  
 (1) *What, or that which, some praise, others blame.* Quōd illi laudant id illi culpant.  
 (2) *The friends whom (or what friends) he has, he praises.* Quōs amicos habet, laudat.<sup>2</sup>

108 RULE.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person.<sup>3</sup>

*You yourself, sister, who love others, do not love me.* Tū ipsa, sōror, quae alios amās, me nōn amās.  
*You, brothers, who blame me, praise Tullius, who himself praises me.* Vōs, frātres, qui me culpātis, Tullium laudātis, qui ipse me laudat.

109

<sup>1</sup> Quībus is sometimes contracted into quīs.

<sup>2</sup> Here the Antecedent is repeated, "quos amicos habet (eos amicos) laudat"; and it may be said that quos agrees (like an Adj.) with the repeated Antecedent, but has for its Antecedent "eos amicos" understood.

09a

<sup>3</sup> N.B. In Gender, Number, and Person—but not necessarily in Case.

- 110** 2. The Interrogative Pronoun *quīs* differs in form from the Relative Pronoun merely in the Nom. Sing. Masc. and Neuter: *quīs*? *who*? *quid*? *what*? The rest of its cases are the same as those of the Relative Pronoun:

*Who gives you this?*

*Quīs tibi hūc dat?*

*What do you give me?*

*Quid mibi dās?*

- 111** The Interrogative Adjective *quī* is the same as the Relative in every case:<sup>1</sup>

*What has he done? What  
misdeed has he committed?*

*Quid fecit?  
commisit?*

*Quōd facinus*

### EXERCISE XXXII.

- 112** RULE.—Adjectives signifying *nearness*, e.g. *vicīnus*, *near* (*to*), *finītīmus*, *bordering on*, *proxīmus*, *nearest*, or *next* (*to*), are followed by the Dative.

1. Qui aliis viam monstrat hunc alij jure (38) laudant. 2. Qui sibi benigniores (65) sunt, ei non semper ab amicis laudantur. 3. Te, O soror, quae haec dona mihi das, maxime laudo. 4. Quis hos milites ducit? Quod periculum eos terret? 5. Ego, O fratres, qui vobis dona optima do, nonne sum vobis carissimus? 6. Cuius verba me culpant eum non laudo. 7. Quibus rex dona dat, eos non semper amat. 8. Quae pericula patrem terrent, ea nonne filii timent? 9. Agricola arbores serit quarum fructum ipse non gustat.<sup>2</sup> 10. Cui patria cara est is bonus civis est. 11. Minae istae quibus agricolae tinidi terrentur, militem non terrent. 12. In urbe, quae mari proxima erat, nautae plurimi erant: huc imperator suos (34) ducit. 13. Belgae, quorum agri Gallis finitimi sunt, a Caesare bello superantur.<sup>2</sup>

1. You, O women, who (108) praise injustice (i.e. unjust things) are paying (trans. giving) the penalty of your folly. 2. To you, O sister, who blame your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift. 3. Those whose (113a) conduct is depraved, you do right not to praise (trans. you rightly do not praise). 4. His mother, who loves you exceedingly, praises you too much. 5. Why do you err, (you) who point out the way to them? 6. What are you tasting, O boys? What fruit delights you? 7. We who overcome the nations bordering-on us, are overcome by the

**113**  
**113a**

<sup>1</sup> *Quīs* is sometimes an Adj., chiefly with persons: *quīs rex*? *what king*?

<sup>2</sup> Note that the Relative in the Genit. precedes the Noun that governs it: "quarum fructum," not "fructum quarum."

nation next to the Belgians. 8. The general leads his (men) into a plain which was nearer and larger. 9. You, O soldiers, are entering this city, which the enemy (pl.) at the same (30) time enter. 10. Friends love those who love (their) friends. 11. Who is this (man) whose blame terrifies you? <sup>1</sup>

# THE VERB.

**114** Latin Verbs are divided into Four Classes called Conjugations. In the third Conjugation the Active Infinitive Present ends in -ĕre, in the rest in -re. That part of the word which comes before -re or -ĕre is called the Stem, and the last letter of the Stem distinguishes the Conjugation.

			<i>Act., Inf., Pres.</i>
1.	First, or	<b>A</b> Conjugation	āmā-re, to love
2.	Second, "	<b>E</b> "	mōnē-re, to advise
3. (a)	Third, "	Consonant "	rēg-ĕre, to rule
(b)	" "	<b>U</b> "	minū-ĕre, to diminish
4.	Fourth, "	<b>I</b> "	audī-re, to hear

## FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvī, āmātum, āmārĕ,—to love. Stem: āmā-.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Amo, I love, or am loving	<i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āmūs, We love, or are loving
2. Am-ās, thou lovest, or art loving	2. Am-ātīs, ye love, or are loving
3. Am-āt, he loves, or is loving.	3. Am-ant, they love, or are loving.

#### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābo, I shall love	<i>Pl.</i> Am-ābīmūs, We shall love
Am-ābīs, thou wilt love	Am-ābītīs, ye will love
Am-ābīt, he will love.	Am-ābunt, they will love.

#### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.<sup>2</sup>

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ābam, I was loving	<i>Pl.</i> Am-ābāmūs, We were loving
Am-ābās, thou wast loving	Am-ābātīs, ye were loving
Am-ābāt, he was loving.	Am-ābant, they were loving.

<sup>1</sup> For additional elementary exercises on the Relative, see p. 186.

<sup>2</sup> The Imperf. also means *I used-to-love, thou wast-went-to-love, he used-to-love, &c.* It has other meanings, which must be learned by practice.

## 4. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Am-āvi, I have loved,</i>	<i>Pl. Am-āvimus, We have loved.</i>
<i>or I loved</i>	<i>or we loved</i>
<i>Am-āvistī, thou hast loved,</i>	<i>Am-āvistis, ye have loved.</i>
<i>or thou lovedst</i>	<i>or ye loved</i>
<i>Am-āvit, he has loved,</i>	<i>Am-āverunt, they have</i>
<i>or he loved.</i>	<i>or am-āverē<sup>1</sup> they loved.</i>

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-āverō, I shall</i>	<i>Am-āverimūs, We shall</i>
<i>Am-āveris, thou wilt</i>	<i>Am-āveritis, ye will</i>
<i>Am-āverit, he will</i>	<i>Am-āverint,<sup>2</sup> they will</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-āveram, I had loved</i>	<i>Am-āverāmūs, We had loved.</i>
<i>Am-āverās, thou hadst loved</i>	<i>Am-āverātis, ye had loved</i>
<i>Am-āverāt, he had loved.</i>	<i>Am-āverant, they had loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Am-ā, Love thou.</i>	<i>P. Am-ātē, Love ye.</i>
----------------------------	----------------------------

FUTURE TENSE.<sup>3</sup>

<i>S. Am-āto, Thou must love</i>	<i>P. Am-ātōtē, Ye must love</i>
<i>Am-āto, he must love.</i>	<i>Am-anto, they must love.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.<sup>4</sup>

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Am-em, I may love</i>	<i>Am-ēmūs,<sup>5</sup> We may love</i>
<i>Am-ēs, thou mayst love</i>	<i>Am-ētis, ye may love</i>
<i>Am-ēt, he may love.</i>	<i>Am-ent, they may love.</i>

116 <sup>1</sup> As in English *r* is omitted in *o'er, ne'er*, so in Latin *-ri-* and *-re-* are sometimes omitted where no ambiguity would be caused. Thus *āmāvisti, āmāverunt*, &c. become *āmasti, āmarunt*, &c.; but *āmāvimus, āmāveris*, cannot be contracted into *āmāmus, āmāre*, because these contractions would be liable to be confused with the Pres. Indic. and Pres. Infin.

<sup>2</sup> The usual pronunciation is *āmāveris, āmāverimūs*; but the *i* is sometimes long.

117 <sup>3</sup> The Tense distinction between the Forms of the Imperative is very doubtful. The forms in *-o* are generally reserved for legal language, see Par. 122. *Ne* is seldom expressed by the Imperative, see Par. 163, 164.

118 <sup>4</sup> This Mood is sometimes called the Conjunctive. The meanings *I may, love* and *I might love* are seldom attached to the Subjunctive without the accompanying conjunction *ut* (*that*).

118a <sup>5</sup> *Amēmūs*, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us love*.

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ārem, <i>I might love</i>	Am-ārēmūs, <i>We might love</i>
Am-ārēs, <i>thou mightst love</i>	Am-ārētis, <i>ye might love</i>
Am-ārēt, <i>he might love.</i>	Am-ārent, <i>they might love.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-āverim, <i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>	Am-āverimūs, <i>We may</i>	} <i>have</i>
Am-āveris, <i>thou mayst</i>		Am-āverētis, <i>ye may</i>	
Am-āverit, <i>he may</i>		Am-āverint, <i>they may</i>	

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-āvissem, <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>	Am-āvissēmūs, <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
Am-āvissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>		Am-āvissētis, <i>ye would</i>	
Am-āvissēt, <i>he would</i>		Am-āvissent, <i>they would</i>	

INFINITIVE MOOD.<sup>1</sup>

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF. }	Am-ārē,	<i>to love.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF. }	Am-āvissē,	{ <i>to have</i> <i>loved.</i>
FUTURE. {	Am-ātūrūs	{ <i>to be</i> <i>about</i> <i>to love.</i>
	essē,	

## GERUND.

Gen. Am-andī,	<i>of loving</i>
Dat. Am-andō,	<i>for loving</i>
Acc. Am-andum,	<i>the loving</i>
Abl. Am-andō,	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

Am-ātum, <sup>2</sup>	<i>to love.</i>
Am-ātū, <sup>2</sup>	<i>in loving.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Am-ans, -antis, &c.,	<i>[loving.]</i>
FUTURE. Am-ātūrūs (ā, um),	<i>[about to love.]</i>

<sup>1</sup> This part of the Verb is sometimes spoken of as the *Verb Infinitive*, and not as the *Infinitive Mood*.

<sup>2</sup> The Supines are really Nouns used only in the Acc. and Abl.; (1) the Supine in -um after Verbs of Motion, (2) the Supine in -u with a few Adjectives, Exercise LXXIV.

Hence *āmātum* can never be used (as *amāre* is, Par. 34) for the Subject of a Verb.



## SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem : mōnē-

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mōn-eo, <sup>1</sup>	<i>I advise, or am advising</i>	Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest, or art advising</i>	Mōn-ētīs,	<i>ye advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises, or is advising.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, or are advising.</i>

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	Mōn-ēb'mūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbītīs,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīt,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advis- ing.<sup>2</sup></i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised<sup>1</sup>, or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistīs,	<i>ye have advised, or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt,	<i>they have advised, or -uērē, { or they advised.</i>

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-nēro, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>	Mōn-uērīmūs, <i>We shall</i>	} <i>have advised.</i>
Mōn-uērīs, <i>thou wilt</i>		Mōn-uērītīs, <i>ye will</i>	
Mōn-uērīt, <i>he will</i>		Mōn-uērint, <i>they will</i>	

<sup>1</sup> The quantity of the e before o, and of u before i is not marked, because it is an invariable rule in Latin that a vowel before another vowel is short: see Appendix VII., p. 230.

<sup>2</sup> The Imperf. also means *I used-to-advise, thou wast-wont-to-advise, he used-to-advise, &c.*

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Mön-uëram,</b> <i>I had advised</i>	<b>Mön-uëramüs,</b> <i>We had advised</i>
<b>Mön-uëräs,</b> <i>thou hadst advised</i>	<b>Mön-uërätis,</b> <i>ye had advised</i>
<b>Mön-uërät,</b> <i>he had advised.</i>	<b>Mön-uërant,</b> <i>they had advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Mön-ë,</b> <i>Advise thou.</i>	<b>Mön-ëtë,</b> <i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

<b>Mön-ëto,</b> <i>Thou must advise</i>	<b>Mön-ëtötë,</b> <i>Ye must advise</i>
<b>Mön-ëto,</b> <i>he must advise.</i>	<b>Mön-ento,</b> <i>they must advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Mön-eam,</b> <i>I may advise</i>	<b>Mön-eämüs,</b> <i>We may advise<sup>1</sup></i>
<b>Mön-eäs,</b> <i>thou mayst advise</i>	<b>Mön-eätis,</b> <i>ye may advise</i>
<b>Mön-eät,</b> <i>he may advise.</i>	<b>Mön-eant,</b> <i>they may advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Mön-ërem,</b> <i>I might advise</i>	<b>Mön-ërëmüs,</b> <i>We might advise</i>
<b>Mön-ërës,</b> <i>thou mightst advise</i>	<b>Mön-ërētis,</b> <i>ye might advise</i>
<b>Mön-ërët,</b> <i>he might advise.</i>	<b>Mön-ërent,</b> <i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<b>Mön-uërim,</b> <i>I may</i>	} <i>have</i>	<b>Mön-uërimüs,</b> <i>We may</i>	} <i>have</i>
<b>Mön-uëris,</b> <i>thou mayst</i>		<b>Mön-uëritis,</b> <i>ye may</i>	
<b>Mön-uërit,</b> <i>he may</i>		<b>Mön-uërint,</b> <i>they may</i>	
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Mön-nissem,</b> <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>	<b>Mön-nissëmüs,</b> <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
<b>Mön-nissës,</b> <i>thou wouldst</i>		<b>Mön-nissëtis,</b> <i>ye would</i>	
<b>Mön-nissöt,</b> <i>he would</i>		<b>Mön-nissent,</b> <i>they would</i>	
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised</i>

<sup>1</sup> Mönëämus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us advise*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	}	<i>Mōn-ērē, to advise.</i>
PERS. and PLUPERF.		
		<i>Mōn-uissē, {to have advised.</i>
FUTURE.	{	<i>Mōn-ītūrūs, {to be about to advise.</i>
		<i>essē,</i>

## GERUND.

Gen.	<i>Mōn-endī, of advising</i>
Dat.	<i>Mōn-endō, for advising</i>
Acc.	<i>Mōn-endum, the advising</i>
Abl.	<i>Mōn-endō, by advising.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Mōn-ītum,</i>	<i>to advise.</i>
<i>Mōn-ītū,</i>	<i>in advising.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT	<i>Mōn-ens, -entis, &amp;c., advising.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Mōn-ītūrūs (ā, um), about to advise.</i>

## THIRD OR Consonant AND U CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

*Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem : rēg-.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Rēg-o, I rule, or am</i>	}	<i>ruling.</i>	<i>Rēg-īmūs, We rule, or are</i>	}	<i>ruling.</i>
<i>Rēg-īs, thou rulest, or art</i>			<i>Rēg-ītīs, ye rule, or are</i>		
<i>Rēg-īt, he rules, or is</i>			<i>Rēg-unt, they rule, or are</i>		

## 2. FUTURE-SINGLE TENSE.

<i>Rēg-am, I shall rule</i>	}	<i>we shall rule</i>	<i>Rēg-ēmūs, We shall rule</i>	}	<i>they will rule.</i>
<i>Rēg-ēs, thou wilt rule</i>			<i>Rēg-ētīs, ye will rule</i>		
<i>Rēg-ēt, he will rule.</i>			<i>Rēg-ent, they will rule.</i>		

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Rēg-ēbam, I was ruling</i>	}	<i>we were ruling</i>	<i>Rēg-ēbāmūs, We were ruling</i>	}	<i>they were ruling.<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>Rēg-ēbās, thou wast ruling</i>			<i>Rēg-ēbātīs, ye were ruling</i>		
<i>Rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling.</i>			<i>Rēg-ēbant, they were ruling.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> The Imperf. also means *I used-to-rule, thou wast-wont-to-rule, he used-to-rule, &c*

## 4 PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ī,	<i>I have ruled, or I ruled</i>	Rex-īmūs,	<i>We have ruled, or we ruled</i>
Rex-istī,	<i>thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst</i>	Rex-istīs,	<i>ye have ruled, or ye ruled</i>
Rex-īt,	<i>he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>	Rex-ērunt, or rex-ērē,	<i>they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>

## 5 FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ēro,	<i>I shall have ruled</i>	Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
Rex-erīs,	<i>thou wilt have ruled</i>	Rex-erītīs,	<i>ye will have ruled</i>
Rex-erīt,	<i>he will have ruled.</i>	Rex-erint,	<i>they will have ruled.</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled</i>	Rex-ērāmūs,	<i>We had ruled</i>
Rex-erās,	<i>thou hadst ruled</i>	Rex-erātīs,	<i>ye had ruled</i>
Rex-erāt,	<i>he had ruled.</i>	Rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-ē,	<i>Rule thou.</i>	Rēg-ītē,	<i>Rule ye.</i>
--------	-------------------	----------	-----------------

## FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rēg-īto,	<i>Thou shalt or must rule</i>	Rēg-ītōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must rule</i>
Rēg-īto,	<i>he shall or must rule.</i>	Rēg-unto,	<i>they shall or must rule.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>	Rēg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule<sup>1</sup></i>
Rēg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	Rēg-ātīs,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rēg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rēg-ērem,	<i>I might rule</i>	Rēg-ērēmūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	Rēg-erētīs,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rēg-erēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rēg-erent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rex-ērim,	<i>I may</i>	Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We may</i>
Rex-erīs,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Rex-erītīs,	<i>ye may</i>
Rex-erīt,	<i>he may</i>	Rex-erint,	<i>they may</i>
} <i>have ruled.</i>		} <i>have ruled.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Rēgāmūs, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us rule.*

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rex-issem, <i>I should</i>	} have ruled.	Rex-issēmūs, <i>We should</i>	} have ruled.
Rex-issēs, <i>thou wouldst</i>		Rex-issētis, <i>ye would</i>	
Rex-issēt, <i>he would</i>		Rex-issent, <i>they would</i>	

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVES.		GERUND.	
PRRS. and IMPERR.	} Rēg-ērē, <i>to rule.</i>	Gen. Rēg-endī,	<i>of ruling</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF.		Dat. Rēg-endō,	<i>for ruling</i>
	} Rex-issē, { <i>to have ruled.</i>	Acc. Rēg-endum,	<i>the ruling</i>
		Abl. Rēg-endō,	<i>by ruling.</i>
FUTURE.	{ Rec-tūrūs essē,		
			<i>to be about to rule.</i>

SUPINES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Rec-tum,	<i>to rule.</i>	PRESENT. Rēg-ens, -entis, &c.,	[ <i>ruling.</i> ]
Rec-tū,	<i>in ruling.</i>	FUTURE. Rec-tūrūs (ā, um),	
			[ <i>about to rule.</i> ]

## FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvī, auditum, audirē,—*to hear.* Stem : audī-.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Aud-io, <i>I hear, or am</i>	} hearing.	Aud-imūs, <i>We hear, or are</i>	} hearing
Aud-īs, <i>thou hearest, or art</i>		Aud-itīs, <i>ye hear, or are</i>	
Aud-īt, <i>he hears, or is</i>		Aud-iunt, <i>they hear, or are</i>	

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Aud-iam,	<i>I shall hear</i>	Aud-iēmūs,	<i>We shall hear</i>
Aud-iēs,	<i>thou wilt hear</i>	Aud-iētīs,	<i>ye will hear</i>
Aud-iēt,	<i>he will hear.</i>	Aud-ient,	<i>they will hear</i>

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Aud-iēbam,	<i>I was hearing</i>	Aud-iēbāmūs,	<i>We were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbās,	<i>thou wast hearing</i>	Aud-iēbātīs,	<i>ye were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbāt,	<i>he was hearing.</i>	Aud-iēbant,	<i>they were hearing.</i> <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Imperf. also means, *I used-to-hear, thou wast-wont-to-hear, he used-to-hear, &c.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ivī,</b>	<i>I have heard, or I heard</i>	<b>Aud-ivīmūs,</b>	<i>We have heard, or we heard</i>
<b>Aud-ivistī,</b>	<i>thou hast heard, or thou heardst</i>	<b>Aud-ivistīs,</b>	<i>ye have heard, or ye heard</i>
<b>Aud-ivīt,</b>	<i>he has heard, or he heard.</i>	<b>Aud-ivērunt,</b>	<i>they have heard, or they heard.</i>

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ivēro,</b>	<i>I shall</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>	<b>Aud-ivērimūs,</b>	<i>We shall</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>
<b>Aud-ivēris,</b>	<i>thou wilt</i>		<b>Aud-ivēritīs,</b>	<i>ye will</i>	
<b>Aud-ivērīt,</b>	<i>he will</i>		<b>Aud-ivērint,</b>	<i>they will</i>	

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ivēram,</b>	<i>I had heard</i>	<b>Aud-ivērāmūs,</b>	<i>We had heard</i>
<b>Aud-ivērās,</b>	<i>thou hadst heard</i>	<b>Aud-ivērātīs,</b>	<i>ye had heard</i>
<b>Aud-ivērāt,</b>	<i>he had heard.</i>	<b>Aud-ivērant,</b>	<i>they had heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ī,</b>	<i>Hear thou.</i>	<b>Aud-itē,</b>	<i>Hear ye.</i>
---------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

<b>Aud-īto,</b>	<i>Thou must hear</i>	<b>Aud-ītōtē,</b>	<i>Ye must hear</i>
<b>Aud-īto,</b>	<i>he must hear.</i>	<b>Aud-iunto,</b>	<i>they must hear.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Aud-iam,</b>	<i>I may hear</i>	<b>Aud-iāmūs,</b>	<i>We may hear<sup>1</sup></i>
<b>Aud-iās,</b>	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	<b>Aud-iātīs,</b>	<i>ye may hear</i>
<b>Aud-iāt,</b>	<i>he may hear.</i>	<b>Aud-iant,</b>	<i>they may hear.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-irem,</b>	<i>I might hear</i>	<b>Aud-irēmūs,</b>	<i>We might hear</i>
<b>Aud-irēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	<b>Aud-irētīs,</b>	<i>ye might hear</i>
<b>Aud-irēt,</b>	<i>he might hear</i>	<b>Aud-irent,</b>	<i>they might hear.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ivērim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>	<b>Aud-ivērimūs,</b>	<i>We may</i>	<i>} have heard.</i>
<b>Aud-ivēris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<b>Aud-ivēritīs,</b>	<i>ye may</i>	
<b>Aud-ivērīt,</b>	<i>he may</i>		<b>Aud-ivērint,</b>	<i>they may</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Audīāmus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us hear*.

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Audīvissem,</b> <i>I should</i>	} <i>have</i>		<b>Aud-īvissemūs,</b> <i>We should</i>	} <i>have</i>
<b>Aud-īvisēs,</b> <i>thou wouldst</i>			<b>Aud-īvissetis,</b> <i>ye would</i>	
<b>Aud-īvisset,</b> <i>he would</i>			<b>Aud-īvissent,</b> <i>they would</i>	
	} <i>heard.</i>		} <i>heard.</i>	

## INFINITIVE MOOD

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMPERF.	} <b>Aud-īrē,</b>	} <i>to hear.</i>
PERF. and PLUPERF.		
	} <b>Aud-īvisē,</b>	} <i>to have heard.</i>
FUTURE.	{ <b>Aud-ītūrūs</b>	{ <i>to be about</i>

## GERUND.

Gen.	<b>Aud-iendī,</b>	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat.	<b>Aud-iendō,</b>	<i>for hearing</i>
Acc.	<b>Aud-iendum,</b>	<i>the hearing</i>
Abl.	<b>Aud-iendō,</b>	<i>by hearing.</i>

## SUPINES.

<b>Aud-ītum,</b>	<i>to hear.</i>
<b>Aud-ītū,</b>	<i>in hearing.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	<b>Aud-iens,</b>	<b>-entis,</b>
	[&c., <i>hearing.</i>	
FUTURE.	<b>Aud-ītūrūs</b> (ā, um),	
	[ <i>about to hear.</i>	

121 In the Fourth, (as in the First) Conjugation, the omission of *v* causes the following

## CONTRACTED FORMS.

## INDICATIVE.

PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT	
<b>Audii</b>	<b>Audiimus</b>	<b>Audiero</b>		<b>Audieram</b>	
<b>Audiisti</b> (audisti)	<b>Audiistis</b> (audistis)	<b>Audieris,</b> &c.		<b>Audieras</b>	
<b>Audiit</b>	<b>Audiērunt</b>	<b>Audierit,</b> &c.		<b>Audierat,</b> &c.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PLUPERFECT.		PERFECT.	
<b>Audiissem</b> (audissem)	<b>Audiissemus</b> (audissemus)	<b>Audierim</b>	
<b>Audiisses</b> (audisses)	<b>Audiissetis</b> (audissetis)	<b>Audieris</b>	
<b>Audiisset</b> (audisset)	<b>Audiissent</b> (audissent)	<b>Audierit,</b> &c.	

## INFINITIVE-PERFECT.

Audiisse (audisse).

## THE LATIN PERFECT.

The Latin Tenses are inferior to the English in fulness as will be seen from the following Table :

*Capto, I catch.*

	Simple or Indefinite.	Incomplete.	Complete.
Present.	<i>I catch</i> <b>capto</b>	<i>I am catching</i> <b>capto</b>	<i>I have caught</i> <b>CAPTĀVI</b> <sup>1</sup>
Future.	<i>I shall catch</i> <b>captābo</b>	<i>I shall be catching</i> <b>captābo</b>	<i>I shall have caught</i> <b>captāvero</b>
Past.	<i>I caught</i> <b>CAPTĀVI</b>	<i>I was catching</i> <b>captābam</b>	<i>I had caught</i> <b>captāveram</b> <sup>2</sup>

[22 The Latin Perfect, *captāvi*, has to express two English Tenses, and though it is always called "Perfect," i.e. *complete*, it is really not always Perfect or Complete, but :

1. Sometimes *Complete Present*, *captāvi, I have caught.*
2. Sometimes *Simple Past*, *captāvi, I caught.*

<sup>1</sup> That this Present Complete Tense, *I have caught*, is really a Present (though the result of a past action) may be seen from such a sentence as "*I have caught this fish*," which means "*I have (present) this fish—in my pocket, basket,*" &c. Until the pupil clearly understands that the English Complete Present is a *Present* and not a *Past* Tense, he will never intelligently master the rule for the Latin Sequence of Tenses.

<sup>2</sup> Besides these, other columns might have been added by substituting "been catching" for "caught" in the third column: *I have been catching, I shall have been catching, I had been catching*, and by substituting "about to catch" for "catching" in the second column.



These two meanings of the Latin Perf. are called (1) "the Perfect with *habe*," (2) "the Perfect without *habe*."

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

**123** **APPOSITION.**—When two Nouns (or a Noun and Pronoun) are placed together without a Conjunction, so that one describes the other, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and both are in the same case.

**124** When a Noun is in Apposition to a Name, the Name stands *second in English*, but *first in Latin*.

*The renowned general Balbus overcomes the enemy.* Balbus, imp̄rator clārissim<sup>us</sup> (70), hostem sup̄erat.

*I will give a book to the industrious boy Tullius.* Tullio, puero diligentissimo, librum dōnābo.

**125** "Ir" WITH ENGLISH PRESENT often refers to *Future time*, and must then be translated by Latin Fut. Simple or Fut. Perfect :

*I will give it if he asks.*

Dābo si rōgābit (or -āverit).

1. Sidera iter nautis monstrabant. 2. Hieme nautae aestatem laudabunt. 3. Dābo librum ei, si rogabit.<sup>1</sup> 4. Nonne puellam diligentem laudabitis? 5. Qui nos culpatis, nonne vos ipsos emendatis? 6. Cur me vituperabatis (32), vos ipsos laudabatis? 7. Agricolae agrum, equum militi donabimus. 8. Judici, viro justissimo,<sup>2</sup> rex injustus inimicus erat. 9. Tulliae, puellae optimae, cur non praemium donas? 10. Nemo Germanorum, gentis fortissimae, tam pravos mores laudat.<sup>3</sup>

1. You, O women, who praised (108) injustice (34), will rightly pay the penalty. 2. To you, O sister, who blamed your brother, (your) brother himself gives this gift. 3. Those whose morals are depraved, you were right in not praising (trans. you rightly did not praise). 4. His excellent mother (trans. his mother, a most excellent woman), who loved you exceedingly, praised you too-much. 5. Will you point out the way to us, (you) who your-

**125a** <sup>1</sup> The Latin Future, after si, must be translated by English Present.

**126** <sup>2</sup> Lit. the judge, a very just man, but in English we say the very just judge, or, more commonly (70), the just judge. Why is viro Dat.? Ans. Dat. in Apposition with iudici. Why is gentis (Sent. 10) Genitive?

**126a** <sup>3</sup> In Apposition, write the literal English first and the idiomatic English afterwards: e.g. "Germanis, genti fortissimae" lit., to the Germans, a very brave race, i.e., to the brave race of the Germans. N.B.—Two Nouns in Apposition need not be of the same Number.

*et* so often err? 6. We used to praise the conduct of the (126) in our centurion Tullius. 7. I shall not punish the boy if he in process (125) his conduct. 8. They will not err if the leader point out the way to them.

EXERCISE XXXIV.<sup>1</sup>

**127** If the Subject consists of two Nouns or Pronouns, the Verb is in the Plural; but the Verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second rather than the Third.

1. Si tu et frater tuus peccaveritis (125a), leges vos castigabunt.
2. Judicem, qui male judicaverat, ego et frater meus graviter culpavimus.
3. Piscator et nauta, qui iter militibus antea non traverant, jam ipsi erraverunt.
4. Milites ferro ignique agros regis sui vastaverunt.
5. Hieme, si venti flaverint, nautae mare formidabunt.
6. Cur Tullium, hominem innocentissimum, castigavistis?
7. Agriculae stultissimi aestate calorem, hieme frigus culpaverunt.
8. Rex militibus, indigni dono (28), equos pulcherrimos donaverat.
9. Nonne vobis haec dona ego et Tullius donavimus?
10. Graeci Trojanos equo ligneo, dono pernicioso (126a) superaverunt.
11. Qui virtutem maxime simulavere, ei jam maxime erravere.
12. Quos quondam castigastis, ei iterum peccarunt.

- <sup>1</sup> 1. You and I have presented excellent gifts to his mother.<sup>2</sup>
2. Why did the unjust judge Tullius (126) chastise the innocent Balbus (trans. Balbus, a most innocent man)?<sup>3</sup>
3. In winter, O husbandmen, you had blamed the cold, in summer the heat.
4. The king had given a horse to the same soldier whom he had before blamed.
5. If you overcome (trans. shall have overcome) the enemy, O soldiers, all will praise you.
6. Did (127b) not you and Tullius blame the kind Balbus?
7. The women dreaded the sea because the winds had blown violently.
8. Did not you, O Greeks, present to the Trojans the destructive gift of a wooden horse (trans. a wooden horse, a most destructive gift)?
9. Why did you, who pointed out the road to others, yourselves err?
10. You and Balbus blamed Alexander, the most illustrious of generals.

<sup>1</sup> For this and future Exercises the pupil must look out the words in the Latin-English and English-Latin Vocabularies at the end of the book.

<sup>2</sup> In English we say "you and I," in Latin the order is reversed, "Ego et tu."

<sup>3</sup> The English Simple Past inserts *did*, when used negatively or interrogatively: "you blamed"; but "*did* you blame?" "you *did* not blame." But all three are expressed by the Latin Perfect.

127a

127b

## THE INFINITIVE.

128

The Infinitive (though not declinable like a Noun) is nevertheless used as the Subject or Direct Object of a Verb :

*To err is human.  
Boys like to jump.*

*Errāre (nom.) humānum est.  
Pueri saltāre (acc.) amant.*

The Infinitive, although used as Subject or Object, may itself have an Object, and may be modified by an Adverb.

*The woman desires to get wealth.  
To have gained fame honourably  
is sweet.*

*Mulier divitias pārāre optat.  
Fāmam hōnestē pārāvīsse  
dulcē (34) est.*

## EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Peccare facile est, mores emendare difficillimum (est). 2. Quis non divitias comparare optat? 3. Saltare dulce est puellis, senibus autem molestissimum. 4. Aestate omnes nare amamus.<sup>1</sup> 5. Melius est virtutem quam aurum parare. 6. Amicum amare praesentem dulce est; desiderare absentem est tristissimum.<sup>1</sup> 7. Peccare leve est plerisque pueris; senibus peccavisse est acerbissimum. 8. Pericula superare saepe durum est; superasse semper dulcissimum est.
1. *It is easier to blame than to praise. 2. To whom is it not pleasant to swim in summer? 3. It is sad for an old man to have sinned. 4. To all it is most pleasant to have overcome dangers by wise counsels. 5. Most men desire to get gold and silver. 6. You and I love to walk by night; Tullius and his (98, 2) brother love to walk by day. 7. It is very easy to swim; it is very difficult to swim well. 8. To have erred is sad; to err is sadder.*

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, PROHIBITIONS.

129

The word for *not* in commands is *nē*. But this is seldom used with the Present Imperative except in Poetry, and seldom with (what is sometimes called) the Future Imperative, *except in legal forms*. Consequently, for the negative Imperative—

<sup>1</sup> Omnes agrees with "nos" understood.

<sup>2</sup> Absentem agrees with "amicum" understood

**Rule.**—Use *nē* with the Perfect Subjunctive of the Second Person, and with the Present Subjunctive of other Persons.<sup>1</sup>

	<i>Singular.</i>	
<i>Do not love.</i>		<i>Nē āmāvēris.</i>
<i>Let him not love.</i>		<i>Nē āmet.</i>
	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Do not love.</i>		<i>Nē āmāvērītis</i>
<i>Let them not love.</i>		<i>Nē āment.</i>

The First and Third Persons Plural of the Subjunctive can be used, with or without *nē*, in an Imperative sense :

<i>Let us (not) love.</i>	<i>(Nē) āmēmus.</i>
<i>Let him amend his conduct.</i>	<i>Ēmendet mōres.</i>

### EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. *Ēmendate mores vestros.*
2. *Obtempera, O puer, patri.*
3. *Ne soutes poenam vitent.*
4. *Ne castigaveritis insontem; ne mortuum culpaveritis.*
5. *Huic magistratui omnes cives obtemperanto.*
6. *Amenius amicos, inimicos ne vituperemus.*
7. *Præceptor discipulos verberibus paucis castigato.*
8. *Regem, si injustus est, ne tu laudaveris.*
9. *Virgines Vestales ignem curanto.*
10. *Judicem justum laudā; injustum culpā, sed ne vituperaveris.*

1. *Let us love absent friends.*
2. *Let us prepare arms; let not the enemy overcome us.*
3. *Take care of his children, O friends; do not blame the dead.*
4. *Do not appease the gods, O foolish (men), with victims; appease them with pious deeds.*
5. *Let (legal) ten maidens carry the image of Diana.*
6. *Let us praise virtue, let us not punish the good.*
7. *Tullius is guilty; let him not avoid punishment.*
8. *Let us not blame those who are worthy (i.e. the worthy) of (28) praise (5a).*

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—I.

(Expressing purpose.)

The Subjunctive Mood (besides other uses which will be hereafter mentioned) is used when a Verb is *subjoined* to another Verb, in order to express purpose.

<sup>1</sup> The Subjunctive, when not subjoined to some principal Verb, is sometimes called the Conjunctive; and some use the term Conjunctive in all instances instead of Subjunctive. For the method of expressing a prohibition by *nōli* with the Infinitive, see Par. 160.

**131** In such cases, *that* or *in order that* is expressed by *ūt*; *that* . . . not, by *nē*

**132** The Tenses of the Subjunctive are:

(1) *Present, after (a) Pres. (whether Simple or Complete); after (b) Future Indic., and after (c) Imperative.*

(2) *Past, after Past Tenses :*

- |  |  |                                      |  |
|--|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. (a) <i>I punish, or<br/>have punished<sup>1</sup></i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{he may} \\ \text{amend} \\ \text{his} \\ \text{conduct.} \end{array} \right.$   | (a) <i>Castīgo, or<br/>Castīgāvi</i> | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{puerum ut} \\ \text{mores emendat.} \end{array} \right.$             |
| (b) <i>I shall punish</i>                                |  | (b) <i>Castīgābo</i>                 |  |
| (c) <i>Punish</i>  |  | (c) <i>Castīgā</i>                   |  |
| 2. (a) <i>I punished</i>                                 | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the boy} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{he might} \\ \text{amend} \\ \text{his} \\ \text{conduct.} \end{array} \right.$ | (a) <i>Castīgāvi</i>                 | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{puerum ut} \\ \text{mores} \\ \text{emendāret.} \end{array} \right.$ |
| (b) <i>I was punishing</i>                               |  | (b) <i>Castīgābam</i>                |  |
| (c) <i>I had punished</i>                                |  | (c) <i>Castīgāvēram</i>              |  |

**133** CAUTION.—The precise meaning of the ambiguous word *castīgāvi* cannot be ascertained until we see whether it is followed by the Present or Imperf. Subj. If it is followed by the Present, it must be rendered *I have punished*; if by the Imperf., *I punished*.

#### EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Nauta sidera servabit ne ex itinere erret. 2. Urbem rex aedificabat ut in eā quattuor millia civium habitarent. 3. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocent. 3a. Nostri terram vastaverunt ut hostes ad pugnam provocarent. 4. Agricola agros araverat ut segetem sibi pararet. 5. Parate arma, cives, ut hostem propulsetis. 6. Cives arma celeriter paraverant ne milites urbem expugnarent. 7. Castigavi te ut mores emendes. 8. Senex in horto ambulavit ut floribus se (35) pulcherrimis delectaret. 9. Rex judicem injustum capite multavit ut ceteri iudices recte judicent.<sup>2</sup> 10. Balbum praemio decoravi ut litteras amet, Tullium heri (*adv.*) casti-

<sup>1</sup> *I have punished* is really a (complete) Present Tense: Par. 123, note.

<sup>2</sup> See *caput* in Vocab.: *capite* may be parsed as *Abt. of Instr.*, as it is here used to denote the punishment of death.

*gavi ne iterum peccaret.* 11. Germanos, gentem ferocissimam (126a), armis propul-sate, ne fines vestros vastent. 12. Aliis equis aliis arma donemus (118), ne viam hostibus monstrent.

1. *Let us lay-waste the lands of the enemy that they may not fight a second time.* 2. *The citizens will point out the way for us that we may not err.* 3. *We pointed out the way for the beautiful maiden (124) Tullia that she might not err.* 4. *Our (nunc) will build for you, O Tullius (13), a great house, that your friends may dwell in it.* 5. *Let us build a temple and prepare victims that we appease Jupiter.* 6. *We have prepared arms that we may repulse the enemy.* 7. *We chastised the boy that he might improve his (98) conduct.* 8. *He had preserved the letter of (his) sister that you might not blame her.* 9. *Why do you not walk in the garden that you may delight yourselves with the scent of the beautiful flowers (5a)?* 10. *He was hastening into the garden that he might show the flowers to his friends.*

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.—II.

(Expressing a Dependent Question.)

Hitherto the Subjunctive in Latin has been expressed by the English *may* or *might*; we now come to idioms where the ordinary English *Indicative* has to be expressed by the Latin Subjunctive.

- 134** 1. A DIRECT OR INDEPENDENT QUESTION is a question in the words of the speaker :

*Does he love me ?*

*Does he not love me ?*

*Num mē āmat ?*

*Nōnne mē āmat ?*

- 135** 2. AN INDIRECT OR DEPENDENT QUESTION is one that is the Subject or Object of a Verb (called the Principal Verb) :

*I will ask {whether he loves me.*

*{whether he does not love me.*

*Interrōgābo {num mē āmet.*

*{nōnnē mē āmet.*

- 136** RULE.—An Indirect or Dependent Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive.

The Tense, in an Indirect Question, depends on the Tense of the Principal Verb; and the rule is, as above

(132), that *Present Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Present Tenses of the Indicative, and Past Tenses of the Subjunctive follow Past Tenses of the Indicative.*

- |              |   |                        |             |   |                         |
|--------------|---|------------------------|-------------|---|-------------------------|
| 1. Ask       | { | (a) whether they love, | Interrogā   | { | (a) num mē              |
| I ask.       |   | or are loving me.      | Interrogō   |   | āment.                  |
| I will ask   |   | (b) whether they loved | Interrogābo |   | (b) num mē              |
| I have asked |   | me <sup>1</sup>        | Interrogāvi |   | āmāverint. <sup>2</sup> |
- 
- |                 |   |                  |              |   |                |                          |
|-----------------|---|------------------|--------------|---|----------------|--------------------------|
| 2. I was asking | { | (a) whether they | Interrogābam | { | (a) num mē     |                          |
|                 |   | loved, or        |              |   | Interrogāvi    | āmārent.                 |
|                 |   | were lov-        |              |   | Interrogāveram | (b) num mē               |
|                 |   | ing me.          |              |   | Interrogāveram | āmāvissent. <sup>2</sup> |
- I asked (b) whether they had loved me.

**137** (1) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is either Imperative, or Indic. Pres., Fut., or "Perf. with *have*"—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Pres. Subj., or Perf. Subjunctive.

**138** (2) If the Tense of the Principal Verb is Indic. Imperf., Pluperf., or "Perf. without *have*" (i.e. Simple Past)—the Tense of the Dependent Verb is Imperf. Subj., or Pluperf. Subjunctive.

#### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

**139** *Quidem* (67) *on the one hand*, is often followed by the enclitic *vēro*, *however*, but yet (to be distinguished from *vērē*, *truthfully*). *Ēquidem*, a form of *quidem*, is often used with the First Person in the Nom. to mean *I on the one hand*, i.e. *I at all events, I for my part*.

- A. 1. Hodie quidem paremus (118a) arina; cras vero hostem propulsemus. 2. Tu quidem me interrogas quid fecerim; ego vero nihil respondeo. 3. Balbo quidem omnia monstravi; tibi autem nihil. 4. Quaero cur fratrum alterum quidem laudes, alterum autem culpes. 5. Equidem hoc affirmo, tu vero unus (96) negas. 6. Interrogat cur mihi quidem multa des, Tullio autem nihil.

<sup>1</sup> A common error is to write "āmārent," in l. b., "because the English is not *have loved*, but *loved*:" but the Latin Perf. Subj. (like the Latin Perf. Indic.) represents *loved*, as well as *have loved*.

**139b** <sup>2</sup> Do not translate the Latin Subjunctive in a Dependent Question by *may*, *might*, *could*, *should*, &c.; in a Dependent Question, it must be translated by the English Indicative.

**140** Quisquē, quaequē, quodquē (*pron. form quicquē*), *each*, often follows a Superl. (with a Sing. Verb) to denote *all* :

*All the worst men deny this.*

*This is denied by all the best citizens.*

*Pessimus quisquē hōc negat.*

*Hōc ab optimō quōquē civium negatur.*

**B. 1.** Interrogabimus num miles fidem servaverit.<sup>1</sup> **2.** Equidem rogo nonne puer vera narraverit; tu vero nihil affirmas. **3.** Regina interrogavit num fabri aedes aedificavissent (*or aedificassent*). **4.** Renuntiate mihi, O exploratores, num hostis in eo loco insidias parat. **5.** Miles centurionibus non renuntiavit num hostes proelium pararent (*were preparing*). **6.** Valde dubito num nuntius vera narraverit. **7.** Sapientissimus quisque nostrum (93) dubitabat num milites vera narrarent. **8.** Nonne rogabis puerum num ita peccaverit? **9.** Explorabamus num hostes huc properarent. **10.** Ne dubitemus, O amici, num hostes arma parent. **11.** Si nobis renuntiabitis quo in loco hostes insidias parent, fortissimum quemque civium convocabimus ut eos propulsemus. **12.** Rogavit patrem num domum (139b) pararet ut nos in ea habitaremus.

**1. I** *for my part will ask whether the enemy laid-waste our territories; but the messenger will not relate the truth (i.e. true things).* **2.** *He asked whether the enemy took the city by storm.*<sup>2</sup> **3.** *Bring-back-word to me, O friend, whether the enemy is hastening hither.* **4.** *Will you not ask all (140) the bravest of our-men whether they prepared arms?* **5.** *Call-together the citizens that the enemy may not lay-waste our lands.* **6.** *I had asked your father whether he had built a home that your brothers might dwell in it.* **7.** *I doubt whether the enemy has laid waste these lands.* **8.** *Let us explore whether the enemy is hastening hither.* **9.** *You were asking the boy whether he had thus sinned.* **10.** *They asked whether he had not (135) called-together the citizens.*

**140a** <sup>1</sup> Note that in this and similar sentences (where the Perf. Subj follows the Pres. or Fut. Indic.) there is often an ambiguity. It may mean "whether the soldier kept his word," or "whether the soldier has kept his word." Both translations should be given.

**140b** <sup>2</sup> Here, for *took*, may be read *had taken*; and therefore the Pluperf. Subj. may be used. N.B.—Whenever, after a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the English Simple Past, e.g. *took*, may be replaced by the English Complete Past, e.g. *had taken*, the Pluperf. Subj. may be used in Latin. The Imperf. Subj. might mean *was taking*.



## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

**141** *Not even* is *nē...quidem*: but *nē* must be separated from *quidem* by the word which *even* modifies:

(1) *Not even you will deny this.* *Nē tu quidem hūc nūgābis.*<sup>1</sup>

(2) *Not even the smallest tree.* *Nē mīnima quidem arbor.*<sup>1</sup>

**141a** The Latin for *even* (without a negative) is *vēl*, or *ētiam*, coming before the word emphasized.

*This is clear even to the blind,* *Haec ētiam caecis āperta;*  
*easy even for boys.* *haec vēl pūeris fācīlīa.*<sup>2</sup>

**142** RULE.—Some Verbs signifying (1) *pleasing, obeying, helping*, (2) *displeasing, disobeying, and harming*, take the Dative.

1. Dolere inutile est. 2. Graviter dolebam quod (*conj.*) tu, O fili, pārentibus tuis non pāres. 3. Pueri patribus pārento. 4. Leges justae bonis civibus placebunt. 5. Milites ducem timebant, qui plurimos eorum (91) minis et suppliciis crudelissimis terruerat. 6. Nunc quidem monemus; mox vero, verberibus nisi pārebis, te coercēbimus. 7. Ne tu, senex benevolentissime, pessimum exemplum pueris (129) praeberis. 8. Epaminondas exemplum optimum omnibus imperatoribus praeiuit. 9. Cui non avium cantus placet, eum ne cithara quidem movebit. 10. Cur puellam eam minis terretis, quam nemo docuit, cui nemo exemplum bonum praeiuit? 11. Senioribus ne displicueris; patrī matriquē obtempera. 12. Alexander, victor clarissimus, Poro, Indorum regi, veniam dedit.<sup>3</sup>

1. *To teach is more useful than to weep.* 2. *Why did you not set a better example to your son?* 3. *Do not terrify this girl with threats.* 4. *If you obey your parents, your children will obey you.* 5. *Not even the most costly banquets will please the sick (men).* 6. *Do not displease your mother, O boys; obey (your) elders, who advise you well.* 7. *You, who terrify others, yourself fear all things.* 8. *He does not obey even his own* (141, 2)

**142** <sup>1</sup> N.B.—(a) In this phrase alone it is allowable to use *nē* with the Indicative Mood. (b) *Quidem*, without *nē*, never means *even*. (c) In translating *nē...quidem*, be careful to put *even* before the word that precedes *quidem*: *not even you, not even the smallest.*

**142d** <sup>2</sup> *Sunt*, (or *est*), is often omitted where the omission causes no ambiguity.

<sup>3</sup> Why is Pōro Dat.? Why is regi? See Par. 123.

father. 9. *Those whom you were advising were wiser and better than those whom you had not advised.* 10. *You are destroying, O soldiers, a most prosperous city with fire and sword.*

## EXERCISE XL.

The Perfects of some Verbs of the 2nd Conj. end in -vi instead of -ui: but the parts of Verb *after* u and i are always the same, e.g. *dēleo, dēlēvi*:

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>mōnu-</i>	} -i, -isti, -it, &c.
	<i>dēlēv-</i>	
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>mōnu-</i>	} -eram, -eras, -erat, &c.
	<i>dēlēv-</i>	
<i>2nd. Fut.</i>	<i>mōnu-</i>	} -ero, -eris, -erit, &c.
	<i>dēlēv-</i>	

- Interrogabo civem nonne legibus pareat. 2. Interrogavi regis filium cur non melius exemplum ceteris militibus praeberet. 3. Coerce linguam istam ne forte tibi noceat. 4. Sapientes corpus exercebunt ut inentem sanam habeant. 5. Renuntia ei num milites jus agricolas nostros terruerint. 6. Interrogavi fortissimum quemque (140) militum nonne hostes urbem jam deleviscent. 7. Num dulce est olim multa habuisse, nunc habere nihil? 8. Qui legibus parebit eum leges non torrebunt. 9. Ne tu invidiam timueris; sed virtute malevolos, invidos modestia coerce. 10. Plurimum pecuniae eidem mulieri donavit quam antea minis terruerat.<sup>1</sup> 11. Barbari tantam urbem habent quantam ipsi non habemus.<sup>2</sup> 12. Dux tantum pecuniae donabat militibus quantum rogaverunt. 13. Interrogabo adolescentem cur hesternae nocte tam crudelibus minis fratrem meum terruerit.

- Do not restrain a young-man too much lest he obey you, (but) not virtue. 2. Why did you not restrain the young-men (127b) that they might obey their parents? 3. Since not even punishment terrified him, certainly threats will not terrify him. 4. Why do you not obey him to whom you owe so-much? 5. Ask whether the young-man whose (118a) death is now known to us was older than my brother. 6. I did not terrify the boy with threats, lest (the) work should become-distasteful to him. 7. I asked the brave centurion Tullius whether the arrow had hurt him. 8. Let us give rewards to all (140) the bravest (trans. each most

<sup>1</sup> Why is pecuniae Gen.? See Par. 71, and add tantum and quantum as taking Partitive Genitives.

<sup>2</sup> So great a city as we ourselves have not, i.e. a greater city than we have.

brave) of the soldiers that they may set an example to the rest. 9. Do you now terrify with threats her to whom you gave so large a sum (trans. so-much) of money? 10. The unjust king Balbus had (86) one (man's) silver, another (man's) lands, another (man's) cattle.

## EXERCISE XLI.

Several Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in English may be regarded as implying a purpose, and hence:

**143** RULE.—Verbs of asking, commanding, advising, and striving, are followed by *ūt* or *nē* with the Subjunctive.<sup>1</sup>

Take care to teach him, i.e. in order that you may teach him. *Curā ūt eum dōcēās.*

He asked me not to hasten. *Rōgāvit mē nē prōpērārem.*

**143a** N.B.—As the translation of English *to* by the Latin Inf. is one of the commonest errors of beginners, it is well to recollect that the English Infinitive is *never to be rendered by the Latin Infinitive except where (128) it is the Subject or Object of a Verb.*

1. Imperavit agricolis imperator ut frumentum compararent.
2. Curate ut prima vigilia adventum hostium expectetis.
3. Admonuit nos senex ut parentibus nostris semper pareremus.
4. Rogabo adolescentem ut junioribus exemplum melius praebeat.
5. Ne optimus quidem praeceptorum omnia docebit.
6. Sapientissimus quisque curabit ut linguam coerceat.
7. Quotiens imperavi tibi ut mores emendes!
8. Cave ne viam aliis monstres, ipse tamen erres.
9. Orabat explorator, homo mendacissimus (126a), ut sibi veniam darem.
10. Quantum cuique debetis, tantum curate ut detis.
11. Imperavit dux militibus ne mercatorem detinerent.

1. Give-orders to the soldiers to prepare their arms.
2. He gave-orders to the spies not to show these-things to the king.
3. Our parents advised us to await the arrival of friends.
4. Tullius asked me to teach his (98) children.
5. I beg you to grant

<sup>1</sup> This Rule is sometimes remembered by the following rhyme:

"With ask, command, advise, and strive,  
By *ūt* translate Infinitive."

*pardon to the wicked Balbus. 6. Have you not again and again advised that fellow (iste) to restrain his tongue? 7. If you teach (125), take care to teach well. 8. Take care that you do not displease those whom you are bound (debeo) to please.<sup>1</sup> 9. On the fourth day we gave orders to him to call-together three thousand (806) soldiers.*

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

- 144** Verbs of *preventing* are followed by *quo-mīnus* (*by-which-the-less*) and the Subjunctive.

*I have hindered the man from speaking, lit. by-which-the-less he may speak.* Hōmīnem prōhibūi quōmīnus dīcat.

- 145** The words *nōn est dūbīum quīn*, *it is not doubtful but that*, i.e. *there is no doubt that*, are followed by the Latin Subjunctive, (though the English is Indicative):

*There is no doubt that he said this (N.B. not may have said).* Nōn dūbīum est quīn haec dīxerit.

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses must be observed. *Like follows like*: (see Par. 137).

*There was no doubt that he feared (N.B. not would fear).* Nōn dūbīum erat quīn timeret.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISE XLII.

- 146** Et sometimes means *even* or *also*:

"Good morning." "Good "Salvē," (lit. "Be well.")  
"morning to you too." "Salvē et tu."

1. Aut discite aut discedite: sors tertia hīc nulla est.
2. Nostri, si urbem fortiter defendent, hostem facile vincent.
3. Si tu scribes, ego legam.
4. Prohibui istum quomīnus vincat.
5. Multa dicere facilius est quam multa discere.
6. Non

<sup>1</sup> What is the government of *whom*?

**145a** <sup>2</sup> Probably the *doubt* is regarded as a kind of *prevention*; but instead of *quōmīnus*, there is used an old form of *quo*, viz. *quī*, followed by *ne*, the two words *quī-ne* being contracted into *quīn*.

**145b** As regards the Tense to be used after "*nōn dūbīum erat quīn*," the Pluperf. should be used when (but only when) *had* is, or could be, inserted in the English: *there was no doubt that the woman (had) killed him*, "*nōn erat dūbīum quīn mulier eum interfēcisset*."

dubium est quin hostes aciem jam instruant : instructo et (146) vestram, centuriones. 7. Liberi Deos quotidie orabant ut pater tuto (adv.) viveret.<sup>1</sup> 8. Caesar materiam parabat ut Rhenum ponte jungeret. 9. Num vera dicis? Matremne terruisti? Nonne igitur rubes? 10. Scribamus diligenter, ne nos praeceptor culpet. 11. Hastas in terra figite, milites. 12. Non dubium erat quin cives urbem fortiter defenderent.

1. *I advise you to depart.* 2. *There is no doubt that the wise learn daily.* 3. *They asked us to fix our spears in the earth.* 4. *If you read (125), (my) friends, (99a) I will write.* 5. *It is often more useful to learn than to speak.* 6. *We shall conquer the enemy, if you (99), O citizens, defend your city.* 7. *The leader will take care to draw up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Say what-is-true (trans. true-things), my friends; let us not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things).* 9. *There was no doubt that the boys wrote carefully.* 10. *I will hinder that-fellow from conquering.*

## EXERCISE XLIII.

(Vincō, vincio, fingo, figo.)

- 147** Almost all Superlatives, and many Positives, in -us, -a, -um, make Adverbs in -ē, e.g. celerrimē, difficillimē, tardē.
- 148** Almost all Comparatives in -ior use the Neut. in -ius as an Adverb: tardius, more (rather, too) slowly; diligentius, more (rather, too) diligently.
- 149** The Adverbs, like the Adjectives (64), have more than one meaning: thus, tardius, besides meaning (1) more slowly, may also mean (2) rather slowly, or (3) too slowly.
1. Mettū, Albanum imperatorem, equi distraxerunt. 2. Non dubium est quin Caesar multa milia Gallorum vicerit. 3. Quis dubitabat quin centurio, homo crudelissimus, captivos vinxisset? 4. Caesar Rhenum ponte junxit, (32) aciem summa celeritate instruxit. 5. Si celerrime scribes, amici tui fortasse difficillime legent. 6. Interrogabo hominem num has litteras scripserit. 7. Interrogavi patrem nonne dilexisset duos liberorum, ceteros neglexisset. 8. Nonne comecatus collegisti? Nonne equites peditesque contraxisti? 9. Non dubium erat quin errores alios correxisset, alios neglexisset. 10. Falsane finxistis, o perfidissimorum obsidum filii? 11. Centurio militem interrogabat cur hastam in terra fixisset. 12. Mene interrogas, mi fili, cur hoc dixerim? <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Quotidies is more correctly spelt cottidies or cotidies.<sup>2</sup> Mi is the irregular Vocative Masc. Sing. of meus.

1. *Do not feign what-is-false (i.e. false-things), my son.* 2. *I will ask him whether (his) leader bridged the river.* 3. *Do not write the letter too-quickly (149) lest your friends read it with-very-great-difficulty (use adverb).* 4. *There is no doubt that he wrote this letter.* 5. *There was no doubt that the general had collected supplies, (and) had drawn (his) army together.* 6. *Take care, my friend, to correct those errors of-yours; do not (5a) neglect even (141) one (error).* 7. *Have you asked the centurion why the soldiers fixed their spears in the earth?* 8. *There was no doubt that the hostages had feigned what-was-false.* 9. *Ask the centurion why he bound the captives.* 10. *I hindered the boy from exulting; but there was no doubt that he had conquered.*

## EXERCISE XLIV.

**151** RULE.—Cum, when, if followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect, generally requires the Subjunctive Mood.<sup>1</sup> "

1. Interrogabo num puer versus heri didicerit. 2. Hostes, cum tuba cecinisset, in campum descenderunt. 3. Statui puerum corrigere ut diligenter disceret. 4. Dux, cum exercitum collegisset, in Galliam contendit. 5. Orabunt imperatorem milites ut aciem instruat. 6. Non dubium est quin hostes jam in urbem irruperint, aedificia igni absumant, omnia clamore et caede turbent. 7. Quod (trans. as if quod were hoc) cum intelligerem; statim interrogabam nuntium cur haec non antea dixisset. 8. Correxī errores eius ne amicis suis temeritate sua graviter noceret. 9. Interrogabat imperator nonne jussa sua neglexissem, num murum fortiter defendissem?
1. *When I heard this (i.e. which things when I had understood), I determined to obey (142) the general.* 2. *Correct these errors, my (151) son, lest they injure your friends.* 3. *When he had collected supplies, the general closed the gates of the city.* 4. *What do you say, (my) friends? Do you ask me why I neglected this task?* 5. *There was no doubt that traitors had closed the gates of the two citadels.* 6. *Who hindered the citizens from defending the wall?* 7. *When the trumpet sounded (i.e. had sounded), not even the most cowardly of the soldiers neglected the signal.* 8. *At-the-time-when my friend (152) was hastening into the city, I was walking in the garden.*

**151a** <sup>1</sup> With these Tenses, cum generally implies not simply *at-the-time-when*, but *because* (or at least some logical connection), and "Cum causal is followed by the Subjunctive."

**152** But when cum simply means *at-the-time-when*, it may be followed by the Indicative Imperfect or Pluperfect.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## EXERCISE XLV.

Dum vos dormitis, hostes castra muniunt. 2. Audistisne clamorem hostium qui, jam vino pleni, captivum male custodiunt? <sup>1</sup> 3. Qui bene servit patriae, ei (*dat.*) cives libenter servant. 4. Non dubium est quin te pater optime erudiverit (9a). 5. Qui (107, 1) bene corpus tuum vestiisti, bene nutristi, nonne tu etiam mentem tuam simili cura erudies? <sup>2</sup> 6. Cives legibus obediunt. 7. Mors mihi spiritum, non vitam finiet. 8. Interroga te cur hesternae nocte captivum iam male custodiveris. 9. Non dubium erat quin hostes castra diligenter munissent. 10. Audite alios (*others*) ut alii te audiant. 11. Ne tu punieris puellam: patrem eius puniamus, qui poena dignus est. 12. Mater rogavit me ne puellam punirem.

1. *Do you sleep? O foolish (men), while the enemy are bursting into the city?* 2. *There is no doubt that the soldiers guarded the captive badly.* 3. *Why did you not train the boy better that he might obey (his) elders.* 4. *I ask you why you punished the innocent child Tulliola (124).* 5. *Let us ask the judge not to punish the boy, who is undeserving of punishment.* 6. *You who nourished your children's bodies with so great care, will you not, O my friends, train also their minds?* 7. *We who had never obeyed our parents (108), punished our children because they did not obey us.* 8. *Train your mind that you may learn very many (things).* 9. *When we had fortified our camp, the enemy descended into the plain (5a).* 10. *Have you asked the boy whether he has lost his books?*

## EXERCISE XLVI.

## (Vēnio, rēpērio.)

1. Imperator cum tandem nostros vicisset, plurimos gravissima catena vinxit. 2. Serius (149) venistis: comites enim vestri hesternae nocte venerunt. 3. Interrogas cur aurum non reppereris: non repperisti, quia in hac terra aurum non est. 4. Non dubium erat quin serius venissent; sed rex eis veniam dedit. 5. Si forte cras venies, fortasse quod amisisti reperies. 6. Quamdiu dux ille vixit, nostri (34) vicerunt. 7. Archimedes multa et mira invenit. <sup>3</sup> 8. Inter-

<sup>1</sup> Vino may be parsed, for the present, as *Abbl. of Instr.*: but see Par. 275.  
<sup>2</sup> Though *nōnne* and *num* generally stand first in a Direct Question, they are sometimes preceded by the Clause containing the Relative Pronoun: see Exercise XXXIII, Sentence 5.

<sup>3</sup> In English we do not translate *et* coming between *multus* and another co-ordinate Adjective, e.g. "*multa et pulchra*," *many beautiful things*.

rogavi centurionem cur captivos tam gravi catena vinxisset  
9. Jam omnia parabam ut venirem. 10. Ne tu huc veneris :  
nam, si venies, non facile discedes.

1. *Why, O most cruel of men, did you bind with so heavy a chain the innocent (126) Balbus?* 2. *The woman came rather late, but the king granted her pardon.* 3. *We conquered those who lived in that plain.* 4. *There is no doubt that they did not find gold in this land.* 5. *I asked why they came (145b), but no-one heard me.* 6. *I found yesterday night (30) what (i.e. that which) I had lost.* 7. *Will he not tell me why he came here?* 8. *Must thou come at length, O best of sons?*

### THE VERB *Sum*, *I am*.

*Sum*, *fiū*, *futūrus*, *essē*,—*to be*.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sum</i> , <i>I am</i>	<i>Plur. Sūmūs</i> , <i>We are</i>
<i>Es</i> , <i>thou art</i>	<i>Estis</i> , <i>ye are</i>
<i>Est</i> , <i>he is.</i>	<i>Sunt</i> , <i>they are.</i>

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēro</i> , <i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur. Ērīmūs</i> , <i>We shall be</i>
<i>Ēris</i> , <i>thou wilt be</i>	<i>Ēritis</i> , <i>ye will be</i>
<i>Ērit</i> , <i>he will be.</i>	<i>Ērunt</i> , <i>they will be.</i>

##### 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ēram</i> , <i>I was</i>	<i>Plur. Ērāmūs</i> , <i>We were</i>
<i>Ērās</i> , <i>thou wast</i>	<i>Ērātis</i> , <i>ye were</i>
<i>Ērāt</i> , <i>he was.</i>	<i>Ērant</i> , <i>they were.</i>

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Fuī</i> , <i>I have been, or</i> <i>I was</i>	<i>P. Fuīmūs</i> , <i>We have been, or</i> <i>we were</i>
<i>Fuistī</i> , <i>thou hast been, or</i> <i>thou wast</i>	<i>Fuistis</i> , <i>ye have been, or</i> <i>ye were</i>
<i>Fuīt</i> , <i>he has been, or</i> <i>he was.</i>	<i>Fuērunt</i> } <i>they have been, or</i> <i>or fuērē</i> } <i>they were.</i>



## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuëro, I shall have been</i>	<i>P. Fuërimüs, We shall have been</i>
<i>Fuëris, thou wilt have been</i>	<i>Fuëritis, ye will have been</i>
<i>Fuërit, he will have been.</i>	<i>Fuërint, they will have been.</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuëram, I had been</i>	<i>P. Fuëramüs, We had been</i>
<i>Fuëras, thou hadst been</i>	<i>Fuëratüs, ye had been</i>
<i>Fuërat, he had been.</i>	<i>Fuërant, they had been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Ės, Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur. Estë, Be ye.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

## 2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing. Estö, Thou shalt or must</i>	<i>Plur. Estötë, Ye shall or must</i>
<i>be</i>	<i>be</i>
<i>Estö, he shall or must be,</i>	<i>Sunto, they shall or must</i>
<i>or let him be.</i>	<i>be, or let them be.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Sim, I may be</i>	<i>Plur. Simüs, We may be<sup>1</sup></i>
<i>Sis, thou mayst be</i>	<i>Sitis, ye may be</i>
<i>Sit, he may be.</i>	<i>Sint, they may be.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing. Essem or } I might be</i>	<i>P. Essëmüs or } We might be</i>
<i>förem, }</i>	<i>föremüs, }</i>
<i>Essës or } thou mightst be</i>	<i>Essëtis or } ye might be</i>
<i>förës, }</i>	<i>förëtis, }</i>
<i>Essët or } he might be.</i>	<i>Essent or } they might be.</i>
<i>förët, }</i>	<i>förent, }</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuërim, I may have been</i>	<i>Fuërimüs, We may have been</i>
<i>Fuëris, thou mayst have been</i>	<i>Fuëritis, ye may have been</i>
<i>Fuërit, he may have been.</i>	<i>Fuërint, they may have been.</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Fuissem, I should</i>	<i>Fuissëmüs, We should</i>	<i>} have been.</i>
<i>Fuissës, thou wouldst</i>	<i>Fuissëtis, ye would</i>	
<i>Fuissët, he would</i>	<i>Fuissent, they would</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Simus, without a Conjunction, generally means *let us be*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	} Essē,	to be.
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,		
	} Fuissē,	to have been.
INFINITIVE FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs essē, or fōrē,	to be about to be.
PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,	about to be.

EXERCISE XLVII.

- Nos Angli sumus, vos estis Galli, ille Germanus est. 2. Fuit Troja; fuere Mycenae; tu, Roma, etiam nunc es. 3. Nisi ego dux vester (125) ero, victores non eritis. 4. Amici eius quondam divites fuerant: tum vero erant pauperrimi. 5. Dictorum eius, O pueri, este semper memores. 6. Iudices iusti sunt. 7. Gratus esto, puer, si amicos benignos habere optas. 8. Ne fueris, O soror, eis molesta qui tibi benevolentissimi semper fuerunt. 9. Contentus ero, O iudices, si vos iusti fueritis.<sup>1</sup> 10. Interrogavit num iudices iusti essent. 11. Cura, rex magne, ut sis munificentior (68a). 12. Ego et tu laetissimi sumus. 13. Prudentes este ut benefici sitis.

- You and I have been (127) very poor.*
- We (99a) were in the city; he and his brother were in the field.*
- Had you not been ungrateful, sister, to those who were formerly most benevolent to you?*
- If you are (i.e. shall have been) joyful, I shall be most joyful.*
- Take care not to be troublesome to the benevolent.*
- I asked the boy whether he was younger than his [own] brother.*
- There is no doubt that Tullius was very ungrateful.*
- Be brave, O soldiers, that ye may be fortunate.*
- You will be happy, (my) friends, if you are (125) always contented.*
- There was no doubt that Tullius had formerly been very rich, but was now very poor.*

THE ACTIVE PARTICIPLES.

- 154** The Participle is partly like an Adjective, in that it agrees with a Noun or Pronoun, and partly like a Verb, in that it may govern an Object.<sup>2</sup>

*The citizen slew the king (when he was, or who was) about to destroy the city with fire.*

Civis rēgem urbem jam igni **absumptūrum** interfecit.

*The darts were troublesome to our men (while they were, or who were) waiting for help.*

Tēla nostris mōlesta ērant auxiliū **expectantibus**.

<sup>1</sup> Not if you shall have been just (125). But optas (Sent. 7) is Present, because it refers to Present time.

<sup>2</sup> The Participle must often be translated by a Conjunction *when*, *while*, &c., or by the Relative Pronoun.

## THE DEPENDENT FUTURE INTERROGATIVE.

- 155** It has been shown above (Par. 136) how to turn a Direct Question in the Past or Present Tenses into an Indirect Question, by changing the Indicative Tenses into corresponding Subjunctive Tenses. But, as there is no Subjunctive Future, we cannot thus turn a Direct Question in the Future, *Will he come?* "*Num veniet?*" into an Indirect Question, *I ask whether he will come.*

For this purpose we employ a form compounded of the Verb *sum*, and the Participle in *-rus*: *ventūrus sum*, *I am about to come*; *ventūrae sunt*, *they (fem.) are about to come*; *ventūrus fuerās*, *you had been about to come*, &c.

Hence *Will she come?* or *Is she about to come?* becomes, when changed into an Indirect Question:

<i>Ask</i>	} whether the woman is about to come.	<i>interrogā</i>	} <i>num mūlier ventūra sit.</i>
<i>I ask</i>		<i>interrogō</i>	
<i>I will ask</i>		<i>interrogābo</i>	
<i>I have asked</i>		<i>interrogāvi</i>	
<i>I was asking</i>	} whether the woman was about to come	<i>interrogābam</i>	} <i>num mūlier ventūra esset.</i>
<i>I asked</i>		<i>interrogāvi</i>	
<i>I had asked</i>		<i>interrogāvērām</i>	

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

- 156** The Latin for *when* in questions, whether dependent or independent, is not *cum* but *quando*.

*When will he come?*

*Quando vēniet?*

*Let us inquire when he will come.*

*Quacrāmus quando ventūras sit.*

1. Interrogavi puellam num matri obeditura esset.
2. Filium, parentes nutriturum (154a), cur culpas?
3. Obsidibus, haec audientibus, non placuit in urbem venire.<sup>1</sup>
4. Interrogate sorores vestras quando patri obediturae sint.
5. Hostibus, jam urbem intransibus, nox molesta erat.
6. Tibi, O puella, graviter erraturae, pauca dicam.
7. Arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, frigus nocuit.
8. Praeceptorī, optime docenti, discipulorum stultitia multum displicuit.
9. Nonne audis patris tui

<sup>1</sup> The Subj. of placuit is venire, see Par. 128. Parse obsidibus; see Par. 142

verba, te culpantis, te in meliora revocantis? 10. Ecce, veniunt gladiatores, principem salutaturi. 11. Non erat dubium quin pauca dictura esset. 12. Vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus es?

1. The speech of the general was troublesome to our men, (since they were) not then expecting an attack. 2. You, (being) yourself about-to-err, blame your brother (who is) erring. 3. You, who are destined soon to ask help (trans. you, soon about-to-ask help) in-vain, now despise your friends (who are) affording help. 4. You ought to hear the voice of your friends (who are) chiding you (and) recalling you to the path of virtue. 5. There was no doubt that his daughter was on the point of coming, i.e. about-to-come. 6. Why, O pupils, did you displease your teacher, (though he was) teaching you most-excellently? 7. When we heard this, we resolved to obey the general (trans. (it) pleased us, hearing these things, to obey, &c.). 8. When will you obey your friends (who are) giving you many gifts and about-to-give you more (gifts)? 9. Let us ask his sisters whether they are going to obey (i.e. about-to-obey) (their) father. 10. The frost destroyed very many vines (when they were) just (jam) about-to-put-forth (their) fruit.

### FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

**Āmōr, āmātūs sum, āmārī,—to be loved.**

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ōr,	I am loved	Am-āmūr,	We are loved
Am-ārīs or	} thou art loved	Am-āmīnī,	ye are loved
ām-ārē,		Am-antūr,	they are loved. <sup>1</sup>
Am-ātūr,	he is loved.		

##### 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Am-ābōr,	I shall be loved	Am-ābīmūr,	We shall be loved
Am-ābērīs or	} thou wilt be loved	Am-ābīmīnī,	ye will be loved
āmābērē,		Am-ābuntūr,	they will be loved.
Am-ābītūr,	he will be loved.		

<sup>1</sup> Cicero rarely uses āmāre for āmārīs. It is liable to be confused with the Imper. Passive, as well as with the Pres. Inf. Active.

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ābār,	{ I was being loved (115)	Am-ābāmūr,	{ We were being loved
Am-ābārīs or ām-ābārē	{ thou wast being loved	Am-ābāmīnī,	{ ye were being loved
Am-ābātūr,	{ he was being loved.	Am-ābantūr,	{ they were being loved.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs sum or fuī,	{ I have been loved, or was loved	Am-ātī sūmūs or fuīmūs,	{ We have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātūs ēs or fuistī,	{ thou hast been loved, or wast loved	Am-ātī estīs or fuistīs,	{ ye have been loved, or were loved
Am-ātūs est or fuīt,	{ he has been loved, or was loved.	Am-ātī sunt, fuērunt, or fuērē,	{ they have been loved, or were loved <sup>1</sup>

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēro or fuēro,	{ I shall have been loved	Am-ātī ērimūs or fuērimūs,	{ We shall have been loved
Am-ātūs ērīs or fuērīs,	{ thou wilt have been loved	Am-ātī ēritīs or fuēritīs,	{ ye will have been loved
Am-ātūs ērit or fuērit,	{ he will have been loved.	Am-ātī ērunt or fuērint,	{ they will have been loved.

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Am-ātūs ēram or fuēram,	{ I had been loved	Am-ātī ērāmūs or fuērāmūs,	{ We had been loved
Am-ātūs ērās or fuērās,	{ thou hadst been loved	Am-ātī ērātīs or fuērātīs,	{ ye had been loved
Am-ātūs ērāt or fuērāt,	{ he had been loved.	Am-ātī ērant or fuērant,	{ they had been loved.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Am-ārē,	Be thou loved.	Am-āmīnī,	Be ye loved.
---------	----------------	-----------	--------------

<sup>1</sup> The Latin Perfect Passive may sometimes be translated by *is, are*: *The man is slain, hūmo interfectus est*. Hence, when *is, are* imply that an action is completed, translate by the Latin Perfect.

## FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

<i>Am-ātōr,</i>	<i>Thou must be loved</i>	<i>Am-antōr,</i>	<i>{ They must be</i>
<i>Am-ātōr,</i>	<i>he must be loved.</i>		<i>loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Am-ēr,</i>	<i>I may be loved</i>	<i>Am-ēmūr,</i>	<i>We may be loved</i>
<i>Am-ērīs or</i>	<i>{ thou mayest be</i>	<i>Am-ēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye may be loved</i>
<i>ām-ērē,</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>Am-entūr,</i>	<i>they may be loved</i>
<i>Am-ētūr,</i>	<i>he may be loved.</i>		

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-arēr,</i>	<i>I might be loved</i>	<i>Am-arēmūr,</i>	<i>We might be loved</i>
<i>Am-arērīs or</i>	<i>{ thou mightst be</i>	<i>Am-arēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye might be loved</i>
<i>ām-arērē,</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>Am-arentūr,</i>	<i>they might be loved.</i>
<i>Am-arētūr,</i>	<i>{ he might be</i>		
	<i>loved.</i>		

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-ātūs sim</i>	<i>{ I may have been</i>	<i>Am-ātī sīmūs</i>	<i>{ We may have</i>
<i>or fuērīm,</i>	<i>loved</i>	<i>or fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>been loved</i>
<i>Am-ātūs sis</i>	<i>{ thou mayest have</i>	<i>Am-ātī sītīs</i>	<i>{ ye may have</i>
<i>or fuērīs,</i>	<i>been loved</i>	<i>or fuērītīs,</i>	<i>been loved</i>
<i>Am-ātūs sīt</i>	<i>{ he may have</i>	<i>Am-ātī sint</i>	<i>{ they may have</i>
<i>or fuērīt,</i>	<i>been loved.</i>	<i>or fuērīnt,</i>	<i>been loved.</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Am-ātūs essem</i>	<i>{ I should have</i>	<i>Am-ātī essēmūs</i>	<i>{ We should</i>
<i>or fuissem,</i>	<i>been loved</i>	<i>or fuissēmūs,</i>	<i>have been</i>
<i>Am-ātūs essēs</i>	<i>{ thou wouldst</i>	<i>Am-ātī essētīs</i>	<i>{ ye would</i>
<i>or fuissēs,</i>	<i>have been</i>	<i>or fuissētīs,</i>	<i>have been</i>
	<i>loved</i>		<i>loved</i>
<i>Am-ātūs essēt</i>	<i>{ he would have</i>	<i>Am-ātī essent</i>	<i>{ they would</i>
<i>or fuissēt,</i>	<i>been loved.</i>	<i>or fuissent,</i>	<i>have been</i>
			<i>loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	<i>Am-ārī,</i>	<i>to be loved</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	<i>Am-ātūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,</i>	<i>{ to have been</i>
		<i>loved</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātum irī (not declined),</i>	<i>{ to be about to</i>
		<i>be loved.<sup>1</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup> For an explanation of *āmātum irī*, see Exercise LXXIV.

## PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	<i>Am-ātūs (-a, -um), loved or having been loved.</i>
GERUNDIVL.	<i>Am-andūs (-a, -um), meet to be loved.</i>

## SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

*Mōneōr, mōnītūs sum, mōnērī—to be advised.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Mōn-eōr,</i>	<i>I am advised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēmūr,</i>	<i>We are advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ērīs,</i>	<i>{ thou art ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye are advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ētūr,</i>	<i>vised</i>	<i>Mōn-entūr,</i>	<i>they are advised.</i>
	<i>he is advised.</i>		

## 2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Mōn-ēbōr,</i>	<i>{ I shall be ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbīmūr,</i>	<i>{ We shall be ad-</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbārīs or</i>	<i>vised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbīmīnī,</i>	<i>vised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbērē,</i>	<i>{ thou wilt be</i>		<i>ye will be ad-</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbītūr</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbuntūr,</i>	<i>vised</i>
	<i>he will be ad-</i>		<i>they will be ad-</i>
	<i>vised.</i>		<i>vised.</i>

## 3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Mōn-ēbār,</i>	<i>{ I was being ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbāmūr,</i>	<i>{ We were being</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbārīs or</i>	<i>vised (115)</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbāmīnī,</i>	<i>advised</i>
<i>mōn-ēbārē,</i>	<i>{ thou wast being</i>		<i>ye were being</i>
<i>Mōn-ēbātūr,</i>	<i>advised</i>	<i>Mōn-ēbantūr,</i>	<i>advised</i>
	<i>he was being</i>		<i>they were being</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Mōn-ītūs sum</i>	<i>{ I have been ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ītī sūmūs</i>	<i>{ We have been</i>
<i>or fuī,</i>	<i>vised, or was</i>	<i>or fuīmūs,</i>	<i>advised, or were</i>
	<i>advised</i>		<i>advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ītūs ēs</i>	<i>{ thou hast been</i>	<i>Mōn-ītī estīs</i>	<i>{ ye have been ad-</i>
<i>or fuistī,</i>	<i>advised, or</i>	<i>or fuistīs,</i>	<i>vised, or were</i>
	<i>wast advised</i>		<i>advised</i>
<i>Mōn-ītūs est</i>	<i>{ he has been ad-</i>	<i>Mōn-ītī sunt,</i>	<i>{ they have been</i>
<i>or fuīt,</i>	<i>vised, or was</i>	<i>fuērunt, or</i>	<i>advised, or</i>
	<i>advised.</i>	<i>fuērē,</i>	<i>were advised.</i>

## 5. FUTURE-Perfect TENSE.

Mön-ītūs ēro	I shall have	Mön-ītī ērimūs	We shall have
or fuēro,	been advised	or fuērimūs,	been advised
Mön-ītūs ēris	thou wilt have	Mön-ītī ērītis,	ye will have been
or fuērīs.	been advised	or fuērītīs,	advised
Mön-ītūs ērit	he will have	Mön-ītī ērunt	they will have
or fuērīt,	been advised.	or fuērīnt,	been advised.

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ītūsēram	I had been	Mön-ītī ērāmūs	We had been
or fuēram,	advised	or fuērāmūs,	advised
Mön-ītūs ērās	thou hadst	Mön-ītī ērātīs	ye had been ad-
or fuērās,	been ad-	or fuērātīs,	vised
	vised		
Mön-ītūs ērāt	he had been	Mön-ītī ērant	they had been
or fuērāt,	advised.	or fuērānt,	advised.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-ērē,	Be thou advised.	Mön-ēmīnī,	Be ye advised
----------	------------------	------------	---------------

## FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Mön-ētōr,	Thou must be advised	Mön-entōr,	They must be ad-
Mön-ētōr,	he must be advised.		vised.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Mön-eār,	I may be ad-	Mön-eāmūr,	We may be ad-
	vised		vised
Mön-eārīs	or thou mayst	Mön-eāmīnī,	ye may be ad-
mön-eārē,	be advised		vised.
Mön-eātūr,	he may be	Mön-eantūr,	they may be ad-
	advised.		vised.

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Mön-ērēr,	I might be	Mön-ērēmūr,	We might be
	advised		advised
Mön-ērērīs	or thou mightst	Mön-ērēmīnī,	ye might be ad-
mön-ērērē,	be advised		vised
Mön-ērētūr,	he might be	Mön-ērentūr,	they might be
	advised		advised.



## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ītūs sim or fuērim,	{ I may have been advised	Mōn-ītī simūs or fuērimūs,	{ We may have been advised
Mōn-ītūs sis or fuērīs,	{ thou mayst have been advised	Mōn-ītī sitīs or fuērītīs,	{ ye may have been advised
Mōn-ītūs sīt or fuērīt,	{ he may have been ad- vised	Mōn-ītī sint or fuērint,	{ they may have been advised.

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Mōn-ītūs essem or fuissem,	{ I should have been advised	Mōn-ītī essēmūs or fuissēmūs,	{ We should have been advised
Mōn-ītūs essēs, or fuissēs,	{ thou wouldst have been advised	Mōn-ītī essētīs or fuissētīs,	{ ye would have been advised
Mōn-ītūs essēt or fuissēt,	{ he would have been advised.	Mōn-ītī essent or fuissent,	{ they would have been advised.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Mōn-ērī,	to be advised.
PERF. and PLUP.	Mōn-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,	to have been ad- vised.
FUTURE.	Mōn-ītum īrī (not declined),	to be about to be advised.
PERFECT.	Mōn-ītūs (-a, -um),	advised, or having been advised.
GERUNDIVE.	Mōn-endūs (-a, -um),	meet to be advised.

## THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectūs sum, rēgī,—to be ruled.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rēg-ōr,	I am ruled	Rēg-īmūr,	We are ruled
Rēg-ērīs,	thou art ruled	Rēg-īmīnī,	ye are ruled
Rēg-ītūr,	he is ruled.	Rēg-untūr,	they are ruled.

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

Rĕg-ār,	or {	<i>I shall be ruled/ thou wilt be ruled he will be ruled.</i>	Rĕg-ēmūr,	We shall be ruled ye will be ruled they will be ruled.
Rĕg-ērīs			Rĕg-ēmīnī,	
rĕg-ērĕ,			Rĕg-entūr,	
Rĕg-ētūr,				

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ēbār,	{	<i>I was being ruled (115) thou wast being ruled he was being ruled.</i>	Rĕg-ēbāmūr,	{	<i>We were being ruled ye were being ruled they were being ruled.</i>
Rĕg-ēbārīs or			Rĕg-ēbāmīnī,		
rĕg-ēbārĕ,			Rĕg-ēbantūr,		
Rĕg-ēbātūr,					

4. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs sum	{	<i>I have been ruled, or was ruled thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>	Rec-tī sūmūs	{	<i>We have been ruled, or were ruled ye have been ruled, or were ruled they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>
or fuī,			or fuīmūs,		
Rec-tūs ěs or			Rec-tī estīs or		
fuistī,			fuistīs,		
Rec-tūs est or	{		Rec-tī sunt,	{	
fuīt,			fuērunt, or		
			fuērĕ,		

5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ěro	{	<i>I shall have been ruled thou wilt have been ruled he will have been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ěrīmūs	{	<i>We shall have been ruled ye will have been ruled they will have been ruled.</i>
or fuĕro,			or fuĕrimūs,		
Rec-tūs ěrīs			Rec-tī ěrītīs		
or fuĕrīs,			or fuĕrītīs,		
Rec-tūs ěrīt	{		Rec-tī ěrunt	{	
or fuĕrīt,			or fuĕrint,		

6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs ěram	{	<i>I had been ruled thou hadst been ruled he had been ruled.</i>	Rec-tī ěrāmūs	{	<i>We had been ruled ye had been ruled they had been ruled.</i>
or fuĕram,			or fuĕrāmūs,		
Rec-tūs ěrās			Rec-tī ěrātīs		
or fuĕrās,			or fuĕrātīs,		
Rec-tūs ěrāt	{		Rec-tī ěrant or	{	
or fuĕrāt,			fuĕrant,		

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-ērĕ,	Be thou ruled.	Rĕg-īmīnī,	Be ye ruled.
----------	----------------	------------	--------------

## FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

Rĕg-ĭtôr,	{ Thou must be ruled	Rĕg-untôr,	They must be ruled.
Rĕg-ĭtôr,	{ he must be ruled.		

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Rĕg-är,	I may be ruled	Rĕg-āmūr,	We may be ruled
Rĕg-ärĭs or	{ thou mayst be ruled	Rĕg-āmĭnĭ,	ye may be ruled
rĕg-ärĕ,	{ ruled	Rĕg-antūr,	they may be ruled.
Rĕg-atūr,	he may be ruled.		

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

Rĕg-ērĕr,	I might be ruled	Rĕg-ērēmūr,	We might be ruled
Rĕg-ērĕrĭs or	{ thou mightst be ruled	Rĕg-ērēmĭnĭ,	ye might be ruled
rĕg-ērĕrĕ,	{ ruled	Rĕg-ĕrĕntūr,	they might be ruled.
Rĕg-ĕrĕtūr,	{ he might be ruled.		

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūs sĭm	{ I may have been ruled	Rec-tĭ sĭmūs or	{ We may have been ruled
or fuĕrim,	{ ruled	fuĕrimūs,	{ ruled
Rec-tūs sĭs or	{ thou mayst have been ruled	Rec-tĭ sĭtĭs or	{ ye may have been ruled
fuĕrĭs,	{ ruled	fuĕrĭtĭs,	{ ruled
Rec-tūs sĭt or	{ he may have been ruled.	Rec-tĭ sĭnt or	{ they may have been ruled.
fuĕrĭt,	{ ruled.	fuĕrint,	{ ruled.

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Rec-tūsessem	{ I should have been ruled	Rec-tĭ essēmūs	{ We should have been ruled
or fuĭssem,	{ ruled	or fuĭssēmūs,	{ ruled
Rec-tūs essēs	{ thou wouldst have been ruled	Rec-tĭ essētĭs	{ ye would have been ruled
or fuĭssēs,	{ ruled	or fuĭssētĭs,	{ ruled
Rec-tūs essēt	{ he would have been ruled.	Rec-tĭ essent	{ they would have been ruled.
or fuĭssēt,	{ ruled.	or fuĭssent,	{ ruled.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	Rĕg-ĭ,	to be ruled.
PERF and PLUP.	Rec-tūs (-a, -um) essĕ or fuĭssĕ,	to have been ruled
FUTURE.	Rec-tum ĭrĭ (not declined),	to be about to be ruled.

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT.	<b>Rec-tūs (-a, -um),</b>	<i>ruled or having been ruled.</i>
GERUNDIVE.	<b>Rēg-endūs (-a, -um),</b>	<i>meant to be ruled.</i>

FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

**Audiōr, audītūs sum, audīrī,—to be heard.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Aud-iōr,</b>	<i>I am heard</i>	<b>Aud-imūr,</b>	<i>We are heard</i>
<b>Aud-īrīs,</b>	<i>thou art heard.</i>	<b>Aud-īmīnī,</b>	<i>ye are heard</i>
<b>Aud-ītūr,</b>	<i>he is heard</i>	<b>Aud-iuntūr,</b>	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<b>Aud-iār,</b>	or { <i>I shall be heard</i> <i>thou wilt be heard</i> <i>he will be heard.</i>	<b>Aud-iēmūr,</b>	<i>We shall be heard</i>
<b>Aud-iērīs</b>		<b>Aud-iēmīnī,</b>	<i>ye will be heard</i>
<b>aud-iērē,</b>		<b>Aud-ientūr,</b>	<i>they will be heard.</i>
<b>Aud-iētūr,</b>			

3. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-iēbār,</b>	{ <i>I was being heard (115)</i> <i>thou wast being heard</i> <i>he was being heard.</i>	<b>Aud-iēbāmūr,</b>	{ <i>We were being heard</i> <i>ye were being heard</i> <i>they were being heard.</i>
<b>Aud-iēbārīs or</b>		<b>Aud-iēbāmīnī,</b>	
<b>aud-iēbārē,</b>		<b>Aud-iēbantūr,</b>	
<b>Aud-iēbātūr,</b>			

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ītūs sum</b>	{ <i>I have been heard, or was heard</i> <i>thou hast been heard, or wast heard</i> <i>he has been heard, or was heard.</i>	<b>Aud-ītā sūmūs</b>	{ <i>We have been heard, or were heard</i> <i>ye have been heard, or were heard</i> <i>they have been heard, or were heard.</i>
<b>or fuī,</b>		<b>or fuīmūs,</b>	
<b>Aud-ītūs es or</b>		<b>Aud-ītī estīs or</b>	
<b>fuistī,</b>		<b>fuistīs,</b>	
<b>Aud-ītūs est</b>		<b>Aud-ītī sunt,</b>	
<b>or fuīt,</b>		<b>fuērunt, or</b>	
		<b>fuērē,</b>	

## 5. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ītūs ēro</b> or <b>fuēro,</b>	<i>I shall have been heard</i>	<b>Aud-ītī ērimūs</b> or <b>fuērimūs,</b>	<i>We shall have been heard</i>
<b>Aud-ītūs ēris</b> or <b>fuēris,</b>	<i>thou wilt have been heard</i>	<b>Aud-ītī ēritīs</b> or <b>fuēritīs,</b>	<i>ye will have been heard</i>
<b>Aud-ītūs ērit</b> or <b>fuērit,</b>	<i>he will have been heard</i>	<b>Aud-ītī ērunt</b> or <b>fuērint,</b>	<i>they will have been heard.</i>

## 6. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-ītūs ēram</b> or <b>fuēram,</b>	<i>I had been heard</i>	<b>Aud-ītī-ērāmūs</b> or <b>fuērāmūs,</b>	<i>We had been heard</i>
<b>Aud-ītūs ērās</b> or <b>fuērās,</b>	<i>thou hadst been heard</i>	<b>Aud-ītī ērātīs</b> or <b>fuērātīs,</b>	<i>ye had been heard</i>
<b>Aud-ītūs ērāt</b> or <b>fuērāt,</b>	<i>he had been heard.</i>	<b>Aud-ītī ērant</b> or <b>fuērant,</b>	<i>they had been heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Aud-irē,</b>	<i>Be thou heard.</i>	<b>Aud-imīnī,</b>	<i>Be ye heard.</i>
-----------------	-----------------------	-------------------	---------------------

## FUTURE (see Par. 117) TENSE.

<b>Aud-ītōr,</b>	<i>Thou must be heard</i>	<b>Aud-iuntōr,</b>	<i>They must be heard.</i>
<b>Aud-ītōr,</b>	<i>he must be heard.</i>		

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<b>Aud-iār</b>	<i>I may be heard</i>	<b>Aud-iāmūr,</b>	<i>We may be heard</i>
<b>Aud-iārīs</b> or	<i>thou mayst be heard</i>	<b>Aud-iāmīnī,</b>	<i>ye may be heard</i>
<b>aud-iārē,</b>	<i>he may be heard.</i>	<b>Aud-iantūr,</b>	<i>they may be heard.</i>
<b>Aud-iātūr,</b>			

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<b>Aud-irēr,</b>	<i>I might be heard</i>	<b>Aud-irēmūr,</b>	<i>We might be heard</i>
<b>Aud-irērīs</b> or	<i>thou mightst be heard</i>	<b>Aud-irēmīnī,</b>	<i>ye might be heard</i>
<b>aud-irērē,</b>	<i>he might be heard.</i>	<b>Aud-irentūr,</b>	<i>they might be heard.</i>
<b>Aud-irētūr,</b>			

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

And-ītūs sim or fuērim,	{ I may have been heard	And-ītī simūs or fuērimūs,	{ We may have been heard
And-ītūs sis or fuēris,	{ thou mayst have been heard	And-ītī sītīs or fuēritīs,	{ ye may have been heard
And-ītūs sīt or fuērit,	{ he may have been heard.	And-ītī sint or fuērint,	{ they may have been heard.

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

And-ītūsessem or fuissesem,	{ I should have been heard	And-ītī essēmūs or fuissēmūs,	{ We should have been heard
And-ītūs essēs or fuissēs,	{ thou wouldst have been heard	And-ītī essētīs or fuissētīs,	{ ye would have been heard
And-ītūs essēt or fuissēt,	{ he would have been heard	And-ītī essent or fuissent.	{ they would have been heard.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. and IMP.	And-īrī, -	to be heard.
PERF. and PLUP.	And-ītūs (-a, -um) essē or fuissē,	to have been heard.
FUTURE.	And-ītum īrī (not declined),	to be about to be [heard.]

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	And-ītūs (-a, -um),	heard or having been heard.
GERUNDIVE.	And-iendūs (-a, -um),	meant to be heard.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

157a If two Subjects are connected by Disjunctive Conjunctions, e.g. *vēl*, or (*if you please*), or (*rather*), *aut* or (*else*), the Verb generally agrees with the latter of the two.

<i>What man or what monster committed this crime?</i>	<i>Qui hūmo, vēl quae bēlūa hōc facinus commisit?</i>
<i>Either you or Tullius said this.</i>	<i>Aut tū aut Tullius haec dixit.</i>

- Equus ab auriga domabitur (32), mox aurigam dorso portabit.
- Cum ut Tullia, puella pulcherrima, floribus a matre ornetur.
- Si urbem incendit, quomodo in tanto incendio servabimini?
- Interrogavi civem quomodo urbs servaretur.
- Curavit sacerdos ut hae divitiae in aedem Jovis portarentur.
- Si animum recreabis, nihil obstat quominus saneris.
- Cura ut a medico saneris, qui te facillime sanabit, si

tu ei obtemperabis. 8. Agri tui qui nunquam antea vastabantur, jam vastabuntur, nisi nobis iter monstraveris. 9. Curabit dux ut a me servemini nisi jussa mea neglexeritis. 10. Portae urbis omni cura firmantur ne ab hostibus subito<sup>1</sup> superemur. 11. Curato ne, impetum non expectantes, ab hoste superemini. 12. Nisi a medico sanabere (125), num tibi aurum argentumque utilia erunt?

1. *The land of the Germans, which was never (115) wont-to-be laid-waste before, was laid waste by our men.* 2. *While we are being overcome by disease, our allies are being overcome by the enemy.* 3. *The leader took care that the citizens should be preserved.* 4. *Take care that the gates of the city are strongly-guarded, (trans. strengthened with a guard), that our men may not be overcome by the enemy.* 5. *What enemy, or (rather) what danger (111) prevented this wealth from being carried (use quōminus, see Par. 144) into the temple?* 6. *Our men, not expecting an attack, were being overcome by the enemy.* 7. *We shall be cured (17) by this medicine if we obey the physician's precepts.* 8. *How will you be preserved, (my) friends, in this great (trans. so-great) conflagration?* 9. *The priests were-taking-pains that the temple should be adorned by the servants with very-many flowers.* 10. *Let us take-care that the gates of the city are (143) strongly-guarded*

#### PARTICIPLES AND PARTICIPIAL TENSES.

- 158** The Participle Passive agrees with its Noun in Number and Gender.

*The enemy, having been overcome, are fleeing, i.e. have been overcome and are fleeing.*

Hostes sup̄erātī fūgiūnt.

*They burn the city (when it had been) taken, i.e. they take and burn the city.*

Urbem captam incendunt.

- 159** *N.B.*—Note how the English *and* can be expressed by the Latin Passive Participle.

- 159a** The Perfect, Future Perfect, and Pluperfect Tenses of *amor*, both in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, are not really independent Tenses of *amor*, but rather Tenses

- 160** <sup>1</sup> *Sūbito* is an Adv. Adj. in -us, -a, -um, and -or, -a, -um, mostly make Adv. in -ē; but there are exceptions: *tūto, safely; cīto, quickly; &c.*

of the Verb *sum* joined to forms of the Passive Participle *āmātus* which must agree with some Noun or Pronoun :

*The town is taken.*

*Oppidum captum est.*

*The girls will have been adorned.*

*Puellae ornatae fuerint.*

### EXERCISE L.

**161** If two or more Subjects are (1) animate beings of different genders, their Adjective or Participle is Masculine ; (2) if inanimate, generally Neuter Plural.

(1) *His father and mother have been slain.* Pater eius et mater **interfecti** sunt.

(2) *Anger and avarice were more powerful than authority.* Ira et avāritia impērio **pōtētiōra** erant.

1. Interroga num pater meus et mater a Tullio servati sint (9a).  
 2. Imperator, cum hostium equites jam turbati fuissent, pedites facile fugavit. 3. Oppidum ipsum ab hoste expugnatum est, sed arx virtute ducis nostri est servata. 4. Si equites superati fuerint (125a), quomodo pedites servabuntur? 5. Cur tanto auri pondere ornatae estis, mulieres stultissimae? 6. Murus et porta a sacerdote centum aureis statuīs, ducentis argenteis, ornata fuerant. 7. Hostis, tandem superatus, ab imperatore nostro fugatus est. 8. Agri pauperrimorum agricularum a crudelissimis hostibus ferro atque igni vastati sunt. 9. Hostes superati sunt, urbes quinquaginta expugnatae, segetes omnes vastatae (32). 10. Non dubium erat quin iter hostibus a proditore monstratum fuisset.

1. *Have the wall and the gate been stormed by the enemy (101)?*  
 2. *Ask whether the wall and the gate have been preserved by the citizens.* 3. *The town is stormed (i.e. has been stormed) : our men are overcome.* 4. *The bridge, having been preserved by the husbandmen, had been pointed out to us by the spy.* 5. *There was no doubt that two hundred ships of war had been preserved by the enemy.* 6. *The shower was troublesome to the enemy (who were) now put-to-flight.* 7. *Did you not owe everything (trans. all things) to Tullius, by whom your very life had been preserved?* 8. *Having been praised by all the best citizens (140), will you and your sister, (150) my (dear) Tullius, commit this great (i.e. so great) crime (101)?*



## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## EXERCISE LI.

- 162** The Passive is sometimes used impersonally in Latin where we use the Active :

*All laughed, lit. it was laughed by all.*      *Ridēbātur āb omnībus.*

*The enemy had fought bravely, lit. it had been fought bravely by the enemy*      *Pugnātum ērat acriter āb hostibus.*

- 163** The Nouter of the Passive Participle in -ndus (commonly called the Gerundive) is very frequently used in this impersonal way, the Agent being expressed by the Dative :

*I must fight, lit. it is meet to be fought to, or for, me.*      *Pugnandum est mīhi.<sup>1</sup>*

*Ought you not to remain?*      *Nūnne tibi mānendum est?*

1. Cum ne periculo terrearis. 2. Justorum judicium animi neque minis neque a rege ipso movebuntur. 3. Cives, ab imperatore terrii, in sua quisque domo manserunt.<sup>2</sup> 4. Quid obstabat vobis quominus a praeceptore doceremini? 5. Magister curavit ut omnia vere a servis suis responderentur. 6. Non dubium est quin puer optime doceatur. 7. Curate ut corpora puero- rum bene exerceantur. 8. Agricola fluctibus terrebat, quos nauta ridebat. 9. Cum haec tanta (trans. *this great*) tempestas impenderet, flebatur ab agricolis, a nautis ridebatur. 10. Imperatori, captivos interroganti nonne cruciatus time- rent, a regina nostra fortissime responsum est. 11. Nobis flendum est, vobis et hostibus exultandum. 12. Hostes jam superatos, et in urbem fugientes, equitatus noster paene delevit.

1. *There is no doubt that two-hundred cities were utterly-destroyed by the cruel general Balbus (124).* 2. *We must fight bravely that the enemy may not (131) take the city by-storm.* 3. *Fighting*

- 164** <sup>1</sup> If the Verb e.g. *pāreo* governs a Dat., "*pārendum est nobis*" would be ambiguous, meaning either *obedience must be paid to us, or by us*. This ambiguity is avoided by using *ā* with the Abl. to express the Agent:

- We must obey the magistrate.*      *Magistrātū ā nobis pārendum est.*  
**165** <sup>2</sup> *Quisquē* is Nom. Sing. in Apposition to *cives*. Note that in this phrase, *they came, returned, each to his &c., sūus* always precedes *quisquē*.

*was kept up briskly* (trans. *it-was-fought briskly*) by the Germans, that our men, terrified by the multitude of the darts, might retire into the city. 4. There is no doubt that the master will exercise (155) the bodies of the slaves. 5. Why must you weep? Ought (163) not you (101) rather to fight that your fields may not be laid waste by the enemy? 6. There is no doubt that answer-was-made most-bravely by our leader. 7. I took care that the city might be filled with-soldiers that you might not be terrified by the danger. 8. We ought not to be terrified in this great danger (trans. *this so-great danger*). 9. Our men, when-they-could scarcely sustain the charge of the enemy (trans. *scarcely sustaining*) and (were) almost fleeing, were recalled by the voice of (their) brave (70) leader. 10. What tyrant, or (157a) what (111) danger, will prevent (144) us from remaining in our city?

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### EXERCISE LII.

- 166 *I am on the point of conquering.* In *eo sum ut vincam.*  
*I was on the point of conquering.* In *eo eram ut vincērem.*

RULE.—When an Active Verb governing a Dative is turned into the Passive, it retains the Dative but is used impersonally. Thus, *all obey you*, *omnes tibi pārebunt*; but:

167. *You will be obeyed by all, i.e.* Tibi *ab omnibus pārebūtur*  
*it will be obeyed to you by all.* (not *tū pārebēris*).

1. Qui non, puer, regitur, is, senex, non bene reget.<sup>1</sup>
2. Nisi te ipsum (125a) viceris, hostes a te inutiliter vincentur.
3. Cura ne falsa a te fingantur.
4. Curabant senes ut a filiis suis recte viveretur.
5. Cum nostri in eo essent ut urbem intrarent, subito portae clausae sunt.
6. Non dubium est quin exercitus, fortiter pugnans, ab hostibus oppressus sit.
7. Cavendum est ne ab hostibus contemnamini.
8. Interrogavisti nonne conjuratio alteri consuli a tribus testibus detecta esset.
9. Rhenus fluvius a Cæsare ponte eo tempore jungebatur.
10. Castra a duobus milibus militum, viris acerrimis, defendentur.
11. Liber ille a liberis meis summa diligentia scribitur.
12. Quid obstat quominus agri colantur, quoniam mox hostes in fugam vertentur?
13. Tunc agros colis qui, quotiens colentur, totiens ab hostibus vastabuntur?

<sup>1</sup> Puer is Nom., in Apposition with qui, *he who, when (or as) a boy, &c.*

1. *The town will be defended bravely by the citizens.* 2. *Take care that the gates are shut and that the city is guarded (trans. strengthened with a guard).* 3. *If the river (125) is bridged by the enemy, you will be in great danger, citizens.* 4. *Do you (tu), the partner<sup>1</sup> of our plans, give-orders that the conspiracy shall be disclosed (pres. subjunct.)?* 5. *I asked my children whether the books were being written by them.* 6. *There was no doubt that the fields, formerly laid-waste by the enemy, were now being cultivated.* 7. *If you, (when) a boy, obey your parents, you will be obeyed, when old, by your children (trans. it-will-be-obeyed to you (when) an old-man).* 8. *Our men are on the point of putting the enemy to flight.* 9. *The enemy were on the point of being put to flight by our men.* 10. *If the conspiracy is disclosed (125) to-morrow, the city will be preserved by you.*

## EXERCISE LIII.

1. *Cur non auxilium mittere statuitis?* 2. *Interrogandum est nobis num epistola a puero scripta sit.* 3. *Interrogandum erat mulieri quando epistolae a pueris scriptae essent.* 4. *Non erat dubium quin duci (142) nostro placuisset legatos mittere.* 5. *Cum jam agri diligentissime culti fuissent, subito segetes omnes imbris absumptae sunt.* 6. *Quid obstabat quominus oppidum defenderetur?* 7. *Urbem hanc, a duobus millibus civium defensam, decem milia hostium obsederunt.* 8. *Quare vos, quingenti viri, ab hostibus ducentis victi estis?* 9. *Interrogavi nonne a seno pueri semper dilecti essent, nonne memoria eius ab illis etiam tum coleretur.* 10. *Fabula, si a poeta docte scripta fuerit, omnibus placebit.* 11. *Cum jam naves plurimae ab imperatore collectae essent, exploratores ad Britanniam quinto die missi sunt.* 12. *Jam acies instructa erat, jam pedites ad proelium parati (142 d); cum subito legati ab hostibus pacem petituri missi sunt.*
1. *There is no doubt that the letter was written by his sister.* 2. *What prevented the fields from being cultivated?* 3. *When the enemy had now been conquered, the husbandmen determined to cultivate the fields.* 4. *There was no doubt that the old man's memory had been cherished (lit. cultivated) by those whom he had taught.* 5. *Let us ask the poet why he did not compose (lit. write) a better story.* 6. *The king asked the general why he had not himself drawn up the line-of-battle with greater care (lit. more-diligently).* 7. *Our ambassadors were sent a-second-time into the city to seek for peace (lit. about-to-*

---

<sup>1</sup> In what case should partner be? See Par. 123.

seek). 8. *The spears of the soldiers, fixed in the earth, shewed the camp of the enemy.* 9. *Which of the two (85) daughters was especially loved (diligo) by (her) father?* 10. *If he violates (125) this law, let him (129a) be driven into exile.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

168 When the Gerundive is used as an Adjective, it still takes the Dative of the Agent; (if (164) there is no ambiguity:)

<i>The boys</i>	} are (fit) to be punish-	Puëri	} sunt <i>mīhi</i> pūniend	} -i.
<i>girls</i>		Puellae		
<i>I must learn this.</i>		<i>Haec mīhi discenda sunt.</i>		

## EXERCISE LIV.

1. Audiendi sunt nobis exploratores; nam hostium urbes clam muniuntur.
2. Quid obstat quominus extra urbem corpus sepeliatur?
3. Curandum erat legatis ut bellum pace finiretur.
4. Interrogabo Numidam num leones in Africa reperiantur.
5. Puniēris, nisi cito veneris.
6. Cur tam deformibus vestibus vestiebamini?
7. Patri a quo nutrimini, vestimiri, educamini, nonne parebitis?
8. Mortui extra (see Vocab. extrā) urbem sepeliuntur.
9. Tertia nocte a nostris dormiebatur, ab hostibus castra muniebantur.
10. Ab eo vincere qui nuper a te ipso vinciebatur.

1. *There is no doubt that lions are found in Africa.*
2. *Will you not obey, O most ungrateful boy, the father by whom you were clothed, nourished, (and) educated?*
3. *Let us take care that war may be terminated by peace.*
4. *The spies of the enemy must be punished by us.*
5. *What prevents the camp from being fortified by our men (144)?*
6. *The dead used-to-be-buried by the ancients outside the city.*
7. *On the fourth day, my son, you will be heard by the judges.*
8. *You were being patiently heard by all: why did (127b) you not yourself (105) hear me?*

## EXERCISE LV.

1. Hae urbes nobis muniendae sunt.
2. Cum corpora mortuorum sepulta essent, arcem optime munitam hostes nobis tradiderunt.
3. Reperti sunt leones quinque; de (about) tigribus nihil auditum (est).
4. Nisi melius vestita fuerit (125a); mulier frigus vix tolerabit.
5. Nutriendus est nobis pauperimus ille puer qui a patre ipso non nutritus est.
6. Cur tandem, O puellae, matris immemores estis? Nonne estis ab illa nutritae? Nonne (142d) vestitae? Nonne summa diligentia<sup>1</sup> educatae?
7. Ego, si finitum fuerit bellum, in

<sup>1</sup> Diligentia is Abl. of Manner: see Exercise LXXIX.

Italiam voniam. 8. Tria milia captivorum, a nostris vincti,<sup>1</sup> clam ovaserunt. 9. Qui a patre tuo nutritus es, nonne tu patrem, jam senem, ipso nutries? 10. Non dubium erat quin castra hostium clam diligentissime munita essent.

1. *I asked whether the bodies of the dead had been buried.* 2. *Will (it) not please you to nourish those by whom you yourselves have been nourished?* 3. *There is no doubt that very many lions have been found in Africa.* 4. *Those who have been bound by you, O soldiers, have secretly escaped.* 5. *The story which had been beautifully written by the poet did not please the king.* 6. *Take-care that you are clothed with a thick garment, that the cold may not (131) hurt you.* 7. *She was heard by the same judges by whom his sisters had already been heard.* 8. *What have you found, my friend, which has not already been found out by others (5a)?<sup>2</sup>*

### THIRD CONJUGATION IN Ī.

Căpio, cēpi, captum, căpĕrĕ,—*to take.*  
(stem: căp-, or căpi-.)

When the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. of the Third Conjugation ends in -ĭo, it (1) drops the ĭ before ĭ and ĕ,<sup>3</sup> but (2) retains it otherwise, e.g. before a, o, ē, and u.

Thus (1) căp-ĭmus, căp-ĕre, căp-ĕ.

But (2) căpi-am, căpi-o, căpi-ēs, căpi-unt.

#### I. ACTIVE VOICE.

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Căpi-o, căp-ĭs, căp-ĭt, căp-ĭmus, căp-ĭtis, căpi-unt.

*Fut.* Căpi-am, căpi-ēs, căpi-et, căpi-ēmus, căpi-etis, căpi-ent.

*Imperf.* Căpi-ēbam, căpi-ēbas, căpi-ēbat, căpi-ēbamus, căpi-ēbatis, căpi-ēbant

Regular Tenses. { *Perf.* Căp-i, Căp-isti, &c.  
                  { *Pluperf.* Căp-eram, Căp-eras, &c.  
                  { *Future Perf.* Căp-ĕro, Căp-ĕris, &c.

<sup>1</sup> Vincti is Masc. Nom. agreeing with a Masc. Nom., *men* or *captives*, implied in *milia*.

<sup>2</sup> For easy Exercises on the Regular Verbs, see pp. 173—175.

<sup>3</sup> The only exception is the 3rd Pers. Sing. of the Fut. Indic. căpi-ēt, which follows the form of the other persons, căpi-ēs, căpi-ēmus, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cǎp-ě, cǎp-ite,  
*Fut.* cǎp-ito, cǎp-ito, cǎp-îtote, cǎp-into,

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Cǎpī-am, cǎpī-as, cǎpī-at, cǎpī-amus, cǎpī-atis,  
 cǎpī-ant,

*Imperf.* Cǎp-ěrem, cǎp-ěres, cǎp-ćret, cǎp-ěremus, cǎp-  
 ăretis, cǎp-ărent,

Regular  
Tenses.

{ *Perf.* Cǎp-ŕim, cǎp-ŕis, &c.  
*Pluperf.* Cǎp-issem, cǎp-isses, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* Cǎp-ěre, *Perf.* Cǎp-isse *Pres.* Cǎpiens, *Fut.*  
 Capturus.

GERUND.  
 Căp-endi.

SUPINES.  
 Captum, captu.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

(Only the Present and Present-Derived Tenses are given below.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Cǎpī-or, cǎp-ĕris, cǎp-ĭtur, cǎp-ĭmur, cǎp-ĭmini, cǎpī-  
 untur.

*Fut.* Cǎpī-ar, cǎpī-ĕris (-ĕrĕ), cǎpī-ĕtur, cǎpī-ĕmur, cǎpī-  
 ĕmini, cǎpī-entur.

*Imperf.* Cǎpī-ĕbar, cǎpī-ĕbaris (-bārĕ), cǎpī-ĕbatur, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Cǎp-ěre, cǎp-ĭmini.  
*Fut.* Cǎpī-tor, cǎpī-untor.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* Cǎpī-ar, cǎpī-āris, cǎpī-ātur, &c.

*Imperf.* Cǎp-ĕrer, cǎp-ĕris, cǎp-ĕtur, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD

Căp-i.

BVCL

12904



475.2

A26V

## EXERCISE LVI.

**169** A prohibition is often expressed by the Imperative Sing. *nōlī* or Plur. *nōlīte*, *be unwilling* :

*Do not flee, i.e. be unwilling to flee. Nōlī, or nōlīte, fūgēre.*

**170** The Ablative of the Gerund is used instrumentally :

*Water hollows the rock by falling. Aqua saxum cāvat cādendo.*

1. Cape pira quoniam cupis, sed noli piro meae quatiendo nocere.

2. Si haec scripseris, mox cupies non scripsisse. 3. Inter-

rogavit num, haec facientes, recte et sapienter faceremus.

4. Accipe trecentos denarios, si dederit; ducentos ne acceperis.

5. Curate ut versus vestri Nasonem sapiant. 6. Nolite

fugere, O milites; fodiendum est, non fugiendum, ut

castra muniamus. 7. Si quaeris monumentum, circumspice.<sup>1</sup>

8. Noli, O iudex, injusta facere: nonne te oravit rex ut

justitiam semper respiceres? 9. Miles, jam telum con-

jecturus, hostem jacentem aspexit. 10. Interrogavi qualia

animalia multiplices fetus parerent.<sup>2</sup>

1. *Have-regard-to virtue; do not have-regard-to the commands of*

*a tyrant.*<sup>3</sup> 2. *There was no doubt that he received five*

*hundred denarii, and was (155) about-to-receive two thousand*

*denarii.* 3. *When the youth beheld his father, he cast away*

*his dart.* 4. *Flee, O friends; do not look round.* 5. *The*

*leaders asked what we desired to do.* 6. *What prevents his*

*verses from savouring-of Maro (see Maro in Vocabulary)?*

7. *What (i.e. that which) they did, they took care (143) to do*

*well.* 8. *You will make your discourse accurate by writing,*

*learned by reading.*

## EXERCISE LVII.

**171** *Whether . . . or, in (a) Independent, as well as in (b) Dependent Questions, can be expressed by (1) utrum . . . ān; (2) -nē . . . ān:*

(a 1) *Is this true or false?*

*Utrum haec vĕra ān falsa sunt?*

(a 2). *Was he white or black?*

*Albusnē ān āter ērat?*

<sup>1</sup> These words are inscribed on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's; quaeris refers to present, not (125) to future time.

<sup>2</sup> From what two Verbs may parerent come, the quantity being left unmarked? What Case does each govern?

<sup>3</sup> Note that *have-regard-to* is one Verb in Latin governing an *Accusative Case*.

- (b1) *We must enquire whether this is true or false.* Quaerendum est utrum haec vera sint an falsa.  
 (b2) *It is uncertain whether he was black or white.* Incertum est albusne an ater fuerit.<sup>1</sup>

72 Or not in Interrogatives may be rendered by *annōn* or *necne*:

*Ask: whether he will come or not.* Quacere utrum venturus sit necne (or *annōn*).

73 N.B. (1) *Aut* and *vel* (157a) are not to be used in Dependent or Independent Questions.

174 (2) When *whether* is not followed by *or*, *num* (135) is generally used instead of *utrum*.

175 (3) The Rule (136) for Sequence of Tenses *always holds*.

1. Praeceptor dubitabat tunc an Tullius rem melius gereret.<sup>2</sup>  
 2. Dux, cum jam proelii, vel potius caedis, finem fecisset, urbem incenderat. 3. Aut pugnandum est aut cedendum, milites. 4. Hunc vicum barbari oppidum vel urbem appellavere. 5. Milites cum jam spolia vel praedam rapuissent cupierunt urbem incendere. 6. Latona dicitur uno partu Apollinem et Dianam peperisse.<sup>3</sup> 7. Quaerendum est utrum regina an filius eius bellum acrius gesturus sit. 8. Arma nobis capienda sunt ne (not -nō) tyrannus, vel tyranni milites, bona nostra diripiant. 9. Haec cum imperator aspexit, constituit aut aciem statim instruere aut clam nocte discedere. 10. Cum pedites nostri fugissent, naves tempestate quassae fuissent, urbes ab hostibus direptae, statim magna pars nostrorum pacem petere cupiebat. 11. Quaerendum est per (by means of) exploratores utrum urbs ab hostibus incensa sit necne.

76 <sup>1</sup> Both in Independent and Dependent Questions (c) *an* is sometimes used without *utrum* or *-ne* preceding; and in Dependent Questions (d) *-ne* is sometimes used for *or*, without a preceding particle.

*It is uncertain whether he was the son or grandson of Tullius.* Filius neposna fuerit Tullii incertum est.

176a <sup>2</sup> The disjunctive *an* disjoins *tū* from Tullius and causes *gereret* to agree with Tullius; *tū* may be parsed as "the subject of *gereres* understood;" see Par. 157a.

77 <sup>3</sup> Dicitur, with a Personal Subject, should generally be rendered in English impersonally, it is said that Latona, &c.



1. *Who doubted whether you or your brother had made these verses?*  
 2. *We must either depart or learn.* 3. *Let us make an end of this war or (rather) insurrection.* 4. *The general ordered the soldiers to hurl their darts against (in gov. acc.) the enemy.*  
 5. *Either we shall carry on this war prosperously or we shall be driven into exile.* 6. *There was no doubt that the queen, or (rather) her son, had waged that war very-prosperously.*  
 7. *It was doubtful whether the general had seen the horse-soldiers, or (whether) ignorant of their arrival, he had drawn up the line-of-battle.* 8. *Let us ask whether the men will come on the third or fourth day.* 9. *It is uncertain whether the city has been stormed or not.* 10. *Who doubts whether the queen will (155) carry on the war in winter (5a)?*

## PREPOSITIONS.

- 178 1. The following Prepositions take the Ablative, and no other Case :

**A, āb** (before a vowel), *by, from.*  
**Ābsquē** (rare), *without.*  
**Clām**, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*<sup>1</sup>  
**Cōram**, *in the presence of.*  
**Cum**, *with.*  
**Dē**, *down from, from, concerning.*

**Ē**, (ex before a vowel), *out of.*  
**Pālam**, *openly, in the presence of.*<sup>2</sup>  
**Prae**, *before, in comparison with, (with a negative because of.)*<sup>3</sup>  
**Prō**, *before, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for.*  
**Sine**, *without.*  
**Tēnus** (after its Case), *as far as.*<sup>4</sup>

These Prepositions are sometimes committed to memory in the following rhyme :

**A, or āb, and ex or ē**  
**Cum, pālam, cōram, clam and dē**  
**Tēnus, sine, prō, and prae**  
 Always govern the Ablative.

<sup>1</sup> Clām is used by the Comic Authors with the Accusative.

<sup>2</sup> Pālam is used as a Preposition only after Cicero, and mostly by poets.

<sup>3</sup> Prae is rarely used by Cicero to mean *because of* except with non, viz, &c.: *I am not able to speak for sorrow*, Prae maerore loqui nōn possum.

<sup>4</sup> Tēnus governs the Abl. Sing.; but with a Plural Noun, more often takes the Genitive, *Alpium tēnus, as far as the Alps*: but the Gen. Pl. construction is not found in the prose of Cicero.

EXERCISE LVIII.

**RULE.**—Cum is affixed to tē, mē, sē, nōbīs, vōbīs, quō, quībus: mēcum, (not cum mē) nōbīscum, quōcum, &c.

1. Puer inde a pueritia cum matre vixerat, quae ab Italia ad Graeciam se receperat.
2. Pecuniam mihi reddidit quam ipse a fratre meo, proximo anno, coram patre meo acceperat.
3. Irruperunt clam imperatore milites cum gladiis, cum scutis; qui (see 'qui') cum me vehementissimo increpuissent, equidem cum constantia respondi.
4. Tu quidem Rheno tenus regnabis, filius autem tecum regnabit.
5. Alpium tenus omnes gentes vicerat.
6. Verbo tenuis te adjuvabit, re ipsa nihil faciet.<sup>1</sup>
7. Ira sine viribus inutilissima est.
8. Pro obsidibus causam egit Tullius; cui (i.e. et ei, see Par. 298, I) pro tantis eius laboribus gratias Allobroges egerunt.
9. Palam populo sine misericordia jugulatus est.
10. Tibi, O amico, prae omnibus amicis beate, ego, hominum miserrimus, prae lacrimis vix scribo.
11. Nos pro patria pugnantem defecistis de Capitolio (32), jam ex urbe ejecistis.
12. Multis de<sup>2</sup> causis cupio tecum de hac re deliberare.

1. *In-the-presence-of his father the youth deliberated with me concerning this matter.*
2. *Let us return thanks to the worthy Balbus, who pleaded our cause with (181) zeal before the king.*
3. *There was no doubt that he had conquered all Asia as-far-as Taurus.*
4. *From a boy he had lived in Greece.*
5. *Since the general forbids (us), let us fight for (our) country without his knowledge.*
6. *He was slain by the soldiers in-the-sight-of the people.*
7. *From Italy I shall retire to Greece, and my son will travel with me.*
8. *Tullius, who pleaded for us, replied to these charges with indignation.*
9. *I scarcely write for tears: having been driven out-of (my) native-land into exile.*
10. *What will anger without wisdom effect for us?*

PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

ADLATIVE.		ACCUSATIVE.	
In,	meaning rest in	In,	meaning into, to, towards
Sūb,	„ rest under	Sūb,	„ motion from below, <sup>3</sup>
Sūper,	„ concerning.	Sūper,	„ above, over, upon. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Rē is Adverbial Abl.; see Par. 182.

<sup>2</sup> 'From many reasons,' i.e. 'for many reasons.'

<sup>3</sup> The form sūbter (hardly, if at all, found, except in poets and late prose writers), meaning extension under, generally takes the Acc. but sometimes the Abl. in poetry.

<sup>4</sup> Sūper, meaning above, also takes the Abl. in poetry, and in Caesar.

## EXERCISE LIX.

- 181** RULE.—The *Manner* of an action may be expressed (1) by the Abl. of a Noun, with an *Adjective* attached to it; (2) by the Abl. following *cum*.

*He spoke with, or in, anger; I replied with the greatest firmness.*

*Ille quidem cum ira locutus est; ego vero summā constantiā respondi.*

*N.B.* The Abl. without an *Adj.* or *Prep.* is used to denote *Instrument*, but not *Manner*.

- 182** Some exceptional Ablatives of Nouns are used (without Adjectives) adverbially, e.g. *jūre*, *rightly*; *ordīne*, *in order*; *spēciē*, *in appearance*; *rē* or *rē ipsa*, *in fact*, &c. They may be parsed as *Adverbial Ablatives*.

1. In Italia paulisper manserat, mox in Galliam contendit. 2. In eo loco a Samnitium imperatore Romani sub jugum missi sunt. 3. Sub oculis patris ipsius filii ambo interfecti sunt. 4. Sub oculos nobis<sup>1</sup> duae columbae venerunt. 5. Equites sub factu teli nondum erant; pedites jam sub ictum venerant. 6. Super navem turrem extruxeramus. 7. Super hac rocupieram vobiscum deliberare. 8. Vulnus super vulnus centurio fortissimus acceperat. 9. Judaea, provincia turbulenta, sub Pontio Pilato tum erat. 10. In ore omnium Persarum tunc erat Alexandri humanitas. 11. Nioba dicitur a Sophocle, poeta Atheniensi, in saxum ab Apolline mutata esse. 12. Dux aliquid de stipendio equitum dempsit.
1. *The wisdom of Socrates was the talk* (trans. *was in the mouth*) of all the Athenians. 2. *There is no doubt that he will deliberate with you about this matter.* 3. *Why, O foolish man, did you send the Romans under the yoke, (since you were) soon about-to-pay the penalty of (your) deed by death?* 4. *If this comes under your notice* (trans. *eyes*), *do not neglect (it).* 5. *Above the wall let us erect a very high tower, that our men may not be under fire.* 6. *By-this-time two cohorts of our men had come under the fire of the enemy.* 7. *It is said that Daphne was changed* (trans. *Daphne is said to have been changed*) into a laurel by Apollo. 8. *How-long did you remain in Italy, and what do you say of (i.e. concerning) that country?* 9. *The Romans, who subtracted a part from his*

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *for us under eyes*, i.e. *under our eyes*. Why is nobis Dat.? See Par. 7.

kingdom, presented to him, (in return) for this (part), a new province. 10. There is no doubt that the brave centurion Balbus received wound on wound.

183

PREPOSITIONS TAKING THE ACCUSATIVE ALONE.

Ād,	to.	Juxtā,	{ near, hard by, next to.
Adversūs,	towards, against.	Ōb,	{ in front of (rare), on account of.
Antē,	before.	Pēnēs,	{ in the hands of.
Āpūd,	{ at, near, among, in the house of, in the pre- sence of, in the pages of.	Pēr,	{ through.
Circā, circum,	around.	Post,	{ after. <sup>1</sup>
Circitēr,	about.	Praetēr,	{ besides, beyond.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Prōpē,	{ near.
Contrā,	{ against, con- trary to.	Proptēr,	{ close to, on ac- count of.
Ergā,	{ towards (only of the feelings).	Sēcundūn,	{ following, in ac- cordance with.
Extrā,	outside of.	Suprā,	{ above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	{ across.
Intēr,	between, among.	Ultrā,	{ on the farther side of.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versūs,	{ towards (in the direction of). <sup>2</sup>

184

The various meanings of the Prepositions (only a few of which have been given above) must be learned by practice. But some help may be gained by remembering that most Prepositions can be used to denote some THOUGHT, such as that of *cause, obstacle, superiority, &c.*, besides denoting relations of *PLACE* and *TIME*. Thus ōb meant originally (1) *in front of*, but it means more commonly (2) *on account of*; pēr means (1) *through*, of *SPACE*, but it also means (2) *throughout* or *during*, of *TIME*, and (3) *through*, of *MEANS*, or *owing to*, of *CAUSE*; antē means (1) *before*, of *TIME*, “before

<sup>1</sup> Pōnē, an old form of pōtē, is used as an adverb by Virgil, but is rarely used as a Preposition except by ante-classical and post-classical authors.

<sup>2</sup> Versus usually follows the name of the place to which motion is directed: *in the direction of Ambracia, Ambrāciam versus*. Sometimes ad is inserted before the name of the place: *ad Occānū versus*. Versus and adversus have old forms versum and adversum.

185

daybreak;" (2) *before*, of PLACE, "*before the gates*;" (3) *before*, of ESTIMATION, "He loved Balbus *before*, or *above*, the rest."

## EXERCISE LX.

**186** *Ād*, *to* or *towards*, is used to denote *purpose*, with the Acc. of (1) the Gerund, or (2) if the Verb is used *transitively* in English, the Acc. of the *Gerundive Adjective*.

(1) *This will be useful to drink-* Hoc *ād* bībendum atilū erit.  
(*ing*).<sup>1</sup>

*I am prepared to fight(ing).* Ād pugnandum pārātus sum.

(2) *This is useful for cultivating the fields, i.e. towards the fields being hereafter cultivated.* Hoc est *ād* agros cōlendos atilū (*not ād agros cōlendum*).

1. Postquam ad multam noctem pugnatum est, ad castra uterque exercitus revertit.<sup>2</sup> 2. Qui apud me manserant, ii apud iudices rei facti sunt.<sup>3</sup> 3. Apud antiquos (sic apud Ciceronem scriptum est) mos erat ante lucem surgere, negotia ante voluptatem ponere. 4. Post paucos dies videbo te cum manibus tuis post tergum vinctis ad carcerem reductum. 5. Citra Alpes erat Gallia Cisalpina; ultra Alpes, Gallia Transalpina. 6. Phaethon, Phoebi filius, quum per aethera patris sui equos paulisper egisset, de curru dejectus est. 7. Ob oculos mihi mors est; hanc poenam superbiae meo jure do.<sup>4</sup> 8. Hoc contra jus fasque est, trans Euphratem exercitum tuum in pace trajicere.<sup>5</sup> 9. Interfecti sunt hostium supra viginti milia.<sup>6</sup> 10. Hoc est infra tuam dignitatem. 11. Tela haec ad eminus (*adv.*) feriendum sunt utilissima. 12. Vallis ad pugnandum nostro equitatus parum apta erat.<sup>7</sup>

**187** <sup>1</sup> In Old English *to* was followed by a Gerund resembling the form *drinking*, not by an Infinitive.

**188** <sup>2</sup> Trans "after the battle *had* gone on," and remember that *postquam* with the Latin *Perfect* (not *Pluperfect*) represents the English *had*.

Also distinguish carefully between the Conjunction *postquam*, *when* or *after* (*that*), and the Preposition *post*.

<sup>3</sup> Look out *reus*.

<sup>4</sup> Why is *jūre Abl.*? See Par. 182.

<sup>5</sup> "Trajicere . . . exercitum" is in Apposition to *hōc*.

<sup>6</sup> *Hostium* is Gen. governed by *milia*. The Nom. to *interfecti sunt* is *hostes* understood, or some other Masc. Nom. implied from the context.

<sup>7</sup> *Equitatus* is *Dat. of Advantage*, see Par. 7.

1. Among the ancients it was the custom to rise before dawn and to dine in the evening (30).
2. Why have you led your army across the Euphrates?
3. In-the-pages-of Cicero we read many (things) (that are) truly, all (things) tastefully expressed (i.e. said).
4. When he had been accused in-the-presence-of the judges he was led to prison.
5. Bread is useful even for quenching thirst.
6. This water is not fit to drink.
7. Why do you do these things against the law of-man and of-God?
8. It is right to place business before pleasure.
9. Have not these things come under your notice (i.e. eyes)?
10. During (per) two nights, in this great (i.e. so-great) storm, death was before our eyes.

## EXERCISE LXI.

189 *Intër se* (expressing all reciprocal relations) means among themselves; together; with, between, or from, one another.

Cicero's children are very loving among one another.      *Cicëronis pŭeri âmant intër se.*

These things do not agree together, or disagree from one another.      *Haec intër sē rēpugnant, or contrāria sunt.*

1. Imperatori, penes quem est imperium, jam adversus Gallos bellum moventi, debes parere.
  2. Inter urbem et campum fossa erat, per quam amnis quondam fluxerat.
  3. Tullius, quem praeter modum stultissimus quisque laudat (140) neminem praeter sese amat.<sup>1</sup>
  4. "Qui per alium facit, facit per se."
  5. Per tres annos vitam in insula quadam propter Siciliam egit.
  6. Quaedam propter sese expetenda sunt.
  7. Hoc inter sese disputant philosophi: sed inter disputationes et facta quantum (*adv.*) interest!
  8. Centurio noster, qui hanc ob causam extra teli jactum suos retinebat, cum extra culpam esset (151 a), non punitus est.
  9. Quando hanc tantam eius benevolentiam erga te agnosces?
  10. Nonne quaerendum est nobis quomodo hae sententiae inter sese contrariae sint?
  11. Via una praeter fluminis ripam erat; altera inter duos altissimos montes; tertia per silvam ad urbem ducebat.
1. He who loves no one besides himself is himself loved by no one (92).
  2. Virtue is to-be-sought on-account-of itself.<sup>2</sup>
  3. How

<sup>1</sup> Which is the Principal Verb? The Antecedent of quem? The subject of laudat? See *Hints on Construing*, Appendix III., p. 216.

<sup>2</sup> To-be-sought, i.e. meet-to-be-sought.

great a-difference-is (there) between hopes and deed! 4. The general took care to keep his soldiers out of shot. 5. One road (led) beside the walls of the city, the other (86) led through a small wood, across a stream. 6. The judgment is in your hands: When (156) will you judge? 7. Who do you beyond measure praise the foolish (126) Tullius? 8. Labianus will hasten in-the-direction of the Rhine. 9. When will you send our cavalry against the enemy, who are now fighting amongst one another? 10. I ask you, my friends, how virtue and vice are contrary (161) to one another. 11. For this cause we prepared an ambush in a wood, which was near (prōp) the town.

### VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

**190** FORMATION.—(1) The Present Tenses of Verbs compounded of a Preposition and a Verb usually change a or e of the Verb into i: thus, from *fāciō* we have *dēficiō* *sufficiō*, (i.e. *sub-ficiō*), *conficiō*, (i.e. *cum-ficiō*), &c., and from *lēgo* we have *dēlēgo*, *collēgo*, (i.e. *con-lēgo* or *cum-lēgo*), &c.<sup>1</sup> But the perfects remain unchanged: *dē-fēci*, *suf-fēci*, *dē-lēgi*, *collēgi*, &c.<sup>2</sup>

**191** (2) The Verb *prōd-est*, it is profitable, retains *d* before all forms of *sum* beginning with a vowel, but drops it before all beginning with a consonant.

*Prōd-est*; *prōd-erat*; *prōd-erit*; *prōd-esse*.  
*Prō-sum*; *prō-fuit*; *prō-fuerat*; *prō-fuerit*.

**192** CONSTRUCTION.—Verbs compounded with Prepositions mostly either (1) take a Dative of the Indirect Object, or, (2) they repeat the Preposition with the Case proper to the Preposition.

(1) *He took a ring from me.*      *Ānūlum mīhi dētraxit.*

(2) *He took a ring from my finger.*      *Ānūlum dē dīgīto mūo dētraxit.*

<sup>1</sup> But there are exceptions: e.g. *intellēgo* (not *intelligo*) is the correct form.

**193** <sup>2</sup> Three compounds of *-lēgo* make the Perf. in *-lexi*, (1) *dillēgo*, *here*; (2) *neglēgo*, *neglect*; (3) *intellēgo*, *understand*.

194 The Compounds of *sum*, e.g. *ādest*, *īnest*, *intērest*, &c., all take a Dative:

*Help me, Jupiter!*

*Adēs mīhi, Juppīter.*

195 Note the following use of *ābest*:

*I am, or shall be, within a very little of falling, lit. very little is absent by-which-not (145a) I fall.*

*Minimū ābest, or ābērit, quīn cādām.*

*I was within a very little of falling.*

*Minimū āfuit (not abfuit) quīn cādērem.*

### EXERCISE LXII.

1. Non prodest tibi flere. 2. Non dubium est quin tributum victis impositum sit (9a). 3. Nostri urbi murum circumdederunt. 4. Cur non ei gladium eripuisti? 5. Alexander ipse his proeliis interfuit. 6. Minimum afuit quin urbs ab hostibus caperetur. 7. Romani Armeniam stultissimo illi regi detrahent. 8. Interrogabo cur huic tam forti equiti equum detraxerit (9a). 9. Non dubium erat quin frumentum civibus deesset. 10. Hoc (Nom.) cum militibus nostris summum terrorem iniecisset, imperator Tullium decimae legioni praefecit. 11. Ob hanc causam frumentum exercitui defuturum erat. 12. Tu, qui me isti hodie postponis, cras antepones. 13. Oro te ne tales condiciones victae genti imponas.

1. *There was no doubt that the enemy had surrounded their camp with a ditch (i.e. set-round the camp a ditch).* 2. *The camp was within a very little of being taken by the enemy.* 3. *I asked the leader how-much (of) tribute (71) he was about-to-impose-on the conquered city.* 4. *That old soldier has taken-part-in twenty-two battles.* 5. *You are within a little of committing a very-great wickedness.* 6. *Why did you snatch-from me the last hope I had (trans. the hope which I had last, 'last to agree with 'which')?* 7. *These words of the general displeased the king: who withdrew from him a large part of the army.* 8. *I will ask him why he imposed-on us these hard (trans. these so hard) conditions.* 9. *By-this-time all hope was gone (i.e. was absent) from us.* 10. *Conquered (pass. part. agrees with 'Balbus') by this great calamity, Balbus was within a very little of surrendering the city.*



## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

- 196 There is no regular Perfect Participle *Active* in Latin, so as to express the English *having killed*. Latin has therefore to use the *Passive* Participle in the Ablative, thus:

*The barbarians, the citizens, having been killed (by them) set the city on fire i.e. the barbarians, having killed the citizens, set the city on fire.* Barbāri, cīvibus interfectis, urbem incendērunt,

The Noun and Participle thus expressing some *circumstance in connection with the principal Verb*, are put in the Ablative (which is the ordinary Case to express *manner* and *circumstance*, as well as *instrument*, see Par. 181); and this Ablative is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

The Ablative Absolute cannot always be rendered by the English Active, *e.g.*

*The citizens having been slain, the city was set on fire.* Cīvibus interfectis, urbs incensa est.

## EXERCISE LXIII.

1. Caesar, Rheno trajecto, constituit in Galliam se recipere.<sup>1</sup>
2. Hostes, castris relictis, in suos fines subito se receperunt.
3. Brutus, filiis suis a se ipso interfectis, culpam non effugit.
4. Hieme barbari, missis legatis, pacem ab imperatore petiverunt.
5. Imperator, direpto a barbaris templo, statuit urbem eorum incendere.
6. His auditis nostri clamorem tollunt, et trajecto amne impetum in hostem faciunt.
7. Tarquinio ex urbe expulso, consules imperium susceperunt.
8. Imperator, re feliciter gesta, tributum victae genti imposuerat.
9. Exposito exercitu Caesar equitatum ante se mittit.
10. Non dubium est quin, cognito hostium adventu, terror ingens nostros invasurus sit.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this exercise the Ablative Absolute should be translated in two ways, 1st, literally, *the Rhine having been crossed (by him)*, and 2nd, according to the English idiom, *having crossed the Rhine* or *when he had crossed the Rhine*. In subsequent Exercises the second or true English translation may suffice.

1. *The enemy having made a charge (i.e. a charge having been made by the enemy), our men for-a-short-time retreated.*
2. *Having disembarked (his) cavalry, Cæsar gave-orders-to (his) foot-soldiers to leap down into the water, i.e. the cavalry having been disembarked, Cæsar gave, &c.*
3. *There is no doubt that our leader, having ascertained the number of the enemy, will quickly retire.*
4. *Having carried on the war most-prosperously, the general was praised by all (his) countrymen.*
5. *The city having been plundered, the citizens determined to declare war against the barbarians.*
6. *After slaying the three hundred hostages (i.e. the three hundred hostages having been slain) the barbarians had no hope of peace.*
7. *The general, having imposed this heavy tribute (trans. this so-great tribute having been imposed) on the conquered nation, restored to them the cities he had taken.<sup>1</sup>*
8. *Cotrus, king (123) of the Athenians, having been slain, those who were besieging Athens retired in-haste (181)*

#### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (continued).

**197.** The Ablative Absolute is also used (1) with Active Present Participles, and (2) with a few Nouns or Adjectives.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>(1) <i>When the sun sets, lit. the sun setting, lions leave their caves.</i></p> <p>(2) <i>While Tullius was king, lit. Tullius being king.</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;"><i>While I am alive, i.e. I being alive.</i></p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;"><i>In my judgment, i.e. while I am judge.</i></p> | <p><i>Sole occidente, liones antra linquant (p. 207).</i></p> <p><i>Tullio rege.</i></p> <p><i>Mē vivo (adj.).</i></p> <p><i>Mē iudice.</i></p> |
|---|---|

**198** N.B.—When the Noun with which the Participle agrees can be made the *Subject* or *Object* of a Verb, the *Ablative Absolute* must not be used. Thus, *While the general was leading on his men he was transfixed by an arrow*, must not be rendered “*Imp̄rātōre milites dūcento (īs) s̄gittā transfixus est,*” but “*Imp̄rātor, milites dūcens, s̄gittā transfixus est,*” or else “*Imp̄rātōrem, milites dūcentem, s̄gittā transfixit.*”

**198a** <sup>1</sup> Note that the Relative, when omitted in English, must be inserted in Latin: *the cities (which) he had taken.*

*Dionysius having been banished,  
(he) taught boys.<sup>1</sup>*

*Dionysius, ex urbe pulsus,  
pueros docebat (not, Dionysio pulso.)*

*Having at last found the boy,  
Tullius sent him back to his  
(the boy's) friends.*

*Puerum tandem repperit Tullius  
ad amicos eius remisit  
(not, Puerum reperto . . T.  
eum remisit.)*

#### EXERCISE LXIV.

1. Hostes, me duce, facillime vincetis. 2. Trecentos obsidum, quos in armis cepimus, vinctos statim interfecimus. 3. Filia, matre nequiquam misericordiam implorante, jugulata est. 4. Mulier, nequiquam misericordiam implorans, coram rege jugulata est. 5. Tullius, reclamante optimo quoque civium, in exilium pulsus est. 6. Trajecto fluvio, Suevorum fines intrabimus; a quibus, me iudice, nobis acerrime resistetur (167). 7. Gaio haec dicente, omnes tacebant; itaque Tullius, nullo reclamante, ab exilio revocatus est. 8. Cacsaro et Bibulo consulibus, hoc templum prope viam Latinam aedificatum est. 9. Non igitur dubium est quin Alpibus trajectis Hannibal in Italiam descensurus sit. 10. Itaque, his compertis, consentientibus civibus, magistratus omnia ad resistendum (186) paraverunt.

1. By your own judgment (i.e. you yourself being judge) your brother has conducted this war unsuccessfully. 2. The barbarians, having immediately slain the hostages, determined to stir up a war against us. 3. The daughter was led before the king, while the mother in vain protested (i.e. the mother in vain protesting). 4. The general having been pierced with an arrow, the enemy determined to deliver him to us (198). 5. The bridge having been broken-down, we determined to withdraw from Germany into Gaul. 6. During-the-reign-of Terquin, great buildings were erected in the city. 7. There is no doubt that our general, having ascertained the arrival of the enemy, will immediately retire. 8. The excellent Tullius (126) was recalled to his country, on the fourth day, no one (92) protesting (against it.)

---

<sup>1</sup> The *he* is very often (though incorrectly) inserted even in modern English; but it must be omitted in Latin.

EXERCISE LXIV.\*

(Recapitulatory.)

In eo eramus ut vinceremur. 2. Curate ne ab hostibus opprimamini. 3. Si urbem ipsi incenderitis, nemo vestrum servabitur. 4. Murus et arx ab equitibus capta sunt. 5. Et (g.) et tu ab optimo quoque civium laudati sumus. 6. Urbem captam Balbus, dux crudelissimus, incenderit. 7. Ne tu injustos, Tulli optime, laudaveris. 8. Quod scelus commisit? Quid morte dignum fecit? 9. Num tu, puer jam duodecim annos (31), natus octo vel novem horas dormis? 10. Interrogastine num in oppido mulier mansura sit? 11. Balbum, plura fortasse dicturum, hastae equitum transfixerunt. 12. Quid huic arbori, fructum jam praebiturae, tantum (*adv.*) nocuit? 13. Huius tantae calamitatis vel in aeternum nobis semper erit ingratisissima. 14. Interrogat quando ventura sit (32)? num in animo habeat biduum in oppido manere? 15. De Tullio valde dubito num vitio potius quam virtuti obtemperaturus sit. 16. Balbus, homo parum (*adv.*) contentus, aliena laudat, sua semper culpatur. 17. Cur tibi, nostri immemori, tot dona damus? 18. Ab optimo quoque civium responsum est. 19. Nobis (192) pro patria pugnantibus homo ignavissimus ob ignaviam suam ipse ultimam eripuit. 20. Minimum auit quin urbi fossam circumdaremus. 21. Non est dubium quin Balbus decimae legioni praefectus fuerit.

DEPONENT VERBS.

- 199 A few Verbs (called Deponent) have a Past Participle with Active meaning. These Verbs, though having an *Active meaning*, yet have a *Passive form* in all the Tenses and in the Past Participle, as hortor, *I exhort*, hortabor, *I will exhort*, hortatus, *having exhorted*.
- 200 Besides the Passive forms, every Deponent Verb has also the Active forms of the *Participles*, *Supines*, and *Gerunds*: hortans, hortaturus, *exhorting*, *about to exhort*, &c.
- 201 The Deponent Gerundive, e.g. hortandus, *meant to be exhorted*, is used like the Gerundive of an ordinary Verb.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Past Participles of a few Deponent Verbs are sometimes used Passively, as, adeptus, *having been obtained*, from adipiscor.

## DEPONENT

I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, *exhort.* like ämör.II. Vêrêr, vêritüs sum, vêrêri, *fear,* like moneör.

I.			II.		
INDICATIVE MOOD.	Present.	Hort-ör, Hort-äris (äre), &c.	{ I exhort, or am exhorting. thou exhortest. &c.	Vör-ör, Vör-öris (öre), &c.	{ I fear, or am fearing. thou fearest. &c.
	Future Simple.	Hort-äbör, Hort-äbör, Hort-äbör, sum.	{ I shall exhort. I was exhorting. I have exhorted, or I exhorted.	Vör-äbör, Vör-äbör, Vör-äbör, sum.	{ I shall fear. I was fearing I have feared, or I feared.
	Imperfect.	Hort-ätör, Hort-ätör, Hort-ätör, sum.	{ I shall have exhorted.	Vör-ätör, Vör-ätör, Vör-ätör, sum.	{ I shall have feared.
	Perfect.	Hort-ätör, Hort-ätör, Hort-ätör, sum.	{ I had exhorted.	Vör-ätör, Vör-ätör, Vör-ätör, sum.	{ I had feared.
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ätör, Hort-ätör, Hort-ätör, sum.	{ I had exhorting.	Vör-ätör, Vör-ätör, Vör-ätör, sum.	{ I had fearing.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ I may exhort. I might exhort. I may have exhorted.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ I may fear. I might fear. I may have feared.
	Imperfect.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ I should have exhorted.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ I should have feared.
	Perfect.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.		Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.		Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	
IMPERATIVE.	Present.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ Exhort thou. thou shalt, or must exhort.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ Fear thou. thou shalt, or must fear.
	Future.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.		Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	
INFINITIVE.	Pres. & Imperf.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ to exhort.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ to fear.
	Perf. & Plup.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ to have exhorted.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ to have feared.
	Future.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ to be about to exhort.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ to be about to fear.
PARTICIPLES.	Present.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ exhorting.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ fearing.
	Future.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ about to exhort.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ about to fear.
	Perfect.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ having exhorted.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ having feared.
	Gerundive.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ meet to be exhorted.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ meet to be feared.
SENTENCES.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ to exhort.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ to fear.	
	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ to be exhorting.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ to be fearing.	
GERUND.	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ of exhorting.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ of fearing.	
	Hort-ör, Hort-ör, Hort-ör, sim.	{ &c.	Vör-ör, Vör-ör, Vör-ör, sim.	{ &c.	

## VERBS.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, *speak*, like rēgōr.IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīrī, *divide*, like audiō.

III.			IV.		
<i>I recat.</i>	Lōqu-ŕr,	{ <i>I speak, or am speaking.</i> <i>thou speakest.</i> &c. &c.	Part-lōr,	{ <i>I divide, or am dividing.</i> <i>thou dividest.</i> &c. &c.	INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Lōqu-ŕrīs (ŕr),		Part-lŕrīs (ŕr),		
	&c.		&c.		
<i>Pres. Simple.</i>	Lōqu-ŕr,	{ <i>I shall speak.</i> <i>I was speaking.</i> <i>I have spoken,</i> or <i>I spoke.</i>	Part-lŕr,	{ <i>I shall divide.</i> <i>I was dividing.</i> <i>I have divided,</i> or <i>I divided.</i>	
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ŕrŕ,		Part-lŕrŕ,		
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōqu-ŕrŕs sum,		Part-lŕrŕs sum,		
<i>Pres. Perfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕs (ŕr),	{ <i>I shall have spoken</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕs ŕro,	{ <i>I shall have divided.</i>	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕs ŕram,		Part-lŕrŕŕs ŕram,		
<i>I can.</i>	Lōqu-ŕr,	<i>I may speak.</i>	Part-lŕr,	<i>I may divide.</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Lōqu-ŕrŕr,	<i>I might speak.</i>	Part-lŕrŕ,	<i>I might divide.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōqu-ŕrŕs sum,	<i>I may have spoken.</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕs sum,	<i>I may have divided.</i>	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕŕs ŕram,	<i>I should have spoken.</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕŕs ŕram,	<i>I should have divided.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ŕrŕ,	<i>Speak thou.</i>	Part-lŕrŕ,	<i>Divide thou.</i>	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Future.</i>	Lōqu-ŕrŕŕ,	{ <i>thou shalt, or must speak.</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕ,	{ <i>thou shalt, or must divide.</i>	
<i>Pres. &amp; Imp.</i>	Lōqu-ŕr,	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-lŕr,	<i>to divide.</i>	INFINITIVE.
<i>Perf. &amp; Plup.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕs ŕram,	{ <i>to have spoken.</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕs ŕram,	{ <i>to have divided.</i>	
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕŕŕs ŕram,		Part-lŕrŕŕŕŕs ŕram,		
		<i>to be about to speak.</i>		<i>to be about to divide.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>	Lōqu-ŕram,	<i>speaking.</i>	Part-lŕram,	<i>dividing.</i>	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Future.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕŕŕ,	<i>about to speak.</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕŕŕ,	<i>about to divide.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕrŕŕs ŕram,	<i>having spoken.</i>	Part-lŕrŕŕŕŕs ŕram,	<i>having divided.</i>	
<i>Gerundive.</i>	Lōqu-ŕramdŕŕs	<i>merito be spoken</i>	Part-lŕramdŕŕs	<i>merito be divided</i>	
<i>SUPINES.</i>	Lōcūt-ŕram,	<i>to speak.</i>	Part-lŕram,	<i>to divide.</i>	
	Lōcūt-ŕrŕ,	<i>to be spoken.</i>	Part-lŕrŕ,	<i>to be divided.</i>	
<i>GERUND.</i>	Lōqu-ŕramdŕŕ,	<i>of speaking.</i>	Part-lŕramdŕŕ,	<i>of dividing.</i>	
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	

## EXERCISE LXV.

**202** The Participle can be used (like the Adjective, Par. 34) to agree with *men* understood: *victis parvè, spare the conquered*; *fugientes æquero, follow those-who-are fleeing*.<sup>1</sup>

1. Non dubium est quin regina filias suas hortata sit (9a). 2. No mentitus sis, mi fili. 3. Interrogabam puerum cur asini vocem imitaretur. 4. Pygmalion, diu imaginem contemplantus, tandem eam spirantem mirabatur. 5. Contra parva, homo ignavissimus minora perficiebat. 6. Non dubium est quin miranda perfecturus sis, nisi tyranni exemplum imitaberis. 7. Hortandus est tibi frater ne pessimi istius amici exemplum imitetur.<sup>2</sup> 8. Deos veneramini, imitamini parentes. 9. Diu dolum meditatus tandem servis suis imperavit ut armati gladiis Tullium nocte sequerentur. 10. O divinam illam vitam voluptatem (202) aspernantium, sequentium virtutem!<sup>3</sup>

1. Virtue is to be followed for its own sake (i.e. on account of itself). 2. Having imitated the bad from (his) homeland, the boy made himself very like (66) the bad. 3. The life of those-who-follow (trans. those-following) virtue is most happy. 4. Attempt great things, that you may at least accomplish small things. 5. Having long contemplated the stars, the philosopher did not see the well at (ad) his feet. 6. Why, O ye traitors, do ye meditate plots? How-often shall I entreat you not to (143) lie-in-wait-for the consul? 7. In vain do you revere the gods, most deceitful of men, (while) meditating snares for the innocent (7). 8. Ah! the happy life of those-who-scorn wealth and do not (18) suffer poverty.

**203** RULE.—Obliviscor, reminiscor, recordor, misereor, commonly govern the Genitive.<sup>4</sup>

**204** <sup>1</sup> Note that "iis victis" would mean "them, since they are conquered." and "eos fugientes," "them, while, or since, they are fleeing;" and generally a Latin Participle, in agreement with a Noun or Pronoun, may be rendered by an English Conjunction (154a).

**205** <sup>2</sup> When an ordinary and a Pronominal Adjective both agree with the same Noun the Pronominal Adjective generally comes between the ordinary Adjective and the Noun: *That distinguished man, clarissimus illè vir*.

**206** <sup>3</sup> The Accusative is commonly used with O in exclamation (not in address), and may be called the *Exclamatory Accusative*.

<sup>4</sup> These Verbs were once reflexive, *I forget-myself, remember-myself, pity-myself of*, &c. Compare the French "*se plaindre*," *to pity*, and in Old English, *I remember myself of*.

Distinguish between (1) *misereor*, -eri, *I shew-pity-to*, which governs an Acc., and (2) *misereor*, -eri, *I feel-pity-for*, which governs a Genitive.

207 RULE.—Fungor, fruor, ūtor, vescor, pōtior, govern the Ablative.<sup>1</sup>

EXERCISE LXVI.

1. Non dubium est quin mulier oratione liberrima usa sit (9a).
  2. Interrogabam barbaros num pane vescerentur, nonne ferarum pellibus pro vestitu uterentur.
  3. Miserere Balbi, viri justissimi, quem nemo adhuc miseratus est.
  4. Recordare uxoris tuae; ne liberorum oblitus sis, in te uno spem ponentium.
  5. Vastandi sunt agri gentis illius crudelissimae quae nihil veneratur, nullius miseretur.
  6. Regno potitus, promissorum statim oblitus est.
  7. Qui magistratibus functi erant, eos, capta urbe summo honore affecimus.
  8. Dum vita fruimini, nolite (169) virtutis oblivisci.
  9. Sagacitate canum ad nostram utilitatem utimur.
  10. Cur nullius ipse miseritus, nostra misericordia frui cupis?
1. *To remember past evils is sometimes pleasant.* 2. *There is no doubt that very-many enjoy the memory of past evils.* 3. *You should eat (i.e. it-is-to-be-eaten) that you may live; you should not live that you may eat.* 4. *Let us use the opportunity which the enemy have afforded us.* 5. *If you do not (i.e. unless you shall) show pity to the conquered, beware lest you yourselves suffer the same fate [trans. same (things).]* 6. *Having suffered adversity, the woman will peculiarly [i.e. before (ante) others] enjoy prosperity.* 7. *I will ask whether he discharges his duty well or (171) ill.* 8. *Do not forget, (as) an old-man, those precepts which you learned (as) a boy.*<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE LXVII.

1. Nisi res adversas experiemur patientiam non discemus.
2. Loquere pauca, multa disce.
3. Parentes et verendi et amandi sunt.
4. Plurima pollicentibus ne tu credideris.<sup>3</sup>
5. Forte leo et asinus et vulpes, partituri praedam, de partibus sortiebantur.<sup>4</sup>
6. Dux noster, cives captae urbis clementer allocutus, pavorem omnium minuit.
7. Nocte proficiscamur ne hostis nos videat.
8. Nonne scelus fatemini? Fatendum est, si poenam effugere cupitis.
9. Quid tibi videtur? Qui pro

<sup>1</sup> These Verbs were also once reflexive, e.g. fruor, *I enjoy myself with*; vescor, *I feed myself with*; ūtor, *I employ myself with*.

<sup>2</sup> Old-man is in Apposition with you the Subject of forget.

<sup>3</sup> Pollicentibus is not Abl.; see Par. 202.

<sup>4</sup> Vulpēs is feminine; why therefore is partitūri masc.; See Par. 161. N.B. Latin inserts et between each pair of a list of Nouns or omits et between each; English inserts it only before the last

The lion, the ass, and the fox. Lēo, (et) āsinus, (et) vulpēs.



patria moritur nonne is laude dignus est?<sup>1</sup> 10. Cohorti jam ex urbe proficiscenti sex aquilae, omen optimum,<sup>2</sup> visae sunt (*appeared*). 11. Non dubium erat quin mulier fame et siti mortua esset. 12. Adepti libertatem, nonne contenti eritis nisi et (146) imperium adipiscemini?

1. *Did not pain seem the greatest of evils* (73) *to the disciples of Epicurus?* 2. *Take care to obtain liberty.* 3. *Having confessed this, do you dare to remain in the city?* 4. *The general made every preparation* (i.e. *prepared all things*) *that he might set-out on the next day.* 5. *The woman was within a very little* (194) *of dying of* (Lat. Abl.) *hunger and thirst.* 6. *When-they-had-conversed* (154a) *together* (189) *they determined to set-out at night.* 7. *Do not draw-lots about the booty, O soldiers, since-you-are* (i.e. *being*) *about-to-obtain a greater booty by fighting.* 8. *Trust one-who-has-experienced* (202) (it) : *he-who promises much* (i.e. *many things*) *performs little* (i.e. *few things*). 9. *I asked the rich Balbus when* (156) *he was going to enjoy* (i.e. *was about-to-enjoy*) *the riches which he had* (subjunctive) *obtained.* 10. *What prevented you from confessing the truth* (i.e. *true things*)?

#### THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (ACTIVE).

208

1. OBJECT-CLAUSES.—When a Principal Sentence, e.g. *he is mistaken*, becomes the Object of a Verb, e.g. *believe, declare, &c.*, there are two ways of expressing the change in English *but only one in Latin, viz., the Accusative and Infinitive*:

*I declare* (1) *that he is mistaken.*

*I declare* (2) *him to be mistaken.*

Dīco ĕum errāre.

Here *errāre* is “the Infinitive depending on *dīco*”; and *ĕum* is “the Subject of the Infinitive *errāre*,” (i.e. *ĕum* is so related to *errāre* that, *if errāre* were in the Indicative, *ĕum*, or rather *īs*, *would be* its Subject or Nominative).

209

2. SUBJECT-CLAUSES.—The same construction, viz., Accusative and Infinitive, is used in Subject-Clauses: *That-he-is-in-error, is certain*, (or, *It is certain that he is in error*),

<sup>1</sup> What is the antecedent (Par. 107) of *qui*?

<sup>2</sup> The punctuation shews that *ōmen* is not Nom. after *sunt*: what Case is it then (123)?

Certum est eum errare; *That I should go into exile pleased them, (or, It pleased them that I should go into exile),*  
Placuit eis me in exilium ire.

210 THE TENSE IN SUBJECT AND OBJECT-CLAUSES.—After a Past Tense of the Principal Verb, the Tense of the English Indicative e.g. *is* (208, 1) is changed, but the Tense of the English Infinitive e.g. *to be* (208, 2) remains unchanged: and the Latin Infinitive also remains unchanged: *I declared (1) that he WAS mistaken; I declared (2) him TO BE mistaken · dixi eum errare.*<sup>1</sup>

211	OBJECT-CLAUZE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	
	<i>Tullius said that</i>	<i>Tullius said,</i>	<i>Tullius dixit</i>
	(1)	(1)	(1)
(a)	<i>he conquered</i>	" <i>I conquer</i> "	<i>sē vincere</i>
(b)	<i>he was conquering</i>	" <i>I am conquering</i> "	
	(2)	(2)	(2)
{	<i>he conquered,</i>	" <i>I conquered</i> "	<i>sē viciſſe</i>
	<i>had conquered, or,</i>	" <i>I was conquering</i> "	
	<i>had been conquering</i>	" <i>I had conquered</i> "	
		" <i>I had been conquering</i> "	
	(3)	" <i>I have conquered</i> "	
	<i>he should conquer</i>	(3)	(3)
	<i>he was about to conquer</i>	" <i>I shall conquer</i> "	<i>sē victūrum esse?</i>
		" <i>I am about to conquer</i> "	

### EXERCISE LXVII, A.

1. Tullia dicit se tibi hæc pollicenti credituram esse.<sup>3</sup>
2. Clamaverunt obsides se meliore fato dignos esse.
3. Responderunt virgines nunquam se tantæ virtutis oblituras esse.
4. Negavit magister discipulos corpora satis exercuisse.
5. Placetne tibi tot cives uni tyranno parere?
6. Respondit puer se nescire quot sorores haberet.
7. Fatendum est te promississe multa, paucâ perficere.
8. Scribunt mihi se duos menses in Italia mansisse, jam in Græciam profecturos esse.

<sup>1</sup> Dixi eum erravisse would have meant, *I declared him to have been, or that he had been, mistaken.*

<sup>2</sup> In accordance with Par. 24, esse takes the same case after it as before it; and therefore, since sē is the Accusative, victūrum is also Accusative.

<sup>3</sup> Hitherto sē has been used only for *himself, themselves, &c.*: but in Object-Clauses it must often be rendered by *he, they, &c.*

(Write out the Subject and Object-Clauses in the above Exercise as Principal Sentences: 1. Ego tibi. . . credam. 2. Meliore fato digni sumus, &c. ; see 218a).

1. *It is certain that no dangers will terrify him.* 2. *He said that he feared (210) these dangers.*<sup>1</sup> 3. *The boy writes that he had always exercised (his) body.* 4. *My sister says that she will not depart from the city.* 5. *Have you heard that the barbarians set the city on fire?* 6. *Do not (169) say that you did this.* 7. *He said that he should bind the captives.* 8. *He did-not-know that they had escaped in the night.*

### THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (PASSIVE).

**212** As the Latin Passive has no Future Infinitive (except the Supine *īrī*, (248)), the Latin employs a periphrasis:

*Tullius said that he should be conquered.*      *Tullius dixit fore, or futurum esse, ut vinceretur, i.e. that it would come to pass that he would be conquered.*

<b>213</b> OBJECT-CLAUSE.	PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	<i>Tullius dixit</i>
(1) <i>he was being conquered</i>	(1) "I am being conquered"	(1) <i>sē vinor</i>
(2) (a) <i>he was conquered</i>	(2) (a) "I am conquered"	(2) (a) <i>sē victum esse</i> <sup>2</sup>
(c) <i>he had been conquered</i>	(b) "I was conquered" (c) "I had been conquered" (d) "I have been conquered"	(c) <i>sē victum fuisse</i> <sup>2</sup>
(3) <i>he should be conquered</i> <i>he was about to be conquered</i>	(3) "I shall be conquered" "I am about to be conquered"	(3) <i>fore, or futurum esse ut vinceretur</i>

<sup>1</sup> Wherever *he, she, &c.*, in a Subordinate Clause, stand for some Noun or Pronoun which is the Nominative to the Principal Verb, they must be rendered by *sē*.

**214** <sup>2</sup> The *esse* or *fuisse* is sometimes omitted (as also in the Active Inf.): and care is then required to distinguish the Inf. from the Participle.

**215** Some Compound Tenses are occasionally supplied in Latin by the phrase "in eo sum ut" (Par. 106). *Tullius said that he was or had been (on the point of) being conquered, Tullius dixit se in eo esse, or fuisse, ut vinceretur.*

**216** <sup>3</sup> "I am loved" would imply that the action continued, and would be rendered "*sē amari*;" but "I am conquered" implies that the action is

N.B.—The Tense of the Latin Infinitive in the *third* column above, is the same as that of the English Verb in the *second* column, where it is used as a *Principal Verb*.

- 217 RULE.—The Latin Inf. in a Subject or Object-Clause is of the same Tense as the English Verb would be, if it were made a Principal Verb in the words of the speaker.

### EXERCISE LXVIII.

- 218 RULE.—Use *sē*, *suns*, &c. (not *ēm*, *eius*, &c.) when the Pronoun (in a Subordinate Clause, see page 328) stands for the Subject of the Principal Verb :

*Tullius said that he (i.e. Tullius) was mistaken.*      *Tullius dixit sē errāre.*

*I said that he was mistaken.*      *Dixi ēum errāre.*

1. Quis nescit solem lunā majorem esse? 2. Dixit se in animo habere ad patriam reverti. 3. Dixit se in animo habuisse ex Italia proficisci; sed tempestatem obstitisse. 4. Mulieres clamaverunt nunquam se ad oppidum libenter reversuras esse. 5. Balbum certiorum fecimus nos ad Italiam venisse, ibi paulisper manere, inde ad Graeciam venturos (214). 6. Tullius clamavit quondam se solum fuisse, nunc vero venia dignum esse. 7. Interrogavi num captivos vinxisset: respondit nondum se vinxisse, cras autem vinciturum esse. 8. Certum erat urbem ab ipsis civibus incensam esse. 9. Compertum erat hostium (91) trecentos prope a castris nostris abesse. 10. Certum est nunquam fore ut urbs a te capiatur. 11. Negavere hostes futurum esse ut nobis urbem intrantibus resisteretur (167). 12. Respondimus legatos a nobis quoque ad hostem mitti.<sup>1</sup>

*past*, and only the *result* is *present*. The pupil must carefully distinguish between the two meanings of the ambiguous English Passive, e.g. (1) "the house is *burned*, incensa est;" (2) "the house is *guarded*," custoditur.

218. <sup>1</sup> The pupil (before proceeding to the English-Latin Exercise) should write out the Subject and Object Clauses in the Latin Exercise, as Principal Sentences, and in the words of the speakers. Thus, (1) sol lunā major est. (2) Ego in animo habeo, &c. (3) Ego in animo habui (or habueram) ex Italia, &c. (4) Nunquam nos revertemur, &c.

In the English-Latin Exercise, (before being turned into Latin) the Subject and Object Clauses may be similarly turned into Principal Sentences. (1) *Four hundred of the enemy are hastening*, &c. (2) *Some of the citizens say one thing, others another*. (3) *I had purposed to set out for Greece, but now I purpose*, &c. Then use the Rule in Par. 217.

1. *It had been ascertained that four hundred of the enemy were hastening to the city.* 2. *He answered that some (26) of the citizens said one thing, others another.* 3. *He said that he had formerly purposed to set-out for (i.e. to) Greece, but (139a) that now he purposed to remain in Italy.* 4. *It is certain that the women will never remain in Greece.* 5. *Who does-not-know that Italy is larger than Sicily?* 6. *We did-not-know that the hostages had been immediately bound.* 7. *I informed his brother that we had the horse, and that we should sell it to-morrow.* 8. *It was ascertained by our spies that three thousand of the enemy had set-out from the camp by night.* 9. *They said that we (212) should be conquered by the Scythians.* 10. *Who does-not-know that Tarquin was sent into exile by Brutus?* 11. *I for-my-part (139) still hope; but Tullius says that the river will be crossed before the third day.* 12. *When will you confess that you (168) (164) alone (96) must pay the penalty of this folly?*

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

- 219** 1. Impersonal Verbs denoting *feeling* require the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Cause<sup>1</sup>:

Misēret Piget Poenitet Pūdet Taedet	} me tuae stultitiae.	I	pity am vexed at repent of am ashamed of am weary of	} your folly.

- 220** 2. Others require an Accusative of the Person, and an Infinitive, or Nominative, for the Subject:

Dēcet Dēdēcet	} mē	diligentia. hūc faciō.	Industry To do this	becomes or misbecomes	} me.

- 221** 3. Others require a Dative of the Person and an Infinitive for the Subject.

Lībet Līcet	} mīhī hūc faciō.	It pleases me (suits my fancy) It is lawful for me	} to do this. <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> So in Old English, *it repents me of, it pitied him of, &c.*

**221a** <sup>2</sup> Plācet is used somewhat similarly with a subject-clause, "plācūt lūgātos mitti," *it pleased them, i.e. they resolved, that ambassadors should be sent*; but being personally used, it is not classed among Impersonal Verbs.

- 222 4. The verbs *oportet*, *it behoves*, and *liquet*, *it is clear*, take an Accusative and Infinitive as their Subject-Clause.<sup>1</sup>

*It is clear that the man has been slain.*      *Liquet* hōmīnem interfectum esse.

- 223 Note that *oportet* (or *dēbeo*, *I owe*) is never followed by the Perfect Infinitive.

*You ought to come*, lit., *it*      *Oportet* tū (or *dēbēs*) vērīre.

*You ought to have come*, lit.,      *Oportuit* tū (or *dēbuisti*) vērīre.

- 224 5. Several Verbs relating to the weather are used impersonally, as in English: *pluit*, *it rains*, &c.

- 225 All the above Verbs (except those in Class 5) are of the 2nd conjugation: *dēcēre*, *dēcēbit*, *dēcēbat*, *dēcuit*, *dēcuerat*, *dēcuisset*, &c.

- 226 Besides the Perfects in *-iit*, there are also in use *pertae-sum est* (for *taedūit*); *miseritum est*; *pigitum est*; *pnditum est*; *licitum est*; *libitum est* (which is found in Cicero perhaps to the exclusion of *libūit*).

### EXERCISE LXIX.

1. Senem stultitiae suae poenitebit.<sup>2</sup> 2. Quando mulieres suspicionis suae pudebit? 3. Non dubium est quin pedites huius tam longi itineris taedeat. 4. Licebit hosti nocto ex urbe proficisci. 5. Oportuit te ei mulieri veniam dare. 6. Nonne licebat nobis isti praedam eripere? 7. Interrogavi latronem nonne se tot scelerum puderot, nonne latrociniorum jam pertaesum esset. 8. Nonne iudicem dedecebat inepte loqui? 9. Aliquando te tuae tam ineptae jactationis poenitebit.<sup>3</sup> 10. De hac re libitum est mihi plura scribere.

- 227 <sup>1</sup> *Oportet* and *liquet* are also followed by the Subjunctive with *ut* omitted; *oportet* (*ut*) *virtutem amare*, *it is right that you should love virtue*. The insertion of the *ut* is post-classical, or rare.

- 227<sup>a</sup> <sup>2</sup> As the implied Subject of the sentence is *senex*, "the old man will repent," *sius* is here used and not *sius*, see Par. 218.

- 228 <sup>3</sup> *Tam* is often used between a pronominal and ordinary Adjective in the sense of *very*.

11. Interrogabo mulierem nonne se jam jactationis suae taceat. 12. Liquebat hostes per dolum atque insidias pacem petere. 13. Licet omnes (227) fremant; consilium meum non muto.

1. When will it be lawful for us to set-out from the city? 2. There is no doubt that the citizens are-ashamed of their (227a) boasting. 3. Ask, dear son, whether the women repented of their suspicion. 4. Does it befit an orator to be-angry without cause? 5. You ought to know at-least these-things which it misbecomes even (141a) a boy to-be-ignorant-of. 6. I asked the magistrate whether it-was-lawful to bury the dead within the city. 7. It-is-clear that his brothers were treacherously slain. 8. Let (227) them murmur to one another (189) that I am guilty; I-for-my-part (189) know that I am innocent. 9. When will you confess that you ought to (223) have led those two hundred soldiers with you? 10. It was uncertain whether the woman was weary of the journey or desired to return to her father. 11. Balbus declared that his slaves ought to have snatched the booty from the robbers.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

229

1. Possum, pōtuī, possē, — to be able; can.<sup>1</sup>

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
1. Present.		3. Imperfect.	
Pos-sum	Pos-sim	Pōt-eram	Pos-sem
Pōt-ēs	Pos-sis	Pōt-ērās	Pos-sēs
Pōt-est	Pos-sit	Pōt-ērāt	Pos-sēt
Pos-sūmūs	Pos-simūs	Pōt-ērāmūs	Pos-sēmūs
Pōt-estis	Pos-sitis	Pōt-ērātis	Pos-sētis.
Pos-sunt	Pos-sint	Pōt-ērant	Pos-sent
2. Future-Simple.		4. Perfect.	
Pōt-ēro	(wanting.)	Pōt-ui	Pōt-uērīm
Pōt-ērīs		Pōt-uistī	Pōt-uērīs
Pōt-ērīt		Pōt-uīt	Pōt-uērīt
Pōt-ērīmūs		Pōt-uīmūs	Pōt-uērīmūs
Pōt-ērītis		Pōt-uistis	Pōt-uērītis
Pōt-ērunt		Pōt-uērunt (ērē)	Pōt-uērint

230

<sup>1</sup> Pos-sum is compounded of potis-sum, I-am-able, which passes into pōte-sum and thence to pos-sum. The Tenses may be obtained by putting pot- before the different parts of the Verb sum and (1) striking out f after t, e.g. pot-(f)ui; (2) changing t into s before s, e.g. pos-sum (not pot-sum); (3) contracting pot-esse and pot-essum into posse and possem.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
5. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>		6. <i>Pluperfect.</i>	
Pōt-uēro	(wanting)	Pōt-uēram	Pōt-uissem
Pōt-uērīs		Pōt-uērās	Pōt-uissēs
Pōt-uērīt		Pōt-uērāt	Pōt-uissēt
Pōt-uērimūs		Pōt-uērāmūs	Pōt-uissēmūs
Pōt-uērītīs		Pōt-uērātīs	Pōt-uissētīs
Pōt-uērīnt		Pōt-uērānt	Pōt-uissent

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. and Imp.*—Possē. *Perf. and Plup.*—Pōtuissē. *Future*  
 —wanting. (Participle pōtens, used only as Adjective,  
*powerful.*)

- 231 As possum has no Participle in -rus, it cannot form the Periphrastic Tense of the Subjunctive (Par. 155) used to represent the Future in an Indirect Sentence. Hence, in this and other Verbs which have not the Participle in -rus, a Periphrasis (see Par. 212) is used:

*I will ask whether he will be able to help me.* Interrogābo num fūtūrum sit  
 : ut possit mihī subvĕnīre, i.e.  
*whether it-will-come-to-pass that he may be able.*

## EXERCISE LXX.

- 232 Pōtui (and sometimes pōtēram) is sometimes followed, like oportuit above, by a Present Inf. where the English *could* requires the Perfect Infinitive:

*You could have come.* Pōtuisti (or pōtēras) vĕnīre.

1. Veniam si potero; cura tu ut venire possis.
2. Poteras patri tuo parere, sed beneficiorum eius plerumque immemor eras.
3. Interrogavi nonne possent trecerti nostrorum, cum mille equitibus sociorum, duobus milibus hostium resistere.
4. Non possumus justius quam a te gubernari.
5. Nonne potuistis melius scribere? Frater vester optime scribere poterat (*used to be able*).
6. Nihil honestius Epaminondae dari potuit quam mors clarissima.
7. Quis dubitat quin urbs



a nostris (34) expugnari potuerit? 8. Interrogavi agricolam nonne potuisset quolibet tempore fundum suum vendere.<sup>1</sup> 9. Valde dubito num futurum sit ut possis voluptatis illecebris resistere. 10. Miserum est olim potuisse, nunc non posse, amicis subvenire.

1. *There is no doubt that you can help me, O friends.* 2. *I asked our men whether they could resist three thousand of the enemy.*<sup>2</sup> 3. *Will you not be able to come, boys, if we ask you?* 4. *You could have written better, but you neglected the matter.* 5. *That you may be able to help others, acquire riches.* 6. *The enemy bridged the river that they might be able at any time (quolibet) to invade our territories.* 7. *Do you believe that you will be able to resist these great enticements?* 8. *Those who cannot be first, can generally be before (prior) the last.*
2. *Vōlo, vōlūi, vellē, —I am willing, wish.*
3. *Nōlo, nōlūi, nollē, —I am unwilling, do not wish.*<sup>3</sup>
4. *Mālo, mālūi, mallē, —I prefer, would rather, had rather.*<sup>3</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. Present.

<i>Vōlo</i>	<i>Nōlo</i>	<i>Mālo</i>
<i>Vīs</i>	<i>Nōn vīs</i>	<i>Māvīs</i>
<i>Vult</i>	<i>Nōn vult</i>	<i>Māvult</i>
<i>Vōlūmūs</i>	<i>Nōlūmūs</i>	<i>Mālūmūs</i>
<i>Vultis</i>	<i>Nōn vultis</i>	<i>Māvultis</i>
<i>Vōlunt</i>	<i>Nōlunt</i>	<i>Mālunt</i>

2. Future-Simple.<sup>4</sup>

<i>Vōl-am</i>	<i>Nōl-am</i>	<i>Māl-am</i>
<i>Vōl-ēs, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Nōl-ēs, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Māl-ēs, &amp;c.</i>

3. Imperfect.<sup>4</sup>

<i>Vōl-ēbam</i>	<i>Nōl-ēbam</i>	<i>Māl-ēbam</i>
<i>Vōl-ēbās, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Nōl-ēbās, &amp;c.</i>	<i>Māl-ēbās, &amp;c.</i>

**232a** <sup>1</sup> Where *suis* cannot possibly refer to the Subject of the Principal Verb, it may be used to refer to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb.

**233** <sup>2</sup> For *can* may be substituted *am, is, are able*; and for *could, was, or were able*; and this will often help the pupil to determine the Tense and Mood of *possum* into which *can* should be translated.

**234** <sup>3</sup> *Nōlo* is for *nē-vōlo*, and *mālo* for *ma-* (i.e. *māgis* or *māge*) -*vōlo*. The dropping of the *v* is illustrated by the forms *sīs* (for *sī vīs, if you please*) and (*sultis* for *sī vultis*).

<sup>4</sup> These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of *rēgo*.

4. *Perfect*.<sup>1</sup>Völ-ūī  
Völ-uistī, &c.Nöl-ūī  
Nöl-uistī, &c.Māl-ūī  
Māl-uistī, &c.5. *Future-Perfect*.<sup>1</sup>Völ-uëro  
Völ-uëris, &c.Nöl-uëro  
Nöl-uëris, &c.Māl-uëro  
Māl-uëris, &c.6. *Pluperfect*.<sup>1</sup>Völ-uëram  
Völ-uëras, &c.Nöl-uëram  
Nöl-uëras, &c.Māl-uëram  
Māl-uëras, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. *Present*.Vél-īm  
Vél-īs  
Vél-īt  
Vél-īmūs  
Vél-ītīs  
Vél-intNöl-īm  
Nöl-īs  
Nöl-īt  
Nöl-īmūs  
Nöl-ītīs  
Nöl-intMāl-īm  
Māl-īs  
Māl-īt  
Māl-īmūs  
Māl-ītīs  
Māl-int2. *Imperfect*.Vel-lem  
Vel-lēs  
Vel-lēt  
Vel-lēmūs  
Vel-lētīs  
Vel-lentNol-lem  
Nol-lēs  
Nol-lēt  
Nol-lēmūs  
Nol-lētīs  
Nol-lentMal-lem  
Mal-lēs  
Mal-lēt  
Mal-lēmūs  
Mal-lētīs  
Mal-lent3. *Perfect*.<sup>1</sup>Völ-uërim  
Völ-uëris, &c.Nöl-uërim  
Nöl-uëris, &c.Māl-uërim  
Māl-uëris, &c.4. *Pluperfect*.<sup>1</sup>Völ-nissem  
Völ-nissēs, &c.Nöl-nissem  
Nöl-nissēs, &c.Māl-nissem  
Māl-nissēs, &c.<sup>1</sup> These Tenses are declined like the corresponding Tenses of mōnēo.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	<i>Present.</i>	
(Wanting.)	Nōl-i. Nōl-ite.	(Wanting.)
	<i>Future.</i>	
	Nōl-ito. Nōl-ito. Nōl-itōte. Nōl-unto.	

## INFINITIVE MOOD

	<i>Present.</i>	
Vel-lě.	Nol-lě.	Mal-lě.
	<i>Perfect.</i>	
Vōl-uissě.	Nōl-uissě.	Māl-uissě.
	<i>Present Participle.</i>	
Vōl-ens.	Nōl-ens.	(Wanting.)
	<i>Gerunds and Supines.</i>	
(Wanting.)	(Wanting.)	(Wanting.)

## EXERCISE LXXI.

**Mālo**, (being a contraction of **māgis—vōlo**, *I wish rather*), is naturally followed by **quam than**, coupling Infinitives or Nouns (62) in the same Case.

*We had rather fight than yield.* Pugnāre **quam** cēdere **mālūmus**.

1. Idem velle atque idem nolle—ea demum est vera amicitia.<sup>1</sup>
2. Imperator cum nollet mihi obesse, interrogavit fratrem meum num vellem clam ex urbe excedere.
3. Non dubium est quin malis hic (*adv.*) manere; sed excedendum tibi erit.
4. Māne nunc, si vis; sed si cras voles excedere, non tibi

<sup>1</sup> The Nom. to est is the sentence **īdem . . . nolle**. **īdem** (not **īdem**, Par. 103) is Acc. Neut. governed by **velle**. Instead of **ea** we ought strictly to have **īd**, *i.e. that (thing)*, Nom. in Apposition to the sentence **īdem . . . nolle**. But **īd** is "attracted" into the gender of **amicitia**.

licebit. 5. Quid vultis, ignavissimi? Semper fugere quam mori maluistis. 6. Hoc vel voluisse mox tibi inhonestum videbitur.<sup>1</sup> 7. Curate, iudices, ut justa non solum dicatis sed etiam velitis. 8. Nolebam reum vinciri; sed, si praetor ita voluerit, vincendus erit. 9. Nunc quidem puer non vult discere; sed non dubium est quin futurum sit ut mox discere malit quam ludere.<sup>2</sup> 10. Interrogavi (133) fratrem eius num ludere quam discere maluerit. 11. Quam turpe est fallere! Nolite mentiri, ne multa, quae non vultis, pati cogamini. 12. Roganti mihi ut cenaret mecum, respondit se nolle foris cenare.<sup>3</sup> 13. Nonne disciplinam quam fugam (62) mavis.

1. *What do you wish, citizens? Do you prefer six hundred kings to (quam) one? 2. Why, O friend, would you not (i.e. were you unwilling to) obey the excellent Tullius? 3. There is no doubt that he was unwilling to resist the citizens. 4. When, if-not (nisi) now, will they be willing to take up (i.e., to prepare) arms that they may preserve the city? 5. I have no doubt, (my) friend, that you prefer death to (quam) slavery. 6. I asked them whether they wished to be slaves (i.e., to serve); but they (illi autem) replied that they preferred (217) to pay tribute rather than die. 7. To wish-for things-useful, is a great part of a happy life. 8. I asked his friends to help him; but they were unwilling to sustain an idle man. 9. Which (85) of you (93) two prefers to dine out of doors? 10. I am ashamed of having even (141a) wished-for this.*

Fĕro, tĕli, ferrĕ, lĕtum, *I bear, endure, bring.*

**235** Fĕro, in the Present-derived Tenses, is conjugated like rĕgo, except that, after fer-:

(1) e final is dropped, and also e before r.<sup>4</sup>  
fer-(e), Imperat.; fer-(e)res, Imperf. Subj.

(2) i is dropped before s or t.

fer-(i)s, fer-(i)t, Indic. Pres.

<sup>1</sup> The Subject of vĭdĕbitur is a Clause. Hĕc is Acc. governed by vĕluisse.

<sup>2</sup> Not lŭdĕrĕ mĕlĭt. The Latins do not like to have a prose sentence ending in -ŭ - - -, because it is the regular end of a hexameter verse. They would prefer "rĕdĭrĕ stĕtĭm vĕlĕbant" to "stĕtĭm rĕdĭrĕ vĕlĕbant."

<sup>3</sup> Where is the Dat. naturally governed by respondit? Fĕris is an Adverb.

<sup>4</sup> The -e final is similarly dropped in the Imperative Sing. of dĭco, dŭco, and fĕcio: dĭc, dŭc, fĕc.

The Perfect-derived tenses are formed, in the Active, regularly from *tūli* (root *toll-o*, *I bear*), and, in the Passive, from *lātus* (another form of the same root).

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

### IRREGULAR TENSES.

*Indic. Present.* Fēr-o, fer-s, fer-t, fēr-īmus, fēr-tis, fēr-unt.

*Imperative Pres.* Fer, fer-tē. *Fut.* Fer-to, fert-o, fer-tōtē, fēr-unto.

*Subjunct. Imperf.* Fer-rem, fer-res, fer-ret, fer-rēmus, fer-rētis, fer-rent.

*Infinitive Pres.* Fer-re.

### REGULAR TENSES.

*Indicative Fut. Simple.* Fēr-am. *Imperf.* Fēr-ēbam. *Perf.* Tūli.

*Fut. Perf.* Tūl-ero. *Pluperf.* Tūl-eram.

*Subjunctive Pres.* Fēr-am. *Perf.* Tūl-ērim. *Pluperf.* Tūl-issem.

*Infinitive Perf.* Tū-lisse. *Fut.* Lātūrūs esse.

*Participle Pres.* Fērens. *Fut.* Lātūrus.

*Supines.* Lātum, lātu.

*Gerund.* Fērendi, &c.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

### IRREGULAR TENSES.

*Indicative Pres.* Fēr-or, fer-ris, fer-tur, fēr-īmur, fēr-īmini, fēr-untur.

*Imperative Pres.* [Fer-re],<sup>1</sup> fēr-īmini. *Fut.* Fer-tor, fer-tor, fēr-untor.

*Subjunctive Imperf.* Fer-rer, fer-rēris, fer-rētur, fer-rēmur, fer-rēmini, fer-rentur.

*Infinitive Pres.* Fer-ri.

---

<sup>1</sup> There is no instance of this form occurring in Latin literature.

### REGULAR TENSES.

*Indicative Fut. Simple.* Fēr-ar. *Imperf.* Fēr-ēbar. *Perf.*  
Lātus sum.

*Fut. Perf.* Lātus ģero. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

*Subjunctive Pres.* Fēr-ar. *Perf.* Lātus sim. *Pluperf.* Lātus essem.

*Infinitive Perf.* Lātus esse. *Fut.* Lātum īri.

*Participle Perf.* Lātus.

*Gerundive.* Fěr-endus.

**238** The following compounds of *fero* are noteworthy for the changes of the prefix:

**Af-fěro (ad-fěro) af-ferrě, at-tŭli, ad-lātum.**

**Au-fěro (ab-fěro) au-ferrě, abs-tŭli, ab-lātum.**

**Ef-fěro (ex-fěro) ef-ferrě, ex-tŭli, ē-lātum.**

**In-fěro (in-fěro) in-ferrě, in-tŭli, il-lātum.**

**Of-fěro (ob-fěro) ob-ferrě, ob-tŭli, ob-lātum.**

Rě-fero (rě-fěro) rě-ferrě,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rě-tŭli} \\ \text{ret-tŭli} \end{array} \right\}$  rělātum.

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

**239** The construction of the Indirect Question (Par. 136) is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Conjunctions, not only after Verbs of *asking*, but also after any Verbs that take a question as their Subject or Object. Thus the Direct Question “Quid fēcisti?” *What did you do?* becomes:

*It is uncertain  
Tell me  
I shall ascertain  
I know* } *what you did.*

Incertum est } quid feceris.<sup>2</sup>  
Dīc mīhī  
Cognoscam  
Cognōvi<sup>1</sup>

240 <sup>1</sup> Cognōvi and nōvi, (Perf.) mean *I have ascertained*, and hence *I know*.  
240<sup>a</sup> <sup>2</sup> Why quīd, not quōd? Ans. *because it is the construction of the In-*  
*direct Question. This constr. is used with intērest and rēfert (329); it*  
*matters not what he said, non rēfert quīd dixērit.*

2. Why quid, not quod? *Ans. because it is the construction of the Indirect Question.* This constr. is used with interest and refert (329); it matters not what he said, non refert quid dixerit.

After all these Verbs, there holds the law of the SEQUENCE of TENSES (Par. 136).

### EXERCISE LXXII.

1. Respondete, milites fortissimi, quomodo laturo sitis hanc tantam contumeliam hostium vel ad vallum vestrum equitatum (154a). 2. Ferebamus convicia eius, feremus maledicta; laudem eius perferre omnino non poteramus.<sup>1</sup> 3. Nonne reperire potes quis hanc rogationem ad populum tulerit? 4. Non dubium est quin Ariovisto, regi potentissimo, bellum illaturi simus. 5. Nonne miles es? Nonne vallum fers et arma? 6. Interrogavi nonne milites essent? cur tandem arma ferrent nisi ut hostibus resisterent.<sup>3</sup> 7. Comperistine quot nostrorum in hoc tam (228) funesto proelio ceciderint? 8. De provinciis ad Patres consules rettulerunt; de legatis nihil relatum est. 9. Cognoscam per nuntium num legem a Graccho rogatam Patres aegre tulerint. 10. Cognoscere volumus num hae tot tantaeque calamitates a fratre eius patientius perferrentur. 11. Quid obstat quominus, occasione oblata, res ad senatum referatur? 12. Spem mihi (192), quam unam habui, tu tua temeritate abstulisti. 13. Tu qui totiens promisisti, (152a) nonne jam perficies?

1. *I have never been able to ascertain why the matter was referred to the senate.* 2. *Tell (237) me, friend, why you took away from (192) me the last hope (i.e. the hope which last) I had.* 3. *Do not tell them how-many insults you endured, nor how many you are about to endure; for they will not believe you.* 4. *The consuls had referred the subject of the prisoners (trans. had referred concerning the prisoners) to the senate.* 5. *The matter was referred to the senate: nevertheless you who (108) referred (it), now deny that you referred (it).* 6. *Tell me, Tullius (13), when (156) you will bring help to me.* 7. *I asked the soldier why he bore arms except to (143a) fight against the enemies of (his) country.* 8. *We could not (i.e. were-not-able to) ascertain how-many captives our-men had taken.* 9. *You who patiently endured so many great (i.e. so-many and so-great) calamities, will you not (see sent. 13, above, and Par.*

<sup>1</sup> (a) Omnino nōn means altogether not, i.e. not at all, certainly not: (b) nōn omnino means not altogether, not quite.

<sup>2</sup> Why quis, not qui?

<sup>3</sup> Repeat interrogavi before cūr; look out tandem.

152a) *endure this very (228) slight loss?* 10. *There is no doubt that the enemy will soon offer us an opportunity (5a).*

### 6. Ēo, īvī, irē, itum—I go.

#### INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### INDICATIVE.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

##### 1. Present.

Ē-o	E-am
Ī-s	E-ās
Ī-t	E-āt
Ī-mūs	E-āmūs
Ī-tis	E-ātis
E-unt	E-ant

##### 2. Future-Simple.

Ī-bo	Ī-tūrūs sim
Ī-bīs	Ī-tūrūs sīs
Ī-bīt	Ī-tūrūs-sīt
Ī-bīmūs	Ī-tūrī sīmūs
Ī-bītīs	Ī-tūrī sītīs
Ī-bunt	Ī-tūrī sint

##### 3. Imperfect.

Ī-bam	Ī-rem
Ī-bās	Ī-rēs
Ī-bāt	Ī-rēt
Ī-bāmūs	Ī-rēmūs
Ī-bātīs	Ī-rētīs
Ī-bant	Ī-rent

##### 4. Perfect.

Ī-vī or I-ī	Ī-vērim or I-ērim
Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vērīs &c.
I-vīt &c.	Ī-vērīt &c.
Ī-vīmūs &c.	Ī-vērimūs &c.
Ī-vistīs &c.	Ī-vērītīs &c.
Ī-vērunt &c.	Ī-vērint &c.
or I-vērē	

##### 5. Future-Perfect.

Ī-vēro or Ī-ēro	(wanting)
Ī-vērīs &c.	
I-vērīt &c.	
Ī-vērimūs &c.	
Ī-vērītīs &c.	
Ī-vērint &c.	

##### 6. Pluperfect.

Ī-vēram or I-ēram	Ī-vissem, I-issem, or I-ssem
Ī-vērās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.
Ī-vērāt &c.	Ī-vissēt &c.
Ī-vērāmūs &c.	Ī-vissēmūs &c.
Ī-vērātīs &c.	Ī-vissētīs &c.
Ī-vērant &c.	Ī-vissent &c.



IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Present.</i>	Ī Ī-tě	<i>Present.</i>	Ī-ens ( <i>Gen.</i> ě-untīs)
<i>Future.</i>	Ī-to Ī-to Ī-tōtě Ē-unto	<i>Future.</i>	Ī-tūrūs (ă, um)
			GERUND.
		<i>Gen.</i>	Ē-undi, &c.
			SUPINE.
			Ī-tum
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	Ī-rě		
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	Ī-vissě, Ī-issě, or issě		
<i>Future.</i>	Ī-tūrus essě		

**242** The Passive of ěo is only used impersonally, e.g. ĭtur, it is gone, i.e. they go : see Par. 247.

**243** 1. The compounds of ěo are conjugated in the same way, except that those which take an Accusative in the Active, have the full Passive Voice. Thus from ĭn-ěo and praeter-ěo come the Pass. Participle ĭn-ĭtus and praetěr-ĭtus, and the Gerundives, ĭn-ěundus and praetěr-ěundus.

**244** 2. The compounds of ěo generally omit v in the Perf. and Perfect-derived Tenses: rěd-ii, trans-ĭěrim, praeter-ĭěram, &c.

**245** 3. The Dative is not governed by these compounds, except by sŭb-eo (rarely), and prae-eo.

#### EXERCISE LXXIII.

1. Cum-jam mulieres liberique flumen auctum imbribus transiissent, curavit imperator ut senes transirent.
2. Peribit iste, nisi celeriter (125) redieris.
3. Cum ad ripam rediissem, plios transituros, alios jam transeuntes inveni.
4. Ibam forte ad forum cum subito Tullius me adiit.
5. I, decus nostrum, pater patriae, ut mox triumphaturus redeas.
6. Praei jurandum mihi, pontifex.
7. Pudet me abiisse; redire statim volo.
8. Unus tantum (adv.) exiens ab hostibus captus est: ceteri, cum jam exeuntes fraudem intellexissent, subito redierunt.
9. Flumen quod heri transiistis, jam glacię plenum bĭnnino (241) non transibitis.
10. Quid obstat quominus

redans aditurus Apollinem? 11. Apollo aditus respondit mortuo homini decimo die esse obeundam. 12. Praeterita (34) redire nequeunt.

1. *There is no doubt that he met death with (181) fortitude.*
2. *Having passed over the river (196) they began-to-wish (imperf.) immediately to return (redco) (236).*
3. *If you begin the battle without cavalry, you will not be able to resist the greater forces of the enemy.*
4. *Alas! when, O citizens, will you return to the city whence you now go-forth exulting?*
5. *There is no doubt that we must return to the city with speed.*
6. *Returning to the city I met Ballus himself returning.*
7. *Tullius besought me to go to the city with him.*
8. *The river which you crossed in-the-morning cannot be crossed now, since-it-is-swollen (i.e., being-increased) by showers (236) (5a).*
9. *Are you ignorant that death must be met by all?*
10. *The battle having now begun (i.e., having-been begun) the general gave-orders-to the sixth legion to (143) charge the enemy.*

### THE SUPINES.

**246** 1. The Supine in -u is a Verbal Noun of the Fourth Declension, used only in the Ablative, and mostly after Adjectives signifying *good or evil, pleasant or unpleasant, fitness or unfitness, &c.*, as "*āmārum gustātu*," *bitter in the tasting, i.e., bitter to the taste.*"

**247** 2. The Supine in -um is a Verbal Noun used only in the Accusative after Verbs of Motion without the Preposition *ad*. It can take an object after it, which the Supine in -u cannot do:

*He came to play.*

*Venit lūsum.*

*He went to see the city.*

*Īvit vīsum urbem.*

**248** 3. Besides the form with *fore* mentioned in Par. 212, the Supine in -um is used after the Pres. Inf. Passive of *eo*, *I go*, to supply the missing Future Passive Infinitive:

*He said that the city would be taken.*

*Dixit īri captum urbem.<sup>1</sup>*

---

<sup>1</sup> The words are arranged in this order to show the construction; but in practice, *īri* follows the Supine.

The literal rendering of this is, *He said that there was a-going* (iri being used impersonally) *to take* (captum being the Supine after the Verb of Motion) *the city* (urbem being Accusative after captum). So:

*He said that we should be sent to the prison.*      *Dixit nōs ad carcērem ductum iri. (Parse nōs).*

#### EXERCISE LXXIV.

**249** Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Accusative (without a Preposition) after Verbs of Motion; and so are the Nouns *dōmum* and *rūs*.

1. Dictu difficile est uter horum peccaverit (9a). 2. Venimus Romam spectatum ludos.<sup>1</sup> 3. Audierat pater non datum iri uxorem filio suo. 4. Inde Delum navigant consulturi Apollinem; qui respondit frustra se consuli, (32) urbem captum iri. 5. Nonne hoc nefas visu est? Nonne etiam dictu turpissimum? 6. Mittendi sunt Athenas legati pacem petitori. 7. Non dubium est quin qui urbem speculatum venerunt, re infecta redierint. 8. Diversas ob causas juvenes philosophum adierunt; alii quidem jocatum venerunt, alii autem ad discendum parati. 9. I tu consultum Jovem, equidem Delphos ibo Apollinem consulturus. 10. Interrogate nautas utrum Carthaginem an ad Italiam navigent.
1. *The ambassadors who have been sent to seek-for peace have returned without-accomplishing anything.* 2. *The citizens sent the prophet in vain to Delos; for Apollo predicted that the captives would be slain by the enemy.* 3. *We have come here (i.e. hither) to fight, not to talk.* 4. *I asked the physician whether the herb was bitter or (171) sweet to taste.* 5. *When will you return home, my son?* 6. *The youth (monstrous to relate) set-out-for the country from the city intending-to slay (trans. about-to slay) his own father.* 7. *Having set the city on fire, the general gave orders to his men to set-out-for Carthage (196).* 8. *I asked the young man to come to dine with (see 'with') me, but he answered that he must-go to Athens on that day.*

<sup>1</sup> What are the two pronunciations, and consequently the two meanings of "venimus"? Why is *uxorem* (in Sent. 3) Accusative (248)?

## THE GERUND.

- 250** 1. When an English Transitive Verbal, *e.g. writing*, is the Nominative to a Verb, or the Accusative governed by a Verb, it is expressed (Par. 128) by the Latin Infinitive:

*Writing letters is easy.*  
*I prefer writing letters.*

*Facile est epistulas scribere.*  
*Malo epistulas scribere.*

- 251** 2. But when the Transitive Verbal is preceded by *of*, *for*, *to*, *towards*, *during*, *in*, *by*, &c., the former Object of the Verbal *writing* is now made the Object of the Preposition *of*, *for*, &c., and the Latin Gerundive Adjective *scribendus*, *meet-to-be-written*, is used in agreement with its former Object:

*The art of writing letters, i.e.*  
*of letters meet-to-be-written.*

*Ars epistularum scribend-*  
*arum.*

*Let us pay attention to making*  
*a bridge, i.e. to a bridge meet-*  
*to-be-made.*

*Demus operam ponti faciendo.*

*During the building of a city*  
*i.e. during a city meet-to-be-*  
*built.<sup>1</sup>*

*Inter urbem aedificandam.*

*In making a bridge, i.e. in a*  
*bridge-meet-to-be-built.*

*In ponte faciendo.*

*Choiceless of expression is in-*  
*creased by reading orators*  
*and poets.*

*Lŏquendi elēgantia augētur*  
*lēgendis ōratoribus et*  
*pŏētis.<sup>2</sup>*

- 252** 3. If the Verbal (1) is Intransitively used, or (2) requires a Dative Case in Latin, the Latin Gerundive Noun is used, governing a Dative if necessary:

(1a) *The art of writing.*

*Ars scribendi.*

(1b) *We are born for acting.*

*Nāti sūmus ad agendam.*

(2) *I am desirous of pleasing*  
*friends.*

*Stūdīosus sum placendi amicis.*

<sup>1</sup> With the English Verbal, we may generally either insert or omit the . . . *of*: in (the) *building (of) a city*, but the Latin construction is the same in either case. The English *meet-to-be-built, made, &c.*, is an inadequate rendering of the Latin Gerundive, which has no exact English equivalent.

<sup>2</sup> The use of the Gerundive Adjective to express the *Ablative of the Instrument*, is rare.

**253** 4. The impersonal Gerundive (163) may govern any case except the Accusative:

*We must do our duty.*  
*We must obey the laws.*  
*We must not forget benefits.*

*Fungendum est officio.*  
*Parendum est legibus.*  
*Non est obliviscendum bene-  
 ficiōrum.*

### EXERCISE LXXV.

**254** RULE.—To turn into Latin a Transitive English Verbal preceded by a Preposition, place the Object in the Case demanded by the English Preposition, and make the Gerundive agree with it.<sup>1</sup>

1. Barbari legatos causa petendae pacis miserunt. 2. Quid vultis, legati? Nonne ad pacem petendam parati estis? 3. Tunc quidem ab inimicis nostris ridebatur; nunc nobis ridendum est. 4. Si vis scribere, si scribendi causa huc venis, cur non scribendo operam das? 5. Rogavit me ut venandi causa equos plures colligerem. 6. Traditum est Fabium Maximum rem Romanam cunctando restituisse. 7. Mors est omnibus (168) obeunda: nec nos flendo (170) morti moram afferemus. 8. Quis nescit mentem nutrirī legendo, disputando acui? 9. Duc (237) nos citius, centurio; utendum est occasione ab hoste nobis data.<sup>2</sup> 10. Vita et utenda est et fruenda.<sup>2</sup>

1. *They-live for the sake of eating; in-eating they consume their lives.* 2. *Do (237) something, my son; we are born to act (i.e. for acting), not to consume the fruits of the earth.* 3. *For the sake of discharging duty towards his friends, Tullius neglected his children.*<sup>2</sup> 4. *By punishing and by pardoning, not by forgetting, will you improve the bad.* 5. *(We) must obey (our) elders; we must pity the poor.* 6. *The conspirators had conceived the hope (trans. had come into the hope) of slaying the consul.* 7. *He pays attention to writing verses.* 8. *Have you come to Athens to hear philosophers, or (171) for the sake of breeding dogs?* 9. *Even in (in) leading a cohort there is some art (i.e. something of art); either (157a) lead better, Marcus, or-else do not lead.*

**255** <sup>1</sup> Of course in such sentences as *I will take-care-of the making of the bridge*, the "Case demanded by the English Preposition" is the Acc., because *take-care-of* is really a Transitive Verb, *cūrāre*.

**256** <sup>2</sup> The Verbs *fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *vescor*, *pōtior* (207) may be used either in the Impersonal or in the Personal Construction, i.e. either governing the Abl. or agreeing with a Noun.

THE IMPERSONAL INFINITIVE, &c.

- 257 (1) *He is persuaded.* Persuāsum est (167) ei.<sup>1</sup>  
 (2) *(It) is certain that he is persuaded.* Certum est ei persuāsum esse.  
 (3) *He says he is persuaded.* Dicit sibi persuāsum esse.
- 258 2. The Verb *fio*, *I am made, I become*, is used as the Passive of *fācio*. In its Present and Present-derived Tenses it is conjugated like the Active of *audio*, except that *fir-* is always written *fiēr-*; and the Infinitive is *fiēri* (not *firē* nor *fiēre*). The Perfect-derived Tenses are formed regularly from the Passive Participle *factus*.
- 259 3. Incomplete Transitive Verbs, *e.g. make, esteem, call*, &c. (which require, besides the Primary Object, a Complementary Noun or Adjective to complete the meaning) have the Complementary Object in the same case as the Primary Object.
- We will make you leader* Te dūcem faciēmus.
- 260 4. In the Passive, these Verbs take the Complementary Subject in the same Case as the Subject.
- Balbus was made leader* Balbus dux factus est.  
*He said that Balbus was made leader* Dixit Balbum dūcem factum esse.

EXERCISE LXXVI.

1. Mulieres ob incolumitatem filiorum suorum gavisae sunt.
2. Histrio omnia fit: heri rex fiebat, cras fiet servus.
3. Quis nescit Palladis imaginem a Phidia factam esse?
4. Quid obstabat quominus mercator fieres? scio enim tibi in omnibus rebus a patre indultum esse.
5. Constat legibus obtinperatum esse, ab eis qui in leges jurati sunt.
6. Interrogavit cur nos, crudelitatem nostram jactare soliti, regem cenatum occidere noluissemus.
7. Scribit se philosophum fieri et ob hanc causam velle Athenas venire philosophos auditurum.
8. Constat paucos hostium resistere ausos esse (32), nemini

- 261 <sup>1</sup> Persuādōtur ei would mean *it is being persuaded to him, i.e. he is being persuaded.*

a nobis parsum (214). 9. Breves esse cupientes, o pūctae, obscuri fitis. 10. Admonete socios vestros ne arma contra patriam moveant.

1. *There was no doubt that the cruel Tullia had rejoiced on-account of the death of her own son.* 2. *You, who lately became a praetor, will soon become a consul.* 3. *I know that you have always been too-much indulged (257) by your father.* 4. *It is certain that the laws are not always obeyed.* 5. *What prevented you from becoming consul?* 6. *Having themselves been accustomed to spare no one, the barbarians declared that no one was spared.* 7. *Is it not well-known that Cincinnatus from (ex) a ploughman was made a consul?* 8. *The scout brought-word that a hundred of our men had been slain, (and) two hundred had been spared.*

#### THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT.

- 262** The Accusative expresses extent (a) of space, and (b) of time; and therefore answers to the questions (1) *How far? high? long? deep? broad?* (2) *For, or during, how long a time?* and (313) sometimes (3) *How long ago?*

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>The ditch is ten feet broad.</i> | <i>Fossa dēcem pēdes est lāta.</i> |
| (2) <i>He sleeps all the night.</i>     | <i>Tōtam noctem dormit.</i>        |
| (3) <i>He died two years ago.</i>       | <i>Ābbinc biennium obiit.</i>      |

- 263** ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE OF TIME.—Distinguish between the Accusative of extent of time (*how long?*), and (3) the Ablative (Par. 30) of the point of time or season (*when?*)<sup>1</sup>

*He cannot sleep in the night.* *Nocte dormire nūn pōtest.*

#### EXERCISE LXXVII.

1. Tiberius Caesar tredecim annos principatum obtinuit. 2. Quis nescit Platonem octoginta unum annos vixisse, Socratem anno septuagesimo veneno interfectum esse? 3. Decimo die post captam urbem,<sup>2</sup> fossam decem pedes altam arci

**263a** <sup>1</sup> The Ablative also answers to the question: *Within what time? We shall know everything in (the next) three days, Omnia his tribus diebus, or hoc triduo, comperta habebimus:* see Par. 30.

**264** <sup>2</sup> Note this idiom *after the city taken*, i.e. *after the taking of the city*; so *ante urbem conditam*, *before the foundation of the city*.

circumdedimus. 4. Pericles, cum quadraginta annos Atheniensibus praefuisset, morbo correptus est. 5. Cum jam viginti milia passuum iter fecissemus, nuntiant exploratores bidui iter hostes abesse. 6. His auditis, imperator aggerem ducentos pedes latum, triginta altum, extruere statuit. 7. Non erat dubium quin hostes castra tria tantum milia passuum ab urbe posuissent. 8. Decima hora per exploratores compertum est hostes habere in animo nocte castra oppugnare. 9. Tullius, senex impigerrimus, jam sex et sexaginta annos natus, dicit se tribus his mensibus Athenas navigaturum, esse. 10. Quis non meminit Trojam, decem annos obsessam, per Ulyssis dolos esse captam? 11. Tullius, pŕœt̃a praeclarissimus, dictitabat nunquam se plus agere quam cum nihil ageret. 12. Dicitur urbs abhinc centum annos floruisse.

1. Do you not remember that Plato lived eighty-one years?
2. When we had advanced forty days' journey it was found that the enemy were distant twenty-four miles.
3. I asked the workmen to build a wall thirty-five feet high.
4. Having crossed the river we shall have to journey for two-days through an uncultivated district.
5. For three-days our men resisted three thousand of the enemy.
6. When Balbus was sixty-three years old, he was struck by lightning and died (trans. having been struck . . . he died) in the third month of (his) sixty-fourth year.
7. Within the next three hours we shall take the city which has resisted our army for three-years.
8. Caesar writes that the territories of the Helvetii extend two hundred and forty miles in (in with Acc.) length.

### THE LOCATIVE CASE.

**265** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and with *hŭm-i*, on the ground; *dŏm-i*, at home; *bell-i*,<sup>1</sup> in the wars; *militiae*, in the wars; *rŭr-i*, in the country), the question *Where?* is answered by the old Locative Case, thus:

	Singular.	Plural.
First declension . . .	Rŏm-ae	Athēn-īs
Second „ . . .	Cŏrīnth-ī	Corīŏl-īs
Third „ . . .	Carthāgīn-ē <sup>2</sup>	Cŭr-ībŭs

**265a** With the names of Towns and small Islands (and also with *dŏmo* and *rŭre*) the question *Whence?* is always answered by the Ablative.

**266** <sup>1</sup> *Militiae* and *belli* are seldom used except with *dŏmī*.

**267** <sup>2</sup> The older form *Carthāgīn-ī* is only to be used where the Acc. is in -im, as *Neāpŏl-im*, *Neāpŏl-ī*. *Ilŏm-ae*, is a contraction for *Rŏm-ai*.



**268** RULE.—The Dative is sometimes used to denote a purpose, especially with the Verbs *sum* and *do*.

*He imputed it to me as a fault,* Id mīhī vītio dēdit, or vertit.  
lit., gave for a fault.

*This will be (for) a proof to me.* Hōc ērit mīhī dōcūmento.

### EXERCISE LXXVIII.

1. Num vitam rusticam crimini esse putas? 2. Pater meus litteris Epheso datis,<sup>1</sup> scribit se mihi libros hos dono daturum. 3. Hostemne oras ut te adjuvet? Num vis omnibus esse derisui? 4. Conjurati, Athenis capti, epistolam concremaverunt ne forte sociis suis, qui Corinthi tum erant, periculo foret. 5. Si domi manseris, ipse tibi dedecori eris; si ruri (id quod pater suadet) vitam ages, nunquam te facti poenitebit.<sup>2</sup> 6. Cur vitio mihi res domi militiaeque honestissime gestas dedisti? 7. Nobis, qui tum Romae vitam agebamus, Tullii crudelitas odio erat. 8. Eniti debes ut, non<sup>3</sup> solum tibi ipsi, sed amicis omnibus qui Carthagine nunc sunt, adjumento esse possis. 9. Dum forte Neapoli moror, audiebam pullos sacros in aquam coniectos esse, quam rem Romani omnes religioni habuerunt.<sup>4</sup> 10. Vobis qui Delphis vivitis, quique (not from quisque, 37) Apollinem veneramini, nonne turpissimum videtur Apollinis responsa simul quaestui simul derisui habere?<sup>5</sup> 11. Audistine Cannis infeliciter pugnatum esse? Occidimus; actum est de exercitu. 12. I Roma.

1. *There is no doubt that, if you remain longer at Corinth, you will be a disgrace to your friends.* 2. *Let his life be an example to you, that you may know that life in the country is often happier than in the city.* 3. *I asked him not to impute to me as a fault the fact that (quod, i.e., because) I had departed from Carthage in order to live at Rome.* 4. *You will remain three months at Rome, your brother at Athens, we at Samos; soon we shall all go to Gaul, thence we shall sail to Rhodes.* 5. *When Socrates had been put to death at Athens—which (270) was a disgrace to the Athenians—his friend Glaucus betook himself to Cyprus; thence after two months he set out for Asia.* 6. *I like to live at Rome; that fellow (likes to live) in Campania;*

**269** <sup>1</sup> i.e. "dated from Ephesus," (not "at Ephesus," which would be *Ēphēsī*): see Par. 265a.

**270** <sup>2</sup> Note this use of *id quod*, that which, i.e. as, your father recommends: *id* may be parsed as *Nom.* in Apposition to the sentence "*rūri vitam ages*."

**271** <sup>3</sup> Not *nē*, because the *nōn* goes with *solum*.

**272** <sup>4</sup> *Dum* is mostly used with the Present, though the Principal Verb is in the Past: "*dum haec gēruntur, hostes terga dābant*."

<sup>5</sup> *Vōbīs* is Dat. governed by *vidētur*.

*you, who are a laughing-stock to all the best-men (140), are setting out from Athens that you may live at Capua. 7. That great man was not more-renowned in-war than in-the-arts-of peace (trans. at home). 8. There is no doubt that you remember (memini, Appendix II., page 216) when (156) the Romans were defeated by Hannibal at Cannae (239).*

## THE ABLATIVE.

- 273** 1. Since the Ablative denotes the *means* or *instrument*, it can express the *definite price*, by *means* of which anything is bought.

*The fish was bought for a denarius, i.e. with a denarius.*      *Piscis dēnārio emptus est.*

- 274** 2. It can also express the *measure*, by *means* of which one thing *exceeds*, or *falls short of*, another.

*The sun is (by) many times larger than the moon.*      *Sol multis partibus maior est quam luna.*<sup>1</sup>

- 275** 3. It can express that, by *means* of which anything is *filled*.

*The river is full of water, i.e. filled with water.*      *Amnis plenus aqua est.*<sup>2</sup>

- 276** 4. It can also express any *circumstance*, in which, or *with* which, something occurs; and hence it can express, (a) *manner*, or (b) *quality*.<sup>3</sup> But in such cases the Noun must have an Adj. agreeing with it.

(a) MANNER, *He answered in haste.*      *Respondit summā celeritate, or cum celeritate.*

(b) QUALITY, *Tullius was a man of ability.*      *Tullius ingenio haud parvo, or magno, erat.*

**277** <sup>1</sup> Hence "much better," "little better," should be rendered "multo paulo, melior," not multum.

**278** <sup>2</sup> But in the best writers plenus more often takes the Genitive.

<sup>3</sup> Under this head comes the Rule (Par. 28) that dignus, indignus, frētus, contentus, &c., take the Ablative; but the Ablative after these words requires no Adjective agreeing with it.

**279** 5. The Ablative is also used after Verbs and Adjectives implying *need, deprivation, emptiness, freedom from, &c.*

*I am free from care.*

Vacuus sum cūris.

*I have need of money.*

Ōpus est mīhi argento.

**280** RULE.—After Verbs of *promising* and *hoping*, the English Present Infinitive is expressed by the Latin Future Infinitive.

*I promise to come, or that I will come.*

Prōmitto, or, pollicor, mē ventūrum esse.

*I hope to see her to-morrow.*

Spēro mē crās eam visūrum esse.

### EXERCISE LXXIX.

1. Ne mille quidem talentis virtutem emere poteris. 2. Multo sanguine ea victoria nobis stetit. 3. Duabus uncis procerior eras quam frater tuus. 4. Fossae aqua plenae erant, urbs frumento abundabat; sed omnes armis egebamus. 5. Comptum est nostros ab hostibus commeatu interclusos esse. 6. Magno timore sum, sed spero mox fore ut puer convalescat.<sup>1</sup> 7. Centurioni, viro summa probitate, promittenti se venturum, nonne tu credes? 8. Omitte timorem, mi fili; nam, quo fortius ei resistes, eo facilius tibi cedit.<sup>2</sup> 9. Divitiis facile carebis; nemo facile virtute caret. 10. Opus est auxilio tuo; miliens promisiisti te venturum esse; omissis jam excusationibus, fac venias (see 'facio'). 11. Balbus (multo felicior quam frater) ante urbem captam mortem obierat. 12. Quod ne asse (see 'as') quidem emere volumus, id asse carum est.

1. *There is no need of excuses; promise to help us.* 2. *There is no doubt that that victory cost us much blood.* 3. *We (can) easily do without flesh, but (sed) we need water.* 4. *Tullius, a man of approved excellence, had promised to come to see us.* 5. *Are you much taller than your brothers?* 6. *The more patiently he bore these insults, the more steadily he was loved by the citizens.* 7. *I will ask the general whether he has cut off the enemy from supplies.* 8. *He answered in-anger (276)*

**281** <sup>1</sup> Verbs ending in -*scō* commonly have the sense of *beginning* an action or state, and are called *Inceptives*. *Inceptives* rarely have a Fut. Part. in -*rus*, and consequently require, even in the Active, the use of the periphrasis *forē ut*, like *possum* (Par. 231).

<sup>2</sup> Quo . . . eo, lit. *by how much . . . by so much*, i.e. *the more bravely . . . the more easily*. Why is quo Abl.? See Par. 274.

that there was no need of an axe. 9. *He is a man of little ability, yet by his perseverance he conquered very many rivals.* 10. *What prevents us from carrying on the war much more successfully, Tullius being now (jam) our leader (197) (5a)?*

## THE GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used in the following constructions :

**282** 1. (a) *Descriptively*, and (b) to express *quality*, as in English.

(a) *A fleet of two hundred vessels.* Classis dūcentārum nāvium.

(b) *He is a man of ability.* Vir est magni ingēnii.

In such instances, the Genitive Noun must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

**283** 2. To express (a) *estimation*, and (b) *indefinite price*.

(a) **RULE.**—Magni, plūris, plūrīmi, parvi, mīnōris, mīnīmi, tanti, quanti, and nīhīli, are used after Verbs of *estimation*, such as pendo (*I hang, weigh, value*), faciō, aestīmo.

**284** (b) **RULE.**—Tanti, quanti, plūris, mīnōris (but magno, parvo, plūrīmo, &c.) are used after Verbs of *selling* and *buying*.

(a) *I do not count you worth a straw.* Nōn flocci tē faciō.

(b) *At what price was the corn bought? For a large sum.* Quanti frūmentum emptum est? Magno.<sup>1</sup>

**285** 3. To express *plenty* or *want* (but this is more often expressed by the Ablative).

The pupil must learn by practice what words generally take the Genitive and what the Ablative: for example, indīgeo generally takes the Genitive, and ēgeo the Ablative.

**286** <sup>1</sup> The distinction between the Genitive and Ablative appears to be this: the Gen. is used when the price is stated *indefinitely* and regarded as a *quality*, the Abl. when it is stated *definitely* and regarded as the *instrument* whereby the purchase is effected.

**287** 4. After Adjectives of *knowledge and ignorance*, such as *consciūs, consciūs of, nesciūs, ignorant of, insnētus, unaccustomed to, &c.*

*He is ignorant of manners, but very learned in the law.*

*Mōrum impērītus est, jūris autem perītissimū.*

*He informed me of his plan, i.e., he made me more certain of his plan.*

*Consīlii sui mē certīorem fecit.*

**288** 5. After Present Participles and Adjectives that have the force of Nouns, such as *āvidūs, pōtens, insōlens, cūpīdus, &c.*

*Patient (i.e. an endurer) of cold.*

*Pātien<sup>s</sup> frīgōris.*

*He was an extreme lover of his country.*

*Patrīae erat āmantissimū.*

**289** 6. After a suppressed Noun, such as *nature, mark, duty, lot, part, &c.*

*It is (the mark) of a wise man not to be easily disturbed.*

*Sāpientis est nōn facīle perturbārī.*

*It is (the duty) of a young man to respect his elders.*

*Adūlescentis est mājōres natū vērērī.*

*It is not (the luck) of every one to do this.*

*Nōn cuiusvis est hūc facērē.*

**290** 7. After a suppressed Noun, such as *charge, cause, &c.*, with Verbs of *accusing, acquitting, convicting, &c.*

*Having been accused (on the charge) of theft, Balbus was condemned to death.*

*Balbus (crīmīne) furti accusātus, cāpītis damnātus est.<sup>1</sup>*

### EXERCISE LXXX.

1. Non cuiusvis est summos honores assequi.
2. Haruspices aut stultitiae aut vanitatis recto condemnamus.
3. Quanti praedium emptum est? Magno: sed equidem id parvi aestimo.

**290a**

<sup>1</sup> The Genitive is not habitually used to denote the *punishment*, but only the *charge*. But it is used of the *punishment* in the phrases, "cāpītis, dupli, quadrupli, &c., (multā) condemnāre," to condemn (in the fine) of death, two-fold, four-fold, &c.

1. Tardi ingenii est nihil nisi omnibus nota<sup>1</sup> perspicere. 5. Themistocles, providi animi vir, persuasit Atheniensibus a classeni centum navium compararent. 6. Majestatis accensati, alii in metalla, alii ad bestias, alii capitis damnati sunt. 7. Quaerebam mecum quare apud hanc gentem parum (*adv.*) vniura veritas haberet. 8. Rhodum aut aliquo (*adv.*) terrarum hunc migrandum est. 9. Omnium regionum, id temporis,<sup>2</sup> Gallia et frugum et metallorum fertilissima esse videbatur. 10. Stultorum est doctrinae cupidus contemnere. 11. Barbaros, insuetos laboris, discipline insolentes, rudes rei militaris, facile vicinus. 12. Tempori cedere a plerisque, sed non a Catone, sapientis est habitum.

1. *The Christians, having been accused of treason before (apud) the proconsul, were condemned to the mines.* 2. *Where (292a) in-the-world shall we find a-second-man so fond of learning, so patient of labour?* 3. *Balbus, a man of incredible parridy, was found guilty of bribery.* 4. *I value the farm at-a-high-price; but it was sold for-a-small price.* 5. *I asked why the farm had been sold for more than (quam) the house.* 6. *It is not like a philosopher (i.e. the mark of a philosopher) to be disturbed by trifles.* 7. *It is not the lot of everybody to per rode those-who-listen (202).* 8. *His brother was acquitted of theft; but Balbus himself, a man free from all fault, was condemned to death.* 9. *It requires (i.e. it is the part of) a great leader to effect this task; for effecting (186) which, Tullius has too-little ability.* 10. *Whether in-the world are you migrating from Athens?*

#### SOME USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

- 291** I. The Subjunctive Mood is used in its proper Subjunctive use when it is *subjoined* to a Principal Verb, to express (132) *purpose* or *indirect question*. But it is also *subjoined* to express (1) *result*, and (2) *reason*: (for cum causal with Subjunctive, see Par. 151a).

**292** <sup>1</sup> *Nōta* is Neut. Pl. Acc., used as a Noun, governed by *perspicis* understood: *to perceive nothing unless (you perceive) things-known to all*. The phrase *nihil nisi* is often used thus with the force of *except*.

<sup>2</sup> Here *Id* is the Accusative of Duration (202); but instead of *tempus*, there is the Partitive Genitive *temporis*.

**292a** The Partitive Gen. often follows (a) Neut. Pronouns, e.g. "*quicquid, or ei quid tibi habuimus,*" *whatever food, or all the food, we had*; and also (b) Adverbs, e.g. *aliquo terrarum*, *lit. some-somewhat of lands, i.e. to some place or other in the world; ubi terrarum?* *where in the world?*

- (1) *The fighting was so brisk that many were slain on both sides; among whom it happened that the leader himself fell.* Tam acriter pugnatum est ut multi utrumque interficerentur; inter quos accidit ut dux ipse occideret.
- (2) *The Athenians condemned Socrates to death because he had (said they) corrupted the youth.* Athēnienses Socratem capitis damnāverunt quod iuventutem corrūpisset.<sup>1</sup>

**293** II. Besides its uses in the above *subjoined* clauses, the Subjunctive (or, as it is sometimes called, the Conjunctive Mood) is also used independently, as follows:

- (1)  *hortatively, i.e. exhorting: amemus, let us love.*<sup>2</sup>
- (2)  *Concessively, i.e. granting for the sake of argument: Grant that you expel nature, yet she will continually return.* Nāturam expellas; usquē tamen rēurret.
- (3)  *Optatively, i.e. wishing: pēreas! may you perish!*
- (4)  *Conditionally, i.e. expressing a statement made subject to the fulfilment of a condition.*
- I should like to come (i.e. if it could be allowed, &c.).* Vēlim vēnīre.

III. The Subjunctive is used (1) after *si, if*, to express a condition, and also (2) to express a consequence.<sup>3</sup>

*If he came, (then) he would conquer.* Si (1) vēniat, (2) vincat.

The *if-clause* is called the Protasis (see p. 238); the Consequent, or *then-clause*, is called the Apodosis (see p. 233).

**293a** <sup>1</sup> The Subjunctive implies that the reason influences the mind of others, not the mind of the writer. Corrūpērāt would have implied that the writer believed the charge: *because he had (as a fact) corrupted the youth.*

<sup>2</sup> This usage is ordinarily placed under the Imperative.

**293b** <sup>3</sup> *Si* with the Indic. Pres. or Perf. (less frequently Imperf. or Pluperf.) is used in conditions which are assumed to be true, and is often equivalent to *when* or *since*.

**294** 1. R.—After *sī*, *nē*, *num*, use *quis* for *any one*, *quando* for *at any time*, ("*sī aliquis*" would mean *if some one*; "*sī aliquando*," *if at some time*).

**295** The Tenses of the Subjunctive in Conditional Sentences vary with the nature of the condition.

The *Past Tenses* of the Subjunctive are naturally employed to express conditions (1 *a*) *impossible* or (1 *b*) *regarded as impossible*.

The *Present* expresses (2 *a*) conditions *possible* or (2 *b*) though really impossible, *graphically regarded as possible*.

(1 *a*) *If I had received anything (which I have not done) I would have given it.* Si quid accēpissēm, dēdissem (dārem would mean 'I should now be giving').

(1 *b*) *Should I receive, or, if I received anything (which there is no reason for thinking likely, I would give it.* Si quid accēpērem, dārem.

(2 *a*) *Should I receive, or, if I received, anything (which is possible) I would give it.* Si quid accēpīam, dem, i.e. *imagine me receiving something.*

(2 *b*) *Imagine Plato come to life again; believe me, you would blush while saying this.* Si revīviscat Plāto; credē mīhī, haec dicens rūbēas, i.e. *I see you blushing.*

N.B.—The Tense is the same in the Protasis and Apodosis.

#### EXERCISE: LXXXI.

**296** RULE.—*Ut* . . . *non* is not to be changed into *nē* when the Subjunctive expresses Consequence.

*So rigorous was the charge that they could not resist.* Tantus erat impētus ūt rēsistere nōn possent.

1. Donorum exempla imitemur, malorum caveamus.<sup>1</sup> 2. Peream nīc haec vere dico. 3. Plures cecidissent nī nox proelio intervenisset. 4. Si semper optima videre et facere possemus, haud hanc praeceptore nobis opus foret. 5. Si quis gladium a te insaniens poscat, nonne dare peccatum sit?

**297** <sup>1</sup> Note that, where in English we say "*those of the bad*," the Latin either (1) repeats the Noun, "*malōrum exempla*," or (2), as above, leaves Noun to be understood; but in no case inserts *ea*.



6. Si vir bonus hanc vim habeat ut verbo inimicos interficer possit, hac vi profecto (*adv.*) non utatur (295, 2 b). 7. A si Marco Crasso dares hanc vim ut digitorum percussione divitissimum quemque interficeret (32), divitiis ipse acciperet, in foro (mihi crede) prae gaudio saltaret. 8. Cave quis tibi, epistola mea usus, ignaro noceat. 9. Nun quis tam amens est ut filiis suis invidet? 10. Tanta hostes in urbem irruerunt ut nostri, tanta multitudinis oppressi, in arcem se recipere non possent.
1. *By-chance it happened that a few of our-men had been slain by the arrows of the enemy.*<sup>1</sup> 2. *If the excellent Tullius had promised to (280) help a friend, he would have kept his word.* 3. *If any one asked (295, 2a) you whence you come, you would reply that you come from Carthage.* 4. *It cannot be (fieri) that a just man would wish to use an unjust power.*<sup>1</sup> 5. *If by some (quidam) magic art, Balbus were able to assume the form of any animal (he-pleased), he would choose a fish that he might (181) not be compelled to speak.* 6. *The general was so greedy of fame as to envy (i.e. that he envied) even his own centurions.* 7. *How are you-getting-on (i.e. what are you doing, quid agis) at Athens, my son?* 8. *Write to me how you are getting-on at Corinth.*

THE SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*).

**298** Qui takes the Indicative (I.) when it is used for a Demonstrative Pronoun with a Coordinate Conjunction such as *and, but, &c.*<sup>2</sup>; but (II.) it takes the Subjunctive when used for a Demonstrative with a Subordinate Conjunction denoting (1) *purpose*, (2) *consequence*, (3) *cause*, &c.<sup>3</sup>

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I. <i>At length we reached the enemy; who (i.e. but they) immediately fled.</i>              | Tandem ventum erat ad hostes; qui statim terga dabant. |
| II. (1) <i>We sent ambassadors to (Lat. who should i.e. that they should) ask for peace.</i> | Misimus legatos qui (i.e. ut ei) pacem peterent.       |
| (2) <i>There were some that (i.e. such that they) blamed you.</i>                            | Erant qui (i.e. alii qui tales ut) te culparent.       |

**299** <sup>1</sup> See the use of *accidit* in the first example in page 150, above. The Subjunctive is used after Verbs of *happening, coming to pass, &c.* so if they implied a *result* consequent on something preceding.

**299a** <sup>2</sup> Qui is sometimes used for the Demonstrative without a Conjunction, e.g. in the idiom "*tū, cuius es sapientiae (282b), non errabis,*" *you (of such wisdom are you, i.e. such is your wisdom) will not err.*

(3) *I congratulate you because you have such a son.* Grătîlor tîbî qui (i.e. quod tu) talem filium habes.

300 After the antecedent *nemo*, or *quis*, you must not write *qui nōn*, nor *quō* (old form *quī*) *nōn*, but *quīn* (this applies to all Genders.)

(2 a) *Who is there (or, there is no one) that does not hate you?* Quis est (or, Nemo est) quīn tē odērīt?

*There was no day but Tullius walked with me, lit. on-which-not T. walked with me.* Dies erat nullus quīn (i.e. quoniam) Tullius mēcum ambularet.

301 *Vērēor* means *I am anxiously on the watch*. Hence, when it is translated *I fear*, the English requires (1) the insertion of a negative if the Latin omits it, and (2) the omission of a negative if the Latin inserts it.

(1) *I fear he will not come.* Vērēor (or tīmeo) ūt vēniat, lit. *I am anxiously watching that he may come.*

(2) *I feared he would come.* Vērītus sum (or tīmui) nē vēnīret, lit. *I anxiously watched that he might not come.*

N.B.—After *fear*, translate the English Future by the Latin Subjunctive.

302 *Nescio an*. Before *an*, *utrum* is always implied, if not expressed. Hence in Direct Questions *an* is used to introduce an *alternative* to which the speaker is driven, “(Utrum hūc fūtūris) *an* hūc nūgās?” (*Whether do you confess this*). Or must I suppose that you actually deny this? Similarly, in Indirect Questions, *nescio an* introduces an *alternative and more probable supposition*; thus, “Nescio (utrum ventūrus sit) *an* nōn ventūrus sit,” means, *I do not know (whether he will come), or whether, as is more probable, he will not come, i.e., I rather think he will not come*. Consequently, with *nescio an* (as with *vērēor*) a negative must be inserted or omitted in Latin, in a manner exactly contrary to the English idiom.

*I do not know whether he will come.* Nescio an nōn ventūrus sit, i.e. *I rather think he will not come.*

*I do not know whether he will not come.* Nescio an ventūrus sit,<sup>1</sup> i.e. *I rather think he will come.*

## EXERCISE LXXXII.

**303** RULE.—With a Comparative Adverb, purpose is expressed by *quo*, i.e. *ut ēo* (Par. 277):

*In order that he might swim more quickly.* Quo (i.e. *ut ēo*) cēlērius nāret.

1. Mittamus legatos qui pacem petant. 2. Quotusquisque est qui tibi faveat! Sunt qui te oderint; nemo fere est quin tibi invideat. 3. Omnes laudabant victorem qui tot milia civium incolumes servasset, totiens hostem sub jugum misisset. 4. Quis est quin sibi consulat, alienis sua anteponat? 5. Dies fere nullus erat quin (i.e. *quo non*) rus tecum irem. 6. Fossam castris circumdedimus quo (i.e. *ut eo*) facilius hostibus resisteremus. 7. Vereor ne optimus quisque civium nos deserat. 8. Nescio an res mihi non bene successura sit; sed id agam ut tibi subveniam. 9. Nescio an mulieres venturae sint; sed, si aberunt, equidem tibi subveniam. 10. Pavor ceperat milites ne praeda sibi eriperetur. 11. Lege quādam cavebatur ne quis, ob causam orandam, pecuniam donumve (*see -ve*) acciperet. 12. Cave ne aeger neve hieme naviges. 13. Non tu is (*see Vocab. 'is'*) es qui mentiaris.<sup>2</sup>

1. *They sent ambassadors to (qui) ask for peace.* 2. *I am not the man (is qui) to use this opportunity.*<sup>2</sup> 3. *There was no one but wished to help him.* 4. *I feared that all the best of the citizens would set out for the country.* 5. *All praise you for (298, 3) (qui) having conquered so many thousands of the enemy.* 6. *Even if it were possible,<sup>3</sup> I should not wish to do this.* 7. *I fear that the enemy, having now crossed the river, will not make (fērio) peace.* 8. *There were some who answered that not even an assassin must be delivered-over against the laws.* 9. *How-few (quōtus-quisque with sing.) are there*

<sup>1</sup> These differences between the English and Latin idioms are sometimes expressed in the lines:—

With vēreor and nescio

For English *yes*, put Latin *no*.

<sup>2</sup> Note that, after “nōn ego is sum, tū is es, is est, qui,” the Relative agrees, in *Person*, with the Subject of the Verb *to be*, not with *is*.

<sup>3</sup> It is possible, i.e. it is able to be done, “*feri pōtest*,” not *pōtest* alone, except in the phrases “*ut pōtest*,” “*si pōtest*,” and these mostly in colloquial Latin. The pupil should use *pōtest* to mean *it is able*, not *it is possible*. See *Vocab. “even.”*

**303<sup>a</sup>**

**304**

who are unwilling to use an opportunity of obtaining wealth!  
10. There is no one in this city who will not prefer his-interests  
(i.e. his-things, 34) to mine.

Sē, ipsē, &c.

It has been said above (Par. 218, and see page 328) that sē, suus, &c. (and not eum, eius) are used when they refer (in a Subordinate Clause) to the Subject of the Principal Verb. But there are exceptions to this Rule.

305 I. Sometimes an apparently Subordinate Sentence (e.g. one introduced by *because*) is really equivalent to a Co-ordinate Sentence introduced by *for*.

*Marcius returned safe because I had spared him.*      *Marcius salvus rediit quod ei pēpercēram.*<sup>1</sup>

This is really equivalent to the two Co-ordinate Sentences, *Marcius returned safe: for I had spared him*, "*Marcius salvus rediit; nam ei pēpercēram:*" and ei is therefore used, because rediit is regarded, not as a Principal, but as a Co-ordinate Verb.

But if the *because-clause* be more closely connected with what precedes, and if some notion of *thought he, said he*, be introduced, so as to make the latter part appear, *not a historical fact*, but rather dependent upon *what Marcius thought, said, &c.*—then sibi must be used.

*Marcius returned me thanks because (said he) I had spared him.*      *Marcius grātiās ēgit mihi quod sibi pēpercissem.*<sup>1</sup>

306 II. Occasionally suus is used of different persons in the same sentence. In such cases the *sense* must determine the translation.

<p>{ <i>The Veneti sent an ambassador to Caesar (commanding that) if he wished to receive back his own men, he should send their hostages back for them.</i> }</p>	<p>Vēnēti lēgātum ad Cēsārem mīsērunt: "Si vellet suos rēcipere, obsides sibi rēmitteret."<sup>2</sup></p>
--	--

<sup>1</sup> Note also that the Indicative pēpercēram is changed into the Subjunctive pēpercissem (203a).

<sup>2</sup> The construction of rēmitteret is explained more fully in the rules on Exercise XXIII.: here, rēmitteret may be parsed as Subjunctive after impētrāverunt ut, which is implied in mīsērunt, they sent (with orders that).

- 307** III. Ambiguity in English is sometimes avoided by the distinction between *him* and *himself*: but in Latin both these pronouns are sometimes rendered by *sē*, so that the meaning of *sē* has to be determined by *the sense of the whole passage*:

<p><i>The captive besought the conqueror to spare him.</i></p> <p><i>The father commanded the son to restrain himself.</i></p>	<p>Captivus victorem obsecravit ut sibi parceret.</p> <p>Pater filio imperavit ut sē coerceret.</p>
--	---

- 308** IV. Ambiguity is sometimes removed in Latin (1) by adding *ipsē* to the Subject of the Subordinate Verb, to which *sē* refers:

<p>(1) <i>Nature impels a child to love itself.</i></p>	<p>Natura movet infantem ut se ipsē diligat.</p>
---	--

(2) by placing *ipsē* in antithesis with *sē*, using *ipsē* to refer to the Principal Subject and *sē* to refer to the Subordinate Subject:

<p>Caesar asked (his soldiers) why they distrusted their own valour or his diligence.</p>	<p>Caesar quaesivit (ex militibus) cur de suā virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent.</p>
---	---

#### EXERCISE LXXXIII.

- 309** RULE.—*Quisquam*, and *ullus*, *any*, are used in negative and comparative sentences, and in interrogative sentences that expect the answer *No*.

*Quisquam* is used for the English *no one* and *nothing* when *and* precedes: *and no one* *nē quisquam*; *and nothing*, *nē quidquam*. Similarly, *and never*, *neque unquam*, &c.

- 310** Distinguish between *quisquam* and *quisquē*, *each one*; *quisquis*, *whoever*; *quilibet* and *quivis*, *any one you like*; *quidam*, *a certain (person)*; *aliquis*, *some one*.<sup>1</sup>

- 310a** <sup>1</sup> *Quidam* means *a certain person (whom I could mention by name, if I desired)*, *aliquis* *some one (who exists, but it matters not who precisely it is)*. Note that *quisquis* is the only one of these words that has a Relative force.

1. Venator orabat comites ne se ante oculos suos perire sinerent. 2. Pertimuerunt ne ab ipsis descisceret et cum suis in gratiam rediret. 3. Quaesivit imperator cur milites sibi totiens antea obtemperassent, jam obtemperare nollent. 4. Tum vero rex circumstantes obsecrat ut suae quisque salutis consulant, ipsum morientem neglegant.<sup>1</sup> 5. Quodam tempore natus sum; aliquo tempore mihi moriendum erit. 6. Non cuivis contingit optimo cuique suorum civium placere. 7. Si quis in scena saltat, ei non quivis motus sed certus quidam (motus) datur. 8. Inest etiam superbis falsa quaedam modestiae species. 9. Interrogavi nonne major natus esset quam quisquam ex fratribus suis. 10. Dixerit aliquis (*some one may be inclined to say*) inutilem fuisse hanc victoriam; sed eiusmodi dicta (quae cuilibet prompta sunt), flocci non facio. 11. Neapoli praefectura subito obiit (265a).
1. *I hope that the city will soon be captured, and that no one (i.e. nor any one) of the enemy will escape.* 2. *They believed that the boy had departed from them and returned to his (friends.)* 3. *The general besought the soldiers to trust in their own valour and in his wisdom.* 4. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking) who (240a) would (i.e. wished to) carry the letter, one<sup>2</sup> of my brother's servants replied that he would do it.* 5. *Some-one may say (see Sent. 10 above) that death is an eternal sleep: but, even among (scilicet) the ancients, most of the philosophers believed that there is something after death.* 6. *It is lawful to the actor to utter not any words he-likes, but certain fixed words.* 7. *Sometimes it is a kind-of virtue (see 'kind') even to abstain from rice.* 8. *Can any one (294) deny that we must beware lest any one of the spies should hear this?*

### EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF THE NOUNS AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

**311** Dea, -ae, f. *goddess*, makes Dat. Pl. deabus in classical authors: and filiabus is found in inscriptions and legal forms.

Bōs, c. *ox* or *cow*, Gen. bōvis, has Dat. and Abl. Pl. bōbus and būbus.

Vīs, f. sing. *force, violence*, has Gen. and Dat. Sing. wanting, and is declined Nom. vīs, Acc. vim, Abl. vī.

Vīres, f. pl. *strength* (Pl. of vīs, but not meaning *violence*), is formed regularly, vīrium, vīribus, vīres.

<sup>1</sup> What case is quisquē? See the word in the Vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> Trans. a certain one; not unus, which would mean *one only*.

Jūppītēr makes Jōvem, Jōvis, Jōvi, Jōve.

Dōmūs is formed partly from the Second and partly from the Fourth Declension. The Gen. and Dat., Sing. and Pl., are of the Fourth, dōmūs, dōmui, domūum, dōmībus, and also the Abl. Pl. dōmībus; the rest are of the Second.<sup>1</sup>

Jūs-jūrandum, *oath* (which has no Plural), and rēs-pūblica, *state*, are not irregular, but simply words compounded of Nouns and Adjectives agreeing with them, Gen. jūris-jūrandi, rēipūblicæ, &c.

#### EXERCISE: LXXXIV.

- 312** RULE.—Cēlo, dōceo, and some other Verbs take two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive :

<i>Mercury taught Cupid letters.</i>	Mercūrius Cūpīdīnem littēras dōcuit.
<i>My son must be taught letters.</i>	Filius meus littēras est dōcendus.

- 313** RULE.—Antē, post (placed *Adverbially* between the Noun and Adj. of time), and sometimes (216) ābhinc, *ago*, are used with the Abl. of *Measure* (274), to denote an interval before or after.

<i>He died a very few days before.</i>	Illo perpaucis antē diēbus ūbiit.
<i>Many years afterwards, he returned home.</i>	Multis post annis, domūum rēdiit.
<i>They perished two years ago.</i>	Abhinc biennio pēriērunt.

1. Non dubium est quin solverit quod pro fratre spon-  
dit. 2. Rogavi imperatorem utrum civitatem omnem an  
paucos procerum jure-jurando obstrinxisset. 3. Quibus  
domibus milites pepercerant eas cives ipsi incenderunt.  
4. Quod frater tuus me non celavit, id cur tu occuluisti?  
5. Num, te jubente, consul secures sumpsit posuitque? 6. Nolo  
exorsa (see exordior) vel potius fero detexta, postea, jam  
senex, retexere. 7. Tullius, primis annis, puer, equis bubusque

- 313a** <sup>1</sup> The Gen. and Acc. Pl. dōmōrum and dōmūs are sometimes found. The forms are sometimes remembered by the lines:—

Si declinare dōmus vīs

Tolle (i.e. take away) -mē, -mā, -mī, et -mīs.

The form dōmī, *at home*, is the Locative Case, see Par. 205.

alendis; mox juvenis, rei-publicae operam dedit.<sup>1</sup> 8. Si quid mihi humanitus (*adv.*) accidisset, liberi mei defensore caruissent (295, 1a). 9. Quotusquisque didicit quomodo vivendum sit! 10. Filiorum eius alteri Tullia nupsit; alteri soror eius, perpauca post mensibus. 11. Fertur Venus<sup>2</sup> filium suum Mercurio literas docendum tradidisse. 12. Homo stultissimus filio, qui natu maximus est, grandem pecuniam testamento (*abl. instr.*) legat; filiabus nihil legat.

1. *The worthless Balbus was-unwilling to support the parents who had supported him from boyhood.* 2. *I asked the husbandman when (i.e. at what time) he had sown (his) corn (pl.).* 3. *There is no doubt that the soldiers distrusted the general.* 4. *I asked Tullius why he was going-to-leave so-large a sum-of-money to his three daughters.* 5. *Did you, a few days afterwards, promise your daughter (in-marriage) to that-fellow?* 6. *Do you, who elected me consul, now hope, O citizens, to wrest the consulate from-me (mihi) by violence (152a)?* 7. *At-first our men were driven-back; (but) soon a-second-time advancing they drove the enemy down-from the hill.* 8. *Why have you pledged-yourself to pay so large a sum-of-money?* 9. *Because you are bankrupt, do not (ne) on that account make false promises.* 10. *Are-you-ignorant of the way in which (i.e. in-that-way) Brutus drove-out Tarquin?*

#### EXERCISE LXXXV.

- 314** 1. The Distributive Numerals (for which see Par. 77) are used, (1) where the same number applies to *each* of a class: (2) where the Noun with which the Numeral agrees is Singular in meaning, though Plural in form, *e.g.* *litterae*, *castra* (so that the Noun implies a *group*, *e.g.* *litterae*, *a group of alphabetical letters*); (3) in poetry.<sup>3</sup>

- (1) *The men will be contented with two or at all events three denarii a-piece.*      *Hōmīnes bīnis, aut certo ternis dēnāriis contenti erunt.*

<sup>1</sup> Dat governs *equis* as well as *rei-publicae*.

**315** <sup>2</sup> Note the Latin idiom. It is reported that *Venus* did, &c., is never to be rendered "*fertur Venerem fecisse*," &c., but always *Venus* is reported to have done, &c., "*fertur Venus fecisse*," &c. A similar construction is used with *dicitur*, see Par. 177.

**316** <sup>3</sup> Because, in poetry, number is regarded not as a precise collection of units, but as a *group*, a "brace," "dozen," "score," "hundred," &c., which may belong to any number of persons *a-piece*, so that a kind of distribution is implied. Thus any hero may carry his "couple" of darts, and any giant may have his "hundred hands"; and hence Virgil speaks of "*bina hastilia*," in the hand of *Aeneas*, and "*centēnae mīnūs*" belonging to a giant.



(2) *At that time I used to write one, two, three, four, sometimes five letters a day.*

Eo tempore singulis diebus unas, binas, trinas, quaternas, interdum etiam quinque litteras scribebam.<sup>1</sup>

**317** 2. Cum . . . tum, used like *et . . . et*, sometimes mean *not only, but also*: see sentence 7 below.

(*Look out allicio, diffindo, inūro, obliuo.*)

1. Quam messem senex severat filius eius messuit. 2. Hostes fusos fugatosque tanta vi nostri colle depulerunt ut ne equites quidem in arcem se recipere possent. 3. Vita eius tot tantisque flagitiis oblita fuerat ut turpitudinis notam non sibi soli sed toti generi et nomini suo inuississet. 4. Nonne apud Plinium, in Naturali Historia, legistis piscilus non supra quaternas pinnas esse, quibusdam binas, aliquibus nullas?<sup>2</sup> 5. Injus urbis portas aurum vestrum, non virtus, diffidit.<sup>3</sup> 6. Inter occulta et sepulta non multum interest. 7. Alexerant audientium animos, cum oratoris eloquentia, tum jurisjurandi commemoratio, et hostium jam accedentium minae. 8. Incertum est utrum militibus singulos an binos denarios dederit, an denique alios pecunia alios promissis ad seditionem impulerit. 9. Qui cum (i.e. *Now when he*) decemvir legibus scribendis<sup>4</sup> delectus esset, statim intellexit Licinius rem non jam neglegendam esse. 10. Tanta erat hostium multitudo ut ne trina quidem castra eis sufficerent.

1. *To (his) two daughters, whom he loved to a remarkable-degree (unice), he left ten thousand denarii a-piece.* 2. *(His) sons he entirely neglected, except one, the youngest, to whom he left all the money—that (quantum pecuniae) he had collected.* 3. *The soldiers he allured, by promising to some six, to others seven, denarii a-piece.* 4. *The daughter did not marry that (man) to whom her father had promised-her-in-marriage.* 5. *Having drawn the water, the girl returned to the well to draw (some) again.*<sup>5</sup> 6. *At the command of the emperor the consul laid aside the fasces, which he had assumed a very-few days before.* 7. *I*

**318** <sup>1</sup> Note that, with Pl. Nouns of Sing. meaning, the forms *ūni*, *trīni* are used, instead of the ordinary distributives, *singuli*, *terni*.

<sup>2</sup> For a list of the distributive numerals, see Par. 77.

<sup>3</sup> It was a proverb of Philip of Macedon that any city could be taken, to the gates of which a mule laden with gold, i.e. a bribe, could make its way.

<sup>4</sup> This dative (for “ad leges scribendas”) is rare, except in official appellations; and it is not to be imitated.

<sup>5</sup> Remember that the Eng. Infinitive is never to be rendered by the Latin Inf. unless it is the Subject or Object of a Verb: see Par. 247.

**318a**

fear that something (301) amiss has befallen the excellent Tullius. 8. My son, what you have sown, that you will reap.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

319 He is too cruel to be loved by any one. Crūdēlior est quam qui (or ut) a quoquam amētur.  
He is the same as he always was. Idem est ac (or qui) semper fuit.

(Look out accumbo, cōgo, comprēhendo, dēposco, nanciscor, rēgēro, pārio, excūtio.)

1. Proserpina, ut flores aspexit, "Accedite," inquit, "comites."<sup>1</sup>
2. Crudelior erat rex quam ut cuiquam indulgeret vel ignoscere.
3. Sperasne ceteros poenas duros, tibi uni indultum iri?
4. Centurioni milites increpanti vox haesit; nam meminerat et sibi uxorem liberosque domi manere.
5. Praetor eadem, quae antea, respondit, lege sanctum fuisse ne quis mortuum intra urbem sepeliret.
6. Homo cum inter cenandum obdormisset, subito tanto strepitu stertuit ut qui una (adv.) accubuerant omnes risum tollerent.
7. Mulier cum tres liberos uno partu peperisset, solitum praemium a regina depoposcit.
8. Exuta veste piscator se in undam mersit; mox anulum nactus regerit.
9. Tum Balbus, quem facinorum quae coactus commiserat jam poenituerat, rem omnem consuli pandit.
10. Continuo, excusso sopore, pater latronem comprehensurus exsiluit foras.

1. When (she) had approached the meadow the flowers attracted the maiden's eyes.
2. (His) voice failed (desum) him when he attempted (i.e. attempting) to ask the tyrant what he wished to do.
3. Having shaken off sleep, our men leaped out of their beds.
4. We went yesterday to Rome to see a picture painted by the celebrated painter Tullius.
5. If he had revealed the (295, 1a) matter of his own accord he would have been spared (167) by the conquerors.
6. It had been enacted that no one should possess more than two hundred acres, but the sons of Tullius possessed three hundred acres a-piece.
7. There is no doubt that you compelled the man to bind himself by an oath.
8. Those who remained in Corinth were all taken and slain.
9. When will you go from Rome (265a)?

320 <sup>1</sup> Inquit always comes after the first emphatic word of a speech, see page 215. For ut with the Indicative, see the Latin Vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> Esse is omitted after dāturos, a very common omission (211).

<sup>3</sup> Centurioni is Dat. of Disadvantage; sibi, Dat. of Advantage; for et see Par. 146.

## EXERCISE LXXXVII.

- 321** THE HISTORICAL INFINITIVE is used for the Indicative (always in the Present, and more commonly Active than Passive), when a writer is describing a number of actions so confused together that the times and persons are not easily defined; so that the *Infinitive*, i.e. the *Infinite* or *Indefinite* form of the Verb is naturally preferred. The consequent indefiniteness is somewhat similar to that which arises from the omission of *sum*; and this Infinitive is often found in a sentence in which *sum* is actually omitted.

*Horses and men, friends and foes were mingled together; all was chance, lit. chance ruled all things.*      *Ēqui, vīri, hostes, cives permixti; fors omnia rēgēre.*

- 322** A Dative of *Purpose* (besides the Dat. of Possession or Reception) is used after *sum* and *do* (268):

*He gave me the book (to serve) a gift.*      *Lībrum mīhi dōno dedit.*  
*This will be (for) a help to me.*      *Hōc erit mīhi adjūmento.*

A similar Dat. is sometimes used after *dūco*, *hābēo*, &c., meaning *consider*:

*This was considered (for) a great insult.*      *Hōc magnae contūmēliae hābitum est.*  
*(Look out allicio, anquiro, excōlo, torreo.)*

1. Foeda inde colluvies; pars cedere, alii insequi; hi fugere, illi resistere ac propulsare; nihil consilio agi. 2. Campus, frumentis optime excultus, decem milia passuum in latitudinem, tria in longitudinem patebat. 3. Consenserant Patres; uni Catoni aliter visum est. 4. Virgines alias (88) alii flores allexere; huic rosae, illi violae curae<sup>1</sup> erant: una Proserpina liliis sinum replebat. 5. Fertur Ceres famem longam papavere imprudens solvisse, quod, intratura senis domum, forte collegerat. 6. Nostri per apertas portas irruere; ibi clamorem tollere, caede atque incendio omnia miscere. 7. Cur non ante confessus es te peccavisse quam res ipsa anquisita est? 8. Credo fore ut mox judices timeas, quamquam nunc

<sup>1</sup> *Cūrae* is Dative; *rōsae* and *violae* Nominative.

quidem negas quidquam de te compertum esse. 9. Quid? Errorem tuum, nisi tibi ipsi nocuerit, nonne vis corrigere? 10. Ulmos vitibus amictas quis non rubetis (*not from rubeo*), sole tostis antepōnit?

1. *The false witnesses had not deceived (fallo) the judge, who favoured neither of us.* 2. *The fields, scorched by the sun, have not produced (their) usual fruits.* 3. *The maiden whom your brother has demanded in (in with acc.) marriage, her father has not promised-in-marriage.* 4. *The two armies, which consisted of four legions (each), filled the whole (of the) valley.* 5. *There is no doubt that he collected a great sum-of-money.* 6. *When he had plunged into the sea, he saw nothing but stones.* 7. *When all had agreed, Balbus alone resisted the proposal (i.e. plan).* 8. *She did not confess her fault until (ante . . . quam) the king bound her by an oath.*

#### EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

- 323** (1) *Quamquam*, *although*, mostly takes the Indicative; (2) *quamvis*, *however much*, always the Subjunctive (in Prose). (3) But *quamvis* is sometimes used as an Adverb: "*ēlige quamvis multa*,"<sup>1</sup> *choose however many, i.e. as many as you please.*

(*Look out pando, prōgigno, reor, sarcio, scindo.*)

1. *Scissa veste, crine passo, virgo ad caelum supplices manus protendebat.* 2. *Hic, quamvis male sevisset, sperabat se bene messurum esse.* 3. *Romani, quamquam hostem fuderant, tamen insequi fugientes nequibant.* 4. *Vestem sartam quidem, si necesse erit, patiar; turpem vero temaculis foedatam non patiar.* 5. *Legimus, apud Vergilium, Famam extremam prolem a Tellure progenitam.* 6. *Difficile est dictu cur hic tantus imperator tam imbellem gentem non facile perdomuerit.* 7. *His minis perterritus, saepsit se tyrannus militibus; tremere et exalbescere vel amicis adeuntibus; adeo (adv.) ut, ob metum tonsoris, se ipsum radere, coactus formidine, disceret.* 8. *Hanc occasionem delendae urbis minime sperendam esse ratus, Balbus regem ad necandos fame captivos*

---

**323a** <sup>1</sup> *Quamvis* is used once with the Indicative by Cicero, but this use is not to be imitated. *Quamquam* is used with the Subjunctive (1) in general statements, mostly in the Second Person (called the *Gnomic Subjunctive*), "*Although you may forgive a man, it is difficult to improve him*," "*Quamquam ignoscas, difficile est emendare*," (2) in statements expressing, not *fact*, but the *thought* of the writer.

impulit, jure-jurando se obstringens ita demum rem-publicam salvam fore.<sup>1</sup> 9. Itano mentieris? Nec nosti (*see* nōsco), prout seres, ita to messurum esse? 10. Jure falluntur ei qui divitiis, non virtute, homines metiuntur.

1. *It is one-thing (34) to dine, another-thing to stuff one's stomach with food.* 2. *Did you enry that-rile (iste) tyrant, hedged-round with soldiers, who measured dangers by his own fear?* 3. *There is no doubt that, as-boys, we learned many-things which as-old men we shall forget.* 4. *Having routed the enemy, why did you not pursue the -itives (i.e. those fleeing)?* 5. *Thinking that this opportunity was not to be neglected, the general ordered his-soldiers to charge.* 6. *After you had bound yourself by an oath to spare us, did you then impel the king to (ad) slay us?* 7. *The disciples of Epicurus, measuring (i.e. having-measured) all things by pleasure, were unable to estimate virtue at a sufficiently high value (285).* 8. *You who spurned her while-she-lived (i.e. living), will you spurn (her) (now-that-she-is-) about-to-die?*

#### EXERCISE LXXXIX.

**324** Jampridem and jamdūdum change the Latin Present into the English Complete Present (Perfect with *have*), and the Latin Imperfect into the English Pluperfect: "Jamdūdum opto, or optābam," *I have been, or had been, long desiring.*

(*Look out digēro, expērgiscor, lābor, quēror.*)

1. Ceres, diu secum quæsta, tandem his verbis Tonantem allocuta est. 2. Aut non erat paciscendum, aut, si pactus es, stāndum est promissis. 3. Nec fefellit opinionem eventus; tanta enim vi milites in castra irruerunt ut ducem ipsum in lecto nondum expectatum caperent. 4. Jampridem colonum admonebam ut pirum fructu gravatam et jam lapsuram fulciret. 5. Circa amnem, piscium (278) omnis generis plenum, armenta pingua pascebantur. 6. Quamvis multa dedecora in se admisisset, non dubium erat quin semper promissis stetisset. 7. Flores inter se dissimillimi, arte quadam in serto digesti, quis nescit quantum oblectationis afferant?<sup>2</sup> 8. Num imperatorem incensus quod unius et alterius (*see* 'alter') salutem ob incolumitatem totius exercitus neglexerit?

**325**

<sup>1</sup> Dēmum adds emphasis to the word before it, and is often equivalent to *only*: tum dēmum, *only then, then and not till then.*

<sup>2</sup> Flores is Nom. to afferant.

1. *Awake at-last, or sleep for ever (in aeternum) slaves.* 2. *If you had not made-this-bargain, citizens, the city would not have been delivered-over by the enemy.* 3. *It is reported that (315) Paris fed sheep round Mount Ida (i.e. Ida the mountain).<sup>1</sup>* 4. *Our men, shut (in) on-one-side by the enemy, on-the-other by a river and by mountains, were cut-off-from (their) supplies.* 5. *It is (the part) of an orator not-only (317) to arrange (his) facts, but-also to explain (them) clearly (when) arranged.<sup>2</sup>* 6. *You have caused me as-much sorrow as (you caused) yourself joy.* 7. *When I asked (i.e. to me asking) why she had complained she replied that her daughter had been torn-away from (de) her embrace.* 8. *This great man, whom neither threats had terrified nor gifts had tamed, succumbed at-last to Fortune.*

### EXERCISE XC.

1. *Apud antiquos cor (non cerebrum) visum est sapientiae esse sedes.* 2. *Nostri, cum ad collem confugissent, biduum ibi hostibus resistebant.* 3. *Nostris famem longam vix sustentantibus allatum est magnum gregem nuper ab hostibus in castra compulsus esse.* 4. *Fasces illos severos et secures sanguineas nemo plebis non formidabat.* 5. *Post tertium mensem, quum in eam vallem descendissemus quam nuntius indicaverat, nihil repperimus nisi tabescentia cadavera eorum quos pestis absumpserat.* 6. *Hoc sermone perterriti, suam quisque (165) domum conjurati dilapsi sunt.* 7. *Nescisne Taurum montem, inter Asiam et Syriam interjacentem, a Livio cardinem quendam appellatum esse?* 8. *Hunc panem ne furi quidem invidere possim.* 9. *Jure dictitabat Menenius plerosque, ventre (197) pleno, humaniores esse.* 10. *Hinc orta est inter senatorium et equestrem ordinem summa discordia; quorum alter Caesar, alter Pompeio favebat.*
1. *Seest thou not, O Brutus, thine axes polluted and thy fasces dyed with the blood of thy sons?* 2. *Having broken the two hinges, the robbers tore-away the gate.* 3. *Contented with a little (exiguus) bread, this great philosopher demanded no more (i.e. did not demand more-things).* 4. *Your sheep were lying under a beech-tree, which (was) struck with lightning (and) fell.* 5. *By his pleasant discourse this witty poet delighted both old-men and young.* 6. *Near a very high hill was a narrow valley*

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the name of the individual precedes the name of the class.

<sup>2</sup> Avoid the repetition of Pronouns in Latin: trans. *facts not only to arrange, but also, (when) arranged, to explain;* making (facts) the Obj. both of *arrange* and of *explain*.

watered by a small stream (amnis). 7. (Fair)-shone the ground (hūmus) painted with many kinds of beautiful flowers. 8. I have been long hoping that the city will be taken in two months.

## EXERCISE XCI.

**327** Quam, as far as, is sometimes put briefly for "quam pōtuit, pōtēris," &c.: *he prepared as sumptuous a dinner as he could*, "cēnam quam (pōtuit) ōpimam pārauit." This construction, with the Positive degree, is rare, and not to be imitated: but with the Superlative it is common:

*He hastened with as long marches as possible.* Quam (pōtuit) maxīmis itin-  
eribus contendit.  
*Take care to come as often as you can. (Lat. shall be able.)* Cūrā ūt quam (pōtēris)  
saepissimē venias.

1. O sortem (206) infelicissimam! Quibus pelagus pepercerat, eos fere in portu perire!<sup>1</sup> 2. Specum quendam, in ipso montis vertice, pumice exeso structum, anus haec incolere forebatur. 3. Hic inter frutices viridissimos amnis parvus de gelido fonte defluens quam gratissimos latices nobis suppeditabat. 4. Tales sonos si quis e lyra elicere velit, Phoebeco pollice opus sit. 5. Nondum venenatum calicem reus exhanserat, cum accurrit nuntius clamans regem mortuum esso. 6. Tuas messes, ut aiunt, ussisti; tua vinea cecidisti. 7. Aggerem illum altissimum decem diebus nostri exstruxerant. 8. Balbone credis? Peribis hercle, nisi anguem illum in herba latentem quam celerime extimueris. 9. Has urbes Philippus ille magni aestimabat tamquam compedes ipsas Graeciae.<sup>2</sup> 10. Vergilius scribit Tartarearum portarum postes adamantinos ne a caelicolis quidem excindi posse.

1. The open-sea (pēlāgus) is not to-be-tried by us in this small ship.  
2. Let us hope that the harvest will be as great as possible.  
3. The general surrounded the town with a mound thirty feet high. 4. We have four fingers and one thumb (314).  
5. Did you see the snake which the eagle had carried off?

**328** <sup>1</sup> Trans. to think that they should perish! and parso as Exclamatory Infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> Compēdes is Acc. governed by aestimāret understood: "tam quam (aestimaret)" *as much as (he would value) the fetters, &c.* The meaning is that certain fortresses in Greece enabled their owner to keep the whole country in subjection, as fetters enable a jailer to keep a prisoner.

6. *Horace says that (nego) he cannot free himself from the pleasing fetter of love.* 7. *There is no doubt that the goat injured that beautiful tree as much as possible with (his) destructive tooth.* 8. *Are you not ashamed (see Vocab. 'ashamed'), soldiers, of having yielded to enemies so few (in-numbers)?* 9. *As-long-as you are (125) in debt, you will never be able to be contented with your lot.*

EXERCISE XCII.

**329** With *intērest* and *rēfert*, to express *it concerns you, me, himself* (not *him*), the forms *meā, tuā, nostrā, suā, &c.*, are used.

These Verbs are qualified by the Adverbs *nihil, multum, tantum, quantum, quid*, and also by *magni, parvi, plūris, mīnōris, tanti*, as well as by ordinary Adverbs such as *maximē*.

*What does it matter to me in  
what manner you compel me?*

*Quid meā rēfert quā ratiōne  
mē (240) cōgātis?*

*Intērest, it concerns*, is used with the Gen. of the person or thing concerned; (but *rēfert* is rarely thus used). Both are followed by the Acc. and Inf., or by *ūt* (or *nē*) with the Subjunctive.

*It concerns the State and us that  
you should be well.*

*Ēt rei-publicae ēt nostrā  
intērest tē vālere.*

*It is important for you to come.*

*Tuā intērest ūt vēniās.*

**330** *Ūtīnam, would that!* or *O that!* is used to signify a wish, (1) with the Pres. Subjunctive for a *possible*, (2) the Imperf. or Pluperf. Subjunctive for an *impossible* wish.

*O that the past might return!*

*Ūtīnam praetērīta rēdīrent!*

*O that he might arrive to-day!*

*Ūtīnam hōdiē advēniat!*

1. *A recta conscientia ne transversum quidem unguem discesseris.*<sup>1</sup> 2. *Interrogavi colonum num domi sedens murmur maris exaudire posset.* 3. *Respondit fulmen ibi decem ante annis de caelo cecidisse.*<sup>2</sup> 4. *Non nostri moris est ebur et aurum ad Deum colendum adhibere.*<sup>3</sup> 5. *Quis tumidum guttur*

<sup>1</sup> Why is *unguem* the Acc. (262)? *Nē* affects (129) the translation of *discesseris*.

<sup>2</sup> Parse *annis*: Par. 313.

<sup>3</sup> Parse *mōris*: Par. 289.



in Alpihus miratur? 6. Qui humana carne vescebantur apud Graecos Anthropophagi nominati sunt. 7. Utinam ex hoc fonte nunquam pestis in totam rempublicam defluat! 8. Eligendum erat inter duo itinera, quorum alterum per montes altissimos ducebat, alterum trans angustum pontem, quo nuper amnem junxeramus. 9. Dicebat homo sponte sua se venisse; sed frons ipsa testabatur eum adesse invitum. 10. Multum interest rei familiaris tuae te quam celerrime venire. 11. Utinam fur pecuniâ multaretur, neve verbera passus esset! 12. Minoris refert qualibus in aedibus vivas (240), si modo Romae vivis. 13. Aere alieno quondam oppressus, ne nunc quidem se omnino liberavit.

1. *The fellow had not-yet vomited-forth against me the venom of his envy.* 2. *He who had not feared even lashes and tortures, now hearing (abl. abs.) the words of the judge, trembled from-head to-foot (toto corpore).* 3. *It is reported that the raven, whereas (cum, with subjunct.) he ought to have brought (223) a golden cup to Apollo, lied, feigning that a long snake had caused him delay.* 4. *The centurion, his eye having been struck out (effodio), was no longer fit for performing military service (stipendia merere, lit. to earn pay).* 5. *They spoke with-every-appearance-of-truth (trans. with a most true forehead); but, in my judgment, they were lying.* 6. *There is no doubt that from this source many evils flowed into our country.* 7. *There was no doubt that he had been scourged before he was sent (i.e. had been sent) into exile (145b).* 8. *O-that you would not depart even a hair's breadth from the precepts of your father!* 9. *He thought to himself (i.e., with himself) how important it was for Balbus that he himself should return home (Acc. and Pres. Inf.).* 10. *What does it matter whether these birds are fed or not?*

#### ELEMENTARY RULES FOR ORATIO OBLIQUA.

- 331** 'Speech reported in the First Person ("*I* fear," said Balbus, "*I* am mistaken") is called Oratio Recta, or, *Direct Speech*; speech reported in the Third Person (Balbus said that "*He* feared *he* was mistaken") is called Oratio Obliqua, or *Indirect Speech*.

In passing from English O. R. to O. O. almost the only change is in the Personal Pronouns and Tenses, as above, *I* into *he*, *am* into *was* :

Speech in First Person.

"I know," said Balbus, "that you will help me. What is lost can be regained. The cities that have been taken before we came here, can be recovered. Take courage therefore. Why do you delay? Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight? Do not desert me. Trust in your own right-hands and in my diligence."

Speech in Third Person.

Balbus said that "He knew that they would help him. What had been lost could be regained. The cities that had been taken before they came there, could be recovered. They should therefore take courage. Why did they delay? Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight? They should (or let them) not desert him. They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."<sup>1</sup>

But in Latin there are changes in the Moods, besides other changes, as follows :

- 332 1. (a) *Principal Verbs in the Indicative* are changed into Infinitives, and their Subjects into Accusatives. (b) *Inquit* is changed into *dixit* or some other Verb.

ORATIO RECTA.

"I know," said Balbus,  
Tum Balbus "scio" inquit (320)

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Balbus said that "He knew"  
Balbus dixit "Sē scīre"

- 333 2. *Ēgo* and *nōs* are changed into *sē*; *vōs* into *eos*.  
that you will help me. | that they would help him.  
*vos mihī adfuturos.* | *eos sibi adfuturos.*

- 334 3. *Indicatives after Relatives and after Non-co-ordinate Conjunctions*, are changed into Subjunctives.<sup>2</sup>

The cities that have been taken  
before we came here, can be  
recovered.

Quae urbes captae sunt, ante-  
quam hūc venimus, recūpērāri  
possunt.

The cities that had been taken  
before they came there, could  
be recovered.

Quae urbes captae fuissent,  
antēquam illūc venissent,  
posse recūpērāri.

<sup>1</sup> Before the pupil writes Latin he should practise turning English speech of the First Person into speech of the Third Person.

34a <sup>2</sup> (1) Co-ordinate Conjunctions are *sēd*, *antem*, *tāmen*, *et*, *-que*, *nam*, *enim*, *itaque*, *igītur*, &c. (2) Non-co-ordinate or Subordinate Conj. are *ūt*, *quōd*, *quā*, *cum*, *dōnēc*, *antēquam*, *postquam*, *sī*, *quamquam*, &c.

When the Relative, e.g. *quos*, can be replaced by a Demonstrative and a Coordinate Conjunction, (et eos), it is sometimes followed by an Infinitive But for the beginner this construction will not be necessary.

**335** 4. *Imperatives* are changed into *Subjunctives*.*Take courage therefore.*

Erīgite īgitur ānimos.

(He begged that) *They should therefore take courage.*

Erīgērent īgitur ānimos.

**336** 5. Questions asked in the *Second Person* are rendered by the *Subjunctive* in the *Third Person* (*being really Indirect Questions*).*Why do you delay?*

Cūr mōrāmini?

(He asked) *Why did they delay?*

Cūr mōrārentur?

**337** 6. Questions asked in the *First* and *Third Person* are rendered by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.*Is not the enemy now but a little way off? Are we not prepared to fight?*Nonne hostis prōpū jam āhest?  
Nonne ad pugnandum pārāti sūmus?*Was not the enemy now but a little way off? Were they not prepared to fight?*Nonne hostem prōpū jam āb-esse? Nonne sē ad pugnandum pārātos esse?<sup>1</sup>**338** -7. (a) *Sē, sībī, &c.*, are used for the *Person speaking*; (b) but where *sē, suis, &c.*, are needed to express the *Person addressed*, *ipse* is used for the *Person speaking*.(a) *Do not desert me.*

Nōlite me dēsērere.

(a) *They should not desert him.*

Nollent sē dēsērere.

(b) *Trust in your own right hands and in my diligence."*

Spem in vestris dextris et in mea diligētia pūnite."

(b) *They should trust in their own right hands and in his diligence."*

Spem in suis dextris et in ipsius diligētiā pūnērent."

## EXERCISE XCIII.

*To be turned into Latin Oratio Obliqua.*

A. His auditis, Tullius, ad amicos conversus, "Cur" inquit (332 b) "moramini? Neque enim ego volo amicis exitium ferre neque vos jam potestis morituro prodesse. Hostes jam

**338a** <sup>1</sup> These questions are really partly questions, partly passionate statements: *The enemy is but a little way off, is he not? We are prepared to fight, are we not?* Hence, they are expressed by the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*.

prope absunt; mox aderunt. Urbs capiatur. Fugite igitur. Quod facere potui, feci; nihil praeter mortem mihi jam restat. Quae vobiscum auferre potestis, ea auferite. Num respondetis vos hic mansuros? Antequam vos inter cohortes conscripsi promisistis vos (338b) mihi obtemperaturos, nec fidem fefellistis. Satis virtuti datum est: jam saluti consulite. At cur nos hic tempus inani colloquio terimus? Equidem,<sup>1</sup> quoniam necesse est, moriar. Vos (335) vivite et valet, et curate ut mortem ineam ulciscamini."

(B. is already in O. O. ; C. must be turned into O. O.)

B. Balbus having now departed from the senate-house, the consul addressed the senators (i.e. the fathers) to this effect: "Why did they (336) hesitate? Let them choose, if it was necessary, between a glorious death and an inglorious servitude. But he was persuaded that this was not necessary. Victory, not death, awaited them, if, without fear, they consulted the interest of the country. Not even the lowest of the citizens now favoured the conspirators. Already they were praised by all the best of the citizens, soon they would be praised by all. Why therefore did they sit there hesitating, since both Fortune and Necessity taught them that they ought not now to deliberate but to act? When they had made a beginning, the citizens would to a man (ad unum) approve their plans. He would say no more, for there was need not of words but of deeds."

C. Tullius now turned to the soldiers of the tenth legion. "Why," said he (332b), "do you fear the multitude of the enemy? We indeed have only three thousand, the enemy ten thousand; but three free citizens can easily resist ten slaves. The victories that the enemy has lately gained have been gained by treachery and guile; but in this plain, treachery will avail nothing (nullo modo). Be of good cheer therefore, since Mars will give the palm to the more worthy army. If only you can repel the first assault of (their) cavalry, the infantry will speedily turn their backs. Trust in your own valour and in my skill (i.e. plans). What avail ten thousand sheep against one wolf? But why do I waste time in speaking? The enemy is at hand, the contest is to be waged (i.e. it is to be striven) not with tongues but with swords."

<sup>1</sup> Equidem being (130) almost always used with the first person, should be changed into quidem when attached to *ē*.

<sup>2</sup> In turning this into O. O., inquit must not be used. You may either translate Tullius having turned to . . . spoke to this effect, 'Why did they fear,' &c., or omit the Verb of speaking and leave it to be understood: Tullius now turned . . . legion, 'Why did they fear?' &c.

## EASY AND RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.

I.—ON THE NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.<sup>1</sup>

(The only Verbs required are those given in paragraphs 1—112.)

## EXERCISE I.

1. Probo scribas. 2. Fabri (9a) pigri. 3. Molesto pediti. 4. Pavidorum nautarum. 5. Jucundā insulā. 6. 7. Temporum prosperorum. 8. Stultis principibus. 9. Parvi papilionis. 10. Ossium magnorum. 11. Ab indigno comito. 12. Insigni labore. 13. Meliorum judicum. 14. Scythia perniciosus. 15. Itinoris longi. 16. Planitie vastae. 17. Velocium equitum. 18. Vigilum tribunorum. 19. Regionum pulchrarum. 20. Morum antiquorum. 21. A benigno nauta.

1. From the good leader. 2. To the wretched sailor. 3. Of frequent lightnings. 4. Of the poor girl. 5. To great hope. 6. Of the left horn. 7. To the wise chariotcer. 8. Of the active inhabitants. 9. Of the black teeth. 10. By the difficult journey. 11. To the short bows. 12. Of the third tribe. 13. To the lean face. 14. O angry poet. 15. Of the stern leaders. 16. Of beautiful fountains. 17. To the useful bow. 18. Of high citadels. 19. By the enemy's camp. 20. To a few soldiers. 21. Of the second cohort. 22. By (13a) the king. 23. By great hope. 24. Of long days.

## EXERCISE II.

1. Maximus ille vir. 2. Pulcherrimarum urbium muri. 3. Optimorum poetarum dulcia carmina. 4. Majorum oppidorum arces. 5. Difficillimorum et maximorum operum. 6. Principum munificentissimorum jussa. 7. Harum tam miserarum calamitatum. 8. Pessima haec exempla. 9. Pulcherrimorum florum color. 10. Imbri tristi et pernicioso. 11. Quercus nigerrimae glandes paucae. 12. Ultimi illius diei memoria. 13. Morborum taetriorum multitudo. 14. Aurigae maxime strenuo dona (95) dāmus. 15. Quis to pessimo hoc rege liberat? 16. Quis haec ei dat?

---

<sup>1</sup> These exercises may be heard *vidē voce*, and the sentences are numbered that the pupil may be rapidly called to translate any sentence at the teacher's discretion.

- 1.<sup>1</sup> *To this very wise girl.* 2. *The two brothers of the same woman.* 3. *The largest part of the outer wall.* 4. *Of very slender legs.* 5. *The girl loves his two brothers: which-of-the two do you love most (maximè)?* 6. *The very-old soldier loves older wine.* 7. *The very contemptible (superl. of humilis) memory of that most unhappy day.* 8. *With which of these two cities?* 9. *To the same woman he gives three apples.* 10. *To Tullia alone he gives three hundred cherries.* 11. *To the other sea.* 12. *Of the same camp.* 13. *To one-man's spurs, to another-man's sword.* 14. *Of the younger soldiers.* 15. *By this most troublesome thirst.* 16. *By the older (61) soldier.*

## EXERCISE III.

1. *Hic vi, illo sapientia, hostes superat.* 2. *Multos pericula minima terrent.* 3. *Alterius constantiam, alterius diligentiam laudamus.* 4. *Piscator tria milia piscium habet.* 5. *Nequissimorum puerorum versus non laudo.* 6. *Tussi febrique medicus te liberat.* 7. *Plura tibi quam nobis dat.* 8. *Pejor est iste pessimo meorum comitum.* 9. *Agricola optimus meliore fato dignus erat.* 10. *Nulli suorum carior erat quam sibi.* 11. *Haec tibi uni jucunda sunt.*
1. *Which of these two journeys do you praise?* 2. *To this very-tender maiden alone he gives a hundred oxen.* 3. *The boy is smaller than the largest of the men.* 4. *Wisdom frees him from anger.* 5. *To you he gives more gifts than to himself.* 6. *The memory of that very keen contest was more bitter to you than to him.* 7. *This was more agreeable to you than to any of his companions.* 8. *By patience he delivers himself from fever.* 9. *What poet is wiser than Homer? what poem better than his poems?* 10. *The former is wiser than the latter.*

## II.—ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

## EXERCISE IV.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

1. *Castigaberis.* 2. *Agros vastavisti.* 3. *Laudatus est.* 4. *Pugnabunt.* 5. *Ne erraveritis.* 6. *Vastate agros.* 7. *Pugnaverant.* 8. *Ut aedificet urbem.* 9. *Vulnerata est.* 10. *Vituperabimini.* 11. *Ambulaveratis.* 12. *Cantavissetis.* 13. *Ut cantarent.* 14. *Cantemus.* 15. *Dubitare.* 16. *Servemus urbem.* 17. *Ambulaveritis.* 18. *Oppidum aedificatum erat.* 19. *Ut servaremur.* 20. *Ut laudare.* 21. *Canta.*

<sup>1</sup> On the position of the Pronoun Adjective between an ordinary Adjective and Noun, see Vocabulary, *this*.

1. *You will sing.* 2. *He will have been wounded.* 3. *Ye must build (imper.).* 4. *The city had been built.* 5. *Let us praise them.* 6. *The fields have been laid waste.* 7. *You will be chastised.* 8. *That he might be wounded.* 9. *That we might sing.* 10. *Do not doubt, O friend.* 11. *We shall have preserved the city.* 12. *I should have carried.* 13. *They would have been blamed.* 14. *Ye will not be loved.* 15. *That ye may take care.* 16. *We shall have been preserved.* 17. *You had sung, O daughter.* 18. *Sing, O daughter.* 19. *Ye were being preserved.* 20. *Ye will be wounded.*

## EXERCISE V.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. *Puer valebat.* 2. *Terrebamini.* 3. *Timebere.* 4. *Territus fuerat.* 5. *Ut exerceres corpus.* 6. *Monuisssem te.* 7. *Ut monereris.* 8. *Doce puerum.* 9. *Ne timueris.* 10. *Exercueris.* 11. *Filia monita fuisset.* 12. *Ut terreat.* 13. *Valuistis.* 14. *Exercetor.* 15. *Exerceamus corpora.* 16. *Ne territa sis, O mulier.* 17. *Docebimur.* 18. *Terrebare.* 19. *Terres puerum.* 20. *Terremur.* 21. *Terruistis.*
1. *We had been terrified.* 2. *That he may fear.* 3. *Ye will be taught.* 4. *He was being advised.* 5. *We should have feared.* 6. *That they might exercise (their) bodies.* 7. *Ye have been advised, O citizens.* 8. *You will be terrified, O friend.* 9. *You have terrified us.* 10. *That you might be advised.* 11. *Let us terrify the enemy.* 12. *I used-to-have (115) a book.* 13. *You had taught us.* 14. *Do not teach him.* 15. *He will have terrified you.* 16. *You will have been terrified, O friends.* 17. *Exercise (your) bodies.* 18. *Ye would have taught him.* 19. *The soldiers terrified the woman.*

## EXERCISE VI.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. *Duxeratis.* 2. *Contraxisti.* 3. *Quid homo dixerat?* 4. *Ut instruantur milites.* 5. *Ut instrueret aciem.* 6. *Scribes epistolam.* 7. *Hoc spem nostram minuerat.* 8. *Gloriam eius minuemus.* 9. *Agger structus fuerat.* 10. *Flumen ponte iunxissemus.* 11. *Milites ducentur.* 12. *Ut ducare.* 13. *Libri scripti sunt.* 14. *Ut ducoremini.* 15. *Quis legionem ducebat.* 16. *Ne nos duxeris.* 17. *Hæc tibi dixissemus.* 18. *Dicamus vera (Par. 34).* 19. *Ducēris.* 20. *Ducēris.*
1. *That they might rule.* 2. *You will be led.* 3. *He would have said these-things.* 4. *You have piled up a mound, soldiers.* 5. *She has been led.* 6. *The mound has been piled up.* 7. *Be ye drawn-up, soldiers.* 8. *He had drawn together-foot-*

soldiers. 9. *What will you say, friends?* 10. *His glory has been diminished.* 11. *That we may bridge the river.* 12. *The river would have been bridged.* 13. *You were being drawn-up, soldiers.* 14. *Do not say this.* 15. *Let us pile-up a mound.* 16. *You had written a letter, my brother.* 17. *Do not write these letters, friends.* 18. *I shall be led.* 19. *They are being drawn up.* 20. *They would have been led.* 21. *Our hopes were diminished.* 22. *They will write.*

## EXERCISE VII.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. Dormiisti. 2. Puniti orant. 3. Urbs muniatur. 4. Opus finitum est. 5. Ut erudiremini. 6. Nutriebantur. 7. Ut vestias puerum. 8. Opus finieris. 9. Custodiverat obsides. 10. Obsides custodiuntor. 11. Urbes custoditae fuissent. 12. Erudientur pueri. 13. Ut opus finiatur. 14. Custodiare milites captivum. 15. A magistro erudiemur. 16. Dormiamus. 17. Erudiebamini. 18. Erudientur. 19. Ne puerum erudiveris. 20. Ut erudiremini. 22. Erudiēris.
1. *We had slept.* 2. *You will sleep.* 3. *That you may be punished, O citizens.* 4. *The girl had been clothed.* 5. *The boy will be guarded.* 6. *The camp would have been fortified.* 7. *That the boy might be instructed.* 8. *Let us guard the leader.* 9. *We shall clothe the boy.* 10. *The boy was being instructed.* 11. *That the tasks may be ended.* 12. *The boys must be instructed (imper.).* 13. *Nourish the boys.* 14. *We shall fortify the city.* 15. *That you may fortify the city, soldiers.* 16. *That you might sleep.* 17. *You were being instructed, boys.* 18. *You will have instructed the boys, most learned master.* 19. *The boys will have been instructed.* 20. *The boys will sleep.* 22. *They used-to-sleep (115).* 23. *You slept, boys.*

## III.—GENERAL EXERCISES.

## EXERCISE VIII.

(Exercises VIII. to XI. refer to Par. 1—129; see also page 186.)

1. Bidui iter fecēre. 2. Multi hoc negant. 3. Quantum pecuniae habes? 4. Et ego et tu hoc negamus. 5. Errare humanum est. 6. Multa eis dedimus. 7. Fato meliore digna est. 8. Puer matri est simillimus. 9. Plura tibi quam mihi dederunt. 10. Nonne equus est animalium utilissimus? 11. Utri plura dedisti? Nentri: eadem ambobus dedi.



1. *I will give a book to one of you.* 2. *Many of the children gave us flowers.* 3. *You and I have erred.* 4. *The girl is more like her father than her mother.* 5. *Let us hasten by night.* 6. *The soldiers are most worthy of punishment.* 7. *We led the army into the nearest city.* 8. *This work is not very easy.* 9. *The words of the unjust sailor are very base.* 10. *A hundred brave (men) are better than two hundred cowardly (men).* 11. *He was more worthy of punishment than you.*

## EXERCISE IX.

1. *Uter fontium major est?* 2. *Decem millia passuum iter fecimus.* 3. *Tullius, rex crudelissimus, veniam Balbo dedit.* 4. *Nocte hostes castra nostra invaserunt.* 5. *Decem his diebus trecentos elephantos ad exercitum mittemus.* 6. *Equites peditesque plurimos habemus.* 7. *Regum fortium vitae nos delectant.* 8. *Hoc opus facilius est quam illud.* 9. *Et mihi et tibi feliciū supplicium verba jucunda sunt.* 10. *Nullius dona, quam fratris tui mihi jucundiora sunt.*
1. *What have you done worthy of praise?* 2. *He is worse than his brother.* 3. *The keenest soldiers fought most bravely.* 4. *You journeyed for (i.e. made a journey of) two-days in a very rough country.* 5. *Neither of the fountains had very sweet water.* 6. *Which of the two girls loves her father more?* 7. *He is more like you than me.* 8. *Where is the book you gave me?* 9. *Do not say many-things.* 10. *All love themselves.* 11. *Do you say this?*

## EXERCISE X.

1. *Pueri ludere amant.* 2. *Ne plura rogaveris.* 3. *Milites in campum ducamus.* 4. *Si venti flaverint, in portu manebimus.* 5. *Multas noctes in urbe mansimus.* 6. *Dicamus vera.* 7. *Senex septuagesimo altero anno uxorem tertiam duxit.* 8. *Senum memoria infirmior quam juvenum est.* 9. *Pejor morte est infamia.* 10. *Verba eius isti molesta sunt.*
1. *Very many say this.* 2. *You say the same.* 3. *He wounded me with a spear.* 4. *Let us walk six days.* 5. *His words are more pleasant to you than to any of your brothers.* 6. *The brave Balbus was leader of the whole (totus) army.* 7. *Both to you and to me he gave the same gifts.* 8. *No poet blames his own poems.* 9. *If he comes by night, we will depart in three hours.* 10. *To one of his two sons he gave a thousand oxen, to the other two thousand sheep.* 11. *Do not sleep, boy.*

## EXERCISE XI.

(Exercises XI. to XIX. refer to Par. 1—295.)

1. Clam parentibus huc venisti. 2. Ne tu quidem idem dedecus bis in te admittes. 3. Nostri ab hostibus superati sunt. 4. Quid obstat quominus patri tuo pareas? 5. Plura dicturum duae sagittae transfixerunt. 6. Interrogavi matrem num huc ventura esset. 7. Hostes urbem captam incendunt. 8. Non dubium est quin aurum in ea regione reppereris. 9. Captivos vinctos centurio ad imperatorem duxerat. 10. Quot dies hostibus resistebatis? 11. Tune times?
1. *There is no doubt that he pardoned the accused (man).* 2. *Cultivate learning that you may not be unlearned.* 3. *Not even Tullius will spare this city.* 4. *Let us ask her on what day she will come.* 5. *What prevented you from pleasing his father?* 6. *I will do my best to pardon him.* 7. *They took and burned the city (Par. 159).* 8. *The leaders gave orders-to their men not to resist the enemy.* 9. *There was no doubt that the city had been taken by the tenth legion.* 10. *She was killed by poison, without-the-knowledge-of the king.*

## EXERCISE XII.

1. Extra urbem decem horas pugnatum est. 2. In eo eram ut Balbum vincerem. 3. Saepe me interrogavisti utrum Romanus sim an Atheniensis. 4. Civibus pro patria fortiter pugnandum est. 5. Aut vincendum est aut serviendum. 6. Oravi ducem ut captis parceret. 7. Interrogate hominem num coram iudice hoc dixerit. 8. Reo, haec neganti, mendacium graviter nocuit. 9. Dux suis imperavit ne acie cederent. 10. Ne tibi quidem rex ignoscet, si a Tullio stabis. 11. Quis nescit urbem incendi?
1. *He was silent for two hours in-the-presence-of the judge.* 2. *He had reigned ten years as-far-as the Alps.* 3. *He was on the point of conquering.* 4. *The king asked us whether we were husbandmen or sailors.* 5. *There is no doubt that the cold hurt the beautiful pine-tree.* 6. *He asked me whether the centurion was worthy of this great (see Vocab. great) reward.* 7. *I advised the soldier to answer the leader with these words.* 8. *We must make-haste that we may not come late.* 9. *When the general had heard this, he ordered the line-of-battle to retire.* 10. *Answer-was-made to the king in these words.*

## EXERCISE XIII.

1. *What is pleasant to some is troublesome to others.* 2. *He built a house twenty feet high.* 3. *I asked him, O citizens, to come by night.* 4. *I asked which of you two said these things.* 5. *Did you say this to deceive us?* 6. *It is very difficult to make very long marches in winter.* 7. *The excellent physician Balbus gave you medicine to cure you.* 8. *The girl is even now more beautiful than her sister.* 9. *There is no doubt that he gave you more gifts than me.* 10. *By the fruitful harvest the hearts of the husbandmen were delighted.* 11. *He asked why the goats were larger than most of the sheep.*

## EXERCISE XIV.

1. *Come here in haste, my son.* 2. *Is he very poor?* 3. *When were the Gauls conquered by Caesar?* 4. *Do you call me a citizen?* 5. *There is no doubt that he was created consul by the citizens.* 6. *At last the enemy, overcome by our men, fled to the camp.* 7. *Each of the two brothers pleased (placeo) himself alone.* 8. *Do not set-out from the city by night.* 9. *She is about-to-return to Asia.* 10. *The head of Hasdrubal was thrown into the camp.* 11. *You slept the whole night.*

## EXERCISE XV.

1. *He sent a letter to his friend.* 2. *Give that woman the same book you gave me.* 3. *Do not declare war, O king.* 4. *When will you quench your thirst?* 5. *Have you ever used a golden axe?* 6. *I shall have given you, my son, three hundred denarii.* 7. *What you say, is true.* 8. *What is more faithful than a faithful dog?* 9. *There is no doubt that every good man resisted this law.* 10. *You will be no longer foolish but base, if, even now, you please yourself alone.* 11. *Do not stay.*

## EXERCISE XVI.

1. *Some stood here, others there.* 2. *The disease did not hurt even one of the sheep.* 3. *On the fifth day you came to Egypt.* 4. *Being-about-to-set-out for Europe we shall send two messengers to Alexander.* 5. *You and I will pay attention to philosophy.* 6. *Who took the city (of) Corinth?* 7. *Mummius, who took Corinth, was very poor.* 8. *He came a-second-time into the forum.* 9. *What prevented him from walking in his brother's garden?* 10. *Ajax slew himself with the sword which he had received from Hector.* 11. *He is free from cares.*

## EXERCISE XVII.

1. *This work is finished.* 2. *My son and I sent messengers to you.* 3. *My brother and sister are very happy.* 4. *There is no doubt that it is pleasant to conquer.* 5. *We ought to command (164); you ought to obey.* 6. *The city is being built; a great part of it is built already.* 7. *The small town (of) Corioli was taken (agrees with 'town') by Marcius, who was thence called Coriolanus.* 8. *Balbus and Tullius besought me to pardon both (of) them.* 9. *You praised both, you pleased neither.* 10. *Nothing prevents you from building a new bridge.*

## EXERCISE XVIII.

1. *Spem mihi ultimam eripuisti.* 2. *Sole orto, in campum descendum est.* 3. *Hoc ad agros colendos erat utilissimum.* 4. *Romae biennium habitavimus.* 5. *Huic genti quis tributum imponere ausus est?* 6. *Capta urbe, arcem incendimus.* 7. *Nonne vis fateri quantum te tuae stultitiae pudeat?* 8. *Quando ibis Corinthum?* 9. *Hodie Arpinum eo, cras Romae manebo.* 10. *E malevolo, fis malevolentior; mox fies malevolentissimus.* 11. *Ego et frater hic (adv.) manemus.*
1. *Are you not weary of idleness?* 2. *He built walls twenty-five feet high.* 3. *Dionysius, driven from Syracuse, taught boys.* 4. *Why do you not confess that you repent of your wickedness?* 5. *He says that this ditch is twenty feet deep.* 6. *When will you come to see me?* 7. *No one pities the conquered.* 8. *He could have helped me, but he would not.* 9. *I can no longer bear these great insults.* 10. *I hear that he is becoming weaker.* 11. *Will you go to Rome or remain in Corinth?*

## EXERCISE XIX.

1. *Utrum duos an tres menses vis Carthagine manere?* 2. *Non facile istum tuli querentem de seditione.* 3. *Nostine quo velit ire?* 4. *Tot scelera fassus, num putas nos posse tui misereri?* 5. *Negavit se sui tanti flagitii poenitere.* 6. *Postquam ab hostibus clamatum est, nostri, Balbo hortante, e silvis erupere.* 7. *Aliorum oblitus num speras alios tui non oblituros esse?* 8. *Oportuit te non isti sed patri tuo placere.* 9. *Quantum pecuniæ tibi pater ad emendos flores dedit?* 10. *Negari non potest ambos semper eadem voluisse, eadem noluisse.* 11. *Licuit tibi esse felici; sed noluisti mihi parere.* 12. *Operam dabat libris scribendis.*

1. *To live in Rome seemed to me more pleasant than to live at Gaii.* 2. *Have you already, O foolish girls, forgotten these most easy verses?* 3. *Who ordered the fourth tribe to be present?* 4. *Having suffered so many evils, you ought to pity others.* 5. *The two boys, horrible to relate! attempted to murder their own father.* 6. *In three days you will become richer than his brother if your ship returns to Corinth.* 7. *You might have dined with (183) your kind host; but you would dine at home.* 8. *I have come here to see-to the building of a bridge.* 9. *Who does-not-know that water, by often falling, hollows even the hardest stone?*

## EXERCISE XX.

(Exercises XX. to XXIX. refer to the whole of the book.)

1. *Barbari erant proceris corporibus, promisso capillo.* 2. *Non opus est mihi tanta pecunia.* 3. *Virtutem maximi aestimate.* 4. *Die quarto aggerem jam decem pedes altum exstruxerant.* 5. *His condicionibus pax ab utroque duce facta est.* 6. *Respondit se non assis me facere.* 7. *Certum erat fundum grandi pecunia emptum fuisse.* 8. *Patriae amantissimus erat, patientissimus periculorum, suis contentus, alienarum divitiarum nunquam cupidus.* 9. *Respondit se nolle sua pretio emere.* 10. *Tu, cuius (299a) es sapientiae, intelleges quid his respondere oporteat.* 11. *Non est moris nostri quos praesentes laudavimus eos absentes condemnare.*
1. *He was acquitted of bribery.* 2. *Why did you, O judges, condemn the innocent Balbus to death?* 3. *He was endowed with a (see 'a') wonderful art of persuading.* 4. *By this road you will never come to Athens.* 5. *He sent a messenger to ask which of his two brothers lived at Gabii.* 6. *The girl replied that she was descended from royal parents.* 7. *Do you think that it is the mark of a philosopher to envy the wealth of others?* 8. *He was learned in the law, and very brave; but greedy of wealth.* 9. *Are you certain of this thing?* 10. *My barns are full of corn; I have much money at home.*

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. *Nescio an mulier Carthagine ventura sit.* 2. *Misi qui praedium magno pretio emat.* 3. *Vereor ut puer virtutem pluris quam voluptatem aestimet.* 4. *Si auxilium poposcisses, abhinc biduum misissem.* 5. *Nescisne inepti esso nunquam ridere?* 6. *Quis Thracum more velit bibere?* 7. *Non cuiusvis est multa bene facere.* 8. *Si illuc ibis, vereor ne*

serpentis morsu pereas. 9. Num quis audeat negare consules bene de republica meritos esse? 10. Duabus unciiis procerior est quam quisquam nostrum.

1. *If any one had given me the book I would have read (it).* 2. *I feared he would be weary of the journey.* 3. *My father advises Balbus to consult his own interests.* 4. *It makes a great difference whether you live at Rome or at Carthage.* 5. *Whatever he had, he gave to all the poorest of the citizens.* 6. *I have long been desirous of hearing Tullius.* 7. *He came from the city to the country as speedily as possible.* 8. *Ask your brother who sang this song.* 9. *The elder of the two brothers died before the capture of the city (i.e. before the city having been captured).* 10. *He is a man of wisdom.*

[ EXERCISE XXII.<sup>1</sup>

1. *Crudelior erat quam ut cuiquam parceret.* 2. *Quidquid armorum habuimus, id omne tradendum erat.* 3. *Quamvis errorem feceris, licebit tibi meliora facere.* 4. *Idem es qui semper fuisti.* 5. *Cuilibet licuisset mentiri nisi hunc testem produxisses.* 6. *Quid refert utrum haec vera sint annon?* 7. *Nostine plerisque piscibus pinnas binas esse?* 8. *Tantae multitudini trinis castris opus erat.* 9. *Si quis tibi Achillis arma promitteret se daturum esse, quid tandem faceres?* 10. *Balbus moriens fratrem admonuit ut se ipse servaret.* 11. *Mira quadam arte erat suadendi.* 12. *Fallacior est quam cui credas.* 13. *Haec, sive vera sunt sive falsa, nullo modo me movent.*
1. *Whatever you wish to say must be said at once.* 2. *It matters little whether we die to-day or to-morrow.* 3. *There is a certain pleasure in recollecting calamities.* 4. *What would you have replied if he had promised to give you money?* 5. *He is too deceitful for you to converse with.* 6. *He hastened to Athens by the most rapid marches possible.* 7. *He was on the point of dying on the fourth day before the taking of the city.* 8. *He is better than any of his brothers.* 9. *Two-days ago, we sent messengers to ascertain what prevented Balbus from coming to Corinth.* 10. *Ask him to come to see me as quickly as possible.*

---

<sup>1</sup> In this and the following Exercises, some idioms are introduced that are not given in the previous part of the book: but they will be found explained in the Vocabularies.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Promisit se Gades venturum. 2. Erant qui dicerent urbem nunquam captum iri. 3. Misit imperator centurionem qui captivos deposceret. 4. Non adhuc compertum habeo quis hunc tantum virum rhetoricam docuerit. 5. Aggerem extruxit quo facilius hostem prohiberet. 6. Nemini pepercit, nullius miseritus est. 7. Cur tam parvo fune uteris? 8. Turpior erat quam quocum colloquereris. 9. Dies fero nullus est quin eam querentem audiam. 10. Spero fore ut urbs decem his diebus capiatur. 11. Interrogavit utrum haec caedes abhinc biennium an triennium facta sit. 12. Respondit iste se tuis excusationes parvi aestimare.

1. *It is said that you burned this temple, Tullius.* 2. *Do not pardon that wicked soldier.* 3. *The brave general Balbus opposed four thousand Scythians.* 4. *Having gained possession of our gold, O Persians, do you now wish to despoil us of our liberty?* 5. *In the battle of Cannae there fell many thousand Roman knights.* 6. *Ariovistus was answered in these words by Caesar.* 7. *Our men, under Labienus, laid waste the greatest part of the province, as far as the Alps.* 8. *Who was there that did not hate you, a man devoid of all kindness and courtesy?* 9. *Not even the older men were spared by the conquerors.* 10. *They threatened the man with death that they might the more easily ascertain the truth.*

## EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Cur me morbum fratris mei celasti? 2. Hoc te moneo ne quem, clam patre tuo, domi accipias. 3. Diceris, mi fili, ipse hunc pontem rescidisse. 4. Non dubium est quin in certamen eloquentiae ambo venerint. 5. Obsecravit ducem mater ne sibi filiam eriperet. 6. Nonne licuit tibi, divitiis his carenti, consulem (*see licet in Vocab.*) fieri? 7. Ego me Phidiam esse malle quam vel optimum fabrum tignarium. 8. Illud permagni referre arbitror ut domestica cura te liberem. 9. Alii alibi steterunt; erant qui ne stare quidem possent sed humi occumberent. 10. Leonidas cum trecentis se multis milibus Persarum opposuit. 11. Alii capi; alii cadere; plurimi vulnera accipere. 12. In eo proelio trecenta milia hostium interfecti sunt.
1. *Who founded the city of Carthage?* 2. *He was asked his opinion by Tullius, but answered nothing.* 3. *By this time the wall (muris) and the citadel had been taken by our men.* 4. *Do you suppose that two hundred can resist two*

thousand? 5. *I do not know whether she will agree with you.* 6. *The consul was the first who was asked his opinion.* 7. *There is no doubt that he bought the horse at a very high price.* 8. *I was informed of his arrival the-day-before he came to Corioli.* 9. *Will any one promise to go with him?* 10. *I fear that we shall arrive at Athens (too) late unless we hasten by forced marches.*

## EXERCISE XXV.

1. *Quis nescit nos omnes famae atque fortunarum expertes esse?*
2. *Decimo anno post conditam urbem in exilium pulsus est.*
3. *Fac ut quam celerrime in Italiam ad amicos redeas.*
4. *Adulatores, turbam levissimam, dux contemnebat.* 5. *Interrogavit num crederem se tantum dedecus in se admittere potuisse.* 6. *Non est cur fugias, hominum turpissime.* 7. *Non dubium est quin tibi pater nimis indulserit.* 8. *Utra harum dearum Vulcano nupsit?* 9. *Tandem ei persuasit pater ut mulierem in matrimonium duceret.* 10. *Quis non huius tanti philosophi audiendi studiosus erit?* 11. *Speraveram fore ut frigus mitesceret.* 12. *Aurum, argentum, ferrum, utilia illa quidem omnia; sed non pariter utilia.*<sup>1</sup>
1. *The boy had concealed (celo) the fact from his father by a falsehood.* 2. *Having burnt the village, the cohort set out for the nearest river (amnis).* 3. *You ought to have consulted the interests of each of your two sisters.* 4. *After he had conquered the Scythians, the general sent ambassadors to offer peace.* 5. *I am very desirous of hearing this story, if it is not troublesome to you.* 6. *Having accused others of bribery, he was himself condemned on the same charge.* 7. *If you ever come to Gabii, I hope you will stay with me for a few days.* 8. *There were some who said that it mattered little what Tullius decided.* 9. *There is no doubt that all the best of the citizens resisted this law.* 10. *This field was valued at a high rate, but bought by me for a small price.*

## EXERCISE XXVI.

1. *Nunc quod agitur agamus; agitur autem liberine vivamus<sup>2</sup> an obeamus.* 2. *Quis negat Socratem parentem philosophiae jure dici posse?* 3. *Vir ille maximus cum a ceteris scriptoribus*

<sup>1</sup> The redundant *illē* (sometimes *is*) is commonly found before *quidem* when a concession is made, but immediately qualified, '*Tuus dolor humanus is quidem, sed tamen moderandus.*' Yours is a grief natural to man, I admit, but one which should be modified."

<sup>2</sup> Not here *whether we live*, but *whether we are to live*.



tum a Xenophonte laudatus est. 4. Si qui capti sunt, omnes ad unum interfecti. 5. Et mea et tua interest ut huic legi resistamus. 6. Vereor ne ex hoc fonte magna pestis in rempublicam fluxura sit. 7. Nunc quidem valetudini tribuamus aliquid, cras autem rei-publicae. 8. Non tibi tantus dolor est quantus isti. 9. Victis hostibus, Caesar ab urbibus quinque trecenos obsides poposcit. 10. Credisne hanc perfidiam ei profuturam esse?

1. *In Xenophon we read a good deal (i.e. many things) about the illustrious general Agesilaus.* 2. *It concerns the whole country that Catiline should perish.* 3. *Having bound yourselves by an oath, do you now say that you did not promise to help him?* 4. *It is said that Labienus was at that time in command of thirty thousand soldiers.* 5. *It is said that Venus, the most beautiful of the goddesses, married Vulcan.* 6. *In the reign of Tullius the learned poet Balbus wrote very good poems.* 7. *I asked him why he did not do-his-duty to (trans. satisfy) his country.* 8. *Do not teach young boys philosophy.*<sup>1</sup> 9. *I do not care a farthing for any of you.* 10. *Ask the boy whether Cyrus conquered the Scythians.*

#### EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Nunquam in dicendo irascor. An tibi irasci videor si quid acrius dico, permovendorum iudicum causa? 2. Constat Labienum dimidio exercitus a Caesare praefectum esse. 3. In summo monte casa quaedam erat; quo inter venandum rex ventitabat. 4. Philoctetes, Lemni relictus, multis post annis Trojam a Neoptolemo reductus esse fertur. 5. Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nemini.<sup>2</sup> 6. Quaeritur suamne propter dignitatem an propter fructus aliquos virtus expetenda sit. 7. Caesar Aeduis quadringentos obsides imperaverat. 8. Non jam stulti eritis, sed turpissimi, si diutius ab illo stabitis. 9. Milites in verba imperatoris iurarunt. 10. Poma haec utilia quidem sunt, sed amariora gustatu. 11. Dixit se plura facturum fuisse, nisi sibi persuasum fuisset iudicem neutri favere. 12. Milites pugnam poposcerunt, quibus imperator "Cunctando," inquit, "rem restituemus."

1. *He was answered by Tullius, but not even Tullius could excuse the deed.* 2. *Before he bound the captives he compelled them to swear not to escape.* 3. *Do you doubt, O citizens, what is*

<sup>1</sup> For "young" write "younger," and remember never to use "juvenis" as an Adjective.

<sup>2</sup> Supply "contigērit." The antecedent of "quod" is "id," nom. to "contigit."

to be done? 4. Tell me, (my) boy, for how much he sold this farm. 5. For the same price as Tullius sold it to me. 6. We should have written much better verses if time had not failed us. 7. Have you not sworn to obey this law? 8. Homer and Virgil are read by all; the latter imitated the former. 9. The work, I say (see say), is quite finished. 10. The boys used no longer to be taught music by their father.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Medio in foro, coram rege ipso, a plebe turbatum est. 2. Terra marique diversis casibus jam multos annos pugnatum erat. 3. Te duce, vel ignavissimi nostrum tubam canentem libenter audient. 4. Post Corinthum captam magna praeda Romam a Mummio missa est. 5. Non ante venit nobis auxilio quam quinquies misissemus. 6. Satis erat tibi semel ignoscere; quoniam bis peccavisti, non iterum es excusandus. 7. Corinthum, tribus his diebus, veniet tui visendi causa. 8. Apud Romanos arma in majore honore quam pacis artes habebantur. 9. Multa terra marique passus tandem se in Italiam contulit. 10. Aurum plurimis et viris et civitatibus plurimarum miseriarum causa est. 11. Haec urbs, gentis devictae caput, quam celerrime delenda est. 12. Tullia, regina miserrima, fertur veneno fuisse interfecta.

1. After he had remained two months in the country he set out for the city. 2. Two cohorts came as a reinforcement for the besieged citizens. 3. You ought not to have promised to come before the third day. 4. She replied that she was born of noble but very poor parents. 5. This field cost me more than that meadow. 6. In the middle of the night we rose up terrified by the sound of robbers. 7. Having taken the city the enemy slew the citizens, and no one was spared. 8. You ought to have sent messengers three or four times to the city. 9. I have no need of excuse, for I am worthy of praise. 10. It is said that the Cyclopes had only one eye in the middle of their forehead.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Auctore Balbo, carissimo amicorum, juvenis ex Italia cessit. 2. Puella multo quam frater peritior erat canendi. 3. Responderunt homines pauperrimi non jam pares se esse solvendo. 4. Admonendus es foederis; cuius tu jam fere oblitus es. 5. Dic mihi Tulliae an sorori eius promiseris te anulum daturum esse. 6. Nisi te itineris taeduisset, jam pridem domum perventum fuisset. 7. Olim lupo, cuius in faucibus os inhaeserat, mercede conduxit gruem qui id

extraheret. 8. Senex filios convocatos hortatur, ut fascem frangant. 9. Quod quum nequirent facere, singulis singulas virgas distribuit. 10. Quibus facillime fractis ita pueros docuit quam firma res esset concordia.

1. Pallas was worshipped by the Athenians with the highest honours. 2. It is reported that the girl died of grief (trans. on account of grief). 3. By my advice you will set out for Corinth in the spring. 4. Who says that Jupiter did not marry Juno? 5. Can any one deny that you poured poison into my cup? 6. In my judgment, it is less disgraceful to dance in the middle of the forum than to lie. 7. The speech was too long for you to learn in three days. 8. It is said that the Druids were in great honour among the Britons. 9. Did you come here hoping to see her? 10. The foolish Balbus replied that he had once been more learned than any of his brothers.

## ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

(Following Exercise XXXII., p. 53.)

### EXERCISE XXXII. A.

1. Do you blame him who is praised by your brother? 2. Many things are troublesome to him who loves pleasure very greatly. 3. No one loves Tullia, who was always unmindful of others and ignorant of pity. 4. Do you who chastise the unjust, praise unjust things? 5. The Belgians, who were bordering on our land, were very troublesome to us. 6. He is always mindful of his sister, who is both very good and very beautiful. 7. We do not always love most-of-all those to whom we give the largest gifts. 8. The fruits you give me are not good. 9. The queen is overcome by pity, of which (trans. of which thing) they are ignorant. 10. His son takes care of the pigs, of which he has very-many (trans. which he has very-many).

### EXERCISE XXXII. B.

1. Who is that fellow whose threats terrify you? 2. For-the-whole-of that winter (31), which was very cold, the husbandmen were ignorant of the cause of the disease. 3. To us, who give many gifts to the poor, your words are disagreeable. 4. To the butterfly, who lives (only) a few hours, life is very pleasant. 5. Our line of battle, which was very long, is-being-overcome by the enemy. 6. Those whom virtue delights, riches do not

*delight. 7. Few of those who praise you blame me. 8. Who terrifies him? What does the man fear? 9. What do you avoid? What deed terrifies you? 10. What you love I do not love.*

## EXERCISE XXXII. C.

*Do you, O sisters, who blame Tullius, praise his brother? 2. To what woman are you giving this? 3. These fountains, which were in his garden, were very agreeable to us during that whole summer. 4. The frost, which was destructive to the tall tree, was more pleasing than heat to the strong soldier. 5. This delay, which is unworthy of you and your brother, is destructive to the army. 6. Whose threats terrify you? 7. During the whole of this year, you, who blame the vices of Tullius, are praising the same things in Balbus. 8. I praise the same things as (i.e. which) you (praise). 9. The same woman who praises herself blames her friends. 10. Of those (34) who were in the garden ten (were) boys, four were old-men.*



## APPENDIX I.

IRREGULAR VERBS  
IN THE ORDER OF THEIR FORMATION.<sup>1</sup>

When a Compound Verb is formed from a Simple Verb and a Preposition or other Prefix, the *a* or *e* of the Simple Verb is changed, in the Compound Verb, into :

	PRESENT.	PERFECT.	SUPINE.	
	<i>i</i>	<i>ē</i> or <i>i</i>	<i>a, e, or u</i>	
Āgo	rēdīgo	rēdēgi	rēdactum	<i>reduce</i>
Cādo	occīdo	occīdi	occāsum	<i>die</i>
Rāpio	ērīpio	ērīpui	ēreptum	<i>snatch</i>
Fācio	confīcio	confēcī	confectum	<i>finish</i>
Sālio	prōsīlio	prōsīlui	prōsultum	<i>spring forth</i>
Fāteor	confīteor		confessus	<i>confess</i>
Tēneo	sustīneo	sustīnui	sustentum	<i>sustain</i>
Lēgo	ēlīgo	ēlēgi	ēlectum	<i>elect<sup>2</sup></i>
Ēgeo	indīgeo	indīgui	—	<i>need</i>

In the following lists all the Compounds of the above Simple Verbs, and of *scando*, [*pleo*], *tango*, [*specio*], *cedo*, *caedo*, *jacio*, *emo*, &c., will not be given, as they follow the forms of the Simple Verbs.

Note that when the Simple Verb has a reduplicated Perfect of three syllables, *pēpūli*, *cēcīdi*, *tētīgi*, *cēcīni*, the Perfect of the Compound Verb often rejects a syllable, *ex-pūli*, *con-cīdi*, *con-tīgi*, *con-cīnui*, &c.: but there are exceptions to this rule, viz. the compounds of *disco*, *posco*, *-dēre*, and sometimes of *curro*.

<sup>1</sup> The order of the *Public School Grammar* is adopted in this list.

<sup>2</sup> But note that three compounds of *lēgo*, viz., *neglēgo*, *intellēgo*, and *dīlēgo*, make the perfects *neglexi*, *intellexi*, *dīlexi*.

FIRST CONJUGATION.<sup>1</sup>

Dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give, put</i>
Stāre	stēti	[stātum] <sup>2</sup>	<i>stand</i>
Īv-āre	īvi	ītum	<i>help</i>
Lāv-āre <sup>3</sup>	lāvi	lōtum	<i>wash</i>
Frīc-āre	frīcui	frictum	<i>rub</i>
Sēc-āre	sēcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Crēp-āre	crēpui	crēpītum	<i>creak, prattle</i>
Cūb-āre	cūbui	cūbītum	<i>lie down</i>
Dōm-āre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Sōn-āre	sōnui	sōnītum	<i>sound</i>
Tōn-āre	tōnui	tōnītum	<i>thunder</i>
Vēt-āre	vētui	vētītum	<i>forbid</i>
Plic-āre	plicāvi (-ui)	plicītum (-ātum)	<i>fold</i>
Mic-āre	mīcui (-āvi)	[-mīcātum]	<i>glitter</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mōrd-ēre	mōrmordi	morsum	<i>bite</i>
Pend-ēre	pēpendi	—	<i>hang</i>
Spond-ēre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>contract</i>
Tond-ēre	tōtondi	tonsum	<i>shear</i>
Cāv-ēre	cāvi	cantum	<i>beware</i>
Fāv-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Fōv-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
Mōv-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	<i>move</i>

<sup>1</sup> Verbs that may be omitted by beginners are marked thus \*.

<sup>2</sup> A bracket denotes that the form, although correct according to the rules of the language, seldom or never occurs in Latin literature. This is the case with many Supines commonly given in Latin Grammars. In many cases, a Participle is found where there is no Supine. Thus *haesum* is not found, but *haesurus*; there is no *cāritum*, but there is *cāriturus*; no *quītum*, but *quītus*; no *fūgitum*, but *fūgiturus*. The Supine is in fact a comparatively rare form in all verbs, and it is to be regretted that usage has selected it as a typical part of a Latin Verb to be committed to memory. The Perf. Passive Participle would be preferable.

Note also that the Fut. Participle often does not follow the Supine, e.g. *sectum* but *sēcāturus*, *sōnītum* but *sōnāturus*, &c.

<sup>3</sup> In classical prose, *sup. lāvātum*, *perf. part. lautus*.

Vōv-ēre	vōvi	vōtum	vow
Pāv-ēre	pāvi	—	quake
Sēd-ēre	sēdi	sessum	sit
Vīd-ēre	vidi	visum	see
Prand-ēre	prandi	pransum	dine
Coniv-ēre	[cōnivi or -nisi]	—	blink
Strid-ēre	stridi	—	creak
Ferv-ēre	ferbui or fervi	—	boil
Dēl-ēre	dēlēvi	dēletum	blot out
Fl-ēre	flēvi	flētum	weep
N-ēre	nēvi	nētum	spin
[-plēre]	[-plēvi]	[-plētum]	fill
Vi-ēre	[viēvi]	viētum	bind with twigs
Ci-ēre	cīvi	cītum	stir up <sup>1</sup>
-Ōlēre	[-ōlēvi]	[ōlītum]	grow, &c.
[Su-ēre]	suovī	suetum	be wont
Arc-ēre	arcui	—	ward off
Coerc-ēre	coercui	coercitum	restrain
Exerc-ēre	exercui	exercitum	exercise
Cār-ēre	cārui	[cārītum]	be without, be in want of
Dēb-ēre	dēbui	dēbītum	owe <sup>2</sup>
Dōl-ēre	dōlui	[dōlītum]	grieve
Hāb-ēre	hābui	hābītum	have
Jāc-ēre	jācui	[jācītum]	lie
Līc-ēre	līcui	līcītum	be bid for
Mēr-ēre	mērui	mērītum	deserve, earn
Mōn-ēre	mōnui	mōnītum	advise
Nōc-ēre	nōcui	nōcītum	hurt
Pār-ēre	pārui	[pārītum]	appear, obey
Plāc-ēre	plācui	plācītum	please
Praeb-ēre	praebui	praebītum	afford
Torr-ēre	terrui	terrītum	affright
Tāc-ēre	tācui	tācītum	be silent
Vāl-ēre	vālui	[vālītum]	be strong, be well
Dōc-ēre	dōcui	dōctum	teach
Misc-ēre	miscui	{ mistum } { mixtum }	mingle

<sup>1</sup> The primitive form is *cio, cīre* (found in the compounds *accio, excio*).

<sup>2</sup> This is properly a compound of *hābeo*; but some of the less obvious compounds of verbs are included in this list.



Tēn-ēro	tēnni	tentum	hold
Torr-ēro	torrui	tostum	scorch
Cens-ēro	censui	consum	value, rote
Ēg-ēro	ēgui	—	want
*[-Mīn-ēre]	[-mīnu:]	—	jut
Ol-ēro	ōlui	—	smell
Sorb-ēro	sorbui	—	suck up
Stūd-ēro	stūdui	—	study <sup>1</sup>
Aug-ēro	auxi	auctum	increase (trans.)
Indulg-ēro	indulsi	indultum	indulge
Mulg-ēro	mulsi	[muletum]	milk
*Torqu-ēro	torsi	tortum	twist
Lūg-ēro	luxi	—	mourn
Mulc-ēro	mulsi	mulsum	soothe
*Terg-ēro	tersi	-tersum	ripe
Ard-ēro	arsi	arsum	take fire
Rid-ēro	rīsi	rīsum	laugh
Suād-ēro	sūsīsi	suāsūsum	persuade
Iūb-ēro	iūssi	iūssum	command
Mān-ēro	mansi	mansum	remain
Haer-ēro	haesi	[hacsum]	stick
Alg-ēro	olsi	—	be cold
Fulg-ēro	fulsi	—	glitter
*Turg-ēro	tursi	—	swell
Urg-ēro	ursi	—	urge
*Frig-ēro	[-frīxi]	—	be cold
Lūc-ēro	luxi	—	shine
Aud-ēro	ausus sum	—	dare
Gaud-ēro	gāvīsus sum	—	rejoice
Sol-ēro	sōlītus sum	—	be wont
Līc-ēri	līcītus	—	bid for
Mēr-ēri	mērītus	—	deserve
Miser-ēri	mīsērītus	—	pity
Tu-ēri	tūtus	—	vicio, protect
Vēr-ēri	vārītus	—	fear, respect
R-ēri	rītus	—	think
Fāt-ēri	fassus	—	confess
Mēd-ēri	—	—	heal

<sup>1</sup> Several Verbs that have an Adjective in Idus reject the Supine, e.g. stūpeo, āveo, fūreo; and some that have no such Adjective, as lāteo.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sēpēl-īre	sēpēlivi	sēpultum	<i>bury</i>
Īre (eo)	īvi	ītum	<i>go</i>
Quīre (queo)	quīvi	quītum	<i>be able</i>
Sāl-īre	sālui	(saltum)	<i>leap, dance</i>
Āpēr-īre	āpēruī	āpertum	<i>open</i>
Ōpēr-īre	ōpēruī	ōpertum	<i>cover</i>
Compēr-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>find</i>
Repēr-īre	reppēri	rēpertum	<i>discover</i>
Vēn-īre	vēni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Āmīc-īre	āmīxi & -īcui	āmictum	<i>clothe</i>
Farc-īre	farsi	fartum	<i>stuff</i>
Fulc-īre	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Sanc-īre	sanxi	sanctum	<i>consecrate</i>
Sarc-īre	sarsi	sartum	<i>mend</i>
Vinc-īre	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
Saep-īre	saepsi	saepum	<i>hedge in</i>
Haur-īre	hausi	haustum	<i>drain</i>
*Rauc-īre <sup>1</sup>	—	—	<i>be hoarse</i>
Sent-īre	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i> <sup>2</sup>
Expēr-īri		expertus	<i>experience</i>
Oppēr-īri		oppertus	<i>wait for</i>
Or-īri		ortus	<i>arise</i>
Assent-īri		assensus	<i>agree</i>
Mēt-īri		mensus	<i>measure</i>
Ord-īri		orsus	<i>begin</i>

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

Disc-ēre <sup>3</sup>	dīdīci		<i>learn</i>
Posc-ēre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Pa-n-g-ēre <sup>4</sup>	pēpīgi	pactum	<i>fasten, covenant</i>

<sup>1</sup> There are also found *rausūrus* and *ir-rausērit*; \*denotes rare occurrence.

<sup>2</sup> Some Verbs, such as *gestio*, *I am eager*, and others which express only passions, e.g. *singultio*, *I sob*, have neither Perfect nor Supine.

<sup>3</sup> Compounds of Verbs with Reduplicated Perfect drop Reduplication, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *sisto*, -*dēre*, and sometimes of *curro*.

<sup>4</sup> The *n* in this and following Verbs is not a part of the root. The forms *pēpīgi*, *pactum*, are reserved for the metaph. meaning, *covenant*; for the lit. meaning, the forms in use are *pēgi* or *panxi*, and *panctum*.

Pu-n-g-ěro	pūpūgi	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Ta-n-g-ěro	tētūgi	tactum	<i>touch</i>
Sist-ěro	[stīti <sup>1</sup> ]	[-stītum <sup>1</sup> ]	<i>stop</i>
[-d-ěro <sup>1</sup> ]	[-dīdī]	[-dītum]	<i>put, give</i>
Tend-ěro	tētendi	{ tensum and } tentum	<i>stretch</i>
Cān-ěro	cēcni	cantum	<i>ring</i>
Pār-ěro	pēpēri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
Toll-ěro	sustūli	sublātum	<i>take up</i>
Parc-ěro	pūperci	parsum	<i>spare</i>
Cād-ěro	cēcīdi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
Caed-ěro	cēcīdi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Pend-ěro	pēpendi	pensum	<i>weigh</i>
Tu-n-d-ěro	(tūtūdi)	tūsum	<i>thump, pound</i>
Curr-ěro	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
Fall-ěro	fēcīlli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Pell-ěro	pēptūli	pulsum	<i>drive</i>
[-Cell-ěro] <sup>1</sup>	[cēcūli]	[-culsum <sup>1</sup> ]	<i>push</i>
Fāc-ěro (i-o)	fēcī	factum	<i>make, do</i>
Jāc-ěro (i-o)	jēcī	jactum	<i>throw</i>
Li-n-qu-ěro	līqui	[-lictum]	<i>leave</i>
Vī-n-c-ěro	vīci	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Āg-ěro	ēgi	actum	<i>do</i>
Fra-n-g-ěro	frēgi	fractum	<i>break</i>
Lēg-ěro	lēgi (-lexi) <sup>2</sup>	lectum	<i>read, choose</i>
Cāp-ěro (i-o)	cēpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Ru-m-p-ěro	rāpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ēm-ěro	ēmi	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
*Scāb-ěro	scābi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Ēd-ěro	ēdi	ēsum	<i>eat</i>
Fōd-ěro (i-o)	fōdi	fossum	<i>dig</i>
Fu-n-d-ěro	fūdi	fūsum	<i>pour</i>
Fūg-ěro (i-o)	fūgi	[fūgītum]	<i>fly</i>
Bīb-ěro	bībi	bībītum	<i>drink</i>
Īc-ěro	īci <sup>3</sup>	īotum	<i>strike</i>

<sup>1</sup> Only found in Compounds.<sup>2</sup> The form -lexi is found only in *di-lēgo*, *neg-lēgo*, *intel-lēgo*.<sup>3</sup> This form is non-classical.

Fi- <i>n</i> -d-ěre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
Sci- <i>n</i> -d-ěre	scīdi	scissum	<i>cut</i>
Vert-ěre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
[-Cend-ěre]	[-cendi]	[-censum]	<i>set alight</i>
Cūd-ěre	cūdi	cūsum	<i>hammer</i>
[-Fend-ěre]	[-fendi]	[-fensum]	<i>strike</i>
Mand-ěre	mandi	mansum	<i>chew</i>
Pand-ěre	pandi	passum	<i>spread</i>
Prehend-ěre	prehendi	prehensum	<i>take, grasp</i>
Scand-ěre	-scandi	-scansum	<i>climb</i>
Sid-ěre	sīdi <sup>1</sup>	—	<i>settle</i>
Lamb-ěre	[lambi] <sup>2</sup>	[lambītum]	<i>lick</i>
Verr-ěre	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
Vell-ěre	{ velli } <sup>3</sup> { vulsi }	vulsum	<i>rend, pluck</i>
*Psall-ěre	psalli	—	<i>play (chords)</i>
Vis-ěre	vīsi	—	<i>visit</i>
Fidere	fīsus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
Compesc-ěre	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Rāp-ěre ( <i>i-o</i> )	rapui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Āl-ěre	ālui	altum	<i>nourish</i>
Cōl-ěre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Consūl-ěre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Occūl-ěre	occūlui	occultum	<i>hide</i>
Sēr-ěre	sēlui	sertum	<i>join together</i>
*Pins-ěre	pinsui	pistum <sup>4</sup>	<i>pound</i>
Tex-ěre	texui	textum	<i>weave</i>
*Deps-ěre	depsui	—	<i>knead, tan</i>
Stert-ěre	stērtui	—	<i>snore</i>
Strēp-ěre	strēpui	strēpītum	<i>rattle</i>
[-Cumb-ěre]	cūbui	cūbītum	<i>lie down</i>
Frēm-ěre	frēmui	[frēmītum] <sup>5</sup>	<i>roar</i>
Gēm-ěre	gēmui	[gēmītum] <sup>5</sup>	<i>groan</i>
Tēm-ěre	trēmui	[trēmītum] <sup>5</sup>	<i>tremble</i>
Vōm-ěre	vōmui	vōmītum	<i>vomit</i>
Gign-ěre	gēnui	gēnītum	<i>beget</i>
Pōn-ěre	pōsui	pōsītum	<i>place</i>
Mōl-ěre	mōlui	mōlītum	<i>grind</i>

<sup>1</sup> More commonly, sēdi, from sēdeo.<sup>2</sup> The Perf. and Sup. are only found in Priscian.<sup>3</sup> Vulsi is the rarer of the two forms.<sup>4</sup> There are also pinsi, pinsum, and pinsītum.<sup>5</sup> These forms are found in Priscian only, who does not assign them to any authors.

Velle (vōlo)	vōlui	—	<i>wish</i>
Nolle (nōlo)	nōlui	—	<i>wish not</i>
Malle (mālo)	mālui	—	<i>wish rather</i>
Mēt-ēre	messui	messum	<i>moor, reap</i>
*Frend-ēre	[frendui] <sup>1</sup>	fressum	<i>gnash, bruise</i>
Līn-ēre	lēvi	lītum	<i>smear</i>
Sin-ēre	sīvi	sītum	<i>allow</i>
Cern-ēre	[crēvi]	[-crētum]	<i>sift</i>
Spern-ēre	sprēvi	sprētum	<i>spurn</i>
Stern-ēre	strāvi	strātum	<i>strew</i>
Sēr-ēre	sēvi	sātum	<i>sow</i>
Cresc-ēre	crēvi	crētum	<i>grow</i>
Quiesc-ēre	quiēvi	[quiētum]	<i>rest</i>
Suesc-ēre	suēvi	[suētum]	<i>be wont</i>
(G)nosc-ēre <sup>2</sup>	(g)nōvi	(g)nōtum	<i>know</i>
Pasc-ēre	pāvi	pastum	<i>feed</i>
Cūp-ēre (i-o)	cūpīvi	cūpītum	<i>desire</i>
Pēt-ēre	pētīvi	pētītum	<i>demand</i>
Quaer-ēre	quaesīvi	quaesītum	<i>seek</i>
*Rūd-ēre	[rūdīvi] <sup>3</sup>	[rūdītum]	<i>bray</i>
Sāp-ēre (i-o)	sāpī (-īvi) <sup>4</sup>	—	<i>savour</i>
Tēr-ēre	trīvi	trītum	<i>rub, bruise</i>
Arcess-ēre	arcessīvi	arcessītum	<i>fetch</i>
Incess-ēre	incessīvi	incessītum	<i>attack</i>
Cāpess-ēre	cāpessīvi	cāpessītum	<i>take in hand</i>
Fācess-ēre	fācessīvi	fācessītum	<i>cause</i>
Lācess-ēre	lācessīvi	lācessītum	<i>provoke</i>
Dic-ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
Dūc-ēre	duxi	ductum	<i>lead</i>
[-Lāc-ēre (i-o)] <sup>5</sup>	[-lexi]	[-lectum]	<i>entice</i>
[-Spēc-ēre (i-o)] <sup>6</sup>	[-spexi]	[-spectum]	<i>espionage</i>
Cōqu-ēre	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
Cing-ēre	cinxī	cinctum	<i>surround</i>
Fing-ēre	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion</i>
*Flig-ēre	fixi	flictum	<i>smite</i>

<sup>1</sup> Frendui is not found; frendēre is found.

<sup>2</sup> Nosco has dropt g which reappears in agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum; cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum; ignosco, ignōvi: Adj. ignōtus.

<sup>3</sup> Rūdīvi is only in Apuleius; rūdītum, nowhere.

<sup>4</sup> But dēsīpio, dēsīpui. Augustine has sāpui.

<sup>5</sup> Compare al-līcio, il-līcio, pel-līcio, pro-līcio, which make -lexi, -lectum. But ēlīcio makes ēlīcui, ēlīcītum.

<sup>6</sup> Compare (circum- con- de- di- in- per- pro- re-)spīcio -spexi -spectum. So aspīcio, suspīcio.

Frig-ěre	frixi	frictum	<i>roast, fry</i>
Jung-ěre	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
*Ling-ěre	[-linxi]	[-linctum]	<i>lick</i>
*Mung-ěre	[-munxi]	[-munctum]	<i>wipe</i>
Ping-ěre	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Plang-ěre	planxi	plactum	<i>beat</i>
Rěg-ěre <sup>1</sup>	rexī	rectum	<i>rule</i>
String-ěre	strinxi	strictum	<i>bind</i>
Sūg-ěre	suxi	suctum	<i>suck</i>
Těg-ěre	texi	tectum	<i>cover</i>
*Stingu-ěre	[-stinxi]	[-stinctum]	—
Tingu-ěre	tinxi	tinctum	<i>stain</i>
Ungu-ěre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Ningu-ěre	ninxi	—	<i>snow</i>
Ang-ěre	[anxi]	[anctum] <sup>2</sup>	<i>squeeze</i>
*[Clang-ěre]	—	—	<i>rattle</i>
Trāh-ěre	traxi	tractum	<i>draw</i>
Věh-ěre	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Viv-ěre	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>
Stru-ěre	struxi	structum	<i>pile</i>
Fig-ěre	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Flu-ěre	fluxi	fluxum	<i>flow</i>
Merg-ěre	mersi	mersum	<i>drown</i>
Sparg-ěre <sup>3</sup>	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Terg-ěre	tersi	tersum	<i>wipe</i>
Flect-ěre	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Nect-ěre	{ nexi nexui }	nexum	<i>twine</i>
Pect-ěre	pexi	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Plect-ěre	—	[-plexum]	{ plait smite }
Mitt-ěre	mīsi	missum	<i>send</i>
Quāt-ěre (i-o) <sup>4</sup>	—	quassum	<i>shake</i>
Cēd-ěre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Claud-ěre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Divīd-ěre	divīsi	divīsum	<i>divide</i>
Laed-ěre	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
Lūd-ěre	lūsi	lūsum	<i>play</i>

<sup>1</sup> Compare arrīgo, corrīgo, dīrīgo; (e- por-)-rigo -rexi -rectum. Also pergo, perrexi, perrectum; surgo, *rise*, surrexi, surrectum, with its compounds: (as con- ex- in- re-)-surg -surrexi -surrectum.

<sup>2</sup> Priscian mentions these forms, but no authorities for them.

<sup>3</sup> Compare conspergo, dispergo; (ad- in- re-)-spergo -spersi -spersum.

<sup>4</sup> Compare (con- dis- ex- in- per-)-cūtio -cussi -cussum. So rēper- cūtio.

Plaud-ĕre	plausi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Rād-ĕro	rāsi	rāsum	<i>shave</i>
Rōd-ĕro	rōsi	rōsum	<i>gnaw</i>
Trūd-ĕre	trūsi	trūsum	<i>thrust</i>
Vād-ĕre	[-vāsi]	[-vāsum]	<i>go</i>
Carp-ĕre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
*Clēp-ĕre	clepsi	cleptum	<i>steal</i>
{ Rēp-ĕro	repsi	[reptum]	<i>creep</i>
{ Serp-ĕro	serpsi	[serptum]	<i>crawl</i>
{ Scalp-ĕre	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
{ Sculp-ĕre	sculpsi	sculptum	<i>grave</i>
*Glāb-ĕre	[glupsi]	[gluptum]	<i>peel</i>
Nūb-ĕre	nupsi	nuptum	<i>wed</i>
Scrib-ĕre	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Cōm-ĕre	compsi	comptum	<i>dress hair</i>
Dēm-ĕre	dempsi	demptum	<i>take away</i>
Prōm-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Sūm-ĕre	sumpsi	sumptum	<i>take up</i>
Temn-ĕre	tempsi	temptum	<i>despise</i>
Prēm-ĕre <sup>1</sup>	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Gēr-ĕre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>
Ūr-ĕre	ussi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
Ācu-ĕre	ācui	ācūtum	<i>sharpen</i>
Argu-ĕre	argui	argūtum	<i>prove</i>
Exu-ĕre	exui	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Indu-ĕre	indui	indūtum	<i>put on</i>
Imbu-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	<i>tinge</i>
Lu-ĕre	lui	— <sup>2</sup>	<i>atone</i>
Mīnu-ĕre	mīnui	mīnūtum	<i>lessen</i>
Nu-ĕre	nui	— <sup>2</sup>	<i>nod</i>
Spu-ĕre	spui	spūtum	<i>spit</i>
Stātu-ĕre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
Sternu-ĕre	sternui	[sternūtum]	<i>sneeze</i>
Su-ĕre	sui	sūtum	<i>scow</i>
Tribu-ĕre	tribui	tribūtum	<i>assign, pay</i>
Solv-ĕre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loose, pay</i>
Volv-ĕre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>

<sup>1</sup> Compare *imprīmo*, *supprīmo*; (*com- de- ex- op- re-*)-*prīmo-pressi-pressum*.

<sup>2</sup> No Supine is found; but the fut. part. *luītūrus* points to *luītum* as Supine; and *abuītūrus* to *nuītum* for *nuo*.

Ru-ěre	ruī	rūtum (rūtum)	<i>rush</i>
*Batu-ěre	batui	—	<i>beat</i>
*-Gru-ěre	-grui	—	<i>cry like a crane</i>
Mětu-ěre	mětui	—	<i>fear</i>
Plu-ěre	plui or plūvi	—	<i>rain</i>
Fung-i	functus		<i>perform</i>
Nit-i	nīsus (nixus)		<i>strive</i>
Plect-i	[-plexus]		<i>twine</i>
Pāt-i (i-or)	passus		<i>suffer</i>
Ūti	ūsus		<i>use</i>
Grād-i (i-or)	gressus		<i>step</i>
Lāb-i	lapsus		<i>glide, fall</i>
Mōr-i (i-or)	mortuus		<i>die</i>
Quēr-i	questus		<i>complain</i>
Fru-i	frūitus		<i>enjoy</i>
Lōqu-i	locūtus		<i>speak</i>
Sēqu-i	secūtus		<i>follow</i>
Apisc-i	aptus		<i>obtain</i>
[-Mēnisc-i] <sup>1</sup>	[-mentus]		<i>have in mind</i>
Ēxpergisc-i	experrectus		<i>wake up</i>
Fātisc-i	fessus		<i>be weary</i>
(g)nasc-i	(g)nātus		<i>be born</i>
Īrasc-i	īrātus		<i>be angry</i>
Nancisc-i	nactus or nactus		<i>find</i>
Oblivisc-i	oblītus		<i>forget</i>
Pācisc-i	pactus		<i>bargain</i>
Prōficisc-i	prōfectus		<i>set out</i>
Ulcisc-i	ultus		<i>avenge</i>
Vesc-i	—		<i>feed</i>
Līqu-i	—		<i>melt</i>
*Ring-i	—		<i>grin</i>

<sup>1</sup> Compare com-mīniscor, -mentus, 3; rē-mīniscor, 3.



## APPENDIX II.

## IRREGULAR VERBS,

## WITH MANY OF THEIR MORE IMPORTANT COMPOUNDS.

(Alphabetically arranged.<sup>1</sup>)

Abdo	-ĕre	abdĭdi	abdĭtum	hide
Abigo	-ĕre	ābēgi	ābactum	drive away
Abōleo	-ĕre	ābōlēvi	ābōlĭtum	destroy
Abripiō	-ĕre	abripi	abreptum	snatch away
Accendo	-ĕre	accendi	accensum	set on fire
Accumbo	-ĕre	accūbui	accūbitum	recline at table
Accurro	-ĕre	accūcurri and accurri	accursum	run up
Acquiro	-ĕre	acquisivi	acquisitum	acquire
Addo	-ĕre	addidi	additum	adil
Ādeo	-īre	ādii	ādītum	go to
Adīmo	-ĕre	ādēmi	ādemptum	take away
Adjūvo	-ūre	adjūvi	adjūtum	help
Ādōleo	-ĕre	ādōlēvi	ādultum	to honour in war ship
Ādōlesco	-ĕre	ādōlēvi	ādultum	grow up
Agnosco	-ĕre	agnōvi	agnitum	recognize
Āgo	-ĕre	ēgi	actum	do, act, drive
Algeo	-ĕre	alsi	—	be cold
Allicio	-ĕre	allexi	allectum	entice
Ālo	-ĕre	ālui	altum <sup>2</sup>	feed, nourish
Āmicio	-īre	[āmīcui & -ixi]	āmictum	clothe
Āmitto	-ĕre	āmisi	āmissum	lose
Amplector	-i	amplexus (sum)	—	embrace
Ango	-ĕre	—	—	squeeze
Anquiro	-ĕre	anquisivi	anquisitum	examine into
Antecello	-ĕre	—	—	surpass
Āpērio	-īre	āpēruī	āpertum	open
Appello <sup>3</sup>	-ĕre	appūli	appulsum	put into shore

<sup>1</sup> The object of this list is to test the memory of the pupil. Looking at the first column, and covering the other columns with his hand, he can repeat the Perfects and Supines without having the guidance which is necessarily furnished by the grouping in List I.

<sup>2</sup> Āltum was introduced in the post-Augustan age, possibly to distinguish it from the adj. altus high.

<sup>3</sup> Distinguish this word from appello, appellāre, -āvi, -ātum, call.

Applico	-āre	applicui <i>and</i> applicāvi	applicitum <i>and</i> applicatum	<i>apply</i>
Arcesso	-īre	arcessivi	arcessitum	<i>send for</i>
Ardeo	-ēre	arsi	arsum (neut.)	<i>take fire</i>
Arguo	-īre	argui	argutum	<i>prove</i>
Ascendo	-ēre	ascendi	ascensum	<i>ascend</i>
Attendo	-ēre	attendi	attentum	<i>attend</i>
Audeo	-īre	ausus sum	—	<i>dare</i>
Aufugio	-īre	aufūgi	—	<i>flee away</i>
Aufero	-erre	abstūli	ablātum	<i>carry away</i>
Augeo	-īre	auxi	auctum	<i>increase</i>
Bibo	-īre	bibi	—	<i>drink</i>
Cado	-īre	cēcidi	cāsum	<i>fall</i>
Caedo	-īre	cēcidi	caesum	<i>cut, beat, kill</i>
Cano	-īre	cēcini	cantum	<i>sing</i>
Capesso	-īre	cāpessivi	cāpessitum	<i>seize, take hold of</i>
Capio	-īre	cāpi	captum	<i>take</i>
Carpo	-īre	carpsi	carptum	<i>pluck</i>
Caveo	-īre	cāvi	cautum	<i>beware</i>
Cedo	-īre	cessi	cessum	<i>yield</i>
Conseo	-īre	censui	censum	<i>vote</i>
Cerno <sup>1</sup>	-īre	—	—	<i>discern</i>
Cio	cīre	[cīvi]	[cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cio	cīre	[cīvi]	[cītum]	<i>stir up</i>
Cingo	-īre	cinxi	cinctum	<i>surround</i>
Circumcīdo	-īre	circumcīdi	circumcīsum	<i>clip</i>
Clango	-īre	—	—	<i>resound</i>
Claudo <sup>2</sup>	-īre	clausi	clausum	<i>shut</i>
Cō-ēmo	-īre	cō-ēmi	cō-emptum	<i>buy up</i>
[Coopio]	-isse	coeptus (sum)	<i>used with Pass. Inf. begin</i>	
Cognosco	-īre	cognōvi	cognitum	<i>find out, know</i>
Cōgo	-īre	cōēgi	cōactum	<i>compel</i>
Colligo	-īre	collēgi	collectum	<i>collect</i>
Cōlo	-īre	cōlui	cultum	<i>till</i>
Cōmo	-īre	compsi	comptum	<i>adorn</i>
Compello <sup>3</sup>	-īre	compūli	compulsum	<i>drive together</i>
Compērio	-īre	compēri	compertum	<i>ascertain</i>
Compecco	-īre	compescui	—	<i>restrain</i>
Compleo	-īre	complēvi	complētum	<i>fill</i>
Comprē- hendo }	-īre	comprehendi	comprehensum	<i>seize</i>
or				
Comprendo-ēre		comprendi	compremsum	<i>seize</i>

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect and Supine crēvi and crētum are rarely used in this sense.

<sup>2</sup> The compounds of claudio are similar, except that they change au into u, e.g. circumclādo, consclādo, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Distinguish this from compellāre, *accost*.

Concido	-ĕre	concīdi	concīsum	<i>cut in pieces</i>
Concīdo	-ĕre	concīdi	—	<i>fall in a heap</i>
Concīno	-ĕre	concīnuī	—	<i>play together, harmonize</i>
Concurro	-ĕre	concurri	concursum	<i>run together</i>
Concūtio	-ĕre	concussi	concussum	<i>shake together</i>
Condo	-ĕre	condīdi	conditum	<i>found</i>
Confido	-ĕre	confisus (sum)	—	<i>confide</i>
Conjicio	-ĕre	conjēcī	conjectum	<i>throw</i>
Conſiveo	-ĕre	[cōnīvi & -ixi]	—	<i>wink</i>
Conscendo	-ĕre	conscondi	consensum	<i>go up</i>
Consentio	-īre	consensi	consensum	<i>agree</i>
Consēro	-ĕre	consēvi	consitum	<i>sow, plant</i>
Consēro	-ĕre	consēruī	consertum	<i>put close together</i>
Consido	-ĕre	consēdi	consessum	<i>sit down</i>
Conspergo	-ĕre	conspersi	conspersum	<i>sprinkle</i>
Consūlo	-ĕre	consūlui	consultum	<i>consult</i>
Contingo	-ĕre	contīgi	contactum	<i>touch, happen</i>
Convello	-ĕre	convelli	convulsum	<i>tear up</i>
Converto	-ĕre	converti	conversum	<i>turn towards</i>
Cōquo	-ĕre	coxi	coctum	<i>cook</i>
Crēdo	-ĕre	crēdīdi	crēdītum	<i>believe</i>
Crēpo	-āre	crēpui	crēpītum	<i>creak</i>
Cresco	-ĕre	crēvi	[crētum]	<i>grow</i>
Cūbo	-āre	cūbui	cūbītum	<i>lie down</i>
[-cumbō]	-ĕre	-cūbui	-cūbītum	<i>lie down]</i>
Cūdo	-ĕre	cūdi	cūsum	<i>fashion</i>
Cūpio	cupēre	cūpīvi	cūpītum	<i>covet, desire</i>
Curro	-ĕre	cūcurri	cursum	<i>run</i>
[-cūtio <sup>1</sup> ]	-ĕre	-cussi	-cussum	<i>shake]</i>
Dēcerno	-ĕre	dēcrēvi	dēcretum	<i>decree</i>
Dēcido	-ĕre	dēcīdi	—	<i>fall down</i>
Dēcido	-ĕre	dēcīdi	dēcīsum	<i>decide</i>
Dēcurro	-ĕre	dēcūcurri and decurri	dēcursum	<i>run a course</i>
Dēdisco	-ĕre	dēdīdīci	—	<i>unlearn</i>
Dēfendo	-ĕre	dēfendi	dēfensum	<i>defend</i>
Dēgo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>live</i>
Dēleo	-ĕre	dēlēvi	dēlētum	<i>blot out</i>
Dēmo	-ĕre	dēmpsi	dēptum	<i>take away</i>
Dēpello	-ĕre	dēpūli	dēpulsum	<i>drive down</i>
Dēpendeo	-ĕre	—	—	<i>hang down (Intr.)</i>
Dēpendo	-ĕre	dēpendi	dēpensum	<i>pay down</i>
Dēposco	-ĕre	dēpoposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Descendo	-ĕre	descendi	descensum	<i>descend</i>
Dēsīno	-ĕre	dēsī [-īvi]	[dēsītum]	<i>cease</i>

<sup>1</sup> A form of *quātio* only found in the compounds *concūtio*, *percūtio*, &c.

Despondeo -ēre	despondi [-spopondi]	desponsum	<i>pledge</i>
Detergeo -ēre	dētersi	dētersum	<i>wipe away</i>
Dēvincio -īre	dēvinxi	dēvinctum	<i>bind down</i>
Dico -ēre	dixi	dictum	<i>say</i>
Diffido -ēre	diffisus (sum)	—	<i>distrust</i>
Diffindo -ēre	diffidi	diffissum	<i>cleave asunder</i>
Digēro -ēre	digessi	digestum	<i>set apart</i>
Dignosco -ēre	—	—	<i>distinguish</i>
Diligo -ēre	dilexi	dilectum	<i>love</i>
Dilucesco -ēre	diluxi	—	<i>dawn</i>
Dimētiōr -īri	dimensus (sum)	—	<i>measure out</i>
Dimico -āre	dimicāvi & ui	dimicātum	<i>fight</i>
Dirūno -ēre	dirēmi	dirēptum	<i>break off, or up</i>
Dirūpio -ēre	dirūpi	dirēptum	<i>tear asunder</i>
Dirumpo -ēre	dirūpi	diruptum	<i>burst asunder</i>
Discēdo -ēre	discessi	discessum	<i>depart</i>
Discindo -ēre	discidi	discissum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Disco -ēre	didici	—	<i>learn</i>
Discumbo -ēre	discubui	discubūtum	<i>recline (at dinner)</i>
Discurro -ere	discurri	discursum	<i>run in different</i> <i>directions</i>
Discutio -ēre	discussi	discussum	<i>shake asunder</i>
Disjicio -ēre	disjeci	disjectum	<i>cast asunder</i>
Dispergo -ēre	dispersi	dispersum	<i>scatter apart</i>
Dissentio -īre	dissensi	dissensum	<i>disagree with</i>
Dissēro -ēre	dissēri	[dissertum]	<i>set forth distinct-</i> <i>ly, discourse</i>
Dissideo -ēre	dissēdi	dissessum	<i>be at variance</i> <i>with</i>
Dissilio -īre	dissili	dissultum	<i>leap apart</i>
Dissolvo -ēre	dissolvi	dissolutum	<i>dissolve</i>
Dissuādeo -ēre	dissuāsi	dissuāsum	<i>dissuade</i>
Distinguo -ēre	distinxi	distinctum	<i>discriminate</i>
Disto -āre	—	—	<i>be distant</i>
Distrāho -ēre	distraxi	distractum	<i>draw apart</i>
Divello -ēre	divelli	divulsum	<i>rend asunder</i>
Divido -ēre	divisi	divisum	<i>divide</i>
Do -dāre	dēdi	dātum	<i>give</i>
Dōceo -ēre	dōcui	doctum	<i>teach</i>
Dōmo -āre	dōmui	dōmītum	<i>tame</i>
Dūco -ēre	duxi	ductum	<i>lead</i>
Edisco -ēre	edidici	—	<i>learn off</i>
Edo -ēdēre	edi	esum	<i>eat</i>
	& esse		
Edo -ēre	edidi	editum	<i>give out</i>
Effervesco -ēre	efforbui	—	<i>effervesce</i>

Effulgeo	-ēre <sup>1</sup>	effulsi	effulsum	<i>shine forth</i>
Effundo	-ēre	effūdi	effūsum	<i>pour forth</i>
Ēlīcio	-ēre	ēlīcui	ēlīctum	<i>entice forth</i>
Elido	-ēre	ēlisi	ēlisum	<i>knock out</i>
Ēlīgo	-ēre	ēlēgi	ēlectum	<i>choose out</i>
Ēmentior	-īri	ēmentitus (sum)	—	<i>lie outright</i>
Ēmico	-āre	ēmīcui	ēmīcatum	<i>flash out</i>
Ēmo	-ēre	ēmī	emptum	<i>buy, take</i>
Ēnēco	-āre	ēnēcui	ēnectum	
		[ēnēcavi]	[ēnēcātum] <sup>2</sup>	<i>kill</i>
Ēnīteo	-ēre	ēnītui	—	<i>shine out</i>
Ēnītor	-ī	ēnīsus (enixus)	—	<i>strive hard</i>
Ēo	īre	īvi	ītum	<i>go</i>
Ēvello	-ēre	ēvelli	ēvulsum	<i>tear out</i>
Ēvōmo	-ēre	ēvōmui	ēvōmītum	<i>vomit forth</i>
Excēdo	-ēre	excēssi	excessum	<i>retire from</i>
Excello	-ēre	excellui	[excelsum]	<i>excel</i>
Excerpo	-ēre	excerpsi	excerptum	<i>pick out</i>
Excīdo	-ēre	excīdi	excīsum	<i>hew out</i>
Excīdo	-ere	excīdi	—	<i>fall out</i>
Excōlo	-ēre	excōlui	excultum	<i>cultivate carefully</i>
Excūbo	-āre	excūbui	excūbitum	<i>lie out of doors</i>
Excūdo	-ēre	excūdi	excūsum	<i>hammer out</i>
Excurro	-ēre	excūcurri	excursum	<i>run out</i>
Excūtio	-ēre	excussi	excussum	<i>shake out</i>
Exēdo	-ēre	exēdi	exēsum	<i>gnaw out</i>
Exīmo	-ēre	exēmi	exemptum	<i>take out</i>
Exōlesco	-ēre	exōlēvi	exōlētum	<i>grow out of date</i>
Expello	-ēre	expūli	expulsum	<i>expel</i>
Expergis-	-ī	experrectus	—	<i>awake oneself</i>
cor		(sum)		
Expērior	-īri	expertus sum	—	<i>test</i>
Expēto	-ēre	expētivi	expētītum	<i>seek out</i>
Expleo	-ēre	explēvi	explētum	<i>fill up</i>
Explico	-āre	explicāvi (-ui)	explicātum (-itum)	<i>unfold</i>
Explōdo	-ēre	explōsi	explōsum	<i>hiss off the stage</i>
Expōno	-ēre	expōsui	expōsitum	<i>set forth</i>
Exposco	-ēre	expōposci	—	<i>demand earnestly</i>
Exprīmo	-ēre	expressi	expressum	<i>squeeze out</i>
Exquīro	-ēre	exquīsivi	exquīsītum	<i>search out</i>
Excīndo	-ēre	excīdi	excīsum	<i>extirpate</i>
Exsēco	-āre	exsēcui	exsectum	<i>cut out</i>
Exsēro	-ēre	exsērui	exsertum	<i>protrude</i>

<sup>1</sup> So in Virgil. Perhaps the verb should be *effulgo*, 3.

<sup>2</sup> The forms in -āvi, -ātum, are less classical; but note that *nēco* is of the first conj., and regular.

Exsilio	-īre	exsīlui	exsultum	<i>leap forth</i>
Exsisto	-ēre	exstīti	[exstītum]	<i>come forth, arise</i>
Exsolvo	-ēre	exsōlui	exsōlūtum	<i>unloose</i>
Exstinguo	-ēre	exstinxi	extinctum	<i>extinguish</i>
Exsto	-āre	exstīti	—	<i>project, be extant</i>
Exstrūo	-ēre	exstruxi	exstructum	<i>heap up</i>
Exsurgo	-ēre	exsurrexi	exsurrectum	<i>rise up, recover</i>
Extendo	-ēre	extendi	extentum (-tensum)	<i>stretch out</i>
Exuo	-ēre	exūi	exūtum	<i>put off</i>
Fācesso	-ēre	fācessīvi	fācessītum	<i>accomplish</i>
Fācio	fācere	fēci	factum	<i>do, make</i>
Fallo	-ēre	fēfelli	falsum	<i>deceive</i>
Farcio	-īre	farsi	farctum	<i>stuff</i>
Fāteor	-ēri	fassus (sum)	—	<i>confess</i>
Fāveo	-ēre	fāvi	fautum	<i>favour</i>
Fērio <sup>1</sup>	-īre	—	—	<i>strike</i>
Fēro	ferre	tūli	lātum	<i>bear</i>
Ferveo & vo	-ēre	fervi and -bui	—	<i>boil</i>
Fido	-ēre	fīsus sum	—	<i>trust</i>
Figo	-ēre	fixi	fixum	<i>fix</i>
Findo	-ēre	fīdi	fissum	<i>cleave</i>
Fingo	-ēre	finxi	fictum	<i>fashion</i>
Fio	fīeri	factus sum	—	<i>be made, become</i>
Flecto	-ēre	flexi	flexum	<i>bend</i>
Fleo	-ēre	flēvi	flētum	<i>weep</i>
Fligo	-ēre	fixi	flictum	<i>dash</i>
Fluo	-ēre	fluxi	[fluxum]	<i>flow</i>
Fōdio	fōdēre	fōdi	fossūm	<i>dig</i>
Fōveo	-ēre	fōvi	fōtum	<i>cherish</i>
Frango	-ēre	frēgi	fractum	<i>break</i>
Frēmo	-ēre	frēmui	[frēmītum]	<i>mutte, murmur</i>
Frendo	-ēre	—	fressum & frēsūm	<i>gnash</i>
Frīco	-āre	frīcui	fritum	<i>rub</i>
Frīgeo	-ēre	frixi	—	<i>be cold</i>
Frīgo	-ēre	frixi	fritum	<i>roast</i>
Fūgio	fūgēre	fūgi	[fūgītum]	<i>flee</i>
Fulcio	-īre	fulsi	fultum	<i>prop</i>
Fulgeo	-ēro	fulsi	—	<i>glitter</i>
Fundo	-ēre	fūdi	fūsum	<i>pour, rout</i>
Fūro <sup>2</sup>	-ēre	[fūrui]	—	<i>be mad</i>
Gaudeo	-ēre	gāvīsus sum	—	<i>rejoice</i>
Gēmo	-ēre	gēmui	gēmītum	<i>groan</i>
Gēro	-ēre	gessi	gestum	<i>carry on</i>

<sup>1</sup> The perfect forms percussī, percussūm, are supplied from percūtio.<sup>2</sup> The perfect form generally supplied instead of fūrui, insānīvi.

Gigno	-ĕre	gĕnui	gĕnŭlum	produce
Grādior	-i	gressus (sum)	—	step
Hāereo	-ĕre	haesi	haesum	stick
Haurio	-īre	hausi	haustum	drain
Īco	-ĕre	īci	ictum	strike
Ignosco	-ĕre	ignōvi	ignōtum	pardon
Illino	-ĕre	illēvi	illitum	smear
Illūcesco	-ĕre	illuxi	—	dash
Illūdo	-ĕre	illūsi	illūsum	make game of
Imbuo	-ĕre	imbui	imbūtum	tinge
Immisceo	-ĕre	immiscui	immixtum(-mistum)	intermix
Impendo	-ĕre	—	—	impend
Impendo	-ĕre	impendi	impensum	expend
Impingo	-ĕre	impēgi	impactum	thrust against
Impleo	-ĕre	implēvi	impletum	fill
Incēdo	-ĕre	inCESSi	inCESSum	step
Incendo	-ĕre	incendi	incensum	set on fire
Incesso	-ĕre	inCESSiVi	—	assail
Incīdo	-ĕre	incīdi	[incāsum]	fall, light on
Incido	-ĕre	incīdi	incīsum	cut into, engrave
Incingo	-ĕre	incinxi	incinctum	gird
Inclūdo	-ĕre	inclūsi	inclūsum	shut in
Incōlo	-ĕre	incōlui	incultum	inhabit
Incūbo	-āre	incūbui	incūbītum	brood over
Incumbo	-ĕre	incūbui	incūbītum	lean on, bend one's mind to
Incurro	-ĕre	incurri[-cūcurri]	incursum	run towards, meet
Incūtio	-ĕre	inCussi	inCussum	strike against
Indygeo	-ĕre	indygui	—	need
Indo	-ĕre	indīdi	indītum	put in, apply . .
Indulgeo	-ĕre	indulsi	indultum	indulge
Induo	-ĕre	indui	indūtum	put on
Īneo	-īre	īni	īnītum	enter
Inflūo	-ĕre	influxi	[influxum]	flow into
Insēro	-ĕre	insēvi	insītum	sow in
Insēro	-ĕre	insēruī	insertum	put in, mingle:
Insisto	-ĕre	instīti	—	stand on, persevere
Insto	-āre	instīti	[instātum]	press on :
Insurgo	-ĕre	insurrexi	insurrectum	rise up, or to
Intellēgo	-ĕre	intellexi	intellectum	understand
Intendo	-ĕre	intendi	intentum, or -sum	stretch, direct
Intercēdo	-ĕre	intercessi	intercessum	intervene, interpose
Intēreo	-īre	intērī	intērītum	perish
Interīmo	-ĕre	intērēmi	interemptum	destroy
Interlino	-ĕre	interlēvi	interlītum	smear, falsify by crasures
Internosco	-ĕre	internōvi	—	distinguish

Intōno	-āre	intōnni	intōnitum	<i>thunder</i>
Intorqueo	-ēre	intorai	intortum	<i>twist, hurl</i>
Intueor	-rī	intuītus (sum)	—	<i>look on, regard</i>
Invideo	-ēre	invīdi	invīsum	<i>envy</i>
Jacio	-ēre	jēcī	jactum	<i>throw</i>
Jūbeo	-ēre	jussi	jussum	<i>command</i>
Jungo	-ēre	junxi	junctum	<i>join</i>
Jūvo	-āre	jūvi	jūtum	<i>help</i>
Lābor	-i	lapsus (sum)	—	<i>glide</i>
Lācesso	-ēre	lācessīvi	lācessitum	<i>provoke</i>
Laedo	-ēre	laesi	laesum	<i>hurt</i>
Lambo	-ēre	lambi	—	<i>lick</i>
Lāvo	-āre <sup>1</sup>	lāvi	lāvātum lautum, lōtum	} <i>wash</i>
Lēgo	-ēre	lēgi	lectum	
Libet	-āre	libītum est	—	<i>read, choose</i>
Lingo	-ēre	linxi	linctum	<i>it pleases, suits</i>
Lino	-ēre	linxi and lēvi	litum	<i>lick</i>
Linguo	-ēre	liqui	[lictum]	<i>smear</i>
Luceo	-ēre	luxi	—	<i>leave</i>
Ludo	-ēre	lusi	lūsum	<i>shine</i>
Lūgeo	-ēre	luxi	—	<i>play</i>
Luo	-ēre	lui	luītum	<i>mourn</i>
Mālo	mallo	mālui	—	<i>wash, atone</i>
Mando	-ēre	mandi	mansum	<i>prefer</i>
Māneo	-ēre	mansi	mansum	<i>chew</i>
Mēdeor	-eri	—	—	<i>remain</i>
—	mēmīn- isqe	mēmīni	—	<i>heal</i>
Mergo	-ēre	mersi	mersum	<i>remember</i>
Mētor <sup>2</sup>	-irī	mensus (sum)	—	<i>drown</i>
Mēto	-ēre	messui	messum	<i>measure</i>
Mētuo	-ēre	mētui	—	<i>mow, reap</i>
Mico	-āre	mīcui	—	<i>fear</i>
Mīnuo	-ēre	mīnuī	mīnūtum	<i>glitter</i>
Misceo	-ēre	miscui	mistum or mixtum	<i>lessen</i>
Misereor	-eri	mīsērītus (sum)	—	<i>mix</i>
Mitto	-ēre	mīsi	missum	<i>pity</i>
Mōlo	-ēre	mōlui	mōlitum	<i>send</i>
Mordeo	-ēre	mōmordi	morsum	<i>grind</i>
Mōrīor	-i	mortūus (sum)	—	<i>bite</i>
Mōveo	-ēre	mōvi	mōtum	<i>die</i>
Mulceo	-ēre	mulsi	mulsum	<i>move</i>
				<i>soothe</i>

<sup>1</sup> There is an ante-classical and poetical form lāvēre.<sup>2</sup> The form libuit is perhaps not found in Cicero.<sup>3</sup> Distinguish this from mentior, mentiri, mentitus, lie.



Mulgo	-ēre	mulsi	mulctum	mill
Nanciscor	-i	nactus, nactus (sum)	—	obtain
Nascor	-i	nātus (sum)	—	be born
Necto	-ēre	nexui & nexi	nexum	tie, bind
Neglēgo	-ēre	neglexi	neglectum	neglect
Neo	nēre	nēvi	nētum	spin
Ningo	-ēre	ninxī	—	snow
Niteo	-ēre	—	—	shine
Nitor	-i	nīsus and nixus	—	strive
Nōlo	nolle	nōlui	—	be unwilling
Nosco <sup>1</sup>	-ēre	nōvi	nōtum	come to know
Nūbo	-ēre	nupsi	nuptum	be married
Ōbeo	-īre	ōbīi and īvi	—	go towards, down
Ōblino	-ēre	oblēvi	oblītum	besmear
Obliviscor	-i	oblītus (sum)	—	forget
Obrēpo	-ēre	obrepsi	obreptum	creep up to
Obrūo	-ēre	obruī	obrūtum	overwhelm
Obsideo	-ēre	obsēdi	obsessum	besiege
Obsisto	-ēre	obstīti	[obstītum]	oppose
Obsolesco	-ēre	obsōlēvi	obsōlētum	wear out
Obsto	-īre	obstīti	obstātum	stand in the way of
Obstringo	-ēre	obstrinxi	obstrictum	bind (by oath)
Obtēro	-ēre	obtrīvi	obtrītum	trample underfoot
Ocīdo	-ēre	ocēdi	ocīsūm	slay
Occīdo	-ēre	ocēdi	occāsūm	fall, die
Occūlo	-ēre	occūlui	occultum	hide
Occurro	-ēre	occurri	occursum	meet, resist
	ōdisse	ōdi	[ōsum]	hate
Offendo	-ēre	offendi	offensum	knock against
Offero	-erre	obtūli	oblātum	offer
Omitto	-ēre	ōmīsi	ōmissum	pass over
Ōpērio	-īre	ōpēruī	ōpertum	cover
Oppūno	-ēre	oppōsui	oppōsītum	put in the way
Opprīmo	-ēre	oppressi	oppressum	press down, over- power
Ordior	-īri	orsus (sum)	—	commence
Ōrior	-īri	ortus (sum)	—	arise
Pāciscor	-i	pactus (sum)	—	bargain
Pando	-ēre	pandi	passum & pansum	expand, spread
Pango	-ēre	{ pēpigi pēgi panxi	{ pactum panctum parsum	{ frame, fasten
Parco	-ēre	pēperci	—	spare

<sup>1</sup> Nosco means, *I make acquaintance with*; nōvi means, *I have made the acquaintance of*, i.e. *I know*.

Pārio <sup>1</sup>	-ēre	pēpēri	partum	<i>bring forth</i>
Pasco	-ēre	pāvi	pastum	<i>feed</i>
Pāveo	-ēre	pāvi	—	<i>fear</i>
Pecto	-ēre	pexui and pexi	pexum	<i>comb</i>
Pello	-ēre	pēpūli	pulsum	<i>drive away</i>
Pellīcio	-ēre	pellexi	pellectum	<i>allure</i>
Pendeo	-ēre	pēpendi	—	<i>hang (intr.)</i>
Pendo	-ēre	pēpendi	pensum	<i>hang, weigh (tr.)</i>
Pērāgo	-ēre	perēgi	peractum	<i>complete</i>
Percello	-ēre	percūli	perculsum	<i>strike (with terror)</i>
Percutio	-ēre	percussi	percussum	<i>strike</i>
Perdi	-ēre	perdidī	perditum	<i>lose, destroy</i>
Pergo	-ēre	perrexi	perrectum	<i>continue</i>
Pērūno	-ēre	perēmi	peremptum	<i>make away with</i>
Perlēgo	-ēre	perlēgi	perlectum	<i>read through</i>
Perpētīr	-i	perpessus (sum)	—	<i>endure</i>
Persto	-āre	perstīti	perstātum	<i>persevere</i>
Pēto	-ēre	pētīvi & pētīi	pētītum	<i>seek</i>
Pingo	-ēre	pinxi	pictum	<i>paint</i>
Pinso	-ēre	pinsi & pinsui	pinsum	<i>pound</i>
Plango	-ēre	planxi	planetum	<i>beat</i>
Plaudo	-ēre	plausi	plausum	<i>clap hands</i>
Plecto	-ēre	—	—	<i>lash</i>
Plecto	-ēre	plexui, plexi	plexum	<i>plait</i>
[Pleo	plēre	plēvi	plētum	<i>fill</i>
Plico	-āre	plīcui	plicatum & plīcītum	<i>fold</i>
Plūo	-ēre	plūit and plūivī	—	<i>rain</i>
Pōno	-ēre	pōsui	pōsītum	<i>place</i>
Posco	-ēre	pōposci	—	<i>demand</i>
Possum <sup>2</sup>	posse	pōtui	—	<i>be able</i>
Pōto	-āre	pōtāvi	pōtātum & pōtum	<i>drink</i>
Praecāveo	-ēre	praecāvi	praecautum	<i>take precautions</i>
Praecello	-ēre	—	—	<i>excel</i>
Praecido	-ēre	praecīdi	praecīsum	<i>cut off, abridge</i>
Praecīno	-ēre	praecīnui	praecentum	<i>play before, fore-tell</i>
Praecurro <sup>3</sup>	-ēre	praecūcurri	praecursum	<i>precedes</i>
Praedico <sup>4</sup>	-ēre	praedixi	praedictum	<i>predict</i>
Praeco	-īre	praefī, or -īvi	praefitum	<i>go before, dictate</i>
Praesto	-āre	praestīti	praestātum [-ītum]	<i>excel, answer for</i>

<sup>1</sup> Distinguish this from pāreo, pāre, pāri, pāritum, obey.<sup>2</sup> Distinguish this from the forms of the regular Verb pōtior, I gain possession of.<sup>3</sup> Note that here, and in excurro, the longer form of the Perfect is the more common.<sup>4</sup> Distinguish this from praedico, praedicāre, praedicavi, praedicātum, proclaim.

Praetexo	-ĕre	praetexui	praetextum	<i>border, pretend</i>
Prandeo	-ĕre	prandi	pransum	<i>lunch, dine</i>
Prĕhendo	-ĕre	prĕhendi	prensum	<i>seize, grasp</i>
Prĕmo	-ĕre	pressi	pressum	<i>press</i>
Prōcumbō	-ĕre	prōcūbui	prōcūbitum	<i>fall (on one's knees, rounded, &amp;c.)</i>
Prōdeo	-īre	prōdī	prōditum	<i>go forth</i>
Prōdo	-ĕre	prōdīdi	prōditum	<i>betray</i>
Prōficiscor	-i	prōfectus (sum)	—	<i>set out</i>
Prōfiteor	-ĕri	prōfessus (sum)	—	<i>avow</i>
Prōfundo	-ĕre	prōfūdī	prōfūsum	<i>pour forth</i>
Prōmo	-ĕre	prompsi	promptum	<i>take forth</i>
Prōmōveo	-ĕre	prōmōvī	prōmōtum	<i>move forward</i>
Prōpello	-ĕre	prōptūlī	prōpulsum	<i>drive before one</i>
Proscribo	-ĕre	proscripsi	proscriptum	<i>publish, proscribe</i>
Prōvīdeo	-ĕre	prōvīdī	prōvisum	<i>foresee, provide</i>
Psallo	-ĕre	psalli	—	<i>play on harp</i>
Pungo	-ĕre	pūpūgī	punctum	<i>prick</i>
Quæro	-ĕre	quaesivī	quesitum	<i>seek</i>
Quātio	quātĕre	—	quassum	<i>shake</i>
Queo	quīre	quīvī	quītum	<i>be able</i>
Quĕror	-ī	questus (sum)	—	<i>complain</i>
Quiesco	-ĕre	quīēvī	quīētum	<i>rest</i>
Rādo	-ĕre	rāsi	rāsum	<i>scrape</i>
Rāpio	rāpĕre	rāpui	raptum	<i>seize</i>
Rēcīdo	-ĕre	reccīdi <sup>1</sup>	rēcīsum	<i>fall back, relapse</i>
Rēcīdo	-ĕre	rēcīdi	rēcīsum	<i>lop, retrench</i>
Rēcumbō	-ĕre	recūbui	—	<i>lie down</i>
Reclūdo	-ĕre	reclūsi	reclūsum	<i>disclose</i>
Reddō	-ĕre	reddīdi	reddītum	<i>restore, render</i>
Rēdeo	-īre	rēdī	rēditum	<i>return</i>
Rēdigo	-ĕre	rēdēgi	rēdactum	<i>bring back, reduce</i>
Rēdīmo	-ere	rēdēmi	rēdemptum	<i>buy back, buy up</i>
Rēfello	-ĕre	rēfelli	—	<i>refute</i>
Rēfercio	-īre	rēfersi	rēfortum	<i>cram</i>
Rēfigo	-ĕre	rēfixi	rēfixum	<i>unfasten</i>
Rēdōleo	-ĕre	rēdōlūi	—	<i>smell of</i>
Refrigesco	-ĕre	refrīxi	—	<i>grow cool, flag</i>
Refringo	-ĕre	rēfrēgi	refractum	<i>break open, destroy</i>
Rēgero	-ĕre	rēgessi	rēgestum	<i>cast back</i>
Relēgo <sup>2</sup>	-ĕre	rēlēgi	rēlectum	<i>gather up, get through again</i>
Rēmaneo	-ĕre	rēmansi	—	<i>stay behind</i>

<sup>1</sup> Other verbs that lengthen compound re- in the perfect, are, rettūli and reppĕri.

<sup>2</sup> Distinguish this from rēlēgo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *vanish*.

Rēor	-īri	rātus (sum)	—	<i>think, suppose</i>
Rēpello	-ēre	reppūli	rēpulsum	<i>drive back</i>
Rēpendo	-īre	rēpendi	rēpensum	<i>pay back</i>
Rēpērio	-īre	reppēri	rēpertum	<i>discover</i>
Rēpo	-ēre	repsi	reptum	<i>creep</i>
Rēquiro	-ēre	rēquisīvi	rēquisitum	<i>seek again</i>
Rescindo	-ēre	rescīdi	rescisum	<i>break open, down, rescind</i>
Rēsēco	-āre	rēsēcui	rēsectum	<i>prune</i>
Rēsideo	-ēre	rēsēdi	rēsessum	<i>remain behind</i>
Rēsido	-ēre	rēsēdi	—	<i>sit down, settle</i>
Rēsipi o	-ēre	rēsīpiui and ui	—	<i>recover one's senses</i>
Rēsisto	-ēre	restīti	—	<i>halt, resist</i>
Respergo	-ēre	respersi	respersum	<i>besprinkle</i>
Respicio	-ēre	respexi	respectum	<i>have regard to</i>
Respondeo	-īre	respondi	responsum	<i>answer</i>
Restinguo <sup>1</sup>	-ēre	restinxi	restinctum	<i>quench</i>
Resto	-āre	restīti	—	<i>remain, hold out</i>
Rētexo	-ēre	retexui	rētextum	<i>uniceave</i>
Rētundo	-ēre	rētūdi & rettūdi	rētūsum	<i>blunt</i>
Rēvello	-ēre	rēvelli	rēvulsum	<i>tear away</i>
Rēvertio <sup>2</sup>	-ēre	rēverti	rēversum	<i>return</i>
Rideo	-ēre	rīsi	rīsum	<i>laugh</i>
Rōdo	-īre	rōsi	rōsum	<i>gnaw</i>
Rūdo	-īre	[rūdīvi]	[rūdītum]	<i>bray</i>
Rumpo	-ēre	rūpi	ruptum	<i>break</i>
Ruo	ruere	rui	ruītum [rūtum] <sup>3</sup>	<i>rush, fall</i>
Saepio	-īre	saepsi	saeptum	<i>hedge in</i>
Sālio	-īre	sālui	[saltum]	<i>leap</i>
Sālio	-īre	—	salitum	<i>salt</i>
Sancio	-īre	sanxi [-īvi]	sanctum [-itum]	<i>render sacred, enact</i>
Sāpio	-ēre	sāpīvi and -ii	—	<i>savour of, have taste, or wisdom</i>
Sarcio	-īre	sarsi	sartum	<i>patch</i>
Scābo	-īre	scābi	—	<i>scratch</i>
Scalpo	-ēre	scalpsi	scalptum	<i>scratch</i>
Scando	-ēre	—	—	<i>climb</i>
Scindo	-ēre	scīdi	scisum	<i>cut, tear</i>

<sup>1</sup> The obsolete *stinguo* is only found (in Present form) in Lucretius and quotations of Priscian.

<sup>2</sup> In the Present and Present-derived Tenses *rēvertitur* is more common: in the Perfect and Perfect-derived Tenses *rēverti*, *rēvertēram*, &c.: but the best authors use the Dep. Participle *rēversus*.

<sup>3</sup> The Fut. Part. *ruītūrus* points to sup. *ruītum*; but in an old legal word "*rūta*," *things dug up (on an estate)*, the vowel was long. In the compounds *obrūtus*, *ērūtus* and *surrūtus* the vowel was short.

Scisco	-ūro	scīvi	scitum	<i>decrec</i>
Scribo	-ōro	scripsi	scriptum	<i>write</i>
Sculpo	-ōre	sculpsi	sculptum	<i>engrave</i>
Sēco	-āre	sēcui	sectum	<i>cut</i>
Sēdeo	-ēre	sēdi	sessum	<i>sit</i>
Sentio	-īre	sensi	sensum	<i>feel</i>
Sēpūlio	-īre	sēpēlivi	sēpultum	<i>bury</i>
Sēro	-ōro	sūrui	sertum	<i>join together</i>
Sūro	-ēre	sēvi	sātum	<i>sow</i>
Sorpo	-ōre	serpsi	serptum	<i>crawl</i>
Sido	-ōre	sidi	—	<i>sit down</i>
Singultio	-īre	singultivi	—	<i>sob</i>
Sīno	-ōre	sīvi	sītum	<i>allow</i>
Sisto	-ōro	—	—	<i>stop, make stand</i>
Sōleo	-ōre	sōlītus sum	—	<i>be accustomed</i>
Solvo	-ōre	solvi	sōlūtum	<i>loosen</i>
Sōno <sup>1</sup>	-āre	sōnnui	sōnītum	<i>sound</i>
Sorbeo	-ēre	sorbui [sorpsi]	—	<i>suck up</i>
Spargo	-ōro	sparsi	sparsum	<i>sprinkle</i>
[Spēcio	-ōre	spexi	spectum]	<i>espionage</i>
Sperno	-ōre	sprēvi	sprētum	<i>despise</i>
Spondeo	-ēre	spōpondi	sponsum	<i>pledge, promise</i>
Stātuo	-ōre	stātui	stātūtum	<i>set up</i>
Sterno	-ōre	strāvi	strātum	<i>strew</i>
Sterto	-ōre	stertui	—	<i>snore</i>
Sto	stāro	stēti	stātum	<i>stand</i>
Strēpo	-ōre	strēpui	[strēpītum]	<i>roar</i>
Strideo & Strido	-ōre & -ēre	strīdi	—	<i>creak, hiss, whizz</i>
Stringo	-ōre	strinxi	strictum	<i>tie</i>
Struo	-ōre	struxi	structum	<i>build, pile</i>
Suādeo	-ēre	suāsi	suasum	<i>advise, persuade</i>
Sūbēo	-īre	sūbīi	subītum	<i>go under, spring up</i>
Sūbligo	-ōro	sūbēgi	subactum	<i>bring under, sub-</i>
				<i>duce</i>
Subnecto	-ēre	subnexui	subnexum	<i>tie under</i>
Subruo, <i>see</i> surruo.				
Subsīdo	-ēre	subsēdi	subscissum	<i>sink down</i>
Subvēnio	-īre	subvēni	subventum	<i>help</i>
Subverto	-ōre	subverti	subversum	<i>subvert</i>
Succēdo	-ēre	successi	successum	<i>approach, follow</i>
Succendo	-ēre	succendi	succensum	<i>set on fire</i>
Succurro	-ōre	succurri	succursum	<i>help</i>
Suesco	-ēre	suēvi	suētum	<i>be accustomed</i>
Suffēro	-erre	sustūli	sublātum	<i>endure</i>

<sup>1</sup> Note *insōnnui* and *consōnnui*, but *rēsōnnāvi*.

<i>Suffundo</i>	-ēre	<i>suffūdi</i>	<i>suffūsum</i>	<i>suffuse</i>
<i>Suggēro</i>	-ēre	<i>suggesti</i>	<i>suggestum</i>	<i>supply, subjoin</i>
<i>Sūgo</i>	-ēre	<i>suxi</i>	<i>suctum</i>	<i>suck</i>
<i>Summōveo</i>	-ēre	<i>suminōvi</i>	<i>suminōtum</i>	<i>thrust off</i>
<i>Sūmo</i>	-ēre	<i>sumpsi</i>	<i>sumptum</i>	<i>take</i>
<i>Suo</i>	-ēre	—	<i>sūtum</i>	<i>sew</i>
<i>Suppēto</i>	-ēre	<i>suppētivi</i>	<i>suppētītum</i>	<i>be in store, suffice</i>
<i>Suppleo</i>	-ēre	<i>supplēvi</i>	<i>supplētum</i>	<i>fill up</i>
<i>Suppōno</i>	-ēre	<i>suppōsui</i>	<i>suppōsitum</i>	<i>substitute, coun- terfeit</i>
<i>Supprīmo</i>	-ēre	<i>suppressi</i>	<i>suppressum</i>	<i>check, conceal</i>
<i>Surgo</i>	-ēre	<i>surrexi</i>	<i>surrectum</i>	<i>arise</i>
<i>Surrēpo</i>	-ere	<i>surrepsi</i>	<i>surreptum</i>	<i>creep up to</i>
<i>Surrīgo</i> <sup>1</sup>	-ēre	<i>surrexi</i>	<i>surrectum</i>	<i>raise</i>
<i>Surrīpio</i>	-ēre	<i>surrīpui</i>	<i>surreptum</i>	<i>snatch by stealth</i>
<i>Surruo</i>	-ēre	<i>surrui</i>	<i>surrūtum</i>	<i>undermine</i>
<i>Suspendo</i>	-ēre	<i>suspendi</i>	<i>suspensum</i>	<i>suspend</i>
<i>Suspicio</i>	-ēre	<i>suspexi</i>	<i>suspectum</i>	<i>look up to</i>
<i>Tango</i>	-ēre	<i>tēgi</i>	<i>tactum</i>	<i>touch</i>
<i>Tēgo</i>	-ēre	<i>texi</i>	<i>tectum</i>	<i>cover</i>
<i>Temno</i>	-ēre	—	—	<i>despise</i>
<i>Tendo</i>	-ēre	<i>tētendi</i>	[ <i>tentum &amp; tensum</i> ] <sup>2</sup>	<i>stretch</i>
<i>Tēneo</i>	-ēre	<i>tēnuī</i>	[ <i>tentum</i> ]	<i>hold</i>
<i>Tergeo &amp; tergo</i>	-ēre } -ēre }	<i>tersi</i>	<i>tersum</i>	<i>wipe</i>
<i>Tēro</i>	-ēre	<i>trivi</i>	<i>tritum</i>	<i>rub</i>
<i>Texo</i>	-ēre	<i>texui</i>	<i>textum</i>	<i>weave</i>
<i>Tinguo</i>	-ēre	<i>tinxi</i>	<i>tinctum</i>	<i>dye</i>
<i>Tollo</i>	-ēre	<i>sustūli</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>sublātum</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>take up</i>
<i>Tondeo</i>	-ēre	<i>tōtondi</i>	<i>tonsum</i>	<i>shave</i>
<i>Tōno</i>	-āre	<i>tōnuī</i>	<i>tōnitum</i>	<i>thunder</i>
<i>Torqueo</i>	-ēre	<i>torsi</i>	<i>tortum</i>	<i>twist</i>
<i>Torreo</i>	-ēre	<i>torrui</i>	<i>tostum</i>	<i>roast</i>
<i>Trādo</i>	-ēre	<i>trādidi</i>	<i>trādītum</i>	<i>hand over</i>
<i>Trāho</i>	-ēre	<i>traxi</i>	<i>tractum</i>	<i>draw</i>
<i>Trans eo</i>	-ire	<i>transīi and -īvi</i>	<i>transītum</i>	<i>pass over</i>
<i>Transigo</i>	-ēre	<i>transēgi</i>	<i>transactum</i>	<i>transact</i>
<i>Transilio</i>	-ire	<i>transīli [-īvi]</i> <sup>4</sup>	—	<i>leap across</i>
<i>Trēmo</i>	-ēre	<i>trēmui</i>	—	<i>tremble</i>
<i>Trībuo</i>	-ēre	<i>trībui</i>	<i>trībūtum</i>	<i>assign</i>
<i>Trūdo</i>	-ēre	<i>trūsi</i>	<i>trūsūm</i>	<i>thrust</i>

<sup>1</sup> This is the uncontracted form of *surgo* used transitively.<sup>2</sup> These Supine forms have probably no existence, and are merely inferred from the *Pass. Part. tentus* and *tensus*.<sup>3</sup> These forms do not properly belong to *tollo*, but are assigned to it, as it has no perfect and supine: see note on *fero* above.<sup>4</sup> *Livy* uses -ui; *Plautus* and *Pliny*, -īvi.

Tūcor[tuor]-ēri	tultus <i>and</i> tūtus —	<i>regard, guard</i>	
	(sum)		
Tundo -ēre	tūtūdi	tūsum & tunsum	<i>thump</i>
Turgeo -ēro	tursi	—	<i>swell</i>
Ulciscor -i	ultus (sum)	—	<i>avenge myself on</i>
Unguo -ēre	unxi	unctum	<i>anoint</i>
Urgeo -ēre	ursi	—	<i>urge</i>
Uro -ēre	ursi	ustum	<i>burn</i>
utor -i	usus (sum)	—	<i>use</i>
Vado -ēre	[vāsi]	[vasum]	<i>go</i>
Vāho -ēro	vexi	vectum	<i>carry</i>
Vello -ēro	velli <i>and</i> vulsi	vulsum	<i>rend</i>
Vēneo -īro	vēnii	—	<i>be sold</i>
Vēnio -īre	vēni	ventum	<i>come</i>
Vergo -ēre	[versī]	—	<i>bend</i>
Verro -ēro	verri	versum	<i>sweep</i>
Verto -ēre	verti	versum	<i>turn</i>
Veto -āre	vētui	vēstum	<i>forbid</i>
Video -ēre	vidi	visum	<i>see</i>
Vincio -īre	vinxi	vinctum	<i>bind</i>
Vinco -ēro	vici	victum	<i>conquer</i>
Viso -ēre	visi	—	<i>visit</i>
Vivo -ēre	vixi	victum	<i>live</i>
Volo -vello	vōlui	—	<i>wish</i>
Volvo -ēre	volvi	vōlūtum	<i>roll</i>
Vōmo -ēro	vōmui	vōmītum	<i>omit</i>
Vōveo -ēro	vōvi	vōtūm	<i>omit</i>

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

The Defective Verbs *coepl*, *begin*, *mēmīnī*, *remember*, and *ōdī*, *hate*, have no Tenses except those derived from the Perfect. Thus *I remembered* is *mēmīnēram*; *that they may remember*, or *let them remember*, *mēmīnērīnt*; *I shall remember*, *mēmīnēro*; and the same of *ōdī*.

## INDICATIVE.

	(1)	(2)	(3)
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepl</i>	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>Ōdī</i>
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	<i>Coeplēro</i>	<i>Mēmīnēro</i>	<i>Ōdēro</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Coeplēram</i>	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>Ōdēram</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE.**

<i>Perfert.</i>	Coepčrim	Mēmīnērim	Ōdērim
<i>Pluperfj.</i>	Coepissem	Mēmīnissem	Ōdissem

**IMPERATIVE.**

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting)	Memento	(wanting)
		Mementôte	

### INFINITIVE

*Perfect.*      Coepissē      Mēmīnissē      Ōdissē

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	Coeptūrus	(wanting)	Ōsūrus
----------------	-----------	-----------	--------

**4. Aio, I say :—**

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>S.</i> Aio	—	<i>S.</i> Aiēbam	—
Ais	Aiās	Aiēbas	—
Ait	Aiūt	Aiēbāt	—
<i>P.</i> —	—	<i>P.</i> Aiēbāmūs	—
—	—	Aiēlātis	—
Aiunt	Aiant	Aiēbant	—

### PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

5. Inquām, say 1 :—

**INDICATIVE.**

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>
Inquam	—	—	Inquāi
Inquis	—	Inquies	Inquisti
Inquit	Inquiebāt <sup>1</sup>	Inquiescēt	—
Inquimūs	—		
Inquistis	—		
Inquiunt	—		

**IMPERATIVE.**

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
Inquē	2 Pers. Inquīto.

**N.B.**—*Inquam* is always used after the first emphatic word in a speech, and is almost always separated from its Nominative.

*Then Balbus said, "This I deny."*      *Tum Balbus, "Hæc," inquit, "nēgo."*

<sup>1</sup> But this form is found without the e.



## APPENDIX III.

### HINTS ON CONSTRUING.

Take as an example :

Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in aequor  
Trinaeris, a positu nomen adepta loci.

#### I.—QUESTIONS ON THE SENTENCE.

1. The first question is, *Which is the Principal Verb?*  
Ans., *procurrit—runs forth.*

2. *What is the Subject of the Principal Verb?* Ans.,  
*Terra, a land.*

3. (a) *Is the Principal Verb Intransitive; or has it (b) a Direct Object? (c) an Indirect Object?*

Ans., It is Intransitive.

4. (a) *Is there any Noun in Apposition with the Subject?*  
(b) *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Subject, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

Ans., (a) *Trinaeris* (i.e. *trin-acris, three-promontoried*) is sometimes a Noun (a name of Sicily), sometimes an Adjective, and may be regarded either as in Apposition to *terra*, or as agreeing with it; (b) *Adepta*, from *adipiscor*, is a Participle agreeing with *terra*, meaning *having obtained*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Bear in mind that *two Adjectives* (unless connected by a Conjunction) rarely agree with the same Noun: *many serious sorrows, multi et graves dolores* (153). But an *Adjective and Participle* may agree with the same Noun, without a Conjunction.

5. *Is there any Adjective or Participle in agreement with the Object, or is there any Genitive Case dependent on it?*

6. The next question is to ask, *Are there any Adverbial Clauses attached to the Principal Verb?* i.e. any Clauses answering to the question (a) *How?* (b) *When?* (c) *Where?* (d) *Whence?* (e) *Why, &c.*

Ans. *How?* *tribus scopulis*, with *three rocks*; (c) *Where?* or *Whither?* *vastum in aequor*, into the vast sea.

7. Coming to *adepta*, repeat the above questions. Is it Transitive? Has it an Object? Adverbial Clauses, &c.?

Ans. (3) (b). The Object is *nomen*, the name; (5) *loci*, of the place, is Gen. depending on *nomen* (or *positu*); (6) *Whence?* Ans., a *positu*, from its position.<sup>1</sup>

8. No further questions are required for this sentence: but instead of the Participle *adepta*, a prose author might have written *quod*, or *quia* *adepta fuerat*, because it had obtained, and the Conjunction *quod* or *quia* would have introduced a Subordinate Sentence.

Therefore it must be borne in mind that the answer to the question (6) *How? When? Why? &c.*, may be conveyed by a Subordinate Sentence introduced by a Conjunction, *because, though, when, in order that, &c.*: and this Subordinate Sentence must be taken to pieces in the same way as the Principal Sentence.

N.B.—A Subordinate Sentence may sometimes be the Subject or Object of the Principal Verb, e.g. "*incertum est (or nescio) num locus a positu nomen adeptus fuerit*," it is uncertain whether the place obtained its name from its position: here *est (or nescio)* is the Principal Verb, and has for its Subject (or Object) "*num . . . fuerit*."

---

<sup>1</sup> Possibly, *loci* may be transposed, as is sometimes done in poetry, and may be dependent on *positu*: from the position of the place.

## II.—RULES FOR THE CASES.

In order to answer the question *What Case?* it is not enough, for example, to say that "*loci* is Genitive because it means *of the place*;" the pupil must say "Genitive Case, governed by *nomen* (or *positu*)."  
In other words, the pupil must give the Rule.

The Rules for the Cases are as follows:—

## 1. NOMINATIVE.

1. *The Subject of a Verb.*
2. *In Apposition to another Nominative.*
3. *The Complementary Nominative* (Par. 260).
4. *By connection*, i.e. because it is connected with another Nom. by some Conjunction, *quam, vel, et, &c.*

## 2. ACCUSATIVE.

1. *The Subject of an Infinitive* (Par. 208, 209).
2. *The Object of a Verb.*

This includes the Accusative (often called *Cognate Accusative*) found after some Intransitive Verbs, when the Verb and Noun are of kindred, i.e. *Cognate* meaning, e.g. "*lūdo ludum*," *I play a game*; "*eo viam*," *I go my way*.

- 3 *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 183).

4. *In Apposition to another Accusative* (Par. 123).

\* 5. *The Accusative of Respect* (or *the Accusative of the Part affected*).

This is more common in poetry than in prose, especially with Passive Participles: "*tectus cāliginē vultum*," *covered with darkness as to his features*.

6. *The Accusative of Extension* of (a) time or (b) space (Par. 262).

---

\* This mark denotes a construction more common in poetry than in prose.

7. The *Accusative of Place Whither* (towns and small islands, Par. 249).

8. The *Exclamatory Accusative*: "me miserum!" *wretch that I am!* "O sortem infelicem," *O, unhappy fate!* (206).

9. The *Double Accusative* (after Verbs of *asking, teaching, and concealing*): Par. 312.

10. The (a) *Primary* and (b) *Complementary Accusative*: see Par. 259.

*We thought you a second Cato.* Alterum te Catonem putabamus.

*They will create you king.* Te regem creabunt.

Here the person (te) is (a) the *Primary Object* of the Verb, and requires (b) a *Complementary Accusative*, Catonem or regem, to make the meaning complete.<sup>1</sup>

\* 11. An *Adverbial Accusative* is sometimes formed from the Neuter of an Adjective, especially in poetry: "torva tuens," *looking grimly*; "dulce ridentem Lalagen," *Lalage sweetly laughing*.

### 3. THE DATIVE.

1. *Of the Remote Object*: after Verbs of *giving, pleasing, helping, obeying*, and their opposites (Par. 142); also after *Verbs Compounded of Prepositions* (Par. 192); after many Adjectives signifying *nearness, pleasantness, fitness, likeness, equality, &c.*, and their opposites (Pars. 27, 90, 112).

\* 2. *Of Advantage or Disadvantage* (sometimes called "Commodi et Incommodi"):

*Thou sowest for thyself.*  
*We desire office for thee.*

Tibi seris.  
Tibi honores optamus.

This construction should be rarely employed by beginners in Latin Prose.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the *Public School Grammar* this is called the *Oblique Double Accusative* with *Factive Verb*.

3. *Of Purpose* (Par. 268): often accompanied by the *Dat. of Advantage or Disadvantage*, or some other Dative:

*He came for a help to us.*

*Venit auxilio (Dat. of P.)*

*nobis (Dat. of Advantage).*

*He gave this for a present to me.*

*Hoc mihi (Dat. of Recipient.)*

*dono (Dat. of P.) dedit.*

4. *Of the Recipient used for the Agent*, found only with Perfect Passive, Passivo Participles, especially Gerundives (Par. 168), and Verbals in *-bilis*.<sup>1</sup>

*I have now made up my mind.*

*Mihi jam consilium captum est.*

#### 4. THE ABLATIVE (Par. 273—280).

1. *Governed by a Preposition* (Par. 178).

This includes the Ablative *of the Agent* with *a* or *ab*.

2. *Of the Instrument* (Par. 8).

3. *Of the Measure of Excess or Defect* (Par. 274).

4. *Of Definite Price* (Par. 273).

5. *Of Manner* (Par. 276).

This requires an Adjective joined to the Noun (Par. 181), except with a few Adverbial Ablatives: *nomine*, *in name*; *re*, or *re ipsa*, *in fact*; *verbo*, *in word*; *specie*, *in appearance*; *jure*, *rightly*; *neque injuria*, *and not unnaturally*; *recte atque ordine*, *in due course*; *via atque ratione*, *methodically*; *vi*, *forcibly*; *dolo*, *craftily*.

6. *Of Quality*.

This also requires an Adjective (Par. 281).

7. *Of the Point of Time* (Par. 30, 263).

8. *Of Comparison* (Par. 63).

9. *Absolute* (Par. 196).

<sup>1</sup> The poets use this Construction with Tenses not derived from the Perfect.

*I am scarce heard by any. Vix audior ulli.—Ovid.*

10. Used with *dignus*, *indignus*, *fretus* (Par. 28, 278).<sup>1</sup>

11. Object of *fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *potior* (Par. 207).

12. (a) *Of Plenty and Want*; (b) with "*opus est*," "*usus est*"; see Par. 279.

13. *Of the Place Where* (with towns and small islands in the Third Declension, and in the Plural of the First and Second Declension); see Par. 265.

\* 14. *A Poetic Local Ablative*, where Prose writers would insert the Preposition *in*.

15. *Of the Place Whence* (of all towns and small islands); see Par. 265.

\* 16. *Of Separation* (after a few words, mostly legal, "*abdico me magistratu*," *I resign my office*; "*moveo te senatu*," *I expel you from the senate*").

Most of the Verbs (Par. 8) which allow an *Abl. of Separation* in Poetry require or allow a Preposition in Prose.

17. *Of Origin*, after *natus*, *ortus*, *genitus*, *satus*, *cretus*.

## 5. THE GENITIVE.

Genitives may be divided into two large classes, those in which the Gen. can be readily replaced (i.) by a Subject; (ii.) by an Object. The former are called *Subjective*; the latter, *Objective*.

Thus "*injuriae Æduorum*" may mean (i.) "*wrongs inflicted by the Ædui*" (i.e. "*the Ædui wronged some one*"), a *Subjective Genitive*; but it may mean (ii.) "*wrongs inflicted on the Ædui*" (i.e. "*some one wronged the Ædui*"), an *Objective Genitive*.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Abl. after the Verbal Adjectives *contentus*, *fretus*, *onustus*, is really an Abl. of the Instrument.

## (i.) THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Par. 281—292).

1. *The Possessive Genitive.*

The Noun governing this Genitive is often omitted (Par. 289) in such phrases as *it is the mark of, characteristic of, &c.*

2. *The Descriptive or Adjectival Genitive*; see Par. 282.

This may be illustrated by the English descriptive Adjective formed out of a Noun, *sun-light* (i.e. *sun's light*), *a pine forest*, &c. So in Latin: "*lauri nemus*," *a laurel grove*; "*nomen regis*," *the name of king* (or *the royal name*); *virtus constantiae*, *the virtue of constancy*.

3. *Of the charge*, after Verbs of accusing and condemning.

This is really governed by some Noun understood, as *crimine*, *nomine*, *causa*, &c.: see Par. 290.

4. *Of Quality* (Par. 282), *Value*, or *Indefinite Price* (Par. 283).5. *The Partitive Genitive* (Par. 91).

\*6. A Genitive, in Poetry, often follows a Neuter (mostly Plural) used instead of a Noun: "*secreta silvarum*," *the secret place of the woods*.

7. After some Verbs and Adjectives of *plenty* and *want* (285).<sup>1</sup>

## (ii.) THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

8. *Governed by a Noun.*

This Gen. must be rendered by different English Prepositions: *auri fames*, *hunger for gold*; *militiae vacatio*, *exemption from military service*; *remedium irae*, *remedy against anger*; *incitamenta periculi*, *incitements to peril*; *quies laborum*, *rest from evils*. (In writing Latin avoid this construction where it is ambiguous: *obsequium coelibis*,

<sup>1</sup> This is said (*Pub. Sch. Gr.* p. 420) to be a Partitive Genitive, and it would therefore fall under the head of Subjective, not Objective Genitives.

*respect to a bachelor; praestantia animarum reliquarum, superiority to other souls.)*

9. *With Verbal Adjectives and Present Participles used as Nouns* (Par. 288).

10. *With Adjectives of knowledge and ignorance, and some Adjectives of desire* (Par. 287).

11. *With Impersonal Verbs* (as the Impersonal Object): see Par. 219.

12. *With Verbs of remembering and forgetting*: Par. 203.

13. An apparent Genitive, more properly called *the Locative Case in -i*, is used in the Second Declension to represent *Place Where*, of towns and small islands, and with a few other Nouns (Par. 265.)

## 6. ALL CASES.

N.B.—A Noun may be in any Case by (1) *Connection*, i.e. through being connected with some other Noun by a Conjunction, e.g. *quam, vel, et*; or by (2) *Apposition*.



## PARSING TABLE.

The following Table shows how the different parts of speech should be parsed.

The pupil is intended to use the Table, principally to show him how to parse *visa-voce*; but he may occasionally make similar Parsing Tables for himself in order to fill up the columns in writing.

“Rogāvērant cives ut urbs, incendio fēre dēlēta, a nostris restituērētur.”

## ACCIDENCE.

## SYNTAX.

Verb ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Con- jugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voico.	Mood.	Tense.	Number.	Person.	Agrees with what Noun? Has what Object? Principal? or how de- pendent? <sup>1</sup> Why that Case?
Noun or Pro- noun.	Nom. Sing.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Person.]	—	—	—
Adjective ...	Nom. S. of all Gend.	Gen. Sing.	Decl.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	[Comp. Superl.]	Superl.]	—	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Participle ...	Pres. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Pres. Inf. and Con- jugation.	Perf. Ind. 1st. Pers.	Supine.	Voico.	Tense.	Gender.	Number.	Case.	Agrees with what Noun or Pronoun?
Preposition ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs what Noun or Pronoun?
Adverb ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies what Verb?
Conjunction ...	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins what?

<sup>1</sup> (1) The Verb must have a Subject, which should always be stated in the Syntax; (2) it may be (a) Intransitive, or have (b) a Direct Object, or (c) an Indirect Object; (3) it may be (a) Principal, or (b) Coordinate, or (c) Subordinate to another Verb; or, if Inf., (d) Subject or Object of some Verb, or Partial Object or Subject.

"Rogaverant." Verb.	rogo	-ro 1st	-vi	-tūm	Act.	Indic.	Pluperf.	Pl.	3rd	Agrees with Nom. "clives," has for its Obj. the sentence "ut urbs ... restitue- retur."
"Clives." Noun.	civis	civis	3rd	Masc.	Pl.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "rogave- rant."
"Ut." Conjunction.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Joins "rogaverant" with "restitueretur."
"Urbs." Noun.	urbs	urbs	3rd	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	—	—	—	To the Verb "resti- tueretur."
"Incendio." Noun.	incendium	-i	2nd	Neut.	Sing.	Abl.	—	—	—	Abl. of Instrument.
"fero." Adverb.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Modifies "deleta."
"deleta." Participle.	doleo	-ere 2nd	-vi	-tūm	Passive	Perf.	Fem.	Sing.	Nom.	Agrees with "urbs."
"a." Preposition.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Governs the Abl. "nos- tris (hominibus)."
"nostris." Pronoun Adj.	noster, -ra, -rum	nostris, -ae, -i	2nd	Masc.	Pl.	Abl.	no Compar.	no Superl.	—	Agrees with "homi- bus," understood, which is Abl. of the Agent, governed by "a."
"restitueretur." Verb.	restituō	-ere 3rd	-ti	-tūm	Pass.	Subj.	Imperf.	Sing.	3rd	(1) Agrees with its Nom. "urbs"; (2) Subor- dinate to "rogave- rant," Subjunctive after "ut." Rule. Verbs signifying ask, command, &c., take "ut" with the Subjunctive.

## APPENDIX V.

## LATIN GENDERS.

*Fem. Nouns are in black type; Neut., in CAPITALS; Masculine in ordinary type; (f. means sometimes fem.; m., sometimes masc.).*

## I.—BY TERMINATIONS.

## FIRST DEOLENSION.

FEMININE.<sup>1</sup>

## SECOND DEOLENSION.

*Masculine endings -er, -ir, -us. Neuter endings -UM.*

*Exceptions* { *alvus, cōlus (m.), dōmus, hūmus, vannus;*  
*arctus,† ātōmus,† carbāsus,† diālectus,†*  
*phārus,† PĒLAGUS,† VĪRUS, VULGUS.*

## THIRD DEOLENSION.

*Masculine Terminations.*

-er, -or, -os.

-es increasing in the Genitive.

-o (when not -do, -go, -io).

*Principal Exceptions.*

-er]	linter	CĀDĀVER
	ITER	PĀPĀVER <sup>2</sup>
	ŪBER	VĒR
	VERBER	
-or]	arbor	ÆQUOR
	cŭr	MARMOR
-os]	cŭs	dŏs
	ŏs	ŏs
	CHAOST†	ĒPOST†
	compēs	mercŏs
-es]	mergēs	quĭēs
	rēquĭēs	sēgēs
	tēgēs	Æs
	cāro	ēcho†

<sup>1</sup> Excepting names of men and men's occupations, and national names, such as Scythia, a *Scythian*, pŏeta, a *poet* &c.; for which see "Genders by Meaning" below. Add also the Greek-derived words cōmēta m., and plānēta m.

<sup>2</sup> Also some other names of vegetable products, as Ācer, Cĭcer, Pĭper, sĭler, sĭser. tŭber, &c.

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

*Feminine Terminations.*

- do, -go, -io, -as, -is, -aus, x.  
 -es, not increasing in the Genitive.  
 -s, preceded by a consonant.  
 -ūs (long) in words of more than one syllable.

*Principal Exceptions.*

-do]	cardo	cupido (f.)	ordo	
-go]	harpāgo	līgo	margo	
-io]	concrete nouns, such as pāpilio.			
	pūgio	ūnio		
-as]	as	ēlēphas†	vās	
	vās	fās	nēfās	
-is]	amnis	anguis	axis	cassis (-is)
	caulis	cīnis	collis	clūnis
	crinis	cūcūmis	ensis	fascis
	finis (f.)	follic	fūnis	fustis
	ignis	lūpis	mensis	orbis
	pānis	piscis	postis	pulvis
	sanguis	torris	unguis	vectis
	vermis			
-x]	āpex	cūlex	cōdex	cortex (f.)
	frūtex	grex	lūtex	mūrex
	pollex	sīlex (f.)	thōrax	vertex
-es]	ācīnācēs			
ns, -ps, &c.]	bīdens (f.)	dens	fons	hydrops
	inons	pons	rūdens (f.)	_

*Neuter Terminations.*

- C, -A, -T, -L, -N.  
 -AR, -UR, -ūs (short).  
 -ūs (long) in monosyllable.

*Principal Exceptions.*

-L]	sāl	sōl
-N]	līen	pectēn
	rēn	splēn
-UR]	fūr	furfūr
	turtūr	vultūr
-ūs]	lēpūs	pēcūs (udis)
-ūs]	grūs m.)	sūs (m.)
	mūs	

† This sign denotes a Greek derivation.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

## MASCULINE.

*Except* ācus, īdus (pl.), mānus, porticus, trībus.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

## FEMININE.

*Except* diēs (*f. in Poets*), mūridiēs.

## II.—GENDERS REGULATED BY MEANING.

## A.—MASCULINE.

Names of (1) men, (2) men's occupations, (3) months, (4) winds, (5) mountains, (6) rivers, (7) peoples.<sup>1</sup> The exceptions arise from the terminations, such as :—

- Exceptions { (5) Aetna, Hybla, Īda; Calpē, Cyllēnē, Rhōdōpē; Alpēs (pl.); Pēliōs and *Plurals implying ranges* (JŪGA) such as GARGĀRA, ĪMĀRA, &c.; SŪRACTĒ.  
(6) Allia, and others in -ā, Lēthē, Styx.

## B.—FEMININE.

Names of (1) women, (2) p'lants, (3) countries, (4) islands, (5) cities.<sup>2</sup>

- Exceptions { (2) *Nouns of Decl. 2, in -us and -er, e.g.* ācanthūs, ōleaster; *Nouns in -um, e.g.* ārium; *Nouns of 3rd Decl. in -er, e.g.* ācer, cīcer, pāpāver, nīper, sīler, sīser, and sūber; also rōber and tūs.  
*The following are common:* bālānus, cŷtīcus, lōtus, rūbus, spinus.  
(3) *Masc. Decl. 2.* Pontus; *Neut. Nouns. in -um.*  
(5) *Masc. (a) all Plurals in -i, e.g.* Cōrīōli; also (b) Cānōpus and Orchōmēnus; (c) *Nouns in -as, -ant, e.g.* Aerāgas, -antis; (d) *several in -o, -on, e.g.* Hippo, -ōnis; (e) *a few in -us, -unt, e.g.* Pescīnus, -untis. *Neut. (a) Nouns in -um, -on, -a (pl.) of Decl. 2; (b) most in -r, -tr, -os of Decl. 3.*

<sup>1</sup> These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) and, (2) lūmo, (3) mensis, (4) ventus, (5) mons, (6) flūvīus, (7) ōpūlus.

<sup>2</sup> These names may be regarded as adjectives agreeing with (1) mūlier, (2) planta, (3) terra, (4) insūla, (5) urbs.

## APPENDIX VI.

RULE FOR TURNING THE DAYS OF THE MONTH  
FROM ENGLISH INTO LATIN.

In Latin the day of the month is reckoned not as in English, from the first day of the month but from (1) the *Nones*, i.e. the 5th or 7th of the current month; (2) the *Ides*, i.e. the 13th or 15th of the current month; (3) the *Kalends*, i.e. the first day of the next month.

The Latin terms are—

(1) *Nōnæ*, -ārum (f.), i.e. nine days before the *Ides*.<sup>1</sup>

(2) *Īdūs*, -ūm (f.), i.e. the dividing days of the month, falling about the middle.<sup>2</sup>

(3) *Kālendæ*, -ārum (f.), i.e. the calling days (Old Latin *calāre*, *proclaim*), the day when the order of the days of the month was proclaimed to the people, the first day.

There is in every month an interval of 8 days between the *Nones* and the *Ides*. The *Nones* are on the 5th, and the *Ides* on the 13th, in every month, except March, July, October and May; in which four months the *Nones* are on the 7th and the *Ides* on the 15th.

This is sometimes remembered from the rhyme:—

“In March, July, October, May,

The *Nones* are on the seventh day.”

I. When the day falls between the first and the *Nones*, or between the *Nones* and the *Ides*, the rule is (since the Romans reckoned inclusively) *Add one to the Nones or Ides and subtract the day.*

Thus, if the day be 4 March, add 1 to the *Nones* of March;  $7 + 1 = 8$ , subtract 4, the result is 4. This is written “*antē diem quartum Nōnas Martias*.”<sup>3</sup>

If the day be 11 April, add 1 to the *Ides* of April;  $13 + 1 = 14$ ; subtract 11, the result is 3. This is written “*antē diem tertium Idus Apriles*.”<sup>3</sup>

II. When the day falls after the *Ides*, the rule is (since here we are reckoning not from the last day of the month but from the day after that), *Add two to the total number of days in the month, and subtracting the day from the result, reckon from the Kalends of next month.*

Thus if the day be 20 January, add 2 to 31, and from 33 subtract 20, the result is 13 days before the *Kalends* of February; and this is written thus “*ante diem tertium dēcimum Kālendās Februārias*.”<sup>3</sup>

III. If the day is (a) on, or (b) the day before, the *Nones*, *Ides* or *Kalends*, it is expressed by (a) the Abl., or (b) *Prīdie*, followed by the Acc.: (a) 7th of May, “*Nōnis Maiis*”; (b) 12th of June, “*Prīdiē Īdus Jūnias*”; 30th of June, “*Prīdiē Kālendās Quintiles*”; 4th of August, *Prīdiē Nōnas Sextiles*.

IV. Note that Adjectives, (and not Nouns in the Genitive) are used in each case. The Adjectives are, (“*antē diem*—*Kālendās*, *Nōnas*, *Īdus*) *Jānuārias*, *Februārias*, *Martias*, *Apriles*, *Maias*, *Jūnias*, *Quintiles*, *Sextiles*, *Septembres*, *Octōbres*, *Nōvembres*, *Dēcembres*.”

<sup>1</sup> We should say “eight days before”: but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

<sup>2</sup> This is the derivation commonly given from an Etruscan word *idnāre*, divide: but more probably from Sanscr. *indh-*, *idh-*, *kindle*, *enlighten*, (*indu*, *moon*) from being the days of light, the days of the full moon.

<sup>3</sup> A rarer form is “*tertio*, *quarto*, *tertio dēcimo die antē*,” &c. The common construction cannot be explained except as a confusion.

## APPENDIX VII.

ELEMENTARY RULES ON THE QUANTITY  
OF SYLLABLES*As a Guide to Pronunciation.*

## I.—GENERAL RULES.

1. Diphthongs (*aēs, brass*) and contracted syllables (*quīs* for *quībus*) are long.

2. A vowel before another vowel (*monēo*) is short.

3. A vowel naturally short (*e.g.* the *a* in *cāno, I sing*), when placed before two consonants (*e.g.* in *cantus, song*), is said to be *long by position*, and is long for the purposes of verse-making; but it is pronounced in the same way as the *a* in *cano*, so that *length by position does not affect pronunciation.*

## II.—FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Final *-ā* is *long*: exceptions; Nom., Voc., and Acc. cases; also *itā, quā*.<sup>1</sup>

2. Final *-ē* is *short*: exceptions: (1) Adverbs in *-ē* derived from Adj. in *-us, -a, -um*, as *maximē*, (save *hēnē, mālē, supernē*); (2) Abl. Sing. of 5th Decl.; (3) 2nd Pers. Sing. Imper. of 2nd Conj.; (4) *nē, mē, tē, sē*.

3. Final *-ī* is *long*; but *-i* is mostly *short* in *mihī, tībī, ūbī, fībī, sībī*, always in *nīsī*.

4. Final *-ō* is *long*; but mostly *short* in *ēgō, mōdō* (adv.) only.

5. Final *-ū* is *long*.

6. A vowel before *-o* is *long*; exceptions, *nēo, dōnēo, fāc*.

7. A vowel is *short* before final *-b, -d, -l, -n, -r, and t*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> None but the more important exceptions are given to every rule.

<sup>2</sup> The quantities of syllables not final must be learned by experience; but the quantity of one word often helps the pupil to that of many derived words. For example, the short *ō* in *mōneō* determines the quantity in *admōneō, commōneō, mōnitus, -us, mōnitor, -ōris, monumentum, -i, &c.*: exceptions, *dūcis, of a leader, dūco, I lead; sēdēs, a seat; sēdeo, I sit.*

8. -ās and -ēs are *long* ; but nouns in -es, increasing the Genit., are short, *e.g.* mīlēs, mīlītis ; and ēs (*thou art*) is *short*, both in sum and in its compounds.

9. -īs is *short* : exceptions (a) Plural Cases, *e.g.* insūlis, dōmīnis, nōbīs ; (b) second Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic., of fourth Conj., audīs ; (c) sīs (Pres. Subj. of sum) and vīs (Pres. Indic. of vōlo), and their compounds, as well as velīs, mālīs, nōlīs ; (d) vīs, *violence*.

10. -ōs is *long* : exception, ōs (Gen. ossis).

11. -ūs is *short* : exceptions ; (a) Gen. Sing., and Nom. and Acc. Pl. of Fourth Decl. ; (b) nouns in -us which increase in the Gen. with a long penult, virtūs, -ūtis.

N.B.—It will be seen that (by Rules 7 and 9) many of the commonest monosyllables are short ; ōb, sūb, ād, āt, ēt, īd, īn, ān, vēl, pēr, tēr, vīr ; also īs, and quīs.

But although (according to Rule II. 2) -quē, -vē, and -nē ? are short, nē *lest* is long, and so are the pronouns mē, tē, se. Also cūr ? *why* ? is long.



## APPENDIX VIII.

## ETYMOLOGICAL GLOSSARY OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS.

- Ablative (Case)** [L. *ab*, "from;" *latus*, "carried"]. The Case denoting, among other things, *ablation*, or *carrying away from* (8, 273).
- Absolute (Construction)** [L. *ab*, "from;" *solut-*, "loosed"]. A construction in which a Noun, Participle, &c., is supposed to be used apart, *i.e.* *loosed from*, its ordinary Grammatical adjuncts. But the *Abl. Absolute* is really an *Abl. of circumstance* (196).
- Abstract (Noun)** [L. *abs*, "from;" *tract-*, "drawn"]. The name of an *abstraction*, *i.e.* of something considered by itself, apart from (*drawn away from*) the circumstances in which it exists.
- Accent** [L. *ad*, "to;" *cantus*, "song"]. Perhaps originally a *sing-song*, or modulation of the voice, added to a syllable. Now used of stress laid on a syllable.
- Accidence** [L. *accident-*, "befall"]. That part of grammar which treats of the changes that *befall* words. (1); Quintilian I. 5, 41, "frequentissime in verbo quia plurima huic *accidunt*."
- Accusative (Case)**. 2. Probably a Latin mistake. The Greek original meant (1) *cause*, (2) *accusation*. The Latins took it in sense (2) instead of (1). The Latin name for the Direct Objective Inflection. Possibly the Romans regarded the object as confronted with the agent, like an *accused* person with the prosecutor.
- Active (Voice)**. The form of a Verb that usually denotes *acting* or *doing*.
- Adjective** [L. *ad*, "to;" *jact-*, "cast or put"]. A word *put to* a Noun.
- Adverb** [L. *ad*, "to;" *verb-*, "word" or "Verb"]. A word generally joined *to* a Verb.
- Adversative** [L. *adversus*, "opposite"]. An epithet applied to Conjunctions that (like "but") express *opposition*.
- Affix** [L. *ad*, "to;" *fix-*, "fixed"]. A syllable or letter *fixed* to the end of a word.
- Agreement**. The change made in the inflections of words so that they may suit or *agree* with one another.
- Alphabet** [Gr. *alpha*, *beta*; "a," "b"]. The list of letters, so called from the names

of the first two letters in Greek.

Anacolouthon [Gr. *a-*, "not;" *anolouthon*, "following"]. A break in the Grammatical sequence, or *following*.

Anomaly. A Greek-formed word meaning "unevenness," "irregularity."

Antecedent [L. *ante*, "before;" *cedent*, "going"]. (a) That part of a sentence which expresses a condition. So called because the condition must *go before* its consequence. (b) Also used for the Noun that *goes before* a Relative Pronoun (107).

Apodo-is [Gr. *apo-dosis*, "a paying back"]. A Greek name for the "Consequent," or "Then-Clause," in a Conditional Sentence (293). The Consequence was regarded as a sort of *debt*, to be *paid* in return for the fulfilment of the Condition.

Appellative [L. *appella*, "call to"]. A name for the *Vocative* or *calling* use of a noun.

Apposition [L. *ad*, "near;" *posit*, "placed"]. The *placing* of one noun in the same case with another noun or pronoun, to express some quality, or circumstance, of the latter (123).

Asyndeton [from Greek "not bound together."] The placing of words together without a Conjunction: see Par. 32.

Attribute [L. *attribut*, "assigned"]. An Adj. *assigned* to qualify a Noun.

Cardinal (Numbers) [L. *cardin*, "hinge"]. That on which

anything *hinges* or turns: hence, "important." A name given to those more *important* forms of Numeral Adjectives from which the Ordinal forms are derived.

Case [L. *casus*, "falling"]. The Latin translation of the Greek term for the forms of a Noun. The subjective form was regarded as "*erect*," and the other forms as more or less *falling* away from it. Hence "*oblique*," "*decline*," &c.

Clause [L. *claus*, "enclosed"]. A general term for a part of a Sentence, whether it be a Phrase or a Subordinate Sentence.

Cognate (Object) [L. *co*, "together;" (*g*)*nat*, "born"]. The name given to an object that denotes something *akin* to (*born together* with) the action denoted by the Verb.

Common (Noun). A name that is *common* to a class and not *peculiar* or *proper* to an individual.

Comparative (Degree). The form of an Adjective denoting that a quality exists in a greater degree in some one thing than in some other with which it is *compared*.

Complementary [L. *comple*, "fill up"]. That which completes, or *fills up*.

Complete (State). A name given to an action (whether Past, Present, or Future) that was, is, or will be *complete*.

Complex (Sentence) [L. *con*, "together;" *plic*, "fold"]. A sentence that is *folded together*, or involved by con-

taining one or more Subordinate sentences.

Compound (Sentence) [L. *con*, or *com*, "together;" *pon*-, "place"]. A sentence made up of a number of Co-ordinate sentences placed together.

Concord. The name given to syntactical agreement between words, e.g. between Verb and Subject.

Conjugation [L. *con*, "together;" *jungat*-, "joining"]. A number of Verbs joined together in one class.<sup>1</sup>

Conjunction [L. *con*, "together;" *junct*-, "joined"]. A word that joins together two sentences expressed or implied.

Consequent. The name given to that part of a Sentence which expresses the consequence of the fulfilment of a condition. See *Antecedent*.

Consecutive. The name sometimes given to a clause introduced by "ut" so that, expressing result, or consequence, of an action.

Consonant [L. *con*, "together;" *sonant*-, "sounding"]. Letters (such as *p*) that can only be sounded together with a vowel.

Coordinate [L. *co*-, "with;" *ordin*-, "rank"]. The name given to a Sentence that ranks with the Principal Sentence (§34a): see Note following the Glossary.

Correlatives. Words that are related together or mutually related, e.g., "either," "or;" "both," "and;" "when," "then."

Dative [L. *daticus*,<sup>2</sup> "that which has arisen from giving"]. The Latin name for the Indirect Objective case used after Verbs of giving, &c. (192)

Declension. The bending or declension of the Oblique (see *Obliquus* below) cases from the Subjective form, which was regarded as "erect."

Defective (Verbs) [L. *deficio*, "I fail"]. Verbs that are deficient in some of their forms: see p. 215.

Degree (of comparison) [L. *gradus*, Fr. *degré*, "step"]. The forms expressing the steps or degrees in which a quality can be expressed by an Adjective.

Dependent (Sentence). Sometimes used for Subordinate. But generally applied to Subordinate sentences that are the Subjects or Objects of Verbs (208, 239).

Deponent (Verbs) [L. *deponens*, "laying aside"]. Verbs that retain an Active meaning, while laying aside Active forms: Par. 199.

Dieresis [Gr. *diairesis*, "separation"]. The mark placed over one of two vowels to show that each is to be

<sup>1</sup> Hence to conjugate a Verb is to repeat the inflections belonging to the class or conjugation. But the Romans used *decline* and not *conjugate* in this sense (Madvig).

<sup>2</sup> Termination *-ivus* in Latin, when added to Participles, denotes that which has arisen from, e.g. "captivus," that which has arisen from "capture."

- pronounced *separately*, e.g. in "aërial."
- Diphthong [Gr. *di*, "twice;" *phthongos*, "sound"]. Two vowel sounds pronounced as one.
- Direct (Object). The Noun that denotes what is regarded as the *direct object* of the action of a Verb.
- Ellipsis [Gr. *elleipsis*, "omission"]. The *omission* of words (said to be "understood" i.e. implied) in a Sentence.
- Enclitics [Gr. "lean on"]. Words that cannot stand without *leaning on*, and being attached to, the words before them, e.g. -quē, -vē, -nē.
- Epithet [Gr. *epithetos*, "placed to"]. An Adjective *placed to* a Noun to describe some quality of the person or thing denoted by the Noun.
- Final [L. *finis*, "end"]. A *final* clause expresses an *end* or *purpose*; and "ut" *final* ("in order that") is distinguished from "ut" *consecutive* ("so that") (296).
- Finite (Verb). A name given to those parts of the Verb which are defined by Number and Person, as distinct from the Infinitive or Infinite.
- Frequentative (Verb). A Verb that expresses a *frequently* repeated action, e.g. "ventito," *I often come*.
- Gender [L. *genus*, Fr. *genre*, "breed," or "class"]. Forms to denote *classification* according to sex.
- Genitive (Case) [L. *genitiv*-, "generating"]. The Case denoting *generation*, *origin*, *possession* (282).<sup>1</sup>
- Gerund [L. *gero*, "I carry on"]. Part of the Verb denoting the *carrying on* of the action of the Verb. The *Gerundive* is Adjectival, the *Gerund* is a Noun (163, 170, 251).
- Gutturals [L. *guttur*, "throat"]. Throat letters, *k*, and hard *g*.
- Historic Infinitive. The Infinitive used for the Indicative, as is sometimes the case in rapid *historical* narrative: see Par. 320.
- Idiom [Gr. *idioma*, "peculiarity"]. A mode of expression *peculiar* to a language.
- Imperative (Mood). [L. *impera*-, "command"]. The *commanding* Mood (129).
- Impersonal (Verbs). Verbs not used with a *Personal* Subject: see Par. 219.
- Indicative (Mood). [L. *indica*-, "point out"]. The Mood that *points out* or *indicates* an action, &c., as a past, present, or future existence.
- Indirect (Object). The Noun or Pron. denoting the person or thing regarded as not directly but only *indirectly* influenced by the action of the Verb (192).
- Infinitive (Mood) [L. *in*, "not;" *finit*-, "limited"]. A Mood *not limited* by any definition of Person or Number.
- Inflection. [L. *inflecto*, "I

<sup>1</sup> The Latin "genitivus" is a mistranslation of the Greek *genike*, which meant the *generic* case i.e. the case that denoted the *genus* or *class*. For example "life," "What *class* of life?" "Man's life."

- bend"]. The *bending* of a word from the simple form, by means of varying the termination. See *Oblique*.
- Interjection [L. *inter-ject*-, "thrown between"]. An utterance *thrown in between* words, to express emotion.
- Intransitive (Verb). [L. *in*, "not"; *transitiv*-, "passing across"]. A Verb whose action is not supposed to *pass across* to any Object.
- Labials [L. *labium*, "lip"]. *Lip*-letters: *f*, *v*, *p*, *b*, *m*, *hw* and *w*.
- Linguals [Latin *lingua*, "the tongue"]. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *tongue*: *sh*, *s* in *pleasure*.
- Locative (Case) [L. *locus*, "place"]. A case expressing *place* (Par. 265).
- Liquids. Letters of a flowing, *liquid* sound, as *l*, *r*.
- Monosyllable [Gr. *mono*, "only"]. A word of *only one* syllable.
- Mood [L. *mod*-, "manner"]. The form of a Verb expressing the *manner* of action.
- Mutes [L. *mut*-, "dumb"]. Letters that are *dumb* without the aid of a vowel: *k*, *g*, *t*, *d*, *p*, *b*.
- Nasal [L. *nas*-, "nose"]. Consonants sounded through the *nose*; *n*, *m*.
- Neuter (Gender). [L. *neuter*, "neither"]. That Gender which is *neither* Masc. nor Feminine.
- Nominative (Case) [L. *nomina*-, "to name"]. A Latin term for the Subject, because the Subject was regarded as a person or thing *named*.
- Noun [L. *nomen*, Fr. *nom*, "name"]. The *name* of anything.
- Object. The word, or group of words, denoting that which is regarded as the *object* or mark aimed at by the action of Verbs or the motion of Prepositions.
- Oblique (Case). A name given to all Cases but the Subjective. By the Greeks the Subjective form of a Noun was regarded as *erect*, and all the other forms as *fallings* or *oblique* deviations from the Subjective.
- Oblique (Speech). Speech reported, not *directly* in the First Person with the exact words of the speaker, but *indirectly* or *obliquely* in the Third Person.
- Ordinal (Adjective) [L. *ordin*-, "order"]. An Adjective, that answers to the question "in what order."
- Palatals. Letters whose sounds are produced by the *palate*: *ch*, *j*.
- Participle [L. *particip*-, "participating"]. A form of a Verb *participating* in a Verb and an Adjective.
- Particle. A "little part": a name given to the four undeclined "*parts of speech*," Adverb, Conjunction, Interjection and Preposition.
- Partitive (Genitive). A Genitive implying *partition* (91).
- Passive (Voice). A form of the Verb expressing *passiveness* rather than *activeness*.
- Perfect (Tense) [L. *perfect*-, "complete"]. The Name

for the Latin Tense that has to represent (1) our Indef. Past, (2) our Complete Present.

Period [Gr. *peri*, "round"; *od*-, "path"]. (1) The full, rounded path of a complex sentence, (2) a mark at the end of a sentence.

Person [L. *per*, "through"; *son*-, "sound"; hence, *persona* "a mask through which an actor sounds;" "an actor's part in a play"]. The part played in conversation, (1) speaking; (2) spoken to; (3) spoken of.

Phrase [Gr. *phrasis*, a "saying"]. A group of words not expressing a statement, question, or command.

Pluperfect (Tense) [L. *plu*-, "more;" *perfect*-, "complete"]. A more than complete Tense. The Latin equivalent of our Complete Past (121).

Plural (Number) [L. *plu*-, "more"]. The form denoting more than one.

Polysyllable [Gr. *poly*-, "many"]. A word of many syllables.

Positive. The simple form of an Adjective; so-called because it expresses a quality not comparatively, but positively.

Possessive [L. *possess*-, "possessed"]. The name given to the use or case of a Noun denoting possession.

Predicate [L. "*praedica*-" "proclaim," "state"]. A word or group of words

making a statement about a Subject.

Prefix [L. *prae*-, "before;" *fix*-, "fixed"]. A letter, syllable, or word fixed before another word.

Preposition [L. *prae*-, "before;" *posit*-, "placed"]. A Word (not a Verb) generally placed before a Noun or Pronoun as its Object. N.B. A Preposition and its Object make up an Adverbial Phrase.

Pronoun [L. *pro*-, "for;" L. *nomen*-, "noun"]. A word used for a Noun.

Proper (Noun). [L. *propri*-, *F. propre* ; "peculiar"]. A name that is peculiar or proper to the individual, not common to a class.

Prose [L. *prosa*, for *prorsa*, for *pro-versa*,<sup>1</sup> i.e. "turned forward"]. Writing that does not turn like verses but runs straight on. Hence, the straightforward arrangement of prose.

Prosody [Gr. *prosodia*, a "song"]. Hence, that part of Grammar which treats of verse, whether intended to be sung or not.

Protasis [Gr. *pro*-, "before;" *tasis*-, "stretching"]. Literally, stretching before. Hence, in a sentence, the Antecedent or Condition. See *Apodosis*.

Punctuation [L. *punctum*-, "point"]. Dividing a sentence by means of points representing the pauses.

Quantity. The quantity of time necessary to pronounce a syllable.

<sup>1</sup> Compare our *é'er*, *o'er* for *ever*, *over*.

**Reduplication.** The *reduplicating* or *redoubling* of a syllable, mostly found (but with some change) in a few Latin Perfects, *e.g.* "tendo," "te-tendi."

**Reflexive (Pronoun)** [*reflexus*, "bent back"]. A Pronoun which is as it were *bent back* on the Subject, so that the Pronoun and the Subject denote the same person or thing.

**Relative (Pronoun)** [L. *re*, "back;" *lat*-, "carried"]. A name given to *qui*, *quae*, &c., when used not Interrogatively to carry one forward, but to *carry one back* to the Antecedent.

**Root.** A word that gives birth to a group of kindred words, as a *root* to branches.

**Sentence** [L. *Sententia*, a "meaning"]. A group of words of *meaning* so complete as to express a statement, question, or command.

**Sibilant** L. [*sibila*-, hiss]. *Hissing* letters: *s*, *z*, *sh*.

**Stem.** That part of a word which remains the same when the word is inflected.

**N.B.**—The True Stem of a word is sometimes concealed by changes, *e.g.* the "o" which is part of the True Stem of "dominus" is lost in almost all the Cases. Hence the Stem of "dominus" as printed in Par. 12 appears to be "domin-." This false Stem, which is obtained by clipping the True Stem of its final vowel, is sometimes called the Clipt Stem. (Par. 55, note 1.)

**Subject** [L. *subject*-, "placed

under"]. That which is *placed under* one's thoughts, as the basis for speech. Hence, the Subject of a Verb is that about which the Verb makes a statement (127).

**Subjunctive (Mood)** [L. *subjunct*-, "subjoined"]. A Mood expressing a purpose, condition, &c., *subjoined* to some statement, question, or answer.

**Subordinate (Sentence)** [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *ordin*-, "rank"]. See Note p. 239.

**Substantive (Noun)** [L. *substantia*, "substance"]. A name given to Nouns, perhaps as being the *substance* or *ground standing beneath* the Adjective. It is from a Greek term, applied not to Nouns but to the *Substantive Verb*, "to be."

**Suffix** [L. *sub*, "beneath;" *fix*-, "fixed"]. Same as *Affix*.

**Supine.** A name given to two very rarely used Noun forms of the Verb used only in the Accusative and Ablative. Its origin is unknown, but it may at least serve to remind the pupil that these forms are the laziest and most *supine* of all the parts of the Verb: see Par. 246, 247.

**Superlative (degree)** [L. *super*, "above;" *lat*-, "carried"]. An Adjectival form denoting the expression of a quality in a degree *carried above* other degrees.

**Syllable** [Gr. *syn*, "together;" *lab*-, "take"]. A group of letters *taken together* so as to form one sound.

**Syntax** [Gr. *syn*, "together;"

<i>taxis</i> , "arranging"]. The arrangement of words together in a sentence.	because the action of the Verb is regarded as passing or going across to the Object.
Temporal (Clause) [L. <i>tempus</i> , "time"]. An Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of time.	Verb [L. <i>verb-</i> , "word"]. The chief word in a sentence.
Tense [L. <i>tempus</i> , Fr. <i>temps</i> , "time"]. The forms of a Verb indicating the time of an action.	Vocative [L. <i>voca-</i> , "call"]. The use, or Case, of a Noun when the person or thing is called to.
Transitive [L. <i>trans</i> , "across; it", "going"]. A Verb that has an Object, so called	Vowels [L. <i>vocalis</i> , "having voice"]. The letters that have a voice or are sounded (not as the "consonants but) by themselves: <i>a, e, i, o, u</i> .

## NOTE ON SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Subordinate Sentences are those which express some (1) **Noun**, (2) **Adjective**, or (3) **Adverb** in another Sentence called the Principal Sentence.<sup>1</sup>

(1) (Noun) { (a) (Subject.) "WHEN *he-will-come* is uncertain."  
(b) (Object.) "I say THAT *he-will-come*."

(2) (Adjective.) "The battle *that-was-fought at Cannæ* was gained by Hannibal."

(3) (Adverb.) (a) (When?) "WHEN *he-had-heard-this* he departed"; (b) (Why?) "I will strive THAT *you-may-succeed*"; (c) (How?) "He behaved so gently THAT *he-surprised-every-body*"; (d) (Where?) "WHERE *the-Turk's-horse-goes*, nothing grows."

For a list of the Principal Subordinate and Coordinate Conjunctions see Par. 334a.

---

<sup>1</sup> A Subordinate Sentence (called also a Subordinate Clause) is sometimes defined as one that is "constructively dependent" on another Sentence. If this definition were adopted, a sentence in the Subjunctive preceded by "antequam" would be Subordinate, while the same sentence in the Indicative, preceded by "antequam," would not be Subordinate.



## APPENDIX IX.

## VOCABULARIES.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>adj.</i>	= adjective
<i>adv.</i>	= adverb
<i>c.</i>	= common gender
<i>conj.</i>	= conjunction
<i>f.</i>	= feminine
<i>gen.</i>	= genitive
<i>indec.</i>	= indeclinable
<i>inter.</i>	= interrogative

<i>m.</i>	= masculine
<i>n.</i>	= neuter
<i>pl.</i>	= plural
<i>prep.</i>	= preposition
<i>pron.</i>	= pronoun
<i>sing.</i>	= singular
<i>v.</i>	= verb

## EXERCISE I.

*āqua, f. water*  
*āquīla, f. eagle*  
*filīa, f. daughter*  
*insūla, f. island*  
*nauta, m. sailor*  
*pēcūnia, f. money*  
*pūella, f. girl*  
*rēgina, f. queen*

*violētia, f. violence*  
*āmat, v. loves*  
*dāt, v. gives*  
*lāvat, v. washes*  
*libērat, v. frees, delivers*  
*monstrat, v. points out, shows*  
*sūperat, v. overcomes*  
*vōrat, v. devours*  
*ēt . . . ēt, conj. both . . . and*

## EXERCISES II.—VI.

*constantia, f. constancy*  
*culpa, f. blame, fault*  
*dextra, f. right hand*  
*expēriētia, f. experience*  
*fēmīna, f. woman*  
*intempērantia, f. intemperance*  
*ira, f. anger*  
*pātientia, f. patience*  
*patriā, -ae, f. native land*  
*prōcella, f. storm*  
*prudentia, f. prudence*  
*sāpientia, f. wisdom*  
*stella, f. star*

## EXERCISE VII.

*dōmīnus, m. lord, owner*  
*ēquus, m. horse*  
*filiūs, m. son*  
*flūvīus, m. river*  
*glādīus, m. sword*  
*hortus, m. garden*  
*māgister, m. master (mostly teacher)*  
*mīna, f. threat*  
*mīnister, m. servant, attendant*  
*servus, m. slave*  
*hābet, v. has*  
*tīmet, v. fears*  
*terret, v. terrifies, frightens*

## EXERCISES VIII.—XI.

āger, *m. field*  
 agrīcōla, *m. husbandman*  
 āper, *m. boar*  
 arbīter, *m. umpire*  
 Auster, *m. south wind*  
 cancer, *m. crab*  
 cāper, *m. goat*  
 cōlūber, *m. snake*  
 culter, *m. knife*  
 fāber, *m. artificer, workman*  
 gēner, *m. son-in-law*  
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*  
 invīdia, -ae, *f. envy*  
 liber, *m. book*  
 Liber, *m. Liber, the god of wine*  
 libēri, *m. pl. children*  
 pūer, *m. boy*  
 sōcer, *m. father-in-law*  
 vesper, *m. evening*  
 vīr, *m. man, hero*  
 culpat, *v. blames*  
 laudat, *v. praises*  
 nēque, or nēc, *conj. and not, neither*  
 nōn, *adv. not*  
 ā (āb before vowels or h), *prep. by*  
 sup̄erantur, terrentur, *see p. 11*

## EXERCISE XII.

argentum, *n. silver*  
 arvum, *n. cornfield*  
 aurum, *n. gold*  
 diligentia, *f. diligence*  
 dōnum, *n. gift*  
 mūrus, *m. wall*  
 Neptūnus, *m. Neptune*  
 oppīdum, *n. town*  
 porta, -ae, *f. gate*  
 praemīum, *n. reward*  
 terra, *f. land*  
 templum, *n. temple*  
 delectat, *v. delights, charms*

## EXERCISE XIII.

aurīga, *m. charioteer*  
 bōnus, -a, -um, *good*  
 dīrus, -a, -um, *terrible*  
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*  
 ēpistūla, -ae, *f. letter*  
 impāvīdus, -a, -um, *fearless*  
 imprōbus, -a, -um, *dishonest*  
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*  
 jussum, *n. command*  
 justus, -a, -um, *just*  
 magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*  
 parvus, -a, -um, *little, small*  
 pāvīdus, -a, -um, *fearful*  
 pēlāgus, *n. sea*  
 pēricūlum, *n. danger*  
 prōbus, -a, -um, *honest*  
 scriba, *m. scribe, clerk*  
 splēdīdus, -a, -um, *splendid*  
 strēnūus, -a, -um, *vigorous*  
 tīmīdus, -a, -um, *timid*  
 vastus, -a, -um, *vast*  
 vīa, *f. way*

## EXERCISES XIV. AND XV.

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ailing*  
 āla, *f. wing*  
 albus, -a, -um, *white*  
 altus, -a, -um, *high, tall*  
 Brītanīa, *f. Britain*  
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*  
 impīger, -gra, -grum, *active*  
 incōla, *m. inhabitant*  
 lātus, -a, -um, *broad*  
 mācer, -cra, -crum, *lean*  
 mīser, -era, -erum, *wretched*  
 morbus, *m. disease*  
 nīger, -gra, -grum, *black*  
 pīger, -gra, -grum, *sllothful*  
 pōēta, -ae, *m. poet* [perous  
 prosper, -pēra, -pērum, *pros-*  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beauti-*  
 ful  
 rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*  
 sācer, -cra, -crum, *sacred*

stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*  
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*  
 taeter, -tra, -trum, *foul*  
 vāser, -fra, -frum, *cunning*  
 vālidus, -a, -um, *strong*  
 verbum, -i, *n. word*  
 est, *v. (he) is; (there) is*  
 sunt, *v. (they) are; (there) are*

## EXERCISE XVI.

ācūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*  
 aestūs, aestatis, *f. summer*  
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*  
 bellum, -i, *n. war*  
 clārus, -a, -um, *renowned*  
 cōmēs, cōmītis, *m. companion*  
 dignus, -a, -um, *worthy (g. abl.)*  
 dux, dūcis, *m. leader*  
 ēquēs, ēquitis, *m. horse-soldier*  
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*  
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*  
 ignāvia, -ae, *f. sloth, cowardice*  
 impērator, -ōris, *m. general*  
 indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*  
 ingrātus, -a, -um, *displeasing*  
 injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*  
 jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*  
 iudex, iudicis, *m. judge*  
 lāpis, -idis, *m. stone*  
 lēx, legis, *f. law*  
 mālus, -a, -um, *bad*  
 mēmōria, *f. memory, recollection*  
 milēs, militis, *m. soldier*  
 mōlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*  
 nox, noctis, *f. night*  
 obscurus, -a, -um, *dark*  
 pēdēs, pēditis, *m. foot-soldier*  
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*  
 rēx, rēgis, *m. king*  
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*  
 spīna, -ae, *f. thorn*  
 verbum, -i, *n. word*  
 delectat, *v. (he) delights*  
 laedit, *v. hurts*

## EXERCISE XVII.

annus, -i, *m. year*  
 ēlēphās, elephantis, *m. elephant*  
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage*  
 grus, grūis, *c. crane*  
 hiemps, hiēmīs, *f. winter*  
 hōmo, hōminis, *m. human being*  
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*  
 lēo, lēōnis, *m. lion*  
 longitudo, -tudinis, *f. length*  
 longus, -a, -um, *long*  
 mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful*  
 multitudo, -tudinis, *f. multitude*  
 multus, -a, -um, *many, much*  
 pāpilio, pāpilionis, *m. butterfly*  
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*  
 princeps, principis, *m. chief*  
 terra, -ae, *f. land*  
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*  
 virgo, virginis, *f. maiden*  
 vivit, -unt, *v. (he) lives, (they) live*

## EXERCISE XVIII.

āmīcus, -i, *m. friend*  
 āmor, āmoris, *m. love*  
 anser, ansēris, *m. goose*  
 arbor, arbōris, *f. tree*  
 causa, -ae, *f. cause*  
 cīnis, cīnēris, *m. ashes*  
 clāmor, clāmōris, *m. clamour*  
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, bright, renowned*  
 cōlor, cōlōris, *m. colour*  
 consul, consūlis, *m. consul*  
 flūs, flōris, *m. flower*  
 frāter, -tris, *m. brother*  
 frīgīdus, -a, -um, *cold* [abl.  
 injucundus, -a, -um, *disagree-*  
 jussum, -i, *n. command*  
 māter, māttris, *f. mother*  
 ōculus, -i, *m. eye*  
 pāter, patris, *m. father*  
 paucus, -a, -um, *(mostly pl.) few*  
 sēpulcrum, -i, *n. sepulchre*  
 timor, timōris, *m. fear*  
 vōx, vōcis, *f. voice*

## EXERCISE XIX.

căput, căpitis, *n.* head  
 carmen, carminis, *n.* poem, song  
 cibus, -i, *m.* food  
 corpus, corpōris, *n.* body  
 Dēus, -i, *m.* God  
 doctrīna, -ae, *f.* learning  
 factum, -i, *n.* deed  
 frutex, frūtīcis, *m.* shrub  
 fulmen, fulmīnis, *n.* lightning  
     *(that strikes)*  
 jūs, jūris, *n.* right or law  
 longus, -a, -um, long [*chant*  
 mercātor, mercatōris, *m.* mer-  
 nomen, nōmīnis, *n.* name  
 mens, mentis, *f.* mind, under-  
     standing  
 ōpus, ōpēris, *n.* work  
 pōeta, -ae, *m.* poet  
 scēlus, scēlēris, *n.* crime  
 sīdus, sīdēris, *n.* star  
 verber, verbēris, *n.* lash, stripe  
 -quē, *conj.* and  
 ērat, *v.* (he) was; there (was)  
 ērant, *v.* (they) were; (there) were

## EXERCISE XX.

ānīmal, ānīmālis, *n.* animal  
 āvīdus, -a, -um, greedy  
 aurēus, -a, -um, golden  
 Brītanus, -i, *m.* adj. used as  
     noun, a Briton  
 calcar, calcāris, *n.* spur  
 certāmen, certāmīnis, *n.* contest,  
     strife  
 cīvis, cīvis, *m.* citizen  
 civitas, civitātis, *f.* state,  
     country, citizenship  
 crēber, -bra, -brum, repeated,  
     frequent  
 dēcus, dēcōris, *n.* honour  
 exitiūm, -i, *n.* destruction  
 ferrum, -i, *n.* iron, sword [*rage*  
 fūrōr, fūrōris, *m.* madness,

gens, gentis, *f.* nation  
 gēnus, gēneris, *n.* kind, race  
 hostis, hostis, *m.* enemy; oft.  
     *pl. in Lat. where Eng. is*  
     *sing.*; hostiūm castra, the  
     camp of the enemy  
 ignāvus, -a, -um, slothful  
 ignis, ignis, *abl.*, -i, *m.* fire  
 imber, imbris, *abl.*, -i, *m.* shower  
 māre, mārīs, *n.* sea  
 nāvis, nāvis, *f.* ship  
 notūs, -a, -um, known  
 nūbēs, nūbis, *f.* cloud  
 ōs, ōris, *n.* mouth, countenance  
 ōs, ossis, *n.* bone  
 pastor, pastōris, *m.* shepherd  
 rāpidus, -a, -um, rapid  
 rōbur, robōris, *n.* strength  
 saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce  
 tempestās, -tātis, *f.* tempest  
 tōtus, -a, -um, whole  
 urbs, urbis, *f.* city  
 nēque . . . nēque, *conj.* neither  
     . . . nor  
 saepē, *adv.* often  
 consūmit, *v.* (he) consumes

## EXERCISE XXI.

ācer, *m.* ācris, *f.* ācre, *n.* keen  
 ānīmus, -i, *m.* mind  
 audāx, *gen.* audācis, bold  
 cēlēr, *m.* cēlēris, *f.* celērē, *n.*  
     swift  
 consīliūm, -i, *n.* plan [*gent*  
 dīlīgens, *gen.* dīlīgēntis, dili-  
 divēs, *gen.* divītis, rich  
 dulcis, *m.* & *f.* dulce, *n.* sweet  
 ēquester, *m.* -tris, *f.* -tre, *n.*  
     equestrian  
 fērāx, *gen.* ferācis, fruitful  
 fēlix, *gen.* fēlicis, happy  
 fortis, *m.* & *f.*, forte, *n.* brave  
 infēlix, *gen.* infēlicis, unhappy  
 insignis, *m.* & *f.* insigne, *n.*  
     distinguished, illustrious

lābor, lābōris, *m.* labour  
 laetitia, -ae, *f.* joy  
 laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*  
 melior, *m. & f.* melius, *n.* better  
 mors, mortis, *f.* death  
 prudens, *gen.* prudentis, *prudent*  
 salaber, *m.* -bris, *f.* -bre, *n.*  
*healthful*

sāpiens, *gen.* sāpientis, *wise*  
 seditio, seditiōnis, *f.* sedition  
 tergum, -i, *n.* back  
 tristis, *m. & f.* triste, *n.* sad  
 tristior, *m. & f.* tristius, *n.*  
*sadder*  
 verber, -uris, *n.* lash, stripe  
 vestis, -is, *f.* garment  
 vita, -ae, *f.* life

## EXERCISE XXII.

almus, -a, -um, *loving*  
 ātrōx, *gen.* ātrōcis, *stern, gloomy*  
 āter, -tra, -trum, *dark, black*  
 bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*  
 brēvis, *m. & f.* brēve, *n.* short  
 cōhors, cōhortis, *f.* a cohort, the  
*tenth part of a Roman legion*  
 fama, -ae, *f.* reputation, fame  
 fēritās, fēritātis, *f.* savageness  
 hasta, -ae, *f.* spear  
 infirmus, -a, -um, *weak*  
 inhōnestus, -a, -um, *dishonour-*  
*able*  
 irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*  
 omnis, *m. & f.* omne, *n.* all, the  
*whole*  
 poenitentia, -ae, *f.* penitence  
 primus, -a, -um, *first*  
 sēnex, sēnis, *m.* old man  
 tēner, -era, -erum, *tender*  
 turpis, *m. & f.* turpe, *n.* dis-  
*graceful, base*  
 vētus, *gen.* vētēris, *old*

vīnum, -i, *n.* wine  
 virtus, virtutis, *f.* virtue  
 vītium, -i, *n.* vice  
 quem, *pron. acc. m.* whom?  
 quī, *pron. nom. m.* who?

## EXERCISE XXIII.

ācūs, -ūs, *f.* needle<sup>1</sup>  
 adversus, -a -um, *adverse*  
 arcus, -ūs, *bow*  
 auditus, -ūs, *hearing*  
 Caeſar, -āris, *m.* Caesar  
 cervus, -i, *m.* stag  
 cōpia, -ae, *f.* plenty  
 cornū, -ūs, *n.* horn  
 cursus, -ūs, *m.* running, course  
 dīgītus, -i, *m.* finger [*ferent*  
 diversus, -a, -um, *diverſe, dif-*  
*ferent*]  
 durus, -a, -um, *hard*  
 fructus, -ūs, *m.* fruit  
 frāmentum, *n.* corn  
 gēlū, -ūs, *n.* frost  
 gēnū, -ūs, *n.* knee  
 glans, glandis, *f.* acorn  
 mūliēr, mūliēris, *f.* woman  
 myrtus, -i or -ūs, *f.* myrtle  
 pernīciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive*  
 pinus, -ūs, or -i, *f.* pine-tree  
 plebs, plēbis, *f.* the common  
*people*  
 portus, -ūs, *m.* harbour  
 quercus, -ūs, *f.* oak  
 rāmus, -i, *m.* branch  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*  
 sīgitta, -ae, *f.* arrow [*perous*  
 sēcundus, -a, -um, *second, pro-*  
*secutus*]  
 sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*  
 Scythia, -ae, *m.* a Scythian  
 sollertia, -ae, *f.* skill, subtlety  
 taurus, -i, *m.* bull  
 tribus, -ūs, *f.* tribe

<sup>1</sup> For the future, the quantity of the Nom. of the Fourth Decl. will not be marked. The pupil must bear in mind that the Nom. Sing. of the Fourth Decl. is to be pronounced short, diff. from the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Acc. Pl. which are long.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*  
 ūtilis, *m. & f. ūtile, n. useful*  
 ūtilitās, ūtilitātis, *f. utility*  
 vĕnātor, vĕnātōris, *m. hunter*  
 ventus, -i, *m. wind*  
 vĭsus, -ūs, *sight*  
 vulpēs, vulpis, *f. fox*  
 dātur (not dātur) *v. is given*  
 āgīt, *v. drives*  
 compārat (-ant), *v. obtains (-ain)*  
 expectat, (-ant), *v. awaits (-ait)*  
 intellĕgit, *v. understands*  
 vītāt, (-ant) *v. avoids (-oid)*  
 vulnĕrat (-ant), *v. wounds (-nd)*  
 nāvēs longae, *long ships, i.e. ships of war*

## EXERCISE XXIV.

āciēs, -iēi, *f. line (of battle)*  
 āpricus, -a, -um, *sunny*  
 cālor, calōris, *m. heat*  
 densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*  
 diēs, diēi, *f. day*  
 dōlor, dolōris, *m. grief*  
 exercĭtus, -ūs, *m. army*  
 faciēs, -iēi, *f. face*  
 flumen, -inis, *n. river*  
 fūga, -ae, *f. flight*  
 glāciēs, -iēi, *f. ice*  
 inīmĭcus, -a, -um, *hostile*  
 lūx, lūcis, *f. light*  
 mōra, -ae, *f. delay*  
 mēridiēs, -iēi, *f. mid-day*  
 nōvus, -a, -um, *new*  
 nūmĕrus, -i, *m. number*  
 pars, partis, *f. part*  
 plānitĭēs, -iēi, *f. level ground*  
 rēs, rei, *f. thing; rēs adversae, adverse things, i.e. adversity; rēs sĕcundae, prosperity*  
 sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*  
 spēs, -ei, *f. hope*

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*  
 tĕnuis, *m. & f. tenue, n. thin*  
 āgĭtur, *v. (he) is (being) driven*  
 interdum, *adv. sometimes*  
 tam, *adv. so*

EXERCISE XXV.<sup>1</sup>

āmĭcĭtĭā, -ae, *f. friendship*  
 āsĭnus, *m. ass*  
 asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *rough, rugged*  
 āvis, *f. bird*  
 brāchĭum, -i, *n. arm*  
 campus, -i, *m. a plain*  
 cānis, -is, *m. dog*  
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*  
 difficĭlis, -e, *difficult*  
 discĭpŭlus, -i, *m. pupil*  
 dissĭmĭlis, -e, *unlike*  
 fertĭlis, -e, *fertile*  
 grācĭlĭs, -e, *slender*  
 hūmĭlis, -e, *low, low-minded*  
 ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n. journey*  
 nĭhĭl, indecl. *n. nothing*  
 pātrĭa, -ae, *f. native land*  
 praeceptor, -ōris, *m. teacher*  
 prōcĕrus, -a, -um, *tall*  
 rĕgiō, -iōnis, *region, district*  
 sāgax, sāgācis, *sagacious*  
 sĭmĭlis, -e, *like*  
 sōror, ōris, *sister*  
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow*  
 testūdo, -inis, *f. tortoise*  
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*  
 uxor, ōris, *f. wife*  
 vallis, -is, *f. valley*  
 vĕlōx, -ōcis, *swift*  
 virtūs, -ūtis, *virtue, valour*  
 autem, conj. *in the second place, however, but, (never comes after a stop)*  
 māgis, *adv. more*

<sup>1</sup> The pupil must not expect to find the Comparative or Superlative forms of Adjectives in this Vocabulary. In looking out the meaning of hūmĭlior, for example, he will only find hūmĭlis, the Positive

quam, *conj. than*  
 quidem, *conj. in the first place,*  
*indeed*  
 complet, *v. fills*  
 dūcīt, *v. leads*

EXERCISE XXVI.<sup>1</sup>

Alexander, -āri, *m. Alexander*  
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*  
 bēnēvolus, -a, -um, *well-wishing,*  
*generous*  
 castra, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*  
 cōtiō, -iōnis, *f. speech*  
 Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*  
 maxīmē, *adv. very greatly, most*  
 mons, -ntis, *m. mountain*  
 nātus, -us, *m. (used only in*  
*Abl. nātu, by birth)*  
 pius, -a, -um, *dutiful*  
 praestans, -antis, *excellent*  
 ratiō, -iōnis, *f. reason*  
 rēvērentia, ae, *f. reverence*  
 Socrātēs, -is, *m. Socrates*  
 tempus, -oris, *n. time*  
 Tullius, -i, *m. Tullius*  
 quid, *pron. (nom. and acc.) n.*  
*what?*

## EXERCISE XXVII.

antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*  
 centūria, -ae, *f. century*<sup>2</sup>  
 centurio, -iōnis, *m. a centurion*  
 cerasum, -i, *n. cherry*  
 December, *gen. -bris, adj. of*  
*December*  
 Germanus, -a, -um, *German*  
 Ianuārius, -a, -um, *adj.*  
*January*  
 iuvēnis, -is, *m. young man*  
 lēgio, -iōnis, *f. legion*

manipulus, -i, *m. manipulus*<sup>2</sup>  
 Martius, -is, -ium, *of March*  
 mensis, -is, *m. month*  
 nux, nūcis, *f. nut*  
 ovum, -i, *n. egg*  
 patrimonium, *n. patrimony*  
 pauper, -ēris, *poor*  
 pōnum, -i, *n. fruit*  
 Septēber, *gen. -bris, adj. of*  
*September*  
 tribunus, -i, *m. tribune*  
 nunc, *adv. now*  
 quondam, *adv. formerly, once*  
 tōlum, *adv. alone*  
 tum, *adv. then, during that*  
*period*  
 tunc, *adv. then, at that moment*  
 castigātur v. (he) *is chastised*

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

armentum, -i, *n. herd*  
 āvārus, -a, -um, *greedy*  
 cārus, -a, -um, *dear*  
 cōrdna, -ae, *f. crown*  
 ensis, -is, *m. sword*  
 laus, laudis, *f. praise*  
 mālum, -i, *n. evil*  
 mōres, mōrum, *m. pl. conduct*  
 mōs, mōris, *m. custom*  
 nēmo, *gen. nullius, dat. nēmīni.*  
*acc. nēmīnem, abl. nullo, no*  
*one*  
 scūtum, -i, *n. shield*  
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many*  
 ūterquē, utraqūē, utrumquē,  
*adj. either, both*  
 valdē, *adv. strongly, exceed-*  
*ingly*  
 vōluptās, -tātis, *f. pleasure*  
 clāmant, v. (they) *cry out*  
 vitāre, v. *to avoid*

<sup>1</sup> The Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives given in the text are intended to be learned there, and are consequently not repeated here.

<sup>2</sup> These terms are explained in a sentence of Exercise XXVII.

## EXERCISES XXIX. AND XXX.

āliēnus, -a, -um, *another's*  
 crudēlis, *m. & f. -e, n. cruel*  
 ignārus, -a, -um, *ignorant*  
 immēmōr, *gen. -ōris, adj. un-*  
*mindful*  
 mēmōr, *gen. -ōris, mindful*  
 -nē? *enclitic, asks a question*  
*(emphasizing the word to*  
*which it is attached)*  
 nōnnē, *interrog. adv. (expects*  
*the answer 'Yes')*  
 num? *interrog. adv. (expects*  
*the answer 'No')*  
 porcus, -i, *m. pig*  
 sēd, *conj. but (on the other*  
*hand); but yet; but still*  
 tālis, -e, *adj. such*  
 cūrat, *v. (he) takes-care-of*

## EXERCISES XXXI. AND XXXII.

Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*  
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*  
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*  
 finītīmus, -a, -um, *bordering on*  
 fons, fontis, *m. fountain, source*  
 Gallus, -i, *a Gaul*  
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*  
 hūc, *adv. hither*  
 indoctus, -a, -um, *unlearned*  
 jūre, *rightly, see Par. 38*  
 maximē, *adv. very greatly, espe-*  
*cially, most of all*  
 mīserīcordīa, -ae, *f. pity*  
 nīmīs, *adv. too much*  
 nōmen, -īnis, *n. name*  
 pārīter, *adv. equally*  
 pārens, -rentis, *c. parent*  
 patriā, -ae, *f. native land*

poena, -ae, *f. (mostly pl.) penalty*  
 prāvus, -a, -um, *depraved*  
 proxīmus, *see Par. 69*  
 semper, *adv. always*  
 sūi, -ōrum, *m. pl. (adj. used as*  
*noun) his (own) men*  
 vestis, -is, *f. garment*  
 Virgilius, -i, *(more correctly*  
*Vergilius) m. Virgil*  
 vītīōsus, -a, -um, *full-of-vice*  
 errat, *v. (he) errs*  
 gustat, *v. (he) tastes*  
 intrat, *v. (he) enters*  
 laedit, *v. (he) hurts*  
 sērit, *v. (he) sows, plants*  
 do poenas, *I pay the penalty*

EXERCISE XXXIII.<sup>1</sup>

[The Conjugation of a Verb is denoted by the figure placed after it.]

Castigo, -avi, -ātum, 1, *punish*  
*chastise*  
 culpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *blame*  
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give*  
 deo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *presen.*  
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *excellent*  
 ēmendo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *im-*  
*prove*  
 erro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *err*  
 inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly*  
 laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*  
 monstro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *shew,*  
*point out*  
 optimus, -a, -um, *very good*  
 rogo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask*  
 saepe, *adv. often*  
 sī, *conj. if*  
 Tullia, -iae, *f. Tullia*  
 vitūpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *revile*

<sup>1</sup> Henceforth words must be looked out in the Vocabularies, pp. 248-327.

<sup>2</sup> This Verb is irregular.



## APPENDIX X.

## VOCABULARY—I.

## LATIN INTO ENGLISH.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	=	ablative	<i>indef.</i>	=	indefinite
<i>acc.</i>	=	accusative	<i>interj.</i>	=	interjection
<i>adj.</i>	=	adjective	<i>inter.</i>	=	interrogative
<i>adv.</i>	=	adverb	<i>m.</i>	=	masculine
<i>c.</i>	=	common gender	<i>n.</i>	=	neuter
<i>comp.</i>	=	comparative	<i>num.</i>	=	numeral
<i>conj.</i>	=	conjunction	<i>p.</i>	=	page
<i>dat.</i>	=	dative	<i>part.</i>	=	participle
<i>def.</i>	=	defective	<i>pass.</i>	=	passive
<i>dep.</i>	=	deponent	<i>pl.</i>	=	plural
<i>f.</i>	=	feminine	<i>prep.</i>	=	preposition
<i>g. gen., dat.,</i>	=	governs the gen.,	<i>pron.</i>	=	pronoun
<i>abl., &amp;c.</i>	=	dat., abl., &c.	<i>rel.</i>	=	relative
<i>gen.</i>	=	genitive	<i>sing.</i>	=	singular
<i>impers.</i>	=	impersonal verb	<i>sup.</i>	=	superlative
<i>indecl.</i>	=	indeclinable	<i>v.</i>	=	verb.

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the Conjugation of a Verb.

<i>Ab</i> ( <i>ā</i> , <i>abs</i> ), <i>prep.</i> with <i>abl.</i> <i>from</i> , by	<i>am</i> almost perishing, Par. 195 ;
<i>ābēo</i> , - <i>ī</i> or - <i>ivī</i> , - <i>ivim</i> , - <i>ire</i> , 4, <i>to go</i> away	<i>ābest</i> quinquē milia passūm, <i>he</i> <i>is five miles off</i> ; <i>prōpū ābest</i> ā
<i>ābhinc</i> , <i>adv.</i> (216) (313) <i>ago</i> (with <i>acc.</i> or <i>abl.</i> )	<i>nōbis</i> , <i>he is close to us</i> [the forms
<i>abjicio</i> , - <i>jēci</i> , - <i>jectum</i> , 3, <i>cast away</i>	<i>abfui</i> , <i>abfūturus</i> , &c., for <i>āfui</i> , <i>āfūturus</i> , &c., are incorrect]
<i>absens</i> , - <i>entis</i> , <i>absent</i>	<i>absumo</i> , - <i>mpsi</i> , - <i>imptum</i> , 3, <i>consume</i> . <i>destroy</i>
<i>abstūli</i> , <i>see aufūro</i>	<i>absurdus</i> , - <i>a</i> , - <i>um</i> , <i>adj.</i> <i>absurd</i>
<i>absum</i> , <i>afui</i> , <i>abesse</i> , <i>I am absent</i> ;	<i>ābundo</i> , - <i>āvī</i> , - <i>ātum</i> , 1, <i>abound</i>
<i>mīnimum ābest</i> quā pāream, <i>I</i>	<i>ābutor</i> , - <i>ūsus</i> , 3, <i>v. dep.</i> <i>rise up</i> , <i>use</i>

ac, a form of atque  
 accēdo, -essi, -essum, 3, approach  
 accīdo, -īdi (no sup.) 3, n. v. to  
 happen (of ill fortune) [take  
 accipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, receive,  
 accumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, re-  
 cline (at dinner)  
 accurro, -cūcurri & -curri, -cursum,  
 3, run up, or towards  
 accūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, accuse (g.  
 gen. of the charge)  
 ācer, -cris, -cre, keen, sharp, active  
 ācerbus, -a, -um, bitter, painful  
 Āchillēs, -is, m. Achilles  
 ācies, -iēi, f. line (of battle)  
 ācūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, I sharpen  
 ācus, -ūs, f. needle  
 ācūtus, -a, -um, sharp  
 ād, prep. (g. acc.) to, at, near,  
 towards, for (185, 186).  
 ādāmāntīnus, -a, -um, adamantine  
 ādēo, adv. so, to such an extent  
 ādēo, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4, go to, come  
 to, visit, consult (g. acc.)  
 ādeptus, see ādīpiscor  
 ādhībēo, -ui, -itum, 2, apply  
 ādhūc, adv. as yet  
 ādīpiscor, -eptus, 3, acquire, obtain  
 adjūmentum, -i, n. assistance  
 adjūvo, -iūvi, -jūtum, 1, assist  
 admīror, -ātus, 1, wonder at, admire  
 admitto, -misi, -misum, 3, to ad-  
 mit; admisit in se (acc.) scelus,  
 he gave crime entrance into him-  
 self, i.e. committed a crime  
 admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2, warn; re-  
 mind, (eum eius rei)  
 ādōlescens, see ādūlescens  
 adsum, affui, ādesse, I am present,  
 stand by, side with  
 ādulātio, -iōnis, f. flattery  
 ādulātor, -ōris, m. flatterer  
 ādūlescens, -ntis, m. young man  
 advēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, arrive  
 adventus, -ūs, m. arrival  
 adversus, -a, -um, adverse; res  
 adversae, adversity

adversūs or -um, prep. (g. acc.) to-  
 wards, against  
 aedēs, -is, f. sing. temple; pl. house  
 aedificiū, -ii, n. building  
 aedifico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, build  
 Aedui, -ōrum, m. pl. the Aedui, a  
 Gallic tribe  
 aeger, -gra, -grum, sick; aegrē  
 iēro hoc, I bear this ill, i.e. I  
 resent this  
 Aegyptus, -i, f. Egypt [just  
 aequus, -a, -um, adj. level, even,  
 āēr, āēris, m. the air  
 aes, aeris, n. brass, money; aes  
 āliēnum, debt  
 aestas, -ātis, f. summer  
 aestimo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I value;  
 with magni, plūris, &c. (283)  
 aetas, -ātis, f. age, time of life  
 aeternus, -a, -um, adj. eternal  
 aether, -ēris, m. the upper air,  
 heaven  
 affēro, attūli, allātum, afferrē, I  
 bring to, cause; (impers.) allatum  
 est, word was brought  
 afficio, -fēcī, fectum, 3, treat; aff.  
 te hōnōre, voluptāte, supplicio,  
 mētū, I treat you with honour,  
 pleasure, &c., i.e. I honour you,  
 cause you pleasure, visit you with  
 punishment, &c.  
 affirmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, assert  
 affligo, -ixi, -ictum, 3, I cast down,  
 prostrate  
 Africa, -ae, f. Africa  
 āger, -gri, m. field, lands  
 agger, -ēris, m. a mound  
 agnosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, recognize  
 āgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3, drive, lead,  
 act, do; id āgo ut, I am doing  
 my best to; grātiās āgēre, to re-  
 turn thanks; causam a., plead  
 a cause; vītā a., lead a life;  
 nihil a., do nothing; actum est  
 de nobis, it is all over with us;  
 hōc āgitur, this is being done, i.e.  
 this is the point, or question

agricōla, -ae, *m.* husbandman  
 aio, *v. def. say*, see p. 215; *ut aiunt*,  
*as they say*, i.e. *as the proverb*  
*goes*

ala, -ae, *f.* wing

Albānus, -a, -um, *Alban*

albus, -a, -um, *white*

Alcibiādes, -is, *m.* Alcibiades

Ālexander, -dri, *m.* Alexander (the  
 Great)

ālia, *adv.* at one time, at another

ālibi, *adv.* at one place, at another  
 place; alii *a. stant*, some stand  
 in one place, others in another

aliēnus, -a, -um, *another's*; āliēna  
 sūis antēpōnit, *he places the in-*  
*terests of others above his own*;  
 aes āliēnum, *debt*; in aerē āliēno  
 esse, *to be in debt*

ālio, *adv.* to one place, to another  
 āliquando, *adv.* sometimes, at some  
 time or other

āliquis, -quae, -quid, *pron.* some one,  
 something, *decl.* like quis

āliquo, *adv.* somewhither; āliquo  
 terrarum, (*part. gen.*) to some  
 place in the world

āliter, *adv.* otherwise, differently

ālius, -a, -ud, *irr. adj.* one of any  
 number, one another. See Par. 86

allātum, *see* affero

allīcio, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *allure*

Allōbrōges, -um, *m.* the Allobroges

allōquor, -lōcūtus, 3, *dep. speak to*,  
*accost* (*g. acc.*)

almus, -a, -um, *loving*

ālo, ālūi, āltum, 3, *nourish, rear*

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.* the Alps

alter, -tēra, -tērum, (*gen. -erius*,  
*dat. -eri*), one of two, second, the  
 other; unus et *a.* one or two;

vicēsīmus *a.*, twenty-first

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

āmābilis, -e, *adj.* lovely [Par. 288]

āmans, -ntis, *adj.* loving, (*g. gen.*)

āmārus, -a, -um, *bitter*

ambo, -ae, -o, *both*. See Par. 77

ambūlo, -āvi, -ātum, *I walk*

āmens, -ntis, *senseless, mad*

amīcio, -īci or -īxi, -ictum, 4,  
*cover, clothe*

āmīcīlia, -ae, *f.* friendship

āmīcus, -i, *m.* friend

āmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *love*

āmor, -ōris, *m.* love

āmīto, -mīsi, -misum, 3, *lose*

amnis, -is, *m.* river

ān, or (*in dep. quest.*, see Par. 171);

(also in *direct quest.*, an alterna-  
 tive being understood), An nū-  
 prōdēs? i.e. (you will be faith-  
 ful, will you not?) Or will you  
 actually betray us? (171, 302)

Angli, -ōrum, *m. pl.* Englishmen

anguis, -is, *m.* snake

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.* narrow

ānimadverto, -i, -sum, 3, *observe*

ānimāl, -ālis, *n.* animal

ānimus, -i, *m.* mind, soul, courage

annōn, *see* Par. 172

annus, -i, *m.* year [vestigate

anquiro, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, 3, *in-*  
*answer*, -sēris, *m.* goose

antē, *prep. (g. acc.) before*, (183);

*adv.* paucis ante annis, *a few*  
*years before*; N.B.—distinguish

the *prep.* from the *conj.* ante...  
 quam, or antequam; antea, *adv.*

before those things, beforehand

antēpōno, -pōsui, -pōsītum, 3,

prefer (*g. acc. and dat.*) (192)

antēquam, *conj.* before, until

Anthrōpophāgi, -ōrum, *m. pl.* man-  
 eaters, cannibals

antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient*

ānūlus (not annūlus), -i, *m.* ring

ānūs, -ūs, *f.* old woman

aper, -pri, *m.* wild boar

āpērio, āpērii, āpertum, 4, *open*

āpertus, -a, -um, *open, clear*

Āpollo, -īnis, *m.* Apollo

appollo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *call*

aprius, -a, -um, *sunny*

āpūd, *prep. g. acc.* See Par. 183

aptus, -a, -um, *fit*  
 aqua, -ae, *f. water*  
 aquila, -ae, *f. an eagle*  
 arbiter, -tri, *m. umpire*  
 arbitor, -atus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *consider, judge*  
 arbor, -oris, *f. tree*  
 Archimédēs, -is, *m. Archimedes*  
 arcī, *see arx*  
 arcus, -ūs, *m. bow*  
 ardēo, arsi, -sum, 2, *v. intr., I burn, am on fire*  
 arduus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, steep, difficult*  
 argenteus, -a, -um, *silver*  
 argentum, -i, *n. silver; money*  
 Ariovistus, -i, *m. Ariovistus*  
 arma, -rum, *n. pl. arms*  
 Armēnia, -ae, *f. Armenia*  
 armentum, -i, *n. herd*  
 armo, -avi, -atum, 1, *arm, equip*  
 arō, -avi, -atum, 1, *plough*  
 Arpinum, -i, *n. Arpinum, the birth-place of Cicero*  
 ars, artis, *f. art, handicraft*  
 arvum, -i, *n. corn-field*  
 arx, arcis, *f. citadel*  
 as, assis, *m. the smallest Roman coin; it may be translated a farthing (used in the genit. of indef. price; see Eo. LXXX.)*  
 Asia, -ae, *f. Asia (mostly Ἀ)*  
 assinus, -i, *m. ass*  
 asper, -era, -erum, *rough, rugged*  
 aspernor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. reject, despise*  
 aspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look at*  
 assequor, -secutus, 3, *attain*  
 at, *conj. but (more abrupt than sed)*  
 ater, atra, atrum, *black, gloomy*  
 Athēnae, -arum, *f. pl. Athens*  
 Athēniēnsis, -o, *Athenian*  
 atque (or ac, but not before vowels), *conj. and further, and; often used to couple words of similar meaning, e.g. socii atque amici, honestissimus atque ornâtissimus*

atrox, -ocis, *stern, gloomy*  
 auctor, -oris, *m. adviser, author;*  
 Tullio auctore, *at the advice of Tullius (197)*  
 auctoritās, -ātis, *f. authority*  
 auctumnus, -i, *m. autumn*  
 audacter, *adv. boldly, daringly*  
 audāx, -ācis, *bold*  
 audēo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, *to dare, venture*  
 audio, -ivi, -itum, 4, *hear*  
 auditus, -us, *m. hearing*  
 aufero, abstuli, ablātum auferre, *I carry away, take away*  
 augeo, auxi, auctum, 2, *augment*  
 Augustus, -i, *m. Augustus, the first emperor of Rome*  
 aureus, -a, -um, *golden*  
 auriga, -ae, *m. charioteer*  
 auris, -is, *f. an ear*  
 aurum, -i, *n. gold*  
 ausus, *see audeo*  
 Auster, -tri, *m. South wind [173]*  
 aut...aut, *cither...or else (157a, autem, conj. but, in the second place (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs); see quidem (67)*  
 auxilium, -i, *n. help, aid*  
 avārus, -a, -um, *avaricious, greedy*  
 avidus, -a, -um, *greedy*  
 avis, -is, *f. bird*  
 avus, -i, *m. a grandfather*  
 Bābylōn, -ōnis, *f. Babylon*  
 balaena, -ae, *f. a whale*  
 Balbus, -i, *m. Balbus*  
 barbarus, -a, -um, *barbarian*  
 beatē, *adv. happily*  
 beātus, -a -um, *adj. happy*  
 Belga, -ae, *m. a Belgian*  
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj. warlike*  
 bello, -avi, -atum, 1, *I wage war*  
 bellum, -i, *n. war*  
 belūa, -ae, *f. a great beast*  
 bene, *adv. well*  
 beneficiū, -ii, *n. benefit*

bēnēficus, -a, -um, *beneficent*  
 bēnēvolentia, -ae, *f. benevolence*  
 bēnēvōlus, -a, -um, *well-wishing,*  
*benevolent. See Par. 68a*

bēnignē, *adv. kindly*

bēnignus, -a, -um, *kind*

bestia, -ae, *f. a beast; damnari ad*  
*bestias, to be condemned to be ex-*  
*posed to the beasts (in the amphi-*  
*theatre)*

bībo, bībi, bībītum, 3, *I drink*

Bībūlus, -i, *m. Bibulus*

bīdūm, -i, *n. two days; bīdūi*  
*iter, two days' journey*

biennium, -i, *n. two years*

bini, -a, -a, *two apiece (314)*

bis, *adv. twice*

blandior, -ītus, with *dat. 4, v. dep.*

*I flatter, win upon*

bōna, -ōrum, *n. pl. goods, blessings*

bōnus, -a, -um, *adj. good [311]*

bōs, bōvis, *c. ox, cow, see Par.*

bracchium, -i, *n. arm*

brēvis, -e, *short, brief*

Brītanīa, -ae, *f. Britain*

Brītanūs, -i, *m. a Briton*

Brūtus, -i, *m. Brutus*

būbus, *see būs*

Cādāvēr, -ēris, *n. corpse*

cūdo, cūcīdi, cūsum, 3, *I fall; N.B.*

*distinguish this from cēcīdi*

caecus, -a, -um, *adj. blind*

caedēs, -is, *f. slaughter*

caedo, cecīdī, caesum, 3, *strike, cut*  
*down, slay; N.B. distinguish*  
*this from cēcīdi*

caelestis, -e, *celestial*

caelicōlac, -ārum, *m. pl. lit. heaven-*  
*dwellers, i.e. gods*

caelum, -i, *n. heaven*

Caesar, -āris, *m. Caesar*

cālāmītas, -ātis, *f. calamity*

calcār, -āris, *n. spur*

cālix, -īcis, *m. cup*

cālor, ōris, *m. heat*

Cāmillus, -i, *m. Camillus*

Campānīa, -ae, *f. Campania*

campus, -i, *m. plain*

cancer, -crī, *m. crab*

cānis, -is, *c. dog*

Cannae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cannae, a*  
*village where Hannibal defeated*  
*the Romans*

cāno, cēcīni, cantum, 3, *sing; tūbā*  
*cēcīnit, the trumpet sounded*

canto, -āvi, -atum, 1, *I sing*

cantus, -ūs, *m. song*

cāper, -pri, *m. goat*

cāpillus, -i, *m. hair (pl. once in*  
*Cicero, but in poetry often)*

cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3, *take [ire*

*captivus (or captus) -a, -um, capt-*

*Cāpua, -ae, f. Capua, the most*  
*luxurious city in Italy*

cāpūt, -ītis, *n. head; gentis cāput,*  
*the capital city of the nation;*

cāpīte multo, *I punish with*

*death; cāpītis damno, I con-*

*demn to death (Ex. LXXX)*

carcer, -ēris, *m. prison*

cardo, -īnis, *m. hinge*

cāreo, -ui, 2, *I am without (g. abl.);*

*facīle c. vīno, I easily do with-*  
*out wine*

carmēn, -īnis, *n. song*

cāro, carnis, *f. flesh [ginian*

*Carthāgīnēnsis, -e, adj. Cartha-*

*Carthāgo, -īnis, f. Carthage*

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*

cāsa, -ae *f. cottage*

cūsēus, -i, *m. cheese*

castīgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *chastise*  
*punish*

castrā, -ōrum, *n. pl. camp*

cāsus, -ūs, *m. chance, accident;*

*diversis cāsibus, with varied for-*  
*tures*

cātena, -ae, *f. chain*

Cātilīna, -ae, *m. Catiline*

Cāto, -ōnis, *m. Cato*

causa, -ae, *f. cause; audīendi*

*causā, for the sake of hearing;*

*causam ēgit, he pleaded a cause*

cāvēo, cāvi, cautum, 2, *beware, beware of (g. acc.)*; cāvē nē fūciās, *take care not to do*; cāvēbātur, *precautions were taken*  
 cēcidi, *see cūdo and caedo*  
 cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *yield*; c. tibi, *I yield to you*; c. hōiē or ex āciē, *I retire from the battle*  
 cēlor, -ēris, -ēro, *swift*; cēlēriter, *adv. swiftly* (61)  
 cēlēritas, -tātis, *f. speed*  
 cēlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *conceal, (g. two acc.)*. *See Par. 312*  
 celsus, -a, -um, *adj. lofty, tall*  
 cēna, -ae, *f. dinner*; cēno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dine (perf. also cēnātus sum)*; cenātus, *having dined*  
 centum, *see Par. 81*  
 centūria, -ae, *f. a (military) century* (*see Ex. XXVII., sent. 8*)  
 centūriō, -iōnis, *m. centurion (the officer of a century)*  
 cērāsūm, -i, *n. cherry*  
 cērāsus, -i, *f. the cherry-tree*  
 cērobrum, -i, *n. brain*  
 Cērēs, Cērēris, *f. Ceres*  
 certāmen, -inis, *n. contest, strife*; in-certāmen hōnōris vērērunt, *they entered into a competition for distinction*  
 cerno, 3, *I see, discern*  
 certus, -a, -um, *adj. certain*; certōrem tē feci, *I informed you (foll. by Gen., or Object Infinitive)*; *fixed*, certum ōpus, *a fixed task*  
 cervus, -i, *m. stag*  
 [cēter], -ēra, -ērum, *adj. the rest, the rest of (see Eng. Latin Vocab., of)*; pl. cēteri, *the others*  
 cibus, -i, *m. food*  
 Cicerō, -ōnis, *m. Cicero*  
 cinis, cinēris, *m. ashes*  
 cingo, -nxi, -notum, 3, *I surround*  
 circā, circum, *prep. (g. acc.) around*  
 circōter, *prep. with acc. about*  
 circumdo, -dāre, -dēdi, dātum, 1,

(1) *to put round (acc. and dat.)*;  
 (2) *to surround (acc. and abl.)*  
 circūspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *look round*  
 circumsto, -stēti, -stāre, *stand round*; (part. as noun) circumstantes, -ium, *by-standers* [of  
 cis, citrā, *prep. (g. acc.) on this side*  
 Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *on this side of the Alps, Cisalpine*  
 cithāra, -ae, *f. lute* [quickly  
 cito, *adv. quickly*; citius, *more*  
 cīvilis, -e, *adj. belonging to a citizen, civil*  
 cīvis, -is, *m. citizen*  
 cīvitas, -tātis, *f. state, citizenship*; dōnant eum cīvitatē, *they present him with the citizenship*  
 clādēs, -is, *f. slaughter*  
 clam, *adv. secretly*; *prep. (g. abl.) without the knowledge of*  
 clāmo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry out, shout*  
 clāmor, -ōris, *m. clamour, shout*  
 claudo, -si, -sum, 3, *shut*  
 clārus, -a, -um, *clear, renowned*  
 classis, -is, *f. a fleet*  
 clēmenter, *adv. gently, mercifully*  
 coactus, *see cūgo*  
 coelestis, *see caelestis*  
 coelum, *see caelum*  
 coena, *see cēna*  
 coeno, *see cēno*  
 cūō, -i-vi or -iī, itum, 4, *join together (v. intrans.)*  
 cōorcō, -iī, -itum, 2, *restrain*  
 cūgito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think, meditate*  
 cognosco, -nōvi, -nītum, 3, *learn, ascertain*  
 cūgo, cōēgi, cūactum, 3 *compel*  
 cōhōrs, -rtis, *f. cohort, a tenth part of the legion*  
 cōhortor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. encourage*  
 colligo, -ēgi, -ectum, 3, *collect*

contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) *contented* (278)  
 continēo, -ūi, -entum, 2, *I hold together*  
 contingo, -tīgi, 3, *be fall*; contigit mīhi, *it was my good luck*  
 continūo, *adv. forthwith*; *N.B. not continually*  
 contio, -iōnis, *f. speech, harangue*  
 contrā, *prep. (g. acc.) against*  
 contrāho, -axi, -actum, 3, *draw together*  
 contrārius, a, -um, *contrary* (189)  
 contūmēlia, -ae, *f. an insult*  
 convalesco, -vālūi, 3, *recover from illness*  
 convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I assemble*  
 converto, -verti, -versum, 3, *turn round*; conversus, *being turned i.e. turning (himself)*  
 conviciūm, -i, *n. reviling, abuse*  
 convoco, -āvi, -atum, 1, *call together*  
 cōpia, -ae, *f. plenty*; cōpiaē, -ārum, *f. pl. forces*  
 cōr, cordis, *n. the heart*  
 cōram, *prep. (g. abl.) in presence of*  
 Cōrinthus, -i, *f. Corinth*  
 Cornēlia, -ae, *f. Cornelia*  
 cornū, -ūs, *n. a horn*  
 cōrōna, -ae, *f. a crown*  
 corpus, -ōris, *n. body*  
 corrigo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *correct*  
 corripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away*; morbo correptus est, *he was carried off by disease*  
 cottidie, *see quotidiē*  
 crās, *adv. to-morrow*  
 Crassus, -i, *m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero*  
 creātor, -ōris, *m. creator* [peated  
 creber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, re-*  
 credibilis, -e, *adj. credible* [dat.)  
 crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *believe (g.*  
 crēo, -āvi, -atum, 1, *I create, make*  
 Crēta, -ae, *f. Crete*

crīmen, -īnis, *n. charge, accusation*  
 crīnis, -is, *m. hair*  
 cruciātus, -ūs, *m. torture*  
 crudēlis, -e, *cruel*  
 crudēlitas, -ātis, *f. cruelty*  
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*  
 culpa, -ae, *f. blame, fault*; *see extrā*  
 culpo, -āvi, -atum, 1, *blame*  
 culter, -tri, *m. knife*  
 cum, *prep. (g. abl.) with*  
 cum, (*sometimes wrongly spelt quum*) *conj. when*, (Par. 151) *since*; cum . . . tum *not only . . . but also*; *N.B. — cum is never interrogative: see quando*  
 Cūmae, -ārum, *f. pl. Cumæ, (a city)*  
 cunctor, -atus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*  
 cunctus, -a, -um, *adj. all (together)*  
 cūpiditas, -ātis, *f. desire, passion*  
 cūpidus, -a, -um, *fond of (g. gen.)*  
 cūpio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 3, *desire*  
 cūr, *adv. why?* (*also conj. in dep. sent.*); nōn est cūr timēas, *there is not (any reason) why you should fear*  
 cūra, -ae, *f. care*  
 cūro, -āvi, -atum, 1, *take care*; cūrā ut, or nē, ēas *take care to, or not to, go*  
 curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3, *run*  
 currus, -ūs, *m. chariot*  
 cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*  
 custodio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *guard*  
 custos, custodis, *m. a guardian*  
 Cyprus, -i, *f. Cyprus*

Damno, -āvi, -atum, 1, *condemn*  
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*  
 dē, *prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning*  
 dea, -ae, *f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. deabus)* *see Par. 311*  
 debēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *owe*; debui dāre, *I ought to have given* (223)  
 debilis, -ē, *adj. feeble*  
 decem, *see Par. 81*

contentus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*) *contented* (278)  
 continēo, -ūi, -entum, 2, *I hold together*  
 contingo, -tīgi, 3, *befall*; contigit mihi, *it was my good luck*  
 continūo, *adv. forthwith*; *N.B. not continually*  
 contio, -iōnis, *f. speech, harangue*  
 contrā, *prep. (g. acc.) against*  
 contrāhio, -axi, -actum, 3, *draw together*  
 contrārius, a, -um, *contrary* (189)  
 contumēlia, -ae, *f. an insult*  
 invālesco, -vālūi, 3, *recover from illness*  
 convēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I assemble*  
 convertō, -verti, -versum, 3, *turn round*; conversus, *being turned i.e. turning (himself)*  
 conviciū, -i, *n. reviling, abuse*  
 convoco, -avi, -atum, 1, *call together*  
 cūpia, -ae, *f. plenty*; cūpiae, -arum, *f. pl. forces*  
 cōr, cordis, *n. the heart*  
 cōram, *prep. (g. abl.) in presence of*  
 Cōrīnthius, -i, *f. Corinth*  
 Cornēlia, -ae, *f. Cornelia*  
 cornū, -ūs, *n. a horn*  
 cōrūna, -ae, *f. a crown*  
 corpus, -ōris, *n. body*  
 corrigo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *correct*  
 corripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away*; morbo correptus est, *he was carried off by disease*  
 cottidie, *see quotidiē*  
 crās, *adv. to-morrow*  
 Crassus, -i, *m. Crassus, a miserly millionaire of the times of Cicero*  
 creātor, -ōris, *m. creator* [*peated*]  
 creber, -bra, -brum, *frequent*, *re-*  
 credibilis, -e, *adj. credible* [*dat.*]  
 crēdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *believe (g. dat.)*  
 crēo, -avi, -atum, 1, *I create, make*  
 Crēta, -ae, *f. Crete*

crimen, -inis, *n. charge, accusation*  
 crinis, -is, *m. hair*  
 cruciātus, -ūs, *m. torture*  
 crudēlis, -e, *cruel*  
 crudēlitas, -ātis, *f. cruelty*  
 crūs, crūris, *n. leg*  
 culpa, -ae, *f. blame, fault*; *see extra*  
 culpo, -avi, -atum, 1, *blame*  
 culter, -tri, *m. knife*  
 cum, *prep. (g. abl.) with*  
 cum, (*sometimes wrongly spelled quum*) *conj. when*, (Par. 161) *since*; cum . . . tum *not only . . . but also*; *N.B. — cum is never interrogative: see quando*  
 Cūmae, -arum, *f. pl. Cumae, (a city)*  
 cunctor, -atus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*  
 cunctus, -a, -um, *adj. all (together)*  
 cūpiditas, -ātis, *f. desire, passion*  
 cūpidus, -a, -um, *fond of (g. gen.)*  
 cūpio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 3, *desire*  
 cūr, *adv. why?* (*also conj. in dep. sent.*); nōn est cūr timēas, *there is not (any reason) why you should fear*  
 cūra, -ae, *f. care*  
 cūro, -avi, -atum, 1, *take care*; cūrā ut, or nē, cās *take care to, or not to, go*  
 curro, cūcurre, cursum, 3, *run*  
 currus, -ūs, *m. chariot*  
 cursus, -ūs, *m. running, course*  
 custōdio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *guard*  
 custos, custōdis, *m. a guardian*  
 Cyprus, -i, *f. Cyprus*  
 Damno, -avi, -atum, 1, *condemn*  
 Dārius, -i, *m. Darius*  
 dē, *prep. (g. abl.) down from, from, concerning*  
 dēa, -ae, *f. a goddess (dat. and abl. pl. dēabus)* *see Par. 311*  
 debēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *owe*; debui dāre, *I ought to have given* (223)  
 debilis, -e, *adj. feeble*  
 dēcem, *see Par. 81*



Dēcember, -bris, -bre, *of December.*

*See Appendix VI., p. 229*

dēcēmvir, -virī, *m. decemvir, one of ten commissioners*

dēcēt, dēcūit, dēcērē, 2, *impers. v. it becomes, befits, Par. 220.*

dēcīmus, -a, -um, *Par. 81.*

dēcīpiō, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *I deceive*

dēcōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *honour, distinguish*

dēcus, -ōris, *n. ornament, honour, glory; Horace addresses his patron as "my guardian and glory (dēcus)"*

dēdēcēt, dēcūit, dēcērē, 2, *impers. v. it misbecomes*

dēdēcus, -ōris, *n. disgrace, baseness*

dēfendo, -dī, -sum, 3, *defend*

dēfensor, -ōris, *a defender*

dēflāgro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *to be burnt down*

dēfluō, -fluxi, 3, *flow down*

dēformis, -e, *ugly*

dējīcio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3, *cast down*

dēlecto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *delight*

dēlectus, -ūs, *m. a levy* [out

dēlēō, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *destroy, blot*

dēlibēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *deliberate*

dēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, *choose*

Dēlōs, -ī, *f. the isle of Delos, the seat of an oracle of Apollo*

Delphī, -ōrum, *m. pl. Delphi, the city containing the principal oracle of Apollo*

dēmo, dempsī, demptum, 3, *subtract*

Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, *m. Demosthenes*

dēmum, *adv. indeed; id dēmum, that, and nothing else; tum dēmum, then, and not till then*

dēnārius, -īi, *m. a denarius, a Roman coin worth about 9d.*

dēnīquē (*adv.*) *finally, in short*

densus, -a, -um, *dense, close*

dens, -ntis, *m. tooth*

dēpello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, *drive down*

dēplūro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lament over, deplore*

dēposco, -poposci, 3, *demand*

dērīsūs, -ūs, *m. laughing-stock*

descendo, -scendi, -scensum, 3, *come, or go, down*

deseisco, -scivi, -scitum, 3, *revolt*

dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3, *I abandon*

dēsīdēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *long for (what is absent)*

dēsūm, -fui, -esse, (*dat.*) *be wanting to, fall short, fail*

dētēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *reveal, disclose*

dētērrēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, *frighten*

dētēxo, -texīi, -textum, 3, *finish weaving, finish*

dētīneo, -ui, 2, *detain, keep back*

dētrāho, -traxi, -tractum, *take away, withdraw*

Dēus, -ī, *m. God*

dēvinco, -vīci, -victum, 3, *subdue*

dextra, -ae, *f. right hand*

Diāna, -ae, *f. Diana*

dīco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *say, speak; dīcitur Tullius, &c., it is said that Tullius, &c. (Par 177)*

dīctīto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *say often*

dictum, -i, *a saying*

dīes, -ēī, *m. (f. in poets) day*

diffīcīlis, -e, *difficult (60)* [trust

diffīdo, -fīsus sum, 3, (*g. dat.*) *dis-*

diffīndo, -fīdi, -fīssum, 3, *cleave asunder*

dīgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *arrange*

dīgītus, -ī, *m. finger* [authority

dīgītās, -ātis, *f. dignity, worth,*

dīgītus, -a, -um, *worthy (g. abl.)*

dīlābor, -lapsus, 3, *slip away in different directions*

dīlīgēns, -ntis, *adj. diligent, careful*

dīlīgēnter, *adv. carefully*

dīlīgēntia, -ae, *f. diligence*

dīlīgēntissimē, *adv. most carefully*

dīlīgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, *love, esteem*

dīmīco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight (a battle)*

dīmādiūm, -i, *n. calf*  
 dimitto, -isi, -issum, 3, *I let go, dismiss*  
 Dīōnysius, -ii, *m. Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse*  
 diripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, *plunder*  
 discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, *depart*  
 disciplīna, -ae, *f. discipline*  
 discipulus, -i, *m. pupil*  
 disco, didici, 3, *learn*  
 discordia, -ae, *f. discord*  
 displicēo, -ui, -itum, (*g. dat.*) 2, *displease*  
 dispūto, -avi, -atum, 1, *discuss*  
 dispūtatio, -ōnis, *f. discussion*  
 dissimilis, -e, *adj. unlike; g. gen. or dat. (see Par. 66, 60)*  
 distrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw asunder*  
 distribuo, -ui, -utum, 3, *distribute*  
 diū, *adv. long, for a long time*  
 diūtius, *adv. longer*  
 diversus, -a, -um, *diverse, different*  
 divēs, -itis, *rich* [*parate*  
 divīdo, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3, *divide, se-*  
 divīnus, -a, -um, *divine*  
 divitiae, -arum, *f. pl. riches*  
 do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *give; do litteras, I date a letter*  
 docēo, -ui, -ctum, 2, *I teach (g. two acc.) See Par. 312*  
 doctē, *adv. learnedly, skilfully*  
 doctrīna, -ae, *f. learning*  
 doctus, -a, -um, *learned*  
 dōlēo, -ui, 2, *grieve*  
 dōlor, -ōris, *m. pain, grief*  
 dōlus, -i, *m. craft, treachery; per dolum, treacherously*  
 dōmesticus, -a, -um, *domestic*  
 dōmiciliūm, -ii, *n. an abode*  
 dōmīna, -ae, *f. mistress*  
 dōminātus, -ūs, *m. rule, sovereignty*  
 dōminus, -i, *m. master, owner*  
 dōmo, -ui, -itum, 1, *tame, subdue*  
 dōmus, -i, *f. house, home; dōmi, at home; dōmum, homeward, Pars. 249, 265*

dōno, -avi, -ātum, 1, *present, g. acc. and dat. like do; or else acc. and abl.; dōno eūm ēquo, I present him with a horse*  
 dōnum, -i, *n. gift*  
 dormio, -ivi or -i, -itum, 4, *sleep*  
 dorsum, -i, *n. back*  
 dubito, -avi, -atum, 1, *doubt*  
 dubius, -a, -um, *adj. doubtful; nōn dubium est quīn, it is not doubtful that, i.e., there is no doubt that (foll. by Subjunct.)*  
 dūcenti, -ae, -a, *see Par. 81 [(237)*  
 dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *lead, marry*  
 dulcis, -e, *sweet, delightful*  
 dum, *conj. (Par. 272) while*  
 dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*  
 dux, dūcis, *c. leader, general*

Ē, *ex, prep. (g. abl.) out of, from; ex improbo, fīs improbiōr, from bad, you are becoming worse*  
 ēbur, ēbūris, *n. ivory*  
 eccē, *interject. lo! behold!*  
 ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3, *eat*  
 ēdūco, -avi, -atum, 1, *educate*  
 ēdūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead out*  
 effēro, extūli, elātum, efferrē, 3, *irr. v. I carry out*  
 efflōresco, -flōrui, 3, *blossom*  
 effōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3, *scoop out, strike out*  
 effūgio, -fūgi, 3, *escape (g. acc.)*  
 ēgēo, -ui, 2, *to need (g. abl.)*  
 ēgo, *see Par. 90*  
 ēgrēgius, -a, -um, *adj. excellent, eminent*  
 eīusmōdi, *see mōdus*  
 ējicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3, *cast out*  
 ēlēgans, -antis, *adj. elegant, exquisite*  
 ēlēgantia, -ae, *f. tastefulness*  
 ēlēphas, ēlēphantis, *m. (also ēlēphantus, -i, m.) elephant*  
 ēlicio, -licui, -licitum, 3, *draw forth*  
 ēlīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, *choose*  
 ēlōquens, -entis, *adj. eloquent*

eloquentia, -ae, *f.* eloquence  
 emendo, -avi, -atum, 1, *improve*  
 emigro, -avi, -atum, 1, *I depart from*  
 eminus, *at a distance [military term opp. to cominus (cum, manus), hand to hand]*  
 emo, -emi, emptum, 3, *I buy*  
 enarro, -avi, -atum, 1, *I relate*  
 enim, *conj. for (differs from nam in never standing first in a clause)*  
 enitor, -isus or ixus, 3, *v. dep. strive hard*  
 ensis, -is, *m.* sword  
 eo, *adv. abl. of is, by so much; (with compar.) eo melius (by) so much the better; in eo (166)*  
 eo, -ivi, -itum, ire, *go, Par. 241*  
 epistola, -ae, *f.* letter, epistle (*perhaps better, epistula*)  
 Epaminondas, -ae, *m.* Epaminondas, a Theban patriot and general  
 Ephesus, -i, *f.* Ephesus  
 eques, -itis, *m.* horse soldier  
 equester, -tris, -e, *equestrian*  
 equidem (Par. 139) *for my part*  
 equito, -avi, -atum, 1, *ride*  
 equitatus, -us, *m.* cavalry  
 equus, -i, *m.* a horse  
 erga, *prep. (g. acc.) towards (only of the feelings) Par. 183*  
 eripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3, *snatch away (g. acc. and dat., 192)*  
 erro, -avi, -atum, 1, *err, wander*  
 error, -oris, *m.* error, fault  
 erudio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *train up, educate*  
 eruditus, -a, -um, *adj. trained, educated*  
 erumpo, -rupi, -ruptum, 3, *burst, rush forth*  
 et, *conj. and; et...et, both...and; even, (see Par. 12, 32, 153)*  
 etiam, *conj. also, even (141); (mostly before the word it modifies); non solum...sed etiam, not only ...but also*

Euphrates, -is, *m.* the Euphrates  
 Euripides, -is, *m.* Euripides  
 Europa, -ae, *f.* Europe  
 evado, -vasi, -vasum, *escape*  
 evenio, -veni, -ventum, 4, *to return*  
 eventus, -us, *m.*, *event, result*  
 ex or e, *prep. with abl. out of, from; ex itinere, on a journey*  
 exalbescio, -albei, 3, *turn pale*  
 exaudio, -ivi, -itum, 4, *catch the sound of (g. acc.)*  
 excudo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I depart from*  
 exclamo, -avi, -atum, 1, *I cry out*  
 exculo, -coli, -cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully; agri exculi frumento, lit. fields richly cultivated with corn, i.e. fields with rich corn-crops*  
 excusatio, -tionis, *f.*, *excuse*  
 excuso, -avi, -atum, 1, *to excuse*  
 excutio, -cussi, -cussum, 3, *shake off*  
 exemplum, -i, *n.* example  
 exedo, -edi, -esum, 3, *eat out, gnaw away; exesus pumex, weather-hollowed rock*  
 exeo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, *I go out*  
 exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2, *exercise*  
 exercitus, -us, *m.* army  
 exhaurio, -hausi, -haustum, 4, *drain off, drink off*  
 exiguus, -a, -um, *scanty, little*  
 exilium, *see exsilium*  
 exitium, -ii, *n.* destruction  
 exordior, -orsus, 4, (*v. dep.*), *begin a web; hence exorsa, -orum, n. pl. a beginning*  
 expecto, -avi, -atum, 1, *await*  
 expello, -puli, -pulsum, 3, *I drive out [awakened]*  
 expergiscor, expectectus, 3, *I am*  
 experientia, -ae, *f.* experience  
 experior, -pertus, 4, *dep. try, experience*

expers, -rtis, *destitute of (g. gen.)*  
 expūlo, -īvi, -itum, 3, *seek out*  
 explorātor, -ōris, *m. spy, scout*  
 explorō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *investigate*  
 expōno, -pōnī, -pōsitum, 3, *put forth, disembark*  
 expugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *take by storm* [*destroy*]  
 excindo, -scīli, -scissum, 3, *rend*  
 exsilio, -sili, -sultum, 4, *leap forth*  
 exsiliū, -i, *n. exile*  
 exstrūo, -xi, -rtum, 3, *build up*  
 extimesco, -timūi, 3, *take alarm at (acc.)*  
 extrā, *prp. (g. acc.) outside of; extrā culpam, free from blame*  
 extrahō, -traxi, -tractum, 3, *draw out*  
 extrēmus, -n, -um, *last*, Par. 69  
 exulto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *exult*  
 exūo, -ūi, -ātum, 3, *strip off*

Fāber, -bri, *m. workman, artificer*  
 Fābius, -ii, *m. Quintus Fabius Marimus, called Cunctator, because by "delaying action" he restored success to Rome in the Second Punic War*

fābūla, -ae, *f. story, fable*  
 faciēs, -ei, *f. face*  
 faciļe, *adv. easily; comp. faciļius*  
 faciļis, -e, *adj. easy* (60) [*crime*]  
 faciūus, -ōris, *n. daring deed*  
 faciō, feci, factum, faciēre, 3, *make, do; fac (ut) venias, cause that you, i.e. take care to, come; (with assis, flocci) I value* (284)  
 factum, -i, *n. deed*  
 fallāx, -ācis, *deceitful*  
 fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3, *deceive; fidem fēfelli, he broke his word; non f. opīniōnem, it did not deceive our expectation*  
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*  
 fama, -ae, *f. fame, reputation; Fāma, the goddess Fame*  
 familiāris, -e, *belonging to the*

*household; res f. one's property, estate*  
 fāmēs, -is, *f. hunger*  
 fās, *n. indecl. divine law, heaven's will; contrā jās fāsque, against human and divine law*  
 fascis, -is, *m. bundle, faggot; fascēs, the rods carried before consuls*  
 fātēor, fassus, 2, *dep. confess*  
 fātum, -i, *n. fate*  
 faux, -cis, *f. jaw*  
 fāveo, fāvi, fāutum, 2, *favour (g. dat.)*  
 febris, -is, *f. (-im or -em, -ī or -ē), fever*  
 fēliciter, *adv. luckily, prosperously*  
 fēlix, -icis, *happy, fortunate*  
 femīna, -ae, *f. a woman*  
 fēra, -ae, *f. a wild beast*  
 fērax, -ācis, *fruitful*  
 fēre, *adv. almost, commonly; nemo fēre, hardly anyone*  
 fēritas, -ātis, *f. savageness* [*peace*]  
 fērio, 4, *strike; f. pūcem, I make*  
 fēro, tūli, lātum, ferro, bear, carry, endure; fertur Gaius dixisse, it is reported that Gaius said  
 fērox, -ūcis, *adj. fierce, spirited*  
 ferrum, -i, *n. iron, sword*  
 fertīlis, -e, *fertile*  
 fērus, -a, -um, *savage, wild*  
 fessus, -a, -um, *weary*  
 fētus, -ūs, *m. offspring*  
 ficus, -ūs, *f. a fig*  
 fidēlis, -e, *adj. faithful*  
 fides, -ei, *f. faith; sorvo fidem, I keep my word*  
 fido, fisis sum, fidere, 3, (*g. dat. or abl.*) *I trust*  
 fidus, -a, -um, *adj. faithful*  
 figo, fixi, fixum, 3, *fix*  
 filia, -ae, *f. a daughter*  
 filiū, -ii, *m. a son*  
 fingo, sinxi, fictum, 3, *feign*  
 finio, -ivi, -ii, -itum, 4, *I end*  
 finis, -is, *m. end, boundary (pl. territories)*

finitimus, -a, -um, *bordering on*  
 fio, factus sum, fieri, 3, v. irr. *to*  
*become, be made* (258)

firmitas, -atis, -um, 1, *strengthen*  
 firmus, -a, -um, *adj. strong*

Flaccus, -i, m. *the surname of*  
*Quintus Horatius Flaccus, com-*  
*monly called Horace*

flagitium, -i, n. *disgraceful crime*

flo, flevi, fletum, 2, *weep*

flo, flavi, flatum, 1, *blow*

flocus, -i, m. *the down of wool*;  
 hence non flocci facio, *I do not*  
*value at a feather* (281)

florens, -ntis, *adj. flourishing*

florere, -ni, 2, *I bloom, flourish*

flor, floris, m. *flower*

fluctus, -us, m. *wave, billow*

flumen, -inis, n. *current, river*

fluo, -xi, 3, *flow* (*ful. part. act.*  
*fluxurus*)

fluvius, -ii, m. *a river*

foddo, fodi, fossum, fodere, 3, *dig*

foedo, -avi, -atum, 1, *denile*

foedus, -eris, n. *treaty*

foedus, -a, -um, *foul, shameful*

fons, -ntis, m. *fountain, source*

fore, *ful. inf. of sum* (Par. 212);

forem, foret, &c. *see sum*

foras, *adv. (motion) out of doors*;

foris, *adv. (rest) out of doors*

foris, -um, *f. pl. doors*

formido, -avi, -atum, 1, *dread*

formido, -inis, *f. terror*

fortasse, *adv. perhaps (mostly re-*  
*fers to the future, unlike fortis*  
*below)*

forte, *adv. by chance, once upon a*  
*time, never refers to the Fut., ex-*  
*cept in the phrases, si forte, nisi*  
*forte, ne forte*

fortis, -e, *brave, strong*; -tissimè,  
*adv. very bravely*; -itor, *adv.*  
*bravely*

fortuna, -ae, *f. fortune*; fortunae  
 nostrae penes te sunt, *our*  
*fortunes are in your hands*

forum, -i, n. *market-place, forum*

fossa, -ae, *f. ditch*

frango, fregi, fractum, 3, *break*

frater, -tris, m. *brother*

fraus, fraudis, *f. deceit, mischief*

frimo, -ui, itum, 3, *murmur*

frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*

frigus, -oris, n. *cold*

frons, -ndis, *f. foliage*

frons, -ntis, *f. the forehead, brow*

fructus, -us, m. *fruit, advantage*

fruges, -um, *f. pl. fruits, a crop*

fruo, fruor, fruor or fructus, 3, *dep.*  
*enjoy* (207, 256)

frumentum, -i, n. *corn (mostly*  
*harvested)*; frumentum, -orum,  
*corn (mostly in the fields)*

frustra, *adv. in vain*

frutex, -icis, m. *shrub*

fuga, -ae, *f. flight*

fugio, fugi, 3, *flee*

fugo, -avi, -atum, 1, *put to flight*

fulcio, fulsi, fultum, 4, *prop up*

fulgeo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine*

fulgur, -uris, n. *lightning (thet*  
*shines)*; in poets used for fulmen

fulmen, -inis, n. *lightning (that*  
*strikes)* [*roul*

fundo, fudi, fustum, 3, *pour, scatter*

fundus, -i, m. *farm*

funestus, -a, -um, *fatal, deadly*

fungor, functus, 3, v. dep. *I dis-*  
*charge* (207)

funiculus, -is, m. *rope*

funus, -eris, n. *a funeral*

fur, furis, m. *thief*

furo, -oris, m. *madness, rage*

Gades, -um, *f. pl. Cadiz*

Gaius, *gen. Gai, m. (less cor-*  
*rectly Cninus, Cnii) Gaius, a*  
*Roman praenomen or fore-name*

Gallia, -ae, *f. Gaul*

Gallus, -i, m. *a Gaul*

gaudeo, gavisus sum, gaudere, 2,  
*I rejoice*

gaudium, -i, n. *joy*

gēlīdus, -a, -um, *ice-cold*  
 gēlū, -ūs, *n. frost*  
 gēner, -ēri, *m. son-in-law*  
 gons, gentis, *f. nation*  
 gēnū, -ūs, *n. line*  
 gēnus, -ūs, *n. kind, race*  
 Germanū, -a, -um, *German*  
 gēro, gēsi, gētum, 3, *carry on*;  
 rem bēnē gēro, *I succeed*; bel-  
 lum gēro, *I wage war*  
 glāciē, -iē, *f. ice*  
 glādiator, -ōris, *m. gladiator*  
 glādīus, -iī, *m. a sword*  
 glans, -ndis, *f. acorn*  
 Gracchus, -i, *m. Gracchus, the name*  
*of two brothers, both of whom*  
*brought forward Agrarian laws*  
*in Rome*  
 grācilis, -e, *slender, 60*  
 Gracīa, -ae, *f. Greece* [Greek  
 Graccus, -a, -um, *adj. Grecian,*  
 grāmen, -inis, *n. grass*  
 grandis, -e, *large*  
 grānum, -i, *n. a grain*  
 grātīa, -ae, *f. favour, in grātiam*  
*rēdire, to be restored to favour*;  
*(abl. sing.) for the sake of*;  
 grātias āgere, *to return thanks*  
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing, grateful*  
 grāvis, -e, *heavy, severe*  
 grāviter, *adv. heavily, severely,*  
*seriously*; hūc g. tūli, *I was*  
*weighed at this*  
 grāvo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *weigh down*  
 grex, grēgis, *m. flock*  
 grus, grūis, *c. crane*  
 gūberno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *govern*  
 gusto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *taste*  
 guttur, -ūris, *n. throat*

Hābēo, -ūi, -ītum, 2, *have*;  
 hābēo in ānīmo, *I purpose*  
 hābitō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dwell*  
 haerēo, haesi, haesum, 2, *stick*  
*fast*; (of the voice) *falter*

Hannībal, -ālis, *m. Hannibal*  
 hāruspex, -icis, *m. soothsayer*  
 hasta, -ae, *f. spear*  
 haud, *adv. not (rarely with verbs*  
*and adj. except haud scīo ān,*  
*haud dūbium est, &c.) [land]*  
 Helvētia, -ae, *f. Helvetia (Switzer-*  
*Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. Helvetian*  
 herba, -ae, *f. herb*  
 hercle! (*an oath used as an ex-*  
*clamation) by Hercules, certainly*  
 hērī, *adv. yesterday*  
 hesternus, -a, -um, *of yesterday*  
 hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl. winter quar-*  
*ters*; hibernus, -a, -um, *adj. of*  
*winter, wintry*  
 hic, *pron. see Par. 103*; hic...ille,  
*the latter . . . the former, one . . .*  
*another*; tribus his mensibus,  
*within the next three months*  
 hic, *adv. here*  
 hiemps, hiēmīs, *f. winter*  
 hilāris, -e, *adj. cheerful*  
 hinc, *adv. hence, from this place*  
 histōria, -ae, *f. history*; Nātūrālis  
 h. the *Natural History of Pliny*  
 histriō, -iōnis, *actor*  
 hōdiē, *adv. to-day*  
 Hōmērus, -i, *m. Homer*  
 hōmo, -inis, *m. man*<sup>1</sup>  
 hōnestus, -a, -um, *honourable (this*  
*word never means "honest")*  
 hōnor, -ōris, *m. on honour, office*;  
 in hōnōre est, *it is held in honour*  
 hōra, -ae, *f. hour*  
 hordeum, -i, *n. barley*  
 Hōrātius, -iī, *Horace*  
 hortor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. exhort*  
 hortus, -i, *m. a garden*  
 hostīa, -ae, *f. a victim*  
 hostis, -is, *m. the enemy*  
 hūc, *adv. hither*; often, though not  
 perhaps with strict correctness,  
 rendered in modern English,  
 "here"

<sup>1</sup> Hōmo means a human being, and is occasionally (but very rarely) used of women: vir means a good or brave man.

*hūmānitas, -atis, f. courtesy, kindness*

*hūmānitus, adv. after the manner of men; (hence used of misfortunes) aliquid ei h. accidit, he died*

*hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. human, gentle, courteous*

*hūmīlis, -e, low, low-minded (60)*

*hūmus, -i, f. ground; hūmi, on the ground*

**I, imperative of ēo**

*ibi, adv. there*

*ictus, -ūs, m. a blow; sub ictum venire, to come within striking distance*

*igitur, conj. therefore, then; differs from itaque in not standing first in a clause (in the best authors)*

*ignārus, -a, -um, ignorant; tibi ignāro prōfui, I helped you without your being aware of it*

*ignāvū, adv. indolently*

*ignāvia, -ae, f. sloth, cowardice*

*ignāvus, -a, -um, slothful, cowardly*

*ignēus, -a, -um, adj. fiery*

*ignis, -is, m. fire, abl. igni (except in poets)*

*ignōrātiō, -ōnis, f. ignorance*

*ignosco, -nūvi, -nūtum, 3, (g. dat.) pardon*

*illāturi, see infēro*

*illē, (103) Alexander ille, the great, well-known, &c., Alexander*

*illēcēbrae, -arum, f. pl. allurements*

*illuc, adv. thither*

*imāgo, -inis, f. image, likeness*

*imbellis, -e, unwarlike*

*imber, -ris, m. (Abl. -i), shower*

*imitor, -atus, 1, v. dep. imitate*

*immemor, gen. -oris, unmindful*

*immortalis, -e, adj. immortal*

*immortalitas, -atis, f. immortality*

*impār, gen. -āris, unequal*

*impavidus, -a, -um, fearless*

*impello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3, impel*

*impendeo, (no Perf. or Sup.) 2, impend*

*impērator, -ōris, m. general*

*impēritus, -a, -um, (g. gen.) unskilful in*

*impērium, -i, n. command, empire*

*impēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, (g. dat.) give orders to; i. tibi frumentum,*

*I exact corn from you; foll. by ut (143)*

*impētus, -ūs, m. attack, onset*

*impiger, -gra, -grum, active*

*implōro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, implore*

*impūno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3, impose (a task, tribute, &c.) on, Par. 192*

*imprōbus, -a, -um, adj. dishonest, wicked, bad*

*imprūdēns, -ntis, ignorant; i. fēci, I did it ignorantly*

*imprudentia, -ae, f. ignorance, imprudence*

*in, prep. (g. acc.) into, towards; (g. abl.) in*

*inānis, -e, idle, empty [tion*

*incendium, -i, n. a fire, conflagra-*

*incendo, -di, -sum, 3, set fire to, burn*

*incertus, -a, -um, adj. uncertain*

*incipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, begin*

*incōla, -ae, m. inhabitant*

*incōlo, -ui, -ultum, 3, inhabit*

*incōlūmis, -e, safe*

*incōlūmitās, -atis, f. safety*

*incrēpo, -crēpui, -crēpitum, 1, reproach*

*incūsio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I accuse, find fault with*

*indē, adv. thence, thereupon; indē a pūritiā, even from boyhood*

*Indi, -ōrum, m. pl. Indians*

*indico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, point out*

*indignus, -a, -um, unworthy*

*indoctus, -a, -um, unlearned*

*indulgēo, -si, -tum, 2, (g. dat.) indulge*

industrius, -a, -um, *adj.* *industrious*,  
*busy*  
 inīo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *go into*,  
*enter, begin*  
 ineptē, *adv.* (*in-aptē, unsilly*), *fool-*  
*ishly, without tact*  
 ineptus, -a, -um, *silly*  
 iners, -tis, *adj.* *helpless, sluggish*  
 infāmia, -ae, *f.* *infamy*  
 infāmis, -i, *adj.* *infamous*  
 infectus, -a, -um, *unaccomplished*;  
 rē infectā, (*abl. abs.*) *the affair*  
*being unaccomplished, i.e. with*  
*nothing done* (Par. 197)  
 infelicitē, *adv.* *unluckily*; pugnā-  
 tum est i. *we have been defeated*  
 infelix, -icis, *unfortunate, unhappy*  
 infērior, -ius, *comp.* of infērus, *adj.*  
*lower, inferior*  
 infēro, intūli, illātum, inferrē, 3, *v.*  
*irr.*; bellum i. tibi, *I declare war*  
*against you*  
 infinitus, -a, -um, *adj.* *unbounded*,  
*infinite*  
 infirmitas, -atis, *f.* *weakness*  
 infirmus, -a, -um, *infirm, weak*  
 infrā, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *below*  
 ingens, -ntis, *huge, great*  
 ingēnium, -i, *n.* *disposition*  
 ingratus, -a, -um, *displeasing, un-*  
*grateful*  
 ingrēdior, -gressus sum, 3, *v.* *dep.*  
*enter*  
 inhaerēo, -haesi, -haesum, 2, *stick*  
*fast*  
 inhōnestus, -a, -um, *dishonour-*  
*able*  
 inimicitia, -ae, *f.* *enmity*  
 inimicus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile*;  
 inimicus, -i, *m.* *a private enemy*;  
*opp. to hostis, an enemy of the*  
*state*  
 initium, -i, *n.* *a beginning*  
 injicio, -jeci, -jectum, 3, *cast* (*fear,*  
*&c.*) *into, inspire*  
 injūcundus, -a, -um, *disagreeable*  
 injustē, *adv.* *unjustly*

injustus, -a, -um, *unjust*  
 innōcens, -ntis, *innocent*  
 innūmerus, -a, -um, *adj.* *innumera-*  
*ble*  
 inops, -ōpis, *destitute*  
 inquān, inquit, *see Defective Verbs,*  
*Appendix II., p. 215*  
 insānio, -īvi, -itum, 4, *I am mad*  
 insēquor, -sēcūtus, 3, *follow after,*  
*pursue*  
 insīdine, -arum, *f.* *snarcs, an am-*  
*bush*; per insīdias, *insidiously*  
 insignis, -e, *distinguished, noted*  
 insōlens, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) *unaccus-*  
*tomed to*  
 institūo, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *I appoint,*  
*institute*  
 instrūmentum, -i, *n.* *an instru-*  
*ment*  
 instrūo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *arrange,*  
*draw up*  
 insūctus, -a, -um, *untrained to* (*g.*  
*gen.*)  
 insūla, -ae, *f.* *island*  
 insum, -fui, -esse, *v. irr.* (*g. dat.*)  
*I am in*  
 intelligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3, *under-*  
*stand, hear, perceive* (*less cor-*  
*rectly intolligo*)  
 intēr, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) *between, among*;  
 inter vērāndum, *quyng, hunting*;  
 haec inter sē rēpugnant, *these*  
*things are inconsistent with one*  
*another*  
 interclūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum, 3, *I cut*  
*off*; i. hostes comunicāto, *I cut*  
*off the enemy from supplies*  
 interdum, *adv.* *sometimes*  
 intērēo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *perish*  
 intērest, -fuit, -esse, (*v. impers.*) *it*  
*makes a difference, it concerns,*  
 Par. 329  
 interficō, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *slay*  
 intērītus, -ūs, *m.* *destruction*  
 interjācēo, -jacui, 2, *lie between*  
 interrōgo, -āvī, -ūtum, 1, *ask, ques-*  
*tion*



intersum, -sūi, -esse, (*g. dat.*) *I am among, I take part in*  
 intervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *interrupt, (g. dat.) (192)*  
 intrā, *prep. (g. acc.) inside, within*  
 intro, -āvī, -ātum, 1, *enter*  
 intrōeo, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4, *go into, enter*  
 intūeor, -ītus -sum, 2, *v. dep. look upon, into*  
 Inūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3, *brana*  
 inūtilis, -e, *useless*  
 inūtiliter, *adv. uselessly, in vain*  
 invādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3, *attack*  
 invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, -ae, 4, *light on, find, find out* [*dat.*  
 invideō, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *enry, g.*  
 invīdia, -ae, *f. enry, ill-will*  
 invīdus, -a, -um, *carious*  
 invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling; (used as adj. but with adv. force) in-*  
 vitus fēci, *I did it unwillingly*  
 ipsē, *see Par. 1C5, 308*  
 ira, -ae, *f. anger*  
 irācundus, -a, -um, *angry*  
 irascor, irātus, 3, *v. dep. I am angry*  
 irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, *burst into, rush into*  
 irrūo, -rūi, 3, *rush in*  
 is, ēa, id, *see p. 46; nōn is sum qui mentiar, I am not the man to lie, 303a*  
 istē, -a, -ud, *pron. adj. that of yours; iste, that fellow*  
 istūc, *adv. thither, where you are*  
 itā, *in that way, thus, so*  
 Itālia, -ae, *f. Italy*  
 itāque, *and so, thereupon; itāque, (differing from igitur), stands first in a clause*  
 iter, itinēris, *n. journey, road, way; ex itinēre, on a journey*  
 itērum, *adv. a second time, again*  
 Jācēo, -jēi, 2, *lie (on the ground)*  
 jācio, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw*

jactātio, -iōnis, *f. boasting*  
 jacto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *boast*  
 jactūs, -ūs, *m. cast, shot, fire;*  
 intrā tēli jactum, *within shot;*  
 sūb jactu, *under fire*  
 jam, *adv. (1) already; (2) by this time; cum jam often means "just when," or "at last when"; non jam, no longer*  
 jaindūdum or jainpridem, *adv. this long while; j. cūpio, I have been this long while desiring (324)*  
 Jānuārius, -ia, -ium, *of January*  
 jūcor, -ātus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *jest*  
 Jūvis, *see Jupiter*  
 jūbeo, jussi, jussum, 2, *I order, (g. acc. and inf.) bid*  
 jucundus, -a, -um, *agreeable*  
 Jūdaea, -ae, *f. Judaea*  
 jūdex, -icis, *m. judge; mē judice, in my judgment, lit. I being a judge (Par. 197)*  
 judicium, -i, *n. judgment*  
 judico, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *judge*  
 jūgūlo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cut the throat of, butcher*  
 jūgum, -i, *n. yoke; to be "sent under the yoke" was the sign of defeat*  
 jungo, -nxi, -netum, 3, *join; ponto jungere, to bridge over*  
 jūnior, -oris, *younger*  
 Jūno, -ōnis, *f. Juno, a goddess*  
 Juppiter, Jūvis, *m. Jupiter*  
 jūro, -āvi, ātum or jurātus sum, 1, *I swear; j. in lēgem, I swear (obedience) to a law; j. in verbo eius, in accordance with his words*  
 jus, jūris, *n. right, law; jūrē, (adv. abl.) by right, rightly (182)*  
 jusjurandum, jūrisjurandi, *n. an oath*  
 jussum, -i, *n. command*  
 justē, *adv. justly; justius, more justly*  
 justitia, -ae, *justice*  
 justus, -a, -um, *just*  
 jūvēnis, -is, *m. young man*

jūventus, -ūtis, *f.* youth  
juxtā, *prep.* (*g. acc.*) near, hard  
by, next to

Lābiēnus, -ī, *m.* Labienus  
lābor, -ōris, *m.* labour  
lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep.* I glide,  
pass away, full

lāc, lactis, *n.* milk [or Sparta  
Lācēdaemon. -ōnis, *f.* Lacedaemon  
Lācēdaemonīi, -ōrum, *m.* the Lacedaemonians

lācrīma, -ae, *f.* a tear  
lācus, -ūs, *m.* a lake  
laedo, lae-i, -sum, 3, *hurt* (*g. acc.*)

laetitia, -ae, *f.* joy  
laetus, -a, -um, *joyful*  
lāpis, -idī, *m.* stone

lāpidēus, -a, -um, *adj.* of stone  
lātē, *adv.* widely, wide  
lātēo, -ui, 2, *lie hid, lurk*

lātex, -icis, *m.* water  
Lātinus, -a, -um, *Latin*  
lātītudo, -inis, *f.* breadth  
Lātōna, -ae, *f.* Latona, mother of  
Apollo and Diana

latro, -ōnis, *m.* a robber -  
latrōcinium, -i, *n.* robbery  
lātūrus, *fut. part.* of fero  
lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*  
laudo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *praise*  
laus, laudis, *f.* praise  
lāvo, -lāvi, luvātum, 1, *wash*<sup>1</sup>  
lectus, -ī, *m.* bed

lēgātus, -i, *m.* ambassador, lieutenant  
lēgiō, -ionis, *f.* legion, from 4,000  
to 6,000 men

lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, *gather, read*  
lēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bequeath*  
Lemnos, -i, *f.* the isle of Lemnos  
lēo, leōnis, *m.* lion

Lēonidas, -ae, *m.* Leonidas  
lēpus, -ōris, *m.* a hare  
Lesbos, -i, *f.* Lesbos  
lēvis, -e, *light, fickle, empty*

lēx, legis, *f.* law  
libenter, *adv.* willingly  
liber, -bri, *m.* book  
liber, -era, -erum, *free*; liberrima  
oratio, *very frank speech* (61)  
Liber, -eri, *m.* Liber, the god of  
wine

librē, *adv.* freely  
liberi, -orum, *m. pl.* children  
libero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I free, de-*  
*liver* (*g. abl.* of thing)  
libertas, -atis, *f.* freedom, liberty  
libet (libuit und) libitum est, 2, *v.*  
*impers.* (*g. dat.*) it pleases

Libya, -ae, *f.* Africa  
licet, licuit and licitum est, licere,  
2, *v. impers.* (*g. dat.*) it is law-  
ful, allowed; (used with Inf; or  
with Subjunct. with ut omitted)  
licet omnes frōmant, *let them all*  
*murmur*; N.B. after licet mihi  
esse, the Adj. may either be dat.  
(Par. 24), or attracted into the  
Acc., to agree with me "under-  
stood," licet mihi (mē) esse  
beātum

Licinīus, -i, *m.*, Lirinius  
lector, -ōris, *m.* a lector  
lignēus, -a, -um, *wooden*  
lilium, -i, *n.*, lily  
lingua, -ae, *f.* tongue, language  
liquet, liquere, 2, *v. impers.* (Par.  
222) it is clear, evident

-littera, -ae, *f.* a letter of the  
alphabet

litterae, -arum, *f. pl.* letters, learn-  
ing, also an epistle, letter

litus, -ōris, *n.* a shore  
Līvius, -i, *m.* Titus Livius the his-  
torian, commonly called Livy

lōcus, -i, *m.* a place  
longē, *adv.* far, far off [tance  
longinquitās, -atis, *f.* length, dis-  
longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* long,  
distant

<sup>1</sup> Also lautum and lotum; this verb is never intransitive.

longitudo, -dinis, *f.* length [*far*]  
 longius, *adv. comp.* farther, too  
 longus, -a, -um, long; naves  
   longae, ships of war  
 lūquor, lūctus, 3, *dep. speak*  
 lūcescit (illuxit), lūcescere, 3, *v.*  
   *imper.* it becomes light  
 lūdo, -si, -sum, 3, *I play*  
 ludus, -i, *m.* play, game  
 luna, -ae, *f.* the moon  
 lūpus, -i, *m.* wolf  
 lusciniā, -ae, *f.* nightingale  
 lux, lucis, *f.* light, dawn  
 lyra, -ae, *f.* lyre

Mācēdo, -ōnis, *m.* a Macedonian  
 mācer, -era, -crum, lean  
 mācula, -ae, *f.* spot  
 māgis, *adv.* (sup. maximē), rather,  
   *in a higher degree, more*  
 māgister, -tri, *m.* master, teacher  
 māgistrātus, -ūs, *m.* magistrate,  
   magistracy  
 magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* magni-  
   ficent; (*for superl. see Par. 68a*)  
 magnōpere, *adv.* greatly, earnestly  
 magnus, -a, -um, great, large  
 mājestas, -ātis, *f. lit.* "sovereignty";  
   condemnāri mājestātis, to be  
   found guilty (on the charge) of  
   (impairing) sovereignty, i.e. of  
   treason (290)  
 mājor, -ōris, *Par. 68*  
 mājores, -um, *m. pl.* ancestors  
 māle, *adv. comp.* pūjus, sup. pessī-  
   mē, badly, ill  
 mālēdictum, -i, *n.* slander, curse  
 mālēvōlus, -a, -um, ill-wishing,  
   malevolent (*superl., Par. 68a*)  
 mālo, mālui, mallē, *irr. v.* I am  
   more willing, I prefer, I had  
   rather (p. 130)  
 mālum, -i, *n.* an apple  
 mālum, -i, *n.* evil  
 mālus, -i, *f.* an apple tree  
 mālus, -a, -um, bad, evil [*mission*]  
 mandātum, -i, *n.* a charge, com-

mānēo, -nēi, -nēum, 2, remain  
 mānifestus, -a, -um, evident, mani-  
   fest  
 mānīpūlus, -i, *m.* a manipule  
 mānsi, *see mānēo*  
 mānus, -ūs, *f.* a hand  
 Mārathon, -ōnis, *f.* Marathon  
 Marcus, -i, *m.* Marcus; *see* Crassus  
 māre, -is, *n.* sea (*see* terra)  
 margārīta, -ae, *f.* a pearl  
 mārinus, -a, -um, *adj.* of the sea  
 marmor, -ōris, *n.* marble  
 Martius, -a, -um, of March, p. 229  
 māter, -tris, *f.* mother  
 mātērīn, -ae, *f.* materials, timber  
 mātīmōnium, -ii, *n.* matrimony,  
   duxit eam in mātīmōnium, he  
   married her (*always of man*  
   *marrying woman, see nabo*)  
 mātorus, -a, -um, ripe  
 māximē, *adv.* very greatly, especially  
 māximus, -a, -um, *see* Par. 68  
 Maxīmus, -i, *m.* Maximus, "the  
   greatest"; *see* Fābīus  
 mēdicīna, -ae, *f.* medicine  
 mēdicus, -i, *m.* physician  
 mēditor, -ātus, 1, *v. dep.* meditatē  
   on, study  
 mēdius, -a, -um, middle (of);  
   inēdiōs in hostes, into the midst  
   of the enemy  
 mēlior, *neut. -ius, see* Par. 68  
 mēmīni, *v. def.; see* p. 215  
 mēmōr, -ōris, mindful (*g. gen.*)  
 mēmōrābilis, -e, *adj.* memorable  
 mēmōriā, -ae, *f.* memory, recollection  
 mendāciūm, -i, *n.* lie, falsehood  
 mendāx, -ācis, *adj.* lying, deceitful  
 Mēnēnius, -ii, *m.* Menenius Agrippa,  
   author of the fable of the Belly  
   and the Other Members  
 mens, mentis, *f.* mind  
 mensis, -is, *m.* month  
 mentior, -ītus, 4, (*v. dep.*) tell a lie  
 mercātor, -ōris, *m.* merchant  
 mercēs, -cēdis, *f.* pay, wage, re-  
   ward

**Mercūrius**, -i, *m. Mercury*  
**mēreo** (*also inērēor, mēritus*, 2, *v. dep.*) -ūi, -itum, 2, *I deserve*; dū pātrīa bēnē mēritus est, *he has deserved well of his country*  
**mergo**, mersi, mersum, 3, *plunge*  
**inērīdies**, *m. mid-day*  
**messis**, -is, *f. harvest*  
**metallum**, -i, *n. a metal*; mētalla, -ūrum, *n. pl. mines*; damnāri in *m. to be condemned to the mines.*  
**mētior**, mensus, 4, (*v. dep.*) *measure*  
**mūto**, messūi, messum, 3, *reap*  
**Mettus**, -i, *m. Mettus, an Alban, torn in pieces by Tullus Hostilius*  
**mētūo**, -ūi, -ūtum, 3, *I fear*  
**mētus**, -ūs, *m. fear*  
**inēus**, -a, -um, *pronom. adj. my, mine*  
**mi**, *masc. voc. of mēus* [*part*  
**migro**, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *migrate, de-*  
**milēs**, *milītis*, *m. soldier*  
**milīa**, (80) *n. pl. (sometimes for milia passuum, see passus)*  
**milītāris**, -e, *military*; rēs *m. military affairs, i.e. warfare*  
**milītīae**, *adv. in war*  
**millēns**, *a thousand times*  
**mille**, milia, *see Par. 80*  
**mina**, -ae, *f. threat*  
**minimē**, *adv. by no means, in the least degree*; minīmus, -a, -um (68)  
**minīster**, -tri, *m. a servant*  
**minor**, *see Par. 68*  
**inīnuo**, -ui, -ūtum, 3, *diminish*  
**mirandus**, -a, -um, *wonderful*  
**miror**, -ātus, 1, (*v. dep.*) *wonder at, admire*  
**mirus**, -a, -um, *wonderful*  
**miscēo**, miscui, mixtum, 2, *mix, throw into confusion*  
**misēor**, -ēra, -ērūm, *wretched*  
**misērōr**, -sertus or -sērītus, 2, *dep. pity (g. gen.)* (203)  
**misēret**, misērītum est, 2, *v. impers.*, *see Par. 219*  
**misēria**, -ae, *f. misery*

**mīserīcordia**, *f. pity* [(*g. acc.*)  
**mīseror**, -atus, 1, *show pity to*  
**inītesco**, 3, *become mild*  
**mītis**, -e, *adj. mild*  
**mitto**, mīsi, missum, 3, *send*  
**mōdestia**, -ae, *modesty*  
**mōdo**, *adv. only*; sī, or dūm, *inūdo*, *if, or provided, only*; mōdo nunc, *only just now*  
**mōdus**, -i, *m. measure, manner*; praeter mōdum, *beyond measure*; inullo mōdo, *in no way*; eiusmodi, *of that kind*  
**moenia**, -ium, *n. pl. fortifications*  
**mōlestus**, -a, -um, *troublesome*  
**mollīo**, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4, *soften*  
**mollis**, -e, *adj. soft, mellow*  
**mōnēo**, -īi, -itum, 2, *advise, warn*  
**mons**, -ntis, *m. mountain*  
**monstro**, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *show, point out*  
**mōnūmentum**, -i, *n. monument*  
**mōra**, -ae, *f. delay*  
**inorbus**, -i, *m. disuse*  
**inōriōr**, mōrtūus, 3, *v. dep. die (fut. part. mōrtūrus, about to die)*  
**mōror**, mōrātus, 1 (*v. dep.*) *delay*  
**mors**, -tis, *f. death*  
**morsūs**, -ūs, *m. bite*  
**mortālis**, -e, *adj. mortal*  
**mortūus**, -a, -um, *dead*  
**mōs**, mōris, *m. manner, custom*; mōres, -um, *pl. conduct, morals*; nōn nostri mōris est, *it is not (characteristic of) our custom*  
**mōtūs**, -ūs, *m. motion, movement*  
**mōvēo**, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *move, affect*; bellum, or arma, mōveo, *I stir up or commence war*  
**mox**, *adv. soon*  
**mūlier**, -ēris, *f. woman, wife*  
**mūlplex**, -plicis, *manifold*; *m. fētus*, *many young ones at a time*  
**mūltitudo**, -īnis, *f. multitude*  
**multo**, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *punish (with death, fine, &c.)*  
**multus**, -a, -um, *much, many*;

multa nox, *a late (hour of) night*; multum *adv.*, multum intērest, *it makes a great difference*; multo (*adv. with compar.*) (*by*) much; multo felicior, (*by*) much more happy  
 Mummius, -ii, *m.* Mummius, the destroyer of Corinth  
 mundus, -i, *m.* the universe  
 munificus, -a, -um, (68a) liberal  
 munimentum, -i, *n.* a fortification  
 mūnio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, fortify  
 mūnus, -eris, *n.* a gift, duty, function  
 murmur, -ūris, *n.* murmur  
 mūrus, -i, *m.* wall  
 mūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, change  
 Mycēnae, -arum, *f. pl.* Mycenae, the chief city of Greece in the Trojan times  
 myrtus, -i and -us, *f.* myrtle

Nactus, *see* nanciscor  
 nam, *conj.* for; differs from enim in standing first in a clause  
 nanciscor, nactus and nactus, *inf.* nancisci, 3, obtain (*v. dep.*)  
 narro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, relate  
 nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep.* I am born  
 N.B. nascor means "I am being born"; decem annos nātus est, *he is ten years old*  
 Nāso, -ōnis, *m.* Publius Oridius Naso, commonly called Ovid  
 nātu, *adv. abl.* by birth  
 nātūra, -ae, *f.* nature  
 nātūrālis, *see* histōria  
 nātus, -a, -um, *part. and adj.* born, aged; vīginti annos *n.*, twenty years old  
 nauta, -ae, *m.* a sailor  
 nāvālis, -e, *adj.* naval  
 nāvigo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, sail  
 nāvis, -is, *f.* ship  
 -nē, *enclitic*, asks a question (100)  
 nē, *conj.* that not, lest (131); nē

quīs, *that no one* (294); (*with perf. subj.*) (do) not (129)  
 Nēāpolis, -is, *f.* (acc. -im), Naples  
 nēc, *see* nēquē  
 nēcēssārius, -a, -um, *adj.* necessary  
 nēcēsse, *adv.* necessarily; (*used as adj.*) nēcēsse est, *it is necessary*, (*fol. by acc. and inf. or ut*)  
 nēcō, nēcāvi, nēcatum, 1, kill  
 nēfandus, -a, -um, unspeakable, monstrous  
 nēfās, *n. indecl.* wickedness; *n. dictu*, monstrous to relate!  
 nēlēgo, -exi, -ectum, 3, neglect  
 nēgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, I deny  
 nēgōtium, -i, *n.* business  
 nēmō, nullius, *m.* nobody, no one  
 Par. 92; *n. nōn gaudēbat*, there was no one that did not rejoice  
 Nēoptolēmūs, -i, *m.* Neoptolomus  
 Neptūnus, -i, *m.* Neptune  
 nēquam, *indecl. adj. comp.* nēquior, *sup.* nēquissimus, worthless  
 nēquē, or nēc, *conj.* and not; when repeated, neither...nor  
 nēquēō, -ivi or -ii, -itum, -ire, 4, I am unable, cannot; *imperf.* nēquibam; *fut indic.* nēquibō; *pres. part.* nēquions, *gen.* nēquēuntis  
 nēquiquam, *adv.* in vain  
 nēquissimus, *see* nēquam  
 Nēro, -ōnis, *m.* Nero  
 nesciō, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, I am ignorant of, do not know; nesciō an ventūrus sīt, i.e. nesciō (utrum afūtūrus sīt) an (pōtius) ventūrus sīt, I do not know whether he will be absent or whether he will rather come, i.e. I think he will come, Par. 302  
 neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* -ūs, *dat.* -i), neither of two, *see* Par. 85  
 nēve, *adv.* or not, nor; or (*after neg.*) ne affirmāvēris nēvō nēgāvēris, say neither 'yes' nor 'no'  
 nidus, -i, *m.* a nest

niger, -gra, -grum, *black*  
 nihil, or nil, *n. indecl. nothing*;  
*(from nihilum) nihili te facio, I*  
*esteem you of no account; nihilo*  
*minus, none the less (277)*

Nilus, -i, *m. the Nile, a river in*  
*Egypt*

nī, *conj. a form of nīsi*

nīmīs, *adv. too, too much*

Niōha, -ae, *f. Niobe*

nīsi, *conj. if...not, unless (has the*  
*same constr. as si, 125, 293-5);*  
*after nihil and quid, nīsi means*  
*"but" or "except," and has the*  
*same constr. as quam (62)*

nītor, nīsus and nīxus, *3, strive*  
*(143)*

nix, nīvis, *f. snow*

no, nāvi, nātum, *1, swim*

nōbīlis, -e, *adj. distinguished,*  
*noble*

nōcēo, -ūi, -itum, *2, (g. dat.) hurt*  
*nōlo, nōlūi, nolle, v. irreg. I am*  
*unwilling, I do not wish; nōli*  
*vēnīre, do not come; idem nolle,*  
*to dislike the same thing, p. 128*

nōmen, -īnis, *n. name*

nōmīno, -āvi, -ātum, *1, name*

nōn, *adv. not*

nondum, *adv. not yet*

nōnne? *interr. adv. expects the*  
*answer "yes"; sometimes a conj.*  
*whether, Par. 135*

nonnullus, -a, -um, *adj. some*

nosco, nōvi, nōtum, *3, I gain*  
*knowledge of; hence prf. nōvi, I*  
*have gained knowledge of; i.e. I*  
*know*

noster, -stra, -strum, *pronom. adj.*  
*our, ours; nostri often means*  
*"our men;" nostri is also gen.*  
*of nōs (93), and nostrum part.*  
*gen.*

nosti for nōvisti, *see nosco*

nōta, -ae, *mark, stigma*

nōtus, -a, -um, *known*

nōvus, -u, -um, *adj. new*

nox, noctis, *f. night* [jurious

noxius, -a, -um, *adj. hurtful, in-*  
*nubēs, -is, f. cloud*

nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, *3, she marries*  
*(g. dat.); not used of men marry-*  
*ing; see mātīmōnium*

nullus, -a, -um, *adj. no, none; gen.*  
*sing. -iūs, dat. -ī, (85)*

num? *interr. adv. expects the*  
*answer "no"; (sometimes conj.)*  
*whether, Par. 135*

nūmēro, -āvi, -ātum, *1, I count*

nūmērus, -i, *m. number*

Nūmīda, -ae, *m. a Numidian*

nunc, *adv. now, at the present time*

nunquam, *adv. never*

nuntīo, -āvi, -ātum, *1, bring word*

nuntius, -ī, *m. messenger*

nūper, *adv. lately*

nūtrīo, -īvi and -īi, -itum, *4, nourish*

nox, nūcis, *f. nut*

Ōh, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of, in*  
*front of*

oldormio, -īvi, -itum, *4, fall asleep*

obēdīo, -īvi and -īi, -itum, *4, (g.*  
*dat.) obey*

obēo, -īvi or -īi, -itum, *4, I meet,*  
*esp. meet death, I die*

oblātus, *see offēro*

oblectātīo, -īōnis, *f. delight*

oblīno, -lēvi, -lītum, *besmear, defile*

oblīviscor, -lītus, *3, dep. forget*  
*(g. gen.) 203*

obsēuro, -āvi, -ātum, *1, darken,*

obsēurus, -a, -um, *obsure, dark*

obsēcro, -āvi, -ātum, *1, beseech*  
*(foll. by ut)* [respect

obseruo, -āvi, -ātum, *1, I observe,*

obses, -īdis, *m. hostage*

obsīdēo, -sēdi, -sessum, *2, block-*  
*ade, besiege*

obsīdio, -īōnis, *f. a siege, blockade*

obsto, -stīti, -stītum, *1, oppose,*  
*prevent (g. dat.); nothing prevents*  
*your coming, nihil obstat (tibi)*

quōmīnus vēnias

obstringo, -strinxi, -strictum, 3, *bind (by oath)*  
 obsum, obfui or offui, ōbesse, v. irreg. (g. dat.) *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure*  
 obtempĕro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *comply with, obey (g. dat.)*  
 obtineo, -tīnui, 2, *keep, hold*  
 occasio, -ōnis, f. *opportunity*  
 occidens, -tis, m. *the west, the setting (sun)*  
 occido, -cidi, -cīsum, 3, *fall; occidit spēs nostra, our hope has perished; occidimus, we are undone*  
 occido, -cidi, -cīsum, 3, *slay, kill*  
 occūpo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *seize upon*  
 occulto, -cūlui, -cultum, 3, *hide*  
 occumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum, 3, *fall down*  
 oceanus, -i, m. *the ocean*  
 oculus, -i, m. *eye*  
 odi, ōdisse, v. dep. *haste; see p. 215; odiūm, -ii, n. hatred; hic mihi odio (268) est, this man is hateful to me (lit. for hatred)*  
 odor, -oris, m. *a smell, scent*  
 offero, obtuli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irreg. *I present*  
 olim, adv. *formerly*  
 ōmen, -īnis, n. *an omen* [drop  
 ōmitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *omit*,  
 omnino, adv. *altogether; (the position alters the meaning) o. nūn bonus, not at all good; 2, nūn o. bonus, not altogether good*  
 omnis, -e, all, *the whole; (not "every," except in the pl.)*  
 ōnus, -eris, n. *a load, burden*  
 ōpera, -ae, f. *pains, labour; his operam do, I pay attention to these things* [tion  
 opinio, -ōnis, f. *opinion, expectation*  
 oportet, -uit, 2, v. impers. *it behoves, is necessary; oportuit tē tacēre, you ought to have been silent (Par. 223)*

oppidum, -i, n. *town*  
 oppōno, -ōsui, -itum, 3, *I set against; oppōno me tibi, I oppose you (192)* [power  
 opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3, *over-*  
 oppugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *assault*  
 optimus, (68) *best, excellent; optimē, adv. excellently* [sire  
 opto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I wish, desire*  
 opulentus, -a, -um, adj. *wealthy*  
 opus, -eris, n. *work; opus est (g. abl.) there is need of*  
 ōra, -ae, f. *the coast*  
 oraculum, -i, n. *an oracle*  
 orāre causam, *to plead a cause*  
 oratio, -ōnis, f. *an oration, speech*  
 orator, -oris, m. *an orator*  
 ordior, -orsus, 4, v. dep. *I begin*  
 ordo, -inis, m. *rank, order; ordinem equestrem, the order of the knights*  
 orior, ortus, ōriri, 3, v. dep. *rise &*  
 orno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *adorn*  
 oro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *entreat, pray; ōrāre causam, to plead a cause*  
 ortus, *see orior*  
 ōs, ōris, n. *mouth; in ore omnium est, it is the talk of everybody*  
 ōs, ossis, n. *bone*  
 ovum, -i, n. *egg* ..

Pactio, pactus, 3, (v. dep.), *make an agreement*  
 paenē, adv. *almost*  
 palam, (adv. and prep. g. abl.) *publicly, in the presence of*  
 Pallās, -adis, f. *Pallas Athene, not to be confounded with Minerva*  
 pallium, -ii, n. *a cloak*  
 pando, pandi, passum, 3, *lay open; passo crine, with dishevelled hair*  
 panis, -is, m. *bread*  
 papāver, -oris, n. *poppy*  
 papilio, -ōnis, m. *butterfly*  
 par, paris, equal; *non est solvendo par, he is not equal to paying, i.e. he is insolvent*

pārātus, -a, -um, *adj.* prepared  
 p. ad pugnandum, *p.* to fight  
 parco, pīperci, parclum or parsum, 3, (*g. dat.*) spare; paucis parsum est, few were spared  
 pārēus, -ntis, *c.* parent  
 pārēr, -ūi, -itum, 2, (*g. dat.*) obey  
 pārīo, pēpērī, partum, 3, (*g. acc.*) bring forth, give birth to  
 pārīter, *adv.* equally  
 pārō, -āvi, -ātum, 1, prepare, get  
 pars, -tis, *f.* part  
 parsum, *see* parco  
 partīor, -ītus, 4, *dep.* share, divide  
 partus, -ūs, *m.* birth  
 parum, *adv.* too little; used for "not"; (used as a noun *g. part. gen.*) p. vīrum, too little strength  
 parvus, -a, -um, small, little  
 pascō, pāvi, pastum, 3, feed; oves pascebantur, sheep were grazing  
 passus, -ūs, *m.* a pace (about 5 feet); mille passus, a mile  
 pāstor, -ōris, *m.* shepherd  
 pāteo, -ūi, 2, extend; it extends for ten miles, pātet in foll. by acc.  
 pāter, -tris, *m.* father  
 pātīens, -ntis, (*g. gen.*) patient (of)  
 pātīenter, *adv.* patiently  
 pātīor, passus, 3, endure, suffer  
 Patres, -um, *m. pl.* Fathers, a name given to the Roman Senators  
 patriā, -ae, *f.* a native land, country  
 patrimonīum, -ii, *n.* patrimony  
 paulisper, *adv.* for a short time  
 paucus, -a, -um (mostly pl.) few  
 pauper, -ēris, poor  
 paupertas, -ātis, *f.* poverty  
 pāvīdus, -a, -um, fearful  
 pāvo, -ōnis, *m.* peacocks  
 pāvor, -ōris, *m.* terror, trembling  
 pax, pācis, *f.* peace  
 peccātum, -i, *n.* fault  
 pecco, -avi, -atum, 1, err, sin  
 pēcūnia, -ae, *f.* money, sum of money  
 pēdēs, -ītis, *m.* foot-soldier  
 pēditātus, -ūs, *m.* infantry

pejor, *see* Par. 68  
 pēlūgus, -i, *n.* sea  
 pellis, -is, *f.* skin (of animals)  
 pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3, drive  
 pendo (page 209) hang, weigh, value (283)  
 pēnēs, *prep. (g. acc.)* in the hands of  
 penna, -ae, *f.* feather, wing; (of fishes) fin  
 pēr, *prep. (g. acc.)* through, by means of; per dōlum, treacherously  
 percipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, perceive  
 percussio, -iōnis, *f.* striking; p. digitorum, the snapping of one's fingers  
 perdo, -didi, -ditum, 3, destroy  
 perdomo, -mī, -itum, 1, thoroughly tame, subdue  
 pēro, -ī or -ivi, -itum, 4, perish  
 perfectus, -a, -um, *adj.* finished, perfect  
 perfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v. irr.* endure  
 perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3, perform  
 perfūlia, -ae, *f.* perfidy  
 perfidus, -a, -um, perfidious, treacherous  
 Periclēs, -is, *m.* Pericles  
 pēricūlum, -i, *n.* danger [*gen.*]  
 pēritus, -a, -um, *adj.* skilful in (*g.*)  
 perlēgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3, I read through  
 permagnus, -a, -um, very great  
 pernōvōo, -mōvi, -mūtum, 2, rouse, stir  
 permulti, -ae, -a, very many  
 pernīcīosus, -a, -um, destructive  
 perpētūus, -a, -um, *adj.* continual  
 perumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3, burst through  
 Persū, -ae, *m.* a Persian  
 persaepe, *adv.* very often  
 perspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *see* through, discern  
 persuādūo, -āsī, -āsum, 2, (*g. dat.*) persuade (143); persuāsum est mihi, I am persuaded



pertaesum, *see* taedet  
 perterreo, -ēre, -iī, -itum, 2, *alarm*  
 pertimesco, -timūi, 3, *become fear-  
 ful*  
 pervēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *arrive*  
 perversus, -a, -um, *wilful, perverse*  
 pēs, pēdis, *m. foot*  
 pessimus, *see* Par. 68  
 pestis, -is, *f. plague*  
 pēto, -iī & -iī, -itum, 3, *seek*  
 Phaëthon, -ontis, *m. Phaëthon, a  
 son of Apollo the Sun-god*  
 Phidiās, -ae, *m. Phidias, an Athen-  
 ian sculptor (1st decl.)*  
 Philippus, -i, *m. Philip (of Mace-  
 donia)*  
 Philoctētēs, -ae, *m. Philoctetes*  
 philōsōphīa, -ae, *f. philosophy*  
 philōsōphus, -i, *m. philosopher*  
 Phoebus, -i, *m. Phoebus Apollo,  
 the Sun-god; Phoebus -a, -um,  
 adj. belonging to Phoebus Apollo*  
 piger, -gra, -grum, *slithful*  
 pigēt, piguit and pigitum est,  
 pigere, 2, *v. impers. it vexes*  
 pingo, -nxi, -pictum, 3, *I paint,  
 embroider*  
 pinguis, -e, *fat*  
 pinna, *see* penna  
 pinus, -ūs and -i, *f. pine-tree*  
 pīrum, -i, *n. a pear*  
 pīrus, -i, *f. a pear-tree*  
 piscātor, -ōris, *m. fisherman*  
 piscis, -is, *m. a fish*  
 plācēo, -iī, -itum, 2, *g. dat. please;*  
 - plācuit, or plācītum est, nobis  
 vēnīre, *to come pleased us, i.e.,  
 we resolved to come*  
 placet, -iit or -itum est, -ēre, 2,  
*v. impers. it pleases*  
 plācidus, -a, -um, *adj. quiet*  
 plānē, *adv. altogether*  
 plānities, -itēs, *f. level space*  
 planta, -ae, *f. a sprout, plant*  
 Plāto, -ōnis, *m. Plato*  
 plebs, plēbis, *f. the common people*  
 plēnus, -a, -um, *full, g. gen. or*

*abl.; vīno plēnus, filled with  
 wine, i.e. intoxicated*  
 plērique, plēraque, plērique, *most*  
 plērumque, *adv. for the most  
 part*  
 Plīnius, -iī, *m. Pliny*  
 plūit, pluit or plūvit, pluere, 3  
*v. impers. it rains*  
 plurimus, *see* Par. 68  
 plus, -ūris, *more; (neut. pl. often  
 used as noun) he spoke no more,  
 nec plura dixit, see* Par. 72  
 poenitentia, -ae, *f. penitence*  
 poena, -ae, *f. penalty; dare poenas*  
 (pl.) *culpaē, to pay the penalty  
 of a fault*  
 poenitet, -ituit, -itēre, 2, *v. impers.  
 it repents (me), see* Par. 219  
 pōsto, -ae, *m. post*  
 pollex, -icis, *m. thumb (with which  
 the lyre was twanged)*  
 pollicēor, -itus, 2, *promise (280)*  
 Pompēius, -eī, *m. Pompey, the  
 rival of Caesar*  
 pōmum, -i, *n. fruit*  
 pondus, -ēris, *n. weight*  
 pōnē, *prep. (g. acc.) behind*  
 pōno, pōnūi, pōsitum, 3, *place, lay  
 aside*  
 pons, -ntis, *m. a bridge*  
 pontifex, -icis, *m. a high priest*  
 Pontius (Pilātus), -i, *m. Pontius  
 Pilate*  
 porcus, -i, *m. pig*  
 porta, -ae, *f. a gate*  
 porto, -avi, -itum, 1, *carry*  
 portus, -ūs, *m. harbour*  
 Pūrus, -i, *an Indian king con-  
 quered by Alexander the Great*  
 posco, poposci, 3, *demand*  
 possum, pōtūi, posse, *v. irreg. I  
 am able, can (see pp. 126, 127)*  
 post, *prep. (g. acc.) after; adv.  
 (313) multis post annis, many  
 years afterwards (N.B. nec.  
 used like the conj. postquam)*  
 postea, *adv. afterwards*

postis, -is, *m. door-post*  
 postpono, -posui, -positum, 3,  
*place after (g. acc. and dat.)*

postquam, *conj. when, after*  
 postremus, *see* Par. 69

potūlo, -avi, -itum, 1, *I demand*

pōtens, -enti, *adj. powerful*

pōtentia, -ae, *f. power*

pōtentia, -āti, *f. power, authority*

pōior, -itus, 1, *v. dep. (g. abl.)*

*I make myself master of, obtain*

pōitur...quam, *rather...than; vel*

pōitur, *or rather (used when a*

*writer slightly corrects his own*  
*statement)*

pro, *prep. (g. abl.) before, in com-*

*parison with, by reason of, see*

Par. 178

praebō, -ui, -itum, 2, *I exhibit,*

*afford; p. exemplum, set an*

*example; p. fructum, put forth*

*fruit*

praeceptor, -oris, *m. teacher*

praeceptum, -i, *n. precept, instruc-*

*tion, lesson* [famous

praeclarus, -a, -um, *renowned,*

praeda, -ae, *f. booty*

praedium, -i, *n. farm*

praeco, -avi or -ii, -itum, 4, *I go*

*before; p. verba, dictate words*

praefero, -tūli, -lātum, *prefer*

praefero, -fēci, -fectum, 3, *set in*

*command over (acc. and dat.)*

praemitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *I*

*send on before*

praemium, -i, *n. reward*

praesens, -entis, *present; prae-*

*sentem cum laudavi, I praised*

*him in his presence*

praesidium, -i, *n. guard, garrison*

praestans, -antis, *excellent*

praesum, -fui, -esse, *v. irreg. (g.*

*dat.) I am before, at the head*

*of* [yond

praeter, *prep. (g. acc.) beside, be-*

*praeterito, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, v.*

*irreg. pass by*

praeteritus, -a, -um, *past*

praetor, -oris, *m. the praetor*

praevēnio, -veni, -ventum, 4,

*anticipate*

pravus, -a, -um, *perverse, depraved*

prēmo, -essi, -essum, 3, *I press*

prētium, -i, *n. price, reward*

primārius, -a, -um, *adj. first rate,*

*eminent*

primo, *adv. at first*

primus, -a, -um, *first (71)*

princeps, -ipis, *adj. and noun, first*

*in rank, chief, emperor*

principātus, -ūs, *m. sovereignty*

prior, -oris, *superior, before (71)*

*g. abl.*

pristinus, -a, -um, *adj. former,*

*olden*

prius, *adv. sooner, before*

priusquam, *conj. until, before,*

*sooner than* [behalf of

pro, *prep. (g. abl.) before, for, on*

*probe, adv. rightly, properly*

prōbitas, -ātis, *f. honesty, integrity*

prōbus, -a, -um, *honest, upright*

prūcella, -ae, *f. storm*

prūcēres, -um, *m. pl. nobles*

prūcērus, -a, -um, *tall*

prūditor, -oris, *m. traitor*

prūde, -didi, -dītum, 3, *I hand*

*down*

prūduco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *bring for-*

*ward*

proelium, -i, *n. battle*

prōfecto, *adv. assuredly, indeed*

prōfēro, -tūli, -lātum, -ferre, *v.*

*irreg. extend*

prōficiscor, -fectus, 3, *dep. set out*

prōfundus, -a, -um, *adj. deep*

prūgigno, -gēnui, -gēnītum, 3,

*bring forth, give birth to*

prūgrēdior, -gressus, 3, *v. dep.*

*advance*

prūhibeo, -ui, -itum, 2, *hinder, pro-*

*hibit, keep off*

prūles, -is, *f. offspring*

prūmisum, -i, *n. a promise*

prōmissus, -a, -um, *hanging down, long (of hair)*  
 prōmitto, -misi, -missum, 3, *promise*; p. mē venturum, *I promise to come (never p. vñire) (280)*  
 promptus, -a, -um, *ready*  
 prōpē, *prep. (g. acc.) near*  
 prōpē, *adv. near at hand, nearly*; p. ābest a nobis, *he is close to us*  
 prōpēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *hasten*  
 prōpinquus, -a, -um, *adj. near*  
 proptēr, *prep. (g. acc.) on account of*; more rarely, *near (183)*  
 prōpulso, -avi, -atum, 1, *repel*  
 Prōserpina, -ae, *f. Proserpine*  
 prosper, -pēra, -pērum, *prosperous*  
 prōsum, -fui, *prodesse, (g. dat.) I am of use*; non prōdest hūc dicēre, *it is of no use to say this (191)*  
 prōtendo, -tendi, -tensum or -tentum, 3, *extend*  
 prout, *conj. according as*  
 prōvidēo, -vīdi, -vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*  
 prōvidus, -a, -um, *provident, foreseeing*  
 prōvincia, -ae, *f. a section of the Roman Empire called a "province"*  
 prōvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *challenge, provoke*  
 proximū, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last (Par. 69)*  
 prudens, -ntis, *prudent*  
 prudentia, -ae, *f. knowledge, prudence*  
 publicus, -a, -um, *public*  
 pudet, -uit, or pudītum, -ēre, 2, *v. impers. it shames (Par. 219)*  
 pūella, -ae, *f. girl*  
 pūer, -ēri, *m. boy*  
 pūeritia, -ae, *f. boyhood*  
 pugna, -ae, *f. battle*  
 pugno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *fight*  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*  
 pulli, -ūrum, *m. pl. chickens*

pūmex, -icis, *m. pumice-rock*  
 Pānicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*  
 pūnio, -ivi and -ii, -itum, 4, *punish*  
 pūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I think*  
 putresco, 3, *putrefy*  
 Pygmālion, -ōnis, *m. Pygmalion*  
 Pythāgoras, -ae, *m. Pythagoras*

Quadrīngenti, *see Par. 81*

quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum, 3, *seek, ask*; quaerēbam mēcum, *I was enquiring with myself*; I asked him why, &c., quaesivi, āb, ē, or dē, eo cūr, &c.

quaestus, -ūs, *m. gain, profit*  
 quālis, -e, *pron. adj. of what sort? what sort of? of which sort? as*  
 quam, *conj. or adv. than (62) (aft. comp.)*; hōc, quam turpe est! *how base it is!* as, nūn tam valīdus est quam frāter eius, *he is not so strong as his brother*; quam cōlorimē, *as quickly as possible (327)*; quam qui, or ut (319)

quamdiu, *conj. as long as*  
 quamquam, *conj. although (mostly with indic.) (323)*

quamvis, *conj. however much, although (with subjunctive) (323)*

quando? *interr. adv. when? also used in dependent questions (156)*

quantus, -a, -um, *adj. how great a; tantus...quantus, so great a...as; (used as a Noun) quantum pecūniae, as much (of) money; adv. how much; quantum intērest, how great a difference is there! quanti? at how great a price? see Par. 283, 284*

quārē? *interr. adv. and conj. why? on what account?*

quartus, *see Par. 81*

quāsi, *adv. as if, just as*

quāterni, -ae, -a, *four a-piece (314)*  
 quātio, *no perf., quassum, 3, shake, toss*

quattuor, *see Par. 81*

-que, *conj. and*; used to combine two words of similar meaning into one phrase, *omnībus populisquē* (37)  
*querens, -ūs, f. an oak* [*plain*  
*quēror, quē-tus, 3 (v. dep.) com-*  
*qui, rel. pron. (107)*; often precedes  
*(nē...ful'cor) cum, and must*  
*then be referred demonstratively*;  
*quod cum intellexissem, when I*  
*perceived this; qui after quam*  
*(319); qui foll. by subjunct. (298);*  
*idem mi (319); see also quo*

*quū, conj. because*

*quidam, quaedam, quoddam, pron.*  
*adj. (neut. pron. quiddam), a cer-*  
*tain (310a); cardo quidam, a*  
*kind of hinge; see Eng. Vocab.*  
*"A"*

*quidem, conj. or adv. (67, 139)*  
*on the one hand, it is true, in-*  
*deed; quidem. autem (or vtro*  
*or sed), on the one hand...but on*  
*the other hand; nē...quidem,*  
*not even (141); q. sometimes*  
*merely emphasizes a word, e.g.*  
*nunc quidem rīdes, "Now you*  
*laugh (but soon you will weep)"*

*quid (or quic) quam, see quisquam*  
*quālibet, quālibet, quodlibet*  
*(pron. adj.) any you please;*  
*quolibet tempore, at any time he*  
*pleases (pron. neut. quidlibet)*

*quīn (i.e. quī nōn, or quō nōn)*  
*conj. that not, (with subj.) (145,*  
*300) nēmo est quīn rident, there*  
*is no one that does not laugh;*  
*see also obstat and dūbium, with*  
*which it means "but that"*

*quīquē, see Par. 81; quīquies,*  
*adv. five times; quīntus, see Par.*  
*81*

*quīs, quae, quid, who? see Par. 110,*  
*111; (after sī, nē, num) any*  
*one*

*quīnam, quāenam, quidnam? am-*  
*phatic inter. pron. who? which?*  
*what?*

*quisquam, quaequam, quodquam*  
*(pron. neut. quicquam) anyone*  
*(used in neg. and compar. sen-*  
*tences, and in questions that*  
*expect the answer "no") (309)*

*quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, (pron.*  
*neut. quidquē or quicquē) each,*  
*every; fortissimus quisquē, each*  
*bravest man, i.e. all the bravest*  
*men; suam quisquē dōmum*  
*rēdierunt, they returned, each to*  
*his own home (where quisquē is*  
*not nom. to r., but in Apposition*  
*to the nom. to r.) (140, 310)*

*quisquis, quaequae, quodquod*  
*(adj.), whoever; (pron. neut.)*  
*quidquid or quicquid, whatever;*  
*quidquid amīcōrum, whatever*  
*(of) friends (part. gen.)*

*quīvis, quaevis, quodvis (pronom.*  
*neut. quidvis) any you like; nōn*  
*cuiusvis est, it is not every one's*  
*luck (310)*

*quō, adv. (rel. and interr.) whither*  
*quo, conj. and adv. (1) quo citius,*  
*ēo mēlius, by how much the*  
*quicker, by so much the better;*  
*(2) (with compar.) in order that*  
*(303); quōcum (179)*

*quōd, conj. because, that (sometimes*  
*foll. by subjunct., 293a)*

*quōmīnus, conj. that not, Par. 144;*  
*quid obstat q. vēnīre? what*  
*prevents you from coming?*

*quōmōdo? in what manner? how?*  
*(also used in dependent quest.)*

*quondam, adv. formerly*

*quōniam, conj. since*

*quōquē, see quisquē*

*quōquē, conj. also, too; (always*  
*after the word it modifies)*

*quōt, indecl. adj. how many*

*quōtidie (more correctly spell cottī-*  
*dīe), adv. every day*

*quōtīens, adv. how many times;*  
*quōtīens...tōtīens, as many times*  
*as...so many times*

quōtus, -a, -um ? *what (in number)?*

hōra est ? *what o'clock is it?*

quōtusquisque, *pron. q. est qui vēlit!* *how few there are who wish!* (sometimes in two words, e.g. quōtus enim quisque)

quum, *an incorrect form of cum*

Rādō, rāsi, rāsum, 3, *shave*

Rādix, -icis, *f. root*

Rāpāx, -ācis, *adj. rapacious*

Rāpīdus, -a, -um, *rapid*

Rāpio, -i, raptum, -ere, 3, *seize*

Rārū, *adv. seldom, rarely*

Rārus, -a, -um, *adj. rare*

Rātio, -iōnis, *f. reason*

Rātus, -a, -um, *thinking; see reor*

Rēcīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *take back; se recipiunt in castra, they retreat to the camp*

Rēcito, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I read aloud*  
rēcīlamo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *cry shame, protest*

Rēcōrdor, -ātus, 1, *call to mind (gen., but more often acc.)*

Rēcresco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *refresh*

Rectē, *adv. rightly*

Rectus, -a, -um, *adj. straight, right*

Rēcūpero, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recover, get back* [*fuse*

rēcūso, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *object, re-*  
reddo, reddidi, redditum, 3, *restore, render*

Rēdō, -i, -itum, 4, *return*

Rēduco, -duxi, -ductum, 3, *bring back*

Rēfēro, rētūli or rettūli, rēlatum, 3, *v. irreg. I bring back, report, relate, reply; sometimes means "refer;" dū hāc rē ad Patres rēlatum est, a reference was made to the Senate on this point*

Rēfert (or rē-fert) *it matters, is of importance (conjugated like fero, but impersonal); illud magni rēferre reor, I think that is of great importance (329)*

rēgēro, -gessi, -gestum, 3, *cast up, or back*

Rēgina, -ae, *f. a queen*

Rēgio, -ōnis, *f. region, district*

regno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *reign*

regnūm, -i, *n. a kingdom*

rēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I rule*

Rēgulus, -i, *m. Regulus*

rēligio, -ōnis, *f. religious scruple,*

*id rēligiōni hābēo, I consider this sacrilege, lit. for a religious scruple (268) [poets, religio]*

rēnuntio, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *bring back word*

rēlinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3, *leave, quit*

rēmīniscor, 3, *I remember (203)*

rēnovo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *make new again, restore*

rēor, rātus, rēri, (*v. dep.*) *suppose, think*

rēpērio, reppēri, rēpertum, 4, *find (after search); see invēnio*

rēplēo, -plēvi, -plētum, 2, *fill up*

rēs, rēi, *f. thing; rem bēnē gēro,*

*I succeed; rēs Rōmānā, the*

*affairs (or fortunes) of Rome; r.*

*militāris, military matters; r.*

*fāmiliāris, one's household affairs,*

*property; r. frāmētārīa, forage;*

*rū ipsa, or rē, in fact (adv. abl.)*

rescindo, -scīdi, -scissum, 3, *tear open, or down; break down (a bridge)*

rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3, (*g. dat.*)

*resist; mīhi rēsistitur, I am*

*being resisted* [*guard*

respicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3, *re-*

respondēo, -di, -sum, 2, *answer*

responsum, -i, *n. answer*

rēs-publica, rēi-publicae, *f., the*

*republic, the country, politics*

restitūo, -ui, -itum, 3, *restore*

resto, -stīti, 1, *remain; spēs unā*

*restat, one hope remains*

rēte, -is, *n. a net*

rētexo, -texui, -textum, 3, *unweave*

rēŭneo, -tīnui, -tentum, 2, *keep back*

rēus, -i, *m. the accused, defendant*;

rēus factus sum, *I was accused*

rēvōco, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *recall*

rēverto, -ti, -sum, 3, *turn back, return (in the Pres. and Pres. derived tenses the Act form is rare: use rēvertor)*

rēvertor, -versus, 3, *v. dep. I turn back, return*

rex, rēgis, *m. king*

Rhēnus, -i, *m. the Rhine*

rhētōrīca, -ae, *f. rhetoric*

Rhōdānus, -i, *m. the Rhone*

Rhōdus, -i, *f. Rhodes*

rīdeo, rīsi, rīsum, 2, *laugh; laugh at (g. acc.)*

rīpa, -ae, *f. bank, shore*

rīsūs, ūs, *laughter, a laugh*

rōbur, -oris, *n. strength*

rōgātio, -iōnis, *f. (see rōgo) a bill proposed to the people; ferre rōgātiōnem, to bring forward a bill*

rōgo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *ask; (used of asking the people whether they will pass a bill) hence rōgāre lēgem, to bring forward a bill*

Rōma, -ae, *f. Rome*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*

Rōmūlus, -i, *m. Romulus*

rōsa, -ae, *f. a rose*

rūbeo, -ui, 2, *blush*

rūber, -bra, -brum, *red*

rūbēta, -ōrum, *n. pl. bramble-beds; rūbus, -i, m. bramble*

rūdis, -e, *raw, ignorant (g. gen.)*

rūpēs, -is, *f. a rock*

rūs, rūris, *n. country; rūri (Par. 265) in the country*

rūsticus, -a, -um, *rustic*

Sācer, -era, -crum, *sacred*

sācerdōs, -ōtis, *m. priest*

saepē, *adv. often*

saepēnūmero, *adv. oftentimes*

saepio, saepsi, saeptum, 4, *hedge in, fence round*

saepissimē, *adv. very often*

saevus, -a, -um, *cruel, fierce*

sāgācītās, -ātis, *f. keen scent, sagacity; sāgax, -ācis, sagacious*

sāgitta, -ae, *f. an arrow*

salto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *dance*

salūber, -bris, -bre, *healthful*

sālūs, -ūtis, *f. safety*

salūto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *salute*

salvēo, -ēre, 2, *I am well; salvē, be well, i.e. good morning!*

salvus, -a, -um, *adj. safe*

Samnītes, -ium, *m. pl. the Samnites*

sancio, sanxi, sanctum, 4, *enact*;

sancio nē quis absit, *I enact that no one shall be absent*

sānē, *adv. (lit. soberly, in sober earnest) certainly*

sanguis, -inis, *m. blood*

sāno, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *heal*

sānus, -a, -um, *healthy*

sāpiens, -ntis, *wise; sāpiēter, adv. wisely*

sāpiētia, -ae, *f. wisdom*

sāpio, -īvi and -īi, 3, *savour of (g. acc.); am wise*

sarcio, sarsi, sartum, 4, *patch, mend*

sātis, *adv. enough, sufficiently; (used as a noun) sātis patriae*

dātum est, *enough has been given to the claims of your country*

saxum, -i, *n. rock*

scēlus, -ēris, *n. crime*

scēna, -ae, *f. the stage of a theatre*

sciētia, -ae, *f. knowledge*

scindo, scīdi, scissum, 3, *rend, tear*

scio, -īi or -īvi, -itum, 4, *I know*

Scipio, -ōnis, *m. Scipio*

scriba, -ae, *m. scribe, clerk*

scribo, -psi, -ptum, 3, *write; s.*

lēges, *I draw up laws*

scriptor, -ōris, *m. a writer, author*

scūtum, -i, *n. shield*

Scythā, -ae, *m. a Scythian*

sē, *sec* Par. 94, 218, 305, 306; sēcūm, *see* Par. 179.

sēcundus, -a, -um, *second, prosperous*; sēcundum, *prep. (g. acc.) following, in accordance with* sēcūris, -is, *f. (acc. -im), axe*; the axes and rods (fasces) were the signs of the consul's office  
sēd, *conj. but (on the other hand)*; non solum...sed etiam, *not only... but also*

sēdēo, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I sit*  
sēdēs, -is, *f. seat, abode*  
sēditio, -ionis, *f. rebellion, sedition*  
sēgēs, sēgētis, *f. cornfield, harvest*  
segnities, -ei, *f. slothfulness*  
semel, *adv. once (for all)*  
semper, *adv. always, ever*  
senātorius, -a, -um, *senatorial*  
senātus, -ūs, *m. the senate*  
senectus, -ūtis, *f. old age*  
senex, senis, *m. old man*  
senior, *see* Par. 69  
sensus, -ūs, *m. a sense*  
sententia, -ae, *f. opinion*  
sentio, -si, -sum, 4, *feel, perceive*  
sēpēlio, sēpēliui and -iī, sēpultum, 4, *bury*

September, -bris, -bre, *of September*; *see* Par. 84; septuāgēsimus (81)

sēquor, sēcūtus, 3, *v. dep. follow*  
sērēnus, -a, -um, *adj. clear*  
sermo, -ōnis, *m. a discourse*  
sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3, *plant, sow*  
sēro, *late*; sērius, *too late*  
serpens, -ntis, *f. serpent*  
sertum, -i, *n. garland*  
sērus, -a, -um, *late*  
servio, -ii, -itum, 4, *I am a slave to, I serve (g. dat.)*  
servitūs, -ūtis, *f. slavery*  
servo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *watch, preserve*; s. fidem, *I keep my word*  
servus, -i, *m. slave*  
sēsē, *an emphatic form of sē*  
seu, *conj. whether*; seu...seu,

*whether...or; (not used like utrum an...in dep. sentences)*

sēvērūs, -a, -um, *adj. severe*  
sī, *conj. if* (125); sī quis, sī qui, *if any man, any men* (294); *with pres. and imperf. subj. (295)*

sic, *adv. thus, so*

Sicilia, -ae, *f. Sicily*

sīdus, -ēris, *n. star*

signum, -i, *n. a sign, signal*

silentium, -iī, *n. silence*

silva, -ae, *f. a wood* [66, 60]

similis, -e, *(g. gen. or dat.) like*,

simul, *adv. at the same time*; simul

...simul, *at once...and*

simulac, *adv. as soon as*

simulacrum, -i, *n. an image, statue*

simulatio, -ōnis, *f. a pretence*

simulo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *pretend*

sine, *prep. (g. abl.) without*

singuli, -ae, -a, *one a-piece, one by one* (77, 314)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left*

sino, sivi, situm, 3, *suffer*

sinus, -ūs, *m. a fold (of the garment, especially about the breast)*; pocket

sitis, -is, *f. (acc. -im) thirst*; siti mōri, *to die of (lit. with) thirst*

sive, *conj. whether*; sive...sive, *whether...or, (not used like utrum...an in Dependent Questions)*; sive loquor, sive taceo, patri non placēo, *whether I speak or hold my tongue, I cannot please my father.*

sōcer, -ēri, *m. father-in-law*

sōcius, -i, *m. a partner, ally, companion*

Sōcrātes, -is, *m. Socrates*

sōl, sōlis, *m. sun*

sōlēo, -ītus sum, -ēre, 2, *v. n. I am accustomed*

sōlitus, -a, -um, *customary*

Sōlōn, -ōnis, *m. Solon*

sollertia, -ae, *f. skill, subtlety*

solum, -i, *n. ground, soil*

solum, *adv. only, alone*  
 solus, -a, -um, *adj. gen. sing. -ūs, dat. -ī, alone*  
 solvo, solvi, solutum, 3, *I loosen, pay; s. famem, I break my fast; impar solvendo sum, I am not equal to paying, i.e. insolvent*  
 somnus, -i, *m. sleep*  
 sonitus, -ūs, *m. a sound, noise*  
 sonus, -antis, *guilty*  
 sonus, -i, *m., sound*  
 Sophocles, -is, *m. Sophocles*  
 sopor, -oris, *m. slumber*  
 soror, -oris, *f. sister*  
 sorus, -tis, *f. lot, fate*  
 fortior, -fortius, 4, *dep. draw lots*  
 Sparta, -ae, *f. Sparta*  
 spectat, -ti, *f. appearance (182)*  
 specto, -avi, -itum, 1, *look at*  
 speculator, -ator, 1, *v. dep. I spy out*  
 specus, -us, *m. cave*  
 sperno, sperni, speritum, 3, *despise*  
 spero, -avi, -itum, 1, *I hope*  
 spes, -ei, *f. hope*  
 spiro, -avi, -itum, 1, *breathe*  
 spiritus, -us, *m. breath*  
 splendidus, -a, -um, *splendid, bright*  
 splendor, -oris, *m. brightness*  
 spolia, -orum, *n. pl. spoils*  
 spondeo, spondi, sponsam, 2, *pledge, promise to pay, betroth*  
 sponte (*adv. phrase*) meū, tuū, &c., *of my, your, &c., own accord*  
 statim, *adv. immediately*  
 statio, -onis, *f. a post, station*  
 statua, -ae, *f. statue*  
 statuo, -ui, -itum, 3, *determine*  
 stella, -ae, *f. a star*  
 sterto, -tui, 3, *snore*  
 stipendium, -ii, *n. (military) pay*  
 sto, steti, statum, 1, *I stand, abide by (with abl. or in and abl.) stare promissis, to abide by one's promises; a Tullio stare, to side with Tullius; magno pretio stat, it costs a great price*  
 strenue, *adv. vigorously*

strenuus, -a, -um, *vigorous (68)*  
 strepitus, -us, *m. noise, din*  
 struo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *pile up, construct*  
 studio, -ui, 2, *I am eager, zealous*  
 studiosus, -a, -um, *adj. zealous, eager after (g. gen.)*  
 studium, -ii, *n. zeal, a pursuit, study*  
 stultitia, -ae, *f. folly*  
 stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*  
 suadeo, -asi, -asum, 2, *(g. dat.) advise, persuade*  
 suavis, -e, *adj. sweet, delightful*  
 sub, *prep. (g. abl. or acc.) up to, under; (of time) about (180)*  
 subeo, -ii, -itum (248), *go up to*  
 subito, *adv. suddenly*  
 subitus, -a, -um, *sudden*  
 subsequor, -ctus, 3, *follow up*  
 subsum, *no perf., v. irreg. I am under, amongst. [dat.] help*  
 subvenio, -veni, -ventum, 4, *(g. succedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, follow, turn out; res mihi bene successit, the matter turned out well for me*  
 Suevi, -orum, *the Suevi*  
 sufficio, -feci, -fectum, 3, *suffice (g. dat.)*  
 sum, *I am, p. 79, Par. 268, 142d*  
 sumo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *take, assume*  
 summus, -a, -um, (69) *highest, utmost; summā celeritate, with all speed; summus mons, the highest part of the mountain*  
 super, *prep. (g. acc. or abl.) over, upon, concerning (180)*  
 superbia, -ae, *f. pride*  
 superbus, -a, -um, *proud*  
 supero, -avi, -itum, 1, *overcome*  
 supersum, -fui, -esse, *v. irreg. I remain over, survive (g. dat.)*  
 superus, -a, -um, *adj. upper (69)*  
 suppedito, -avi, -itum, 1, *supply*  
 supplex, -icis, *adj. suppliant (47, 48)*  
 supplicium, -ii, *n. punishment*  
 supra, *prep. (g. acc.) above*



suprēmus, -a, -um, *superl. of sū-*  
*pērus, highest; (of time) last*  
 surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3, *rise*  
 suspīcio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3, *under-*  
*take*  
 suspīcio, -iōnis, *f. suspicion*  
 sustento, 1, *sustain*  
 sūus, -a, -um, (98 and p. 328); suis  
*impērat, he orders his (men) (34)*  
 Sŷria, -ae, *f. Syria*

Tābernāculum, -i, *n. tent*  
 tūbesco, -ui, 3, *I decay*  
 tāctō, -ūi, -itum, 2, *I am silent*  
 taedēt, -dūit or pertaesum est, *v.*  
*impers. it disgusts, wearies (219)*  
 taeter, -tra, -um, *foul*  
 tālentum, -i, *a talent, i.e. a sum*  
*of money, £240*  
 tālis, -e, *of, such*  
 tam, *adv. s. a degree, such;*  
*tam prāve, how depraved*  
*conduct; very, how longum*  
*iter, this very long journey (228)*  
 tāmen, *conj. yet, however*  
 tamquam, *conj. just as; tū t. thē-*  
*saurum hābēo, I consider you as*  
*a treasure; t. sī consul esset,*  
*just as if he were consul*  
 tandē, *at last; cur (or quid) tan-*  
*dem? why indeed? pray why?*  
 tantum, *adv. (so much and no more,*  
*hence) only; nōmīnū tantum*  
*mīhī nōtus est, he is known to*  
*me by name and no more; unus*  
*tantum, only one*  
 tantus, -a, -tum, *so great (a); (as*  
*a noun) tantum pecūniae, so*  
*much (of) money; (often used,*  
*after a Pron., for "great") haec*  
*tanta cūlāmītās, this great calam-*  
*ity; tanti, see Par. 283, 284; tan-*  
*tum...quantum, as much...as*  
 tardus, -a, -um, *slow*  
 Tarquīnius, -i, *m. Tarquin*  
 Tartārūs, -a, -um, *Tartarcan, be-*  
*longing to Tartarus, the region*

*of the punishment of the wicked*  
*dead*  
 Taurus, -i, *m. Mount Taurus*  
 taurus, -i, *m. a bull*  
 tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I cover*  
 tellūs, -ūris, *f. earth, the goddess*  
*Earth*  
 tēlum, -i, *n. dart, missile [ness*  
*tēmēritās, -ātis, f. recklessness, rash-*  
*tempestās, -ātis, f. tempest*  
 templum, -i, *n. temple*  
 tempus, -ōris, *n. time; tempōri*  
*cēdere, to yield to circumstances*  
 tēnēo, -ūi, tentum, 2, *I hold, re-*  
*tain*  
 tēner, -ūra, -erum, *tender, soft*  
 tēnuis, -e, *thin*  
 tēnūs, *prep. (g. abl.) as far as;*  
*follows its case); verbo tēnus,*  
*so far as words go*  
 tergum, -i, *n. back; terga dant*  
*mīhī, they flee before me*  
 terni, -ae, -a, *three a-piece (814)*  
 tēro, trivi, tritum, 3 *rub, waste;*  
*tempus tērimus, we are wasting*  
*time*  
 terra, -ae, *f. the earth, land; torrū*  
*mārique, by sea and land (ad-*  
*verbial local abl.)*  
 terrēo, -ūi, -itum, 2, *terrify,*  
*frighten*  
 terror, -ōris, *m. terror, alarm*  
 tertius, -a, -um, *see Par. 81*  
 testāmentum, -i, *n. will, testament*  
 testis, -is, *m. witness*  
 testor, -ātus, 1, *testify*  
 Thēmistoclēs, -is, *m. Themistocles*  
 Thrāx, Thrācis, *m. a Thracian;*  
*Thrācum est, it is the mark of,*  
*i.e. like, Thracians*  
 Tibērīus, -ii, *m. Tiberius, the nume-*  
*of the second Roman emperor,*  
*Tiberius Caesar*  
 tignārius, -a -um, *having to do with*  
*beams; fāber t. builder, carpenter*  
 tigris, -is, or -īdis, *c. a tiger,*  
*tigress*

tīmō, -ūi, 2, *fear*  
 tīmīdus, -a, -um, *adj. timid*  
 tīmōr, -ōris, *m. fear*  
 tōlēro, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *endure*  
 tollo, sustuli, sublatum, 3, *raise, take away; tollunt risum, clāmōrem, &c. they raise a laugh, shout, &c.*  
 Tōnans, -ntis, *m. the Thunderer, a name of Jupiter*  
 tōnat, -ūit, -āre, 1, *v. impers. it thunders*  
 tonsor, -ōris, *m. barber*  
 torrō, torui, tostum, 2, *parch, roast*  
 tot, *indecl. adj. so many; hāc tot cālāmītātēs, these numerous calamities*  
 tōtiens, *adv. so many times*  
 tōtus, -a, -um, *adj. whole, all (85)*  
 trabs, trābis, *f. beam*  
 tracto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *I handle, deal with*  
 trādo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *deliver; traditum est, it has been handed down*  
 tradūco, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I lead across*  
 trāho, -āxi, -actum, 3, *I draw, drag*  
 trājicio, (*also spell trāicio*) *same as transjicio; (1) throw across, carry across, trājicio exercitum, I lead an army across; (2) carry myself across, i.e. cross, trājicio flūmen, I cross a stream*  
 tranquillus, -a, -um, *adj. calm*  
 trans, *prep. g. acc. across*  
 Transalpīnus, -a, -um, *beyond the Alps* [*over*  
 transēo, -ii, -itum, 4, (241) *cross*  
 transfigo, -fixi, -fixum, 3, *transfix*  
 transjicio, *see trājicio*  
 transversus, -a, -um, *turned across; t. digītus or unguis, a finger's, or nail's breadth* [*piece*  
 trēcēni, -ae, -a, *three hundred a-*  
 trēcēnti, -ae, -o, *three hundred*

trēmo, trēmui, tremītum, 3, *tremble*  
 trēs, tria, *see Par. 68*  
 tribūnus, -i, *m. tribune*  
 tribūo, -ūi, -ātum, 3, *give, assign*  
 tribus, -ūs, *f. tribe*  
 tribūtum, -i, *n. tribute*  
 triennium, -i, *n. three years*  
 trīni, -ae, -a, *three (used with nouns like littērae) (318)*  
 tristis, -e, *sad*  
 trīumpho, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *enjoy a triumph, i.e. a triumphal procession granted by the Romans to distinguished generals*  
 Trōja, -ae, *f. Troy*  
 Trōjānus, -a, -um, *Trojan*  
 tū, *see p. 45*  
 tūba, -ae, *f. trumpet*  
 tūcōr, tūtus, 2, *guard, protect*  
 Tullia, -iae, *f.*  
 Tullius, -i, *m.*  
 tum, *adv. conj. then during that time, cum...tum, not only ...but also (317)*  
 tūmīdus, -a, -um, *swelling, swollen*  
 tunc, *adv. then, at that time*  
 turba, -ae, *f. crowd*  
 turbo, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *disturb, throw into confusion; turbātum est, a riot was made*  
 turbulētus, -a, -um, *turbulent*  
 turdus, -i, *m. thrush*  
 turpis, -e, *base, disgraceful*  
 turpītudo, -inis, *f. disgrace*  
 turris, -is, *f. tower*  
 tussis, -is, *f. (acc. -im, abl. -i,) cough*  
 tuto, *adv. safely; -us, -a, -um, safe*  
 tūus, -a, -um, *pron. adj. thy, thine*  
 tyrannus, -i, *m. despot, tyrant*  
 Ūbi, *adv. where*  
 ulciscor, ultūs, 3 (*v. dep.*) *avenge*  
 ullus, -a, -um, *adj. (gen. sing. -ūs, dat. sing. -ī), any (85, 87, 309)*  
 ulmus, -i, *f. elm*

ultimus, -a, -um, *see* Par. 69  
 ultrā, *prep. g. acc. on the farther side of, beyond*  
 Ūlyssēs, -is, *m. Ulysses*  
 uncia, -ae, *f. inch*  
 unda, -ae, *water*  
 unguis, -is, *m. nail*  
 unquam, *adv. at any time, ever*  
 unā, *at the same time or place; together*  
 ūnicē, *adv. singularly*  
 ūnus, -a, -um, *adj. (74), one; in tē uno, in you alone (96); spēs quam ūnam hābui, the only hope I had; omnes ad ūnum, all to*  
 urbs, urbis, *f. city* [a man  
 uro, ussi, ustum, 3, *burn*  
 ūt, *conj. that, in order that; often rendered by Eng. "to" (Par. 143); ut non (when to be used for ne) Par. 296; (with indic., "when," "as")*  
 ūter, -rā, -rum (*gen. -rūs, dat. -rī*), *which of two? u. hōrum, which of these two (85)? ūterque, utrāque, utrūque, either, both; dux ūterque (sing.) both leaders*  
 ūtilis, -e, *useful*  
 ūtilitās, -ātis, *f. utility, service*  
 ūtinam! *conj. O that, would that! (g. subj., see Par. 330)*  
 ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep. I use (207)*  
 utrūque, *adv. on both sides*  
 utrū, *conj. whether (171, 174)*  
 uxor, -ōris, *f. a wife*  
 Vācūus, -a, -um, *empty of (g. abl.)*  
 valdē (*i.e. validē*) *adv. strongly, exceedingly*  
 vālēo, -ui, -itum, 2, *I am in good health; vālēte, farewell!*  
 vālētūdo, -inis, *f. health*  
 vālīdus, -a, -um, *strong*  
 vallis, -is, *f. a valley*  
 vallum, -i, *n. the camp palisade composed of valli (see vallus)*

vallus, -i, *the stake borne by each Roman soldier for the formation of the vallum* [hood  
 vānītās, -ātis, *f. emptiness, false-*  
 vārius, -a, -um, *different, various*  
 vastus, -a, -um, *vast*  
 vasto, -āvi, -ātum, 1, *lay waste*  
 vē, *conj. or (an enclitic form of vēr)*  
 vectigāl, -ālis, *n. a tax*  
 vēhēmēns, -ntis, *vehement, warm*  
 vēhēmēnter, *adv. vehemently, warmly; -issimū, very warmly*  
 vēhēmēntia, -ae, *f. vehemence, passion* [ride  
 vēho, -xi, -ctum, 3, *carry (pass. vēr, or (if you like), Par. 157a; hic discessus vēr pōtius fūga, this departure or rather (if you will have strict correctness) flight; even, hūc vēr pūcro faciē est, this is easy even for a boy (141a); (with superl.) vēr, Stoicōrum vēr maximus est, he is the very greatest of the Stoics*  
 vēlōx, -ōcis, *adj. swift*  
 vēnātor, -ōris, *m. hunter*  
 vendo, -didi, -ditum, 3, *sell*  
 vēnēnātus, -a, -um, *poisoned*  
 vēnēnum, -i, *n. poison*  
 vēnērōr, -ātus, 1, *v. dep. reverence, worship*  
 vēnīa, -ae, *f. pardon, dūre veniām ei, to pardon him*  
 vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4, *I come*  
 vēnor, -atus, 1, *v. dep. I hunt*  
 venter, -tris, *m. the stomach*  
 ventīto, -āvi, 1, *v. freq. I come frequently*  
 ventus, -i, *m. the wind*  
 Vēnūs, -ēris, *f. Venus*  
 vēr, vēris, *n. the spring*  
 verber, -ēris, *n. lash, stripe*  
 verbum, -i, *n. word; verbo tēnus, so far as words go*  
 vērē, *adv. truthfully, accurately*  
 vērēor, -ītus, 2, *fear, reverence (301)*

Vergilius, -i, *m.* Virgil  
 verisimilis, -e, *adj.* likely, probable  
 veritas, -atis, *f.* truth  
 vĕro, *conj.* however, truly (139a)  
 versus, -us, *m.* line, verse  
 versus, *prep.* with *acc.* towards  
 (only of place or direction)  
 vertex, -icis, *m.* top  
 verto, vorti, versum, 3, turn; in  
 fugam vertere, to put to flight  
 verus, -a, -um, true [abl.]  
 vescor, 3, *v. dep.* feed on (*g.*)  
 vesper, -pĕri, *m.* evening  
 vesperascit, -avit, -ascero, *v.*  
 imperz. evening approaches  
 Vesta, -ae, *f.* Vesta, the goddess of  
 fire and the hearth  
 vĕstalis, -e, Vestal, belonging to  
 Vesta  
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours  
 vestimentum, -i, *n.* clothing  
 vestio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4, clothe  
 vestis, -is, *f.* clothing, garment  
 vestitus, -us, *m.* clothing  
 vĕtus, vĕtĕris, old (61)  
 vexo, -avi, -atum, 1, I vex, harass  
 vi, see vis  
 via, -ae, *f.* way, road  
 victor, -oris, *m.* conqueror  
 victoria, -ae, *f.* victory  
 victus, -a, -um, *pass.* part. of vinco  
 vicus, -i, *m.* village  
 vidĕo, vidi, visum, 2, see (in passive)  
 seem, appear; quid tibi vidĕtur?  
 What seems (good) to you, i.e.  
 what do you think?  
 vĭgil, *gen.* -ilis, watchful (47)  
 vigilia, -ae, *f.* night watch; the  
 night from 6 P.M. to 6 A.M. was  
 divided into four "watches"  
 vĭgilo, -avi, -atum, 1, I watch, I  
 am awake  
 vilis, -e, *adj.* cheap, common  
 vincio, -xi, -nctum, 4, bind  
 vinco, vici, victum, 3, conquer  
 vinculum, -i, *n.* a chain, bond

vinĕtum, -i, *n.* vineyard, vines  
 vinum, -i, *n.* wine  
 violā, -ae, *f.* violet  
 violentia, -ae, *f.* violence  
 vires, -ium, *f. pl.* strength; see vis  
 Virgilius, -ii, see Vergilius  
 virga, -ae, *f.* rod, stick  
 virgo, -inis, *f.* maiden  
 vir, viri, *m.* hero, man  
 virga, -ae, *f.* twig, rod, stick  
 vĭridis, -e, green  
 virtus, -utis, *f.* valour, virtue  
 vis, irreg. see Par. 311; force,  
 violence, power, efficacy; *pl.* vires,  
 strength; see also volo, p. 238  
 viso, -visi, 3, (*v. freq.*) come to  
 see, visit  
 visus, -us, *m.* sight  
 vita, -ae, *f.* life  
 vitiosus, -a, -um, full of vice,  
 vicious  
 vitis, -is, *f.* vine  
 vitium, -i, *n.* vice, fault; dāro  
 vitio, to impute as a fault (Par.  
 268)  
 vito, -avi, -atum, 1, avoid  
 vitupĕro, -avi, -atum, revile  
 vivo, vixi, victum, 3, live  
 vix, *adv.* scarcely  
 volo, -avi, -atum, 1, I fly  
 volo, vŏlūi, vellĕ, *v. irreg.* I wish,  
 am willing; idem velle, to wish  
 for the same thing (pp. 128-130)  
 vŏluntas, -atis, *f.* a wish, will  
 vŏluptas, -tatis, *f.* pleasure  
 vŏro, -avi, -atum, 1, devout  
 vos, see p. 45.  
 vox, vŏcis, *f.* a voice  
 Vulcānus, -i, *m.* Vulcan  
 vulnĕro, -avi, -atum, 1, wound  
 vulnus, -ĕris, *n.* a wound  
 vulpĕs, -is, *f.* fox  
 vultur, -ŭris, *m.* a vulture  
 vultus, -us, *m.* countenance, looks  
 Xēnŏphŏn, -ontis, *m.* Xenophon  
 Xerxēs, -is, *m.* Xerxes

## APPENDIX XI.

## VOCABULARY—II.

ENGLISH INTO LATIN.<sup>1</sup>

**A** (i.e. a certain), quidam, quoddam, quoddam (pron. neut. quiddam); a man said to me, quidam mihi dixit; he had a wonderful power of speaking, erat homini mira quaedam dicendi facultas ability (mental), ingenium, -i, n. able, to be, possum, potui, posso; see Par. 229

abode, sēdes, -is, f.

abound, abundo, 1

about (around), circum (g. acc.; also adv.); (concerning) de (g. abl.); (nearly) fere

above, super (g. acc. and abl.); from above, desuper, adv.

abroad (rest) foris; (motion) foras

absent, to be, absum, fui, fuisse;

absent, adj. absens, -ntis

abstain from, abstinere, -ui, -tentum, 2 (g. abl.)

abundantly, abundanter

accept, accipio, -cepi, -ceptum, 3

acceptable, gratus, -a, -um

accident, casus, -us, m.; by accident, casu; fortē (adv.)

accompany, comitor, 1, dep.

accomplish, perficio, -feci, -fectum, 3; without accomplishing anything, re infecta

accord, of his, my own accord, sponte sua, mei, &c.

accordingly, itaque, igitur (adv.). N.B. igitur should not stand first in a clause

account, on account of, propter, or ob, prep. g. acc.; on that account, ob id, ideo

accurate (of things, not persons), accuratus, -a, -um

accusation, crimen, -inis, n.

accuse, accuso, 1

accused (man), the, reus, -i, m.

accuser, accusator, -oris, m. [dep. accustomed, to be, soleo, solitus, 2, Achilles, Achilles, -is, m.

acknowledge, agnosco, -novi, -nitum, 3

acquire with, to be, see to know acquire, to, adipiscor, adeptus, 3, dep.

acquit, absolvo, -vi, -utum, 3; (with g. of charge, Par. 290)

acre, iuger, -eris, n.

across, trans (g. acc.)

<sup>1</sup> In this Vocabulary it has not been thought necessary to write the terminations of the regular Conjugations 1, 2, and 4, i.e. -vi, -utum; -ui, -itum; -ivi, -itum.

act, an, factum, -i, n.; act, to, ago, ēgi, actum, 3  
*Actium*, Actium, -i, n.  
*active*, strenuus, -a, -um  
*actor*, an, mīmus, -i, m.  
*adapted*, aptus, -a, um  
*add*, addo, -didi, -ditum, 3  
*addresses*, allūquor, -cātus, 3, dep.  
*admire*, admiror, 1, dep.  
*admiration*, admiratio, -onis, f.  
*admit*, adimitto, -mīi, -missum, 3;  
 (confess) confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.  
*admonish*, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2  
*adorn*, orno, 1  
*advance*, to, prōgrēdior, -gressus, 3, dep.; prōcedo, -cessi, -cessum, 3  
*advantage*, commōdum, -i, n.  
*adversary*, adversus, -a, -um; iniquus, -a, -um  
*adversity*, rēs adversa  
*advice*, consilium, -i, n.; *by my*, his, *advice*, inī, eo, auctōre (197)  
*advise*, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)  
*Aetna*, Aetna, -ae, f.  
*affair*, rēs, rei, f.  
*affection*, caritās, -ātis, f.; *filial* affection, pietās, -itās, f.  
*affectionate*, carus, -a, -um; pius, -a, -um  
*affirm*, asserō, 1; affirmo, 1  
*afflict*, ango, 3; vexo, 1  
*afford*, praebeo, -ui, -itum, 2  
*afraid*, to be, timeo, 2; vereor, veritus, 2, dep. (constr. Par. 301)  
*Africa*, Africa, -ae, f.  
*after*, post (g. acc.); *after* (conj.), postquam, (1) foll. by perf., except where (2) the interval is defined; (1) *after he had come*, postquam venit; (2) *ten days after he had come*, decimo die postquam venerat  
*afterwards*, postea; *a few days afterwards*, paucis post diebus (318)  
*again*, rursus, (iterum, a second

time); *again and again*, iterum atque iterum  
*against*, contrā, adversus, in (all g. acc.); *he was sent against the enemy*, missus est adversus hostes; *against the laws*, contrā iūs; *against one's will*, invitus, -a, -um; *she came a. &c.* invita venit  
*Agamemnon*, Agamemnon, -ōnis, m.  
*age*, aetās, ātis, f.; *old age*, senectūs, -utis, f.; *age*, an, saeculum, -i, n.  
*Agésilas*, Agēsilaus, -i, m.  
*ago*, ābhinc (with acc. or abl.); *two years ago*, ābhinc biennio, or biennium  
*agree*, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (foll. by dat., or cum)  
*agreeable*, iucundus, -a, -um  
*agreement*, consensus, -ūs, m.  
*Ah!* interject. O! foll. by acc.; *Ah, the lucky fellow!* O felicem hominem!  
*aid*, auxilium, -ii, n.; *aid*, to, subvenio, -veni, -ventum, 4  
*air*, aer, aeris, m.  
*Ajax*, Ajax, -jācis, m.  
*alas!* heu! or eheu!  
*Alban*, Albānus, -a, -um  
*Alexander*, Alexander, -dri, m.  
*alliance*, sociētās, -ātis, f.  
*alien*, aliēnus, -a, -um  
*alike*, pariter  
*alive*, vivus, -a, -um  
*all*, omnis, -e; (all) men, omnes; *from all sides*, undique; *all the best citizens*, optimus quisque civium; *all the food we had*, was consumed, quidquid cibi nobis fuerat, consumptum est  
*allow*, sino, sivi, situm, 3  
*allure*, allūcio, -lexi, -lectum, 3  
*ally*, socius, -i, m.  
*almost*, paene, fere  
*alone*, solus, -a, -um; unus, -a, -um (85); *Cato alone thought otherwise*, Catōni uni aliter visum est

along (*prep.*), per (*g. acc.*)

Alps, Alpes, -ium, f. pl.

already, jam

also, (1) *etiam*, mostly before, (2) *quôquē*, *alicays* after, the word modified; not only...but also, *nōn solum...sēd etiam*, or, *cum...tum*

altar, *āra*, -ae, f.

altogether, *omnino*

alicays, *sempor*

ambassador, *lēgātus*, -i, m.

ambush, *insidiae*, -arum, f.

amiss, ~~something amiss~~ has happened to him, *aliquid eī hēmānītus accidit*

among, *inter* (*g. acc.*); among the Romans, *apud Romanos*; they are fighting amongst one another, *inter sē pugnant*

ancestors, *māiores*, -um, m. pl.

ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um; *priscus*, -a, -um; *vētus*, -ūris; among the ancients, *apud antiquos*

and, *et*; *atquē*; -*quē* (Par. 37); and no one, never, nothing, &c., *nec quisquam*, *unquam*, *quidquam*, &c.

anger, *ira*, -ae, f.; in or with a., *iracundē*, *summā irā*, or *cum irā* (Par. 276)

angry, to be, *irascor*, *irātus*, 3, dep.; angry, *irātus*, -a, -um

animal, *ānimal*, -ālīs, n.; wild animal, *fēra*, -ae, f.

announce, *nuntio*, 1

annually, *quōtānnīs*

another, *ālius*, -a, -ud; the other, *alter*, -ēra, -ērūm, (Par. 86)

answer, to, *respondeo*, -di, -nsum, 2 (*g. dat. of pers.*); answer, an, *responsum*, -i, n.; to make answer, *respondēre*; I was answered, *responsum est mīhī*

Antonius, *Antōnius*, -i, m.

any, any one (in neg. compar. and interrog. sentences), *quisquam* or

*ullus* (309); (with *num*, *sī*, *nē*) *quīs* (294); any (you please), *quīlibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet*, (*pron. neut. quidlibet*); the enemy can attack us at any time (they please), *quōlibet tempore*

anywhere, *usquam*

apiece, (trans. by distributive numeral, see Par. 77), he gave us three denarii apiece, *nōbīs ternos dēnārios dedit*

Apollo, *Apollo*, -īnis, m. [-ni, 2

appear, *videor*, *visus*, 2; appāreo,

appearance, *spēcies*, -ei, f.

appease, *plāco*, 1

apple, *pōmum*, -i, n.; mālum, -i, n.

appoint, *constituo*, -ui, -itum, 3

approach, to, *ādeo*, -ii, -itum, (*fol. by acc.*); accēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3, (*fol. by ad*); an, *ādītus*, -ūs, m.

approve, *prōbo*, 1; a man of approved excellence, *vir spectātāe* (or, more often, -ā) *virtūtis* (or -ē)

apt, *aptus*, -a, -um

Archimedes, *Archīmēdēs*, -is, m.

ardour, ardor, -ūris, m.

Argos, *Argi*, -ōrum, m.

Arion, *Arion*, -ōnis, m.

Arioristus, *Ariorīstus*, -i, m.

arise, *ōrior*, *ortus*, 4, dep.; (from bed, seat, &c.) *surgō*, *surrexi*, *surrectum*, 3

Aristippus, *Aristīppus*, -i, m.

arm, an, *brāchium*, -i, n.; arm, *to*, *armo*, 1

armed, *armātus*, -a, -um

arms (military), *arma*, -ōrum, n.

army, *exerōitus*, -ūs, m. [*adv.*]

around, *circum* (*prep. g. acc.*, and

*Arpinum*, *Arpīnum*, -i, n.

arrange, *digero*, -gessi, -gestum, 3

arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, m.

arrive, *pervēnio*, -vēni, -ventum, 4 (*fol. by ad*); we arrived at Rome, *Rōmam pervēnimus* (249)

arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.

art, ars, -tis, f.

as, ut; *as if*, tanquam, quasi; *as long as*, donec; *as far as*, tenus (g. abl.); *as*, (often trans. by Apposition), you do many things, as a boy, which you will not do, as an old man, multa, puer, facis, quae, senex, non facies; *as quickly as possible*, quam celerim: (sometimes rel. pron.) he is the same as he always was, idem est qui (or ac) semper fuit; for the same price as, i.e., for which, eodem pretio quo; ("as" is sometimes read. by the dat. of purpose) he sent a legion as reinforcement, misit legionem subsidio (266); *as much money as*, tantum pecuniae quantum ascend, ascende, -ndi, -nsum, 3 ascertain, cognosco, cognovi, cogniti, 3; compério, compéri, compertum, 1

ashamed, to be, pudet, -uit, 2 (impers.); *I am ashamed of doing, having done*, pudet me facere, fecisse (219)

Asia, Asia, -ae, f.

ask, to, (1) meaning question, rogo, 1; interrûgo, 1; quaero, -sivi, -situm, 3 (with ex, de, or a); (2) meaning beg, rogo, 1; oro, 1 (143); (peace) pacem petoro; he was asked his opinion, sententiam rogatus est

ass, asinus, -i, m.

assassin, sicarius, -i, m.

assault, to, oppugno, 1; assault, an, impetus, -us, m.

assemble, convénio, -véni, -ventum, 4 (intrans.); convoco, 1 (trans.)

assembly, concilium, -ii, n; conventus, -us, m.

assist, subveni, -véni, -ventum, 4 (g. dat.)

assistance, auxilium, -i, n.

assume (take), sumo, sumpsit, sumptum, 3

astonishment, admiratio, -onis, f.  
at, apud (g. acc.); ad (g. acc.); at all, omnino; at least, saltem; at last, at length, tandem, aliquando; at once, simul, statim  
Athens, Aethenae, -arum, f. pl.

Athenian, Aetheniensis, -o

attack, to, aggredior, gressus, 3, dep.; oppugno, 1 (to attack a town); attack, an, impetus, -us, m.

attempt, to, conor, 1, dep. (this v. is an ecc. to the rule (143) about v. of "striving"; it is foll. by inf.); attempt, an, conatus, -us, m. [dat.

attention, to pay, operam dare, g.

Attica, Attica, -ae, f.

attract, traho, -xi, -ctum, 3

audacity, audacia, -ae, f.

augur, augur, -uris, m.

augury, augurium, -i, n; omen, -inis, n.

Augustus, Augustus, -i, m.

auspice, auspiciu, -i, n.

author, auctor, -oris, m.

authority, auctoritas, -itatis, f.

autumn, autumnus, -i, m.

auxiliaries, auxilia, -orum, n.

avail, valeo, -ui, 2; threats? what

avail, quid valent minae?

avarice, avaritia, -ae, f.

avaricious, avarus, -a, -um

avenge, ulciscor, -ultus, 3, dep.

avoid, vito, 1; fugio, fugi, 3

await, I, expecto, 1; death awaits us, mors nos manet

awake, expergiscor, -perrectus, 3, dep.

aware of, gnarus, -a, -um (g. gen.)

awful, dirus, -a, -um

axe, securis, -is, f.; acc. -em or -im, abl. -i

Bacchus, Bacchus, -i, m.

back, tergum, -i, n.; the enemy



*turn their backs, i.e. flee, terga dant; drive back, see drive*  
*bad, m̃lus, -a, -um; badly, m̃lẽ;*  
*bad men, impr̃bi*  
*baggage, imp̃dimenta, -õrum, n.*  
*Balbus, Balbus, -i, m.*  
*banish, pello, pep̃li, pulsum, 3;*  
*expello, -p̃li, -pulsum, 3*  
*bankrupt, impar solvendo, i.e. unequal to paying*  
*banquet, ep̃ulum, -i, n.; pl. epulae, ãrum, f. (the sing. mostly means a public banquet)*  
*barbarian, barb̃rus, -a, -um*  
*barbarous, f̃rus, -a, -um*  
*barber, tonsor, -õris, m.*  
*bargain, to make a, p̃ciscor, p̃ctus, 3, dep.*  
*barn, horreum, -i, n.*  
*barren, st̃r̃lis, -e*  
*base, turpis, -e*  
*baseness, turp̃tudo, -ĩnis, f.*  
*battle, proelium, -i, n.; pugna, -ae, f.; see Cannae*  
*beak, rostrum, -i, n.*  
*bear, to, f̃ro, -t̃li, -l̃tum, ferre*  
*beard, barba, -ae, f.*  
*beast, bestia, -ae, f.; of burden, jumentum, -i, n.*  
*beat, caedo, oc̃cidi, caesum, 3*  
*beaten, to be, ṽp̃ulo, 1*  
*beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum*  
*beauty, forma, -ae, f.; pulchritudo, -inis, f.*  
*because, quia, quod*  
*become, fio, factus, fĩri (258); it becomes me, d̃cet m̃e (220)*  
*bed, lectus, -i, m.*  
*beech-tree, f̃igus, -i, f.*  
*befall (amiss), acc̃do, -ĩdi, 3; (good) contingo, -t̃gi, -tactum, 3 (both g. dat.)*  
*best, d̃cet, -uit, 2, impers.*  
*before, (prep.) ant̃e (g. acc.); in the presence of, cõram, (g. abl.); (conj.) priusquam, ant̃equam; before-hand, (adv.) ant̃eã, ant̃e; a few*

*years before, paucis ant̃e annis; the day before, see "day"; before the last, extr̃mis prior*  
*beg, ðro, 1; beggar, mend̃cus, -i, m.*  
*begin, inc̃pio, -c̃pi, -ceptum, 3; (a battle), iñeo, iñii, iñitum, iñre; before a pass. inf. use coepi, coeptus sum, coepisse, v. def.; the city began to be besieged, urbs coepit (or coepta est) obs̃d̃ri*  
*beginning, iñitum, -i, n.*  
*behind, post (g. acc.)*  
*behold, asp̃icio, -exi, -ectum, 3; video, ṽdi, visum, 2*  
*behoves, it, õportet, -uit, 2*  
*believe, cr̃do, -d̃di, -ditum, 3 (g. dat. of person); I believe that he will come, cr̃do eum vent̃urum esse; I believe him, cr̃do ei*  
*Belgae, Belgae, -ãrum, m.*  
*belly, venter, -tris, m.*  
*below, inf̃ra (g. acc.)*  
*benefactor, b̃ñefactor, -õris, m.*  
*benefit, to, b̃ñefacio, -f̃eci, -factum, 3; pr̃sum, -fui, esse (dat.); benefit, a, b̃ñefactum, -i, n.*  
*benevolence, b̃ñeṽolentia, -ae, f.*  
*benevolent, benevolus, -a, -um (68a)*  
*beseech, ðro, 1 (143)*  
*beside, iuxt̃e (g. acc.); praeter (g. acc.); besides (prep.) praeter (g. acc.) (183); (adv.) praet̃er̃eã*  
*besiege, obs̃deo, -s̃di, -sc̃sum, 2*  
*best, opt̃imus, -a, -um; I do my best to write, id ãgo ut scribam*  
*betake, conf̃ero, -t̃li, -ferre, col̃l̃atum; r̃c̃ipio, -c̃pi, -ceptum, 3; he betook himself to Corinth, Cõrinthum se cont̃ulit*  
*betray, pr̃do, -d̃di, -ditum, 3*  
*betroth, spondeo, sp̃õndi, sponsum, 3*  
*better, m̃lior, -us*  
*between, inf̃er (g. acc.)*  
*bewail, pl̃oro, 1*  
*beware, c̃veo, c̃vi, cautum, 2*

*beyond*, *ultrā* (g. acc.); *praeter* (g. acc.)

*big*, see *large*

*bind*, *vincio*, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, 4; (by oath) *jūre-jūrando obstringo*, -*strinxi*, -*strictum*, 3

*bird*, *āvis*, -*is*, f.

*birth*, *partus*, -*ūs*, m.; *noble birth*, *nōbilitās*, -*ātis*, f.

*bite*, *a*, *morsus*, -*ūs*, m.; *to bite*, *mordeo*, *mōmordi*, *morsum*, 2 [-a, -um

*bitter*, *ācerbus*, -a, -um: *āmārus*, *black*, *nīger*, -*gra*, -*grum*; *gloomy*, *āter*, -*tra*, -*trum* [po, 1

*blame*, *culpa*, -*ae*, f.; *to blame*, *cul-*

*blind*, *caecus*, -a, -um

*blindness*, *caecitās*, -*ātis*, f.

*blood*, *sanguis*, -*inis*, m.

*blot out*, *dēleo*, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*, 2

*blow*, *ictus*, -*ūs*, m.; *to blow*, v. *intr.* *flo*, *flāvi*, *flātum*, 1

*blush*, *ērūbesco*, -*ui*, 3

*boar*, *āper*, -*pri*, m.

*boast*, *glōrior*, 1, *dep.*; *jacto*, 1

*boasting*, *jactatio*

*body*, *corpus*, -*ōris*, n.; *dead body*, *cādāver*, -*ēris*, n.

*Boeotia*, *Boeōtia*, -*ae*, f.

*bold*, *audax*, -*ācis*; *fortis*, -*e*

*bone*, *ōs*, *ossis*, n.

*book*, *liber*, -*lri*, m.

*booty*, *praeda*, -*ae*, f.

*border*, *fīnis*, -*is*, m.

*bordering-on*, *fīnītīmus*, -a, -um (112)

*born*, *to be*, *nascor*, *nātus*, 3, *dep.*;

*born of low parentage*, *hūmīlibus* *pārentībus* *nātus*. N.B. *nascor* means, *I am being born*, *nātus sum*, *I am born*

*bosom*, *sīnus*, -*ūs*, m.

*both*, (*adj.*) *ambo*, -*ae*, -*o*, *ūterque*, -*traque*, -*trumque*; *both of us*, *nōs*

*ambo* or *ūterque nostrum*; (*conj.*) *both...and*, *ēt...ēt*, (12) or *cum...*

*tum*, (317)

*bottom*, *īmus*, -a, -um, *adj.*

*bound*, *boundary*, *fīnis*, -*is*, m.; *terminus*, -*i*, m.

*bow*, *arcus*, -*ūs*, m. (53)

*boy*, *puer*, -*ēri*, m; *boyhood*, *puēr-itia*, -*ae*, f.; *from his b.*, *from a boy*, *indē ā puērītia*, or *puēro*

*branch*, *rāmus*, -*i*, m.

*brave*, *fortis*, -*e*; *bravely*, *fortīter*

*bravery*, *virtūs*, -*ūtis*, f.

*bread*, *pānis*, -*is*, m.

*break*, *frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, 3;

*rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, 3; *break*

*out*, *ērumpo*, -*rūpi*, -*ruptum*, 3;

*break down* (a bridge), *inter-*

*rumpo*, -*rūpi*, -*ruptum*, 3

*breast*, *pectus*, -*ōris*, n. [m.

*breath*, *ānīma*, -*ae*, f.; *hālītus*, -*ūs*,

*breed*, *to*, *ālo*, -*ui*, *altum*, 3

*bribery*, *ambītus*, -*ūs*, m.

*bridge*, *pons*, -*ntis*, m.; *to bridge*,

(a river), *flūvium* *ponte* *jungere*

*bright*, *clārus*, -a, -um; *splendī-*

*du*, -a, -um

*bring*, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allātum*, *af-*

*ferre*; *I will bring you help*,

*fēram* *tibi* *auxīlium*; *bring*

*back*, *rēduco*, -*duxi*, -*ductum*,

3; *bring in*, *infēro*, -*tūli*, -*illā-*

*tum*, *inferre*; *intrōduco*, -*xi*,

-*ctum*, 3; *bring up* (educate),

*ēduco*, 1; *bring back* word, *rē-*

*nuntio*, 1

*briskly*, *ālacriter*

*Britain*, *Brītanīa*, -*ae*, f.

*Briton*, *a*, *Brītanīus*, -*i*, m.

*brother*, *frāter*, -*tris*, m.

*brow*, *frons*, -*ntis*, f.

*Brutus*, *Brūtus*, -*i*, m.

*build*, *aedīfīco*, 1; *building*, *aedī-*

*fīcium*, -*i*, n.; *to see to the build-*

*ing of a temple*, *cūrāre* *templum*

*aedīficandum*

*bulk*, *magnītūdo*, -*inis*, f.

*bull*, *taurus*, -*i*, m.

*burden*, *ōnus*, -*ēris*, n.

*burn*, *ūro*, *ussi*, *ustum*, 3 (*trans.*);

(a house, city, &c.) *incendo*,

incendi, incensum, 3 (*trans.*);  
ardeo, ursi, arsum, 2 (*intrans.*);  
a burning, incendiūm, -i, n.

burst into, irrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,  
3, full. by in and acc.

bury, sēpūlio, -ivi, sēpultum, 4

bush, dūmus, -i, m.

bushel, mōdius, -ii, m.

business, rēs, rei, f.; nēgōtium, -i,

but, (i) *coord. conj.* sēd (*comes first in a clause, means on the other hand; but still; but yet*); autem (*never comes first in a clause, means in the second place*), vērō (139a); (ii) *subord. conj.* quīn; *I doubt not but he will come, nōn dūbīto quīn ventūrus sit*

but (*prep.*), praetēr, *no one but Tullius was present, praetēr Tullium nēmo addērat; but sometimes, in negatives and questions that expect a neg. answer, nīsī (coupling nouns in the same case, like quān, 62); what is filial affection but gratitude towards parents? quīd est piētās nīsī grātia ergā pārentes vōluntās?*

but (a neg. rel. pron., *that not*), (i) *nom., there was no one but hated you, nēmo erat quīn tē odī-set*; (2) *abl., not a day passed but I wept, dies fērē nullus fuit quīn (i.e. quo nōn) flērem*

butterfly, pāpilio, -ōnis, m.

buy, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3

buyer, emptor, -ōris, m.

by, ā, āb (Par.178); *by this time, jam*

Caesar, Caesar, -āris, m.

calamity, cālāmītās, -ātis, f.

call, vōco, 1; *call together, convōco, 1; (address) appello, 1; do you call me an enemy? num mē inimicūm appellas?*

calm, plācīdus, -a, -um

Camillus, Cāmillus, -i, m.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.

Campania, Campānia, -ae, f. N.B.  
a district, not a city.

can (*see able*) you can come, vērē pōtēs; *it cannot be that you could venture on this, fieri nōn pōtest ut hōc audeās*

Cannae, Cannae, -ārum, f.; *of Cannae, Cannensis, -e, adj.; the battle of C., proelium Cannense, or p. Cannis pugnātum*

capital, cāput, -itis, n.

Capitol, Cāpitōlium, -i, n.

captive, adj. captīvus, -a, -um

capture, a, captīvus, -i, m.

capture, to, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Cypna, Cūpna, -ae, f.

care, cūda, -ae, f.; *careless, n.*

care, cūra, -ae, f.; *take care of cūra,*

1, g acc.; *take care to, cūra ut*

*carefully, diligenter*

careless, negligens, -ntis

carelessness, incūria, -ae, f.; *negligentia, -ae, f.*

carry, porto, 1 (*on one's shoulders*);

vēho, veki, vectum, 3 (*of horses*);

ferre, tūli, lātum (*a letter*)

carry off, aufero, abstūli, ablātum,

auferre; (*a victory*) rēporto, 1

carry on, to, a war, bellum gērere,

gessi, gestum, 3

Carthage, Carthāgo, -īnis, f.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -a, -um

cast, jacio, jeci, jactum, 3

cast away, abjicio, abjēci, abjec-

tum, 3; *cast down, dēmitto,*

-misi, -misum, 3

cat, felis, -is, f.

catch, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3

Catiline, Catīlina, -ae, m.

Cato, Cāto, -ōnis, m.

cattle, armenta, -ōrum, n. pl.

cause, causa, -ae, f.

cause, to, efficio, feci, fectum, 3:

*you caused me sorrow, tristitiam*

*mīhi attūlisti*

*cautiously, cautō*

*cavalry*, *ēquites*, -um, m. pl.;  
*ēquitātus*, -ūs, m.  
*cease*, *dēsino*, -sivī or -sīi, 3  
*celebrated*, *praeclārus*, -a, -um  
*centurion*, *centūrio*, -ōnis, m.  
*century*, *centūria*, -ae, f.  
*Ceres*, *Cērēs*, *Cērēris*, f.  
*certain*, *certus*, -a, -um (*g. gen.*); *a*  
*certain person*, *quīdam*; *a c. fixed*  
*day*, *certus quīdam dies*; (*mean-*  
*ing "kind of"*) *quīdam*; *there is*  
*a c. pleasure*, *est quaedam vō-*  
*luptas* (310a)  
*certainly*, *certē*, *prōfecto* [-i, n.  
*chain*, *cātēna*, -ae, f.; *vinculum*,  
*challenge*, *to*, *prōvōco*, 1  
*chance*, *cāsus*, -ūs, m.; *by c.*, *fortē*  
*change*, *to*, *mūto*, 1  
*charge*, (*accusation*), *crīmen*, -īnis,  
 n.; (*onset*) *impētus*, -ūs, m.; *let*  
*us charge the enemy*, *impētum*  
*fāciāmus in hostem* [-i, n.  
*chariot*, *currus*, -ūs, m.; *essēdum*,  
*charioteer*, *aurīga*, -ae, m.  
*charm*, *to*, *dēlecto*, 1  
*chastise*, *to*, *castīgo*, 1  
*cheap*, *vīlis*, -e  
*cheer*, *be of good cheer*, *ērīgīte*  
*(ērigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3) ānīmos*;  
*āleste ānīmīs*  
*cheese*, *cāseus*, -i, m.  
*cherish*, *fōveo*, *fōvi*, *fōtum*, 2;  
*cōlo*, *cōlui*, *cultum*, 3  
*cherry*, *cērāsum*, -i, n.  
*chew*, *mando*, -di, -sum, 3  
*chicken*, *pullus*, -i, m.  
*chide*, *culpo*, 1 [-īpis, m.  
*chief*, *dux*, *duēs*, m.; *princeps*,  
*chief men*, *primōres*, -um, m. pl.  
*chiefly*, *maximē*; *imprīmīs*  
*child*, *puer*, -eri, m., or *puella*, -ae, f.  
*children*, *libēri*, -ōrum, m.  
*choice (of style)*, *ēlēgans*, -ntis  
*choiceness of style*, *ēlēgantia*, -ae, f.  
*choose*, *ēlēgo*, -lēgi, -lectum, 3  
*Christian*, *a*, *Christiānus*, -i, m.  
*Cicero*, *Cicēro*, -ōnis, m.

*Cincinnatus*, *Cincinnātus*, -i, m.  
*circuit*, *ambītus*, -ūs, m.  
*circumstance*, *rēs*, rei, f.  
*citadel*, *arx*, -cis, f.; *gen. pl.*  
*arciūm* (40)  
*citizen*, *cīvis*, -is, m.  
*city*, *urbs*, -bis, f.; *the city of Car-*  
*thage*, *Carthāgo urbs* [1  
*claim*, *posco*, *pōposci*, 3; *vindico*,  
*clamour for*, *postūlo*, 1  
*claw*, *unguis*, -is, m.  
*Claudius*, *Claudius*, -i, m.  
*clear*, *clārus*, -a, -um; *to explain*  
*clearly*, *lūcūlenter explicāre*  
*clear, it is*, *līquet*, 2, *impers.* (222)  
*clemency*, *clēmēntia*, -ae, f.  
*clerk*, *scriba*, -ae, m.  
*climb*, *scando*, -di, -sum, 3  
*close*, *claudio*, -si, -sum, 3  
*close to*, *prōpe* (*g. acc.*); *he is close*  
*at hand*, *prōpe ā nōbīs ābest*  
*close quarters*, *at*, *commīnus*  
*clothe*, *vestio*, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4  
*clothing*, *vestītus*, -ūs, m.  
*cloud*, *nūbēs*, -is, f.  
*Clytemnestra*, *Clȳtemnestra*, -ae, f.  
*coast*, *litus*, -ōris, n.; *ōra*, -ae, f.  
*cobbler*, *sūtor*, -ōris, m.  
*Codrus*, *Codrus*, -i, m.  
*cock*, *gallus*, -i, m.  
*cohort*, *cōhors*, -rtis, f.  
*coin*, *nummus*, -i, m.  
*cold*, *frīgus*, -ōris, n.  
*cold*, *frīgīdus*, -a, -um  
*colleague*, *collēga*, -ae, m.  
*collect*, *collīgo*, -lēgi, -lectum, 3  
*colony*, *cōlōnia*, ae, f.  
*colour*, *cōlor*, -ōris, m.  
*column*, (*of men*) *agmen*, -īnis, n.  
*come*, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4  
*command*, (*military*) *impēriūm*, -i,  
 n.; *commands*, *jussa*, -ōrum, n.  
 pl.; *at the command of Tullius*.  
*Tullio jūbente* (197)  
*command, to*, *impēro*, 1; *praesum*,  
*fui*, -esse (*both g. dat. of per-*  
*son*); *jūbeo*, *jussi jussum*, 2

*command of, to be in, praesum, -fui, -esse (g. dat.)*  
*commander, imp̄rator, -oris, m.; dux, dūcis, m. [3]*  
*commit, committo, -misi, -missum, common, communis, -e.*  
*common-people, plebs, plēbis, f.; vulgus, -i, n.*  
*commonwealth, respublica, reipublicae, f.*  
*companion, cōmēs, -itis, m.*  
*compare, comparo, 1; confēro, contūli, collatum, conferre*  
*compassion, misēricordia, -ae, f.*  
*compel, cōgo, cōgi, coactum, 3 (inf., or ut, or ad with gerund.)*  
*complain, quēror, questus, 3, dep.*  
*complaint, quērēla, -ae, f. [3]*  
*complete, to, conficio, -feci, -fectum, conceal, cēlo, 1 (g. two acc., 312)*  
*concede, concēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3*  
*conceive a hope, vēnīre in spem concerning, dē (g. abl.)*  
*concerns, it, see "important"*  
*conciliate, concilio, 1*  
*concord, concordia, ae, f.*  
*concourse, concursus, -ūs, m.*  
*condemn, damno, 1; condemn, 1; to condemn to death, cāpitis damnāre*  
*condition, condicio, -ōnis, f.*  
*conduct, to, a war, bellum gērere*  
*conduct, mōres, -um, m. pl.*  
*confer, confēro, contūli, collatum, conferre; to c. a benefit on you, bēnēficiū in tē c.*  
*conference, collōquium, -i, n.*  
*confess, fāteor, fassus, 2, dep.; confiteor, -fessus, 2, dep.*  
*confession, confessio, -ōnis, f.*  
*confidence, fidēs, -ei, f.*  
*confirm, confirmo, 1*  
*conflagration, incendium, -i, n.*  
*congratulate, grātūlor, 1, dep. (g. dat.); I c. you that, g. tibi quod*  
*conquer, vinco, vici, victum, 3; sūp̄ero, 1*

*conquered, victus, -a, -um; the conquered, victi m. pl.*  
*conqueror, victor, -oris, m.*  
*conquest, victōria, -ae, f. [gen.]*  
*conscious, conscius, -a, -uni (g. consciousness, conscientia, -ae, f.*  
*consecrate, consecro, 1*  
*consent, to, consentio, -sensi, -sensum, 4 (dat., or cum)*  
*consent, consensus, -ūs, m.*  
*consider, pūto, 1*  
*consist, consto, -stīti, -stātum, 1; foll. by ex or ē, the legions consisted of ten cohorts each, lēgiōnes ē dēnis cōhortibus constitērunt*  
*consolation, sōlātium, -i, n.*  
*console, sōlor, 1, dep.*  
*conspiracy, conjūrātio, -ōnis, f.*  
*conspire, conjūro, 1*  
*conspirator, conjūrātus, -a, -um, used as a noun*  
*constancy, constantia, -ae f.*  
*consul, consūl, -ūlis, m.*  
*consulate, consūlātus, -ūs, m.*  
*consult, consūlo, -sului, -sultum, 3; to c. Tullius, consūl̄ere Tullium, to c. T.'s interests, consūl̄ere Tullio*  
*consume, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sumptum, 3*  
*contemplate, contemplor, -ātus sum, 1*  
*contend, contendo, -di, -tum, 3*  
*content, contentus, -a, -um (g. abl.)*  
*contest, certāmen, -inis, n.*  
*contradict, contrādico, -dixi, -dictum, 3 (g. dat.)*  
*contrary, contrārius, -a, -um (189)*  
*contrary, on the, contrā (adv.)*  
*contrary-to, contrā (g. acc.)*  
*conversation, sermo, -ōnis, m.: collōquium, -i, n. [3, dep.*  
*converse, to, collōquor, collōqūtus, convey, vēho, vexi, vectum, 3*  
*cool, cōquus, -i, m.*  
*cool, to, cōquo, coxi, coctum, 3*  
*copper, aes, aeris, n.*

*Corinth*, Cōrinthus, -i, f.  
*Corinthian*, Cōrinthius, -a, -um  
*Coriolanus*, Cōriōlānus, -i, m.  
*Corioli*, Cōriōli, -ōrum, m. pl. *the small town of Corioli was burned*, C., oppidum parvum, incensum est  
*corn*, (*harvested*) frūmentum, -i, n.; *to sow corn*, frūmenta sērere  
*Cornelia*, Cornēlia, -ae, f.  
*corpse*, cādāver, -ēris, n.  
*correct*, corrigo, -rexī, -rectum, 3  
*corrupt*, corrumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum, 3  
*cost*, prētium, -i, n.; *expense*, sumptus, -ūs, m.  
*cost*, *to*, sto, stēti, stātum, 1, consto, -stīti, -stātum, 1, (*both g. abl. of definite, gen. of indef. price*) *this cost me more*, hōc mīhi plūris constitit; *this will cost you much blood*, hōc vōbis multo sanguine stābit  
*costly*, sumptuōsus, -a, -um  
*cottage*, cāsa, -ae, f.  
*cover*, tēgo, texi, tectum, 3  
*covet*, cūpio, -īvi, -itum, 3  
*covetous*, cūpidus, -a, -um (*g. gen.*)  
*couch*, lectus, -i, m., cūbile, -is, n.  
*could* (*see able*), *you could have come*, venīre pōtūisti  
*council*, concīlium, -i, n.  
*counsel*, consīlium, cī, n.  
*count*, nūmēro, 1  
*countenance*, vultus, -ūs, m.  
*country*, terra, -ae, f.; *the country* (as distinct from the city), rūs, rūris, n. *see* Par. 265 and 249; *one's own*, his, my, your, country, patria, -ae, f.; *let us die for our country*, prō patriā mōriāmur; *this is for the good of the country*, hōc est ē rē-publīca; *a rough country*, i.e. district, rēgio aspēra  
*countrymen*, cīves, -ium, m. pl.  
*courage*, virtūs, -ūtis, f.  
*course*, cursus, -ūs, m.

*courtesy*, hūmānitas, -ātis, f.  
*cover*, tēgo, -xi, -ctum, 3  
*coward*, cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um  
*cowardice*, ignāvia, -ae, f.  
*crafty*, callidus, -a, -um  
*crane*, grus, gruis, c.; *mostly* f.  
*Crassus*, Crassus, -i, m.  
*create*, creo, 1  
*creature*, ānimal, -ālis, n.  
*credible*, crēdibilis, -e.  
*credit*, fidēs, -ei, f.  
*Crete*, Crēta, -ae, f.  
*crime*, scēlus, -ēris, n.; *monstrous*, c. flagitium, -i, n.  
*crocodile*, crōcōdīlus, -i, m.  
*Croesus*, Croesus, -i, m.  
*cross*, crux, crucis, f.  
*cross*, *to*, trājicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3; transeo, -īvi or -ii, itum, 4  
*crowd*, turba, -ae, f.  
*crown*, cōrōna, -ae, f.  
*cruel*, crūdēlis, -e.; *saevus*, -a, -um  
*cruelty*, crūdēlītās, -ātis, f. [3  
*crush*, opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, 3  
*cry*, (*shout*) clāmo, 1  
*cry*, a, clāmor, -ōris, m.  
*cultivate*, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3  
*cunning*, callidus, -a, -um  
*cup*, cālīx, -īcis, m.  
*cure*, rēmedium, -i, n.  
*cure*, *to*, sāno, 1 (*acc.*); mēdeor, 2 v. dep. (*dat.*)  
*custom*, mōs, mōris, m.  
*cut*, caedo, cēcīdi, caesum, 3; *cut off*, *to*, the enemy from supplies, interclūdēre, (-clūsi, -clūsum, 3) hostes commēatū (or -ībus)  
*cut to pieces*, concido, -di, -sum, 3  
*Cyclops*, the, Cyclōpes, -um, m. pl.  
*Cyprus*, Cyprus, -i, f.  
*Cyrus*, Cýrus, -i, m.

*Dagger*, pūgio, -ōnis, m.  
*daily*, adv. quōtidie (better spelt cōtidie)  
*dance*, salto, 1  
*danger*, pēriculum, -i, n.

*dangerous*, pēriculōsus, -a, -um  
*Danube*, Ister, -tri, m.  
*Daphne*, Daphnē, -ēs, f.  
*dare*, audeo, ausus sum, 2, dep.  
*Darius*, Dārius, -i, m.  
*dark*, obscurus, -a, -um; pullus, -a, -um  
*darken*, obscurō, 1  
*darkness*, caligo, -inis, f.; tēnebrae, -arum, f.  
*dart*, telum, -i, n.; iaculum, -i, n.  
*daughter*, filia, -ae, f.  
*dawn*, prima lux; mane, indecl.; *before dawn*, antē lucem  
*dawn*, to, illūcesco, illuxi, 3  
*day*, dies, -iei m.; *by day*, diē;  
*daybreak*, prima lux; *the-day-before* (adv. used as a prep.)  
*pridie* Kalendarum; (used as a conj. with quā) the day before  
*I came*, pridie quam vēni; *two days*, bīduum, -i, n.; *three days*, trīduum, -i, n.  
*dead*, mortuus, -a, -um  
*dead body*, cūctāver, -ūris, n.  
*deaf*, surdus, -a, -um  
*dear*, cārus, -a, -um  
*death*, mors, mortis, f.; *he was put to death*, morte affectus est; *he was condemned to death*, cāpitis damnātus est  
*debt*, nos aliēnum  
*deceit*, dōlus, -i, m.; fallacia, -ae, f.  
*deceitful*, fallāx, -ācis  
*deceive*, dēcipio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3; fallo, fēfelli, falsum, 3  
*decide*, to, (judge) iudico, 1; *they decided to return*, constituērunt rēdire  
*declare*, dīco, dixi, dictum, 3; *to declare war against*, bellum indicere, g. dat.  
*decree*, to, dēcorno, -crēvi, -crētum, 3  
*decree*, a, dēcrētum, -i, n.; edictum, -i, n.  
*deed*, factum, -i, n.; facinūs, ōris, n.  
*deem worthy*, dignor, 1, dep.

*deep*, altus, -a, -um  
*deer*, dama, -ae, f.  
*defeat*, a, clādēs, -is, f.  
*defeat*, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3  
*defence*, praesidium, -i, n.  
*defend*, dēfendo, -di, -sum, 3  
*defendant*, reus, -i, m.  
*defile*, polluo, -ui, ūtum, 3  
*deity*, nāmen, -īnis, n.  
*delay*, mōra, -ae, f.  
*delay*, to, mōror, 1, dep.; cunctor, 1, dep.  
*deliberate*, dēlibēro, 1  
*delight*, gaudium, -i, n.; *to delight*, | dēlecto, 1, v. tr. (g. acc.)  
*deliver* (hand over), trādo, -didi, -dītum, 3; (free) libēro, 1 (g. acc. of pers. and abl. of thing)  
*Delos*, Dēlos, -i, f.  
*demand*, posco, pūposci, 3  
*Demosthenes*, Dēmōsthēnēs, -is, m.  
*denarius*, dēnārius, -ii, m.  
*deny*, nēgo, 1  
*depart*, discēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3  
*departure*, discessus, -ūs, m.  
*deplore*, plōro, 1  
*depraved*, prāvus, -a, -um  
*deprive*, spōlio, 1; privo, 1 (279)  
*descend*, descendo, -di, -sum, 3; *he was descended from kings*, a rēgibus ortus erat  
*desert*, dēsēro, -rui, -rtum, 3; rēlinquo, -liqui, -lictum, 3  
*deserter*, transfūga, -ae, m.  
*deserve*, mēreor, mērītus, 2, dep.  
*design*, consilium, -i, n.  
*desire*, cūpido, -īnis, f.; *to desire*, cūpio, -īvi, -ītum, 3; opto, 1; volo (all generally foll. by Infinitive)  
*desirous*, cūpidus, -a, -um; stūdīsus, -a, -um (both g. gen.) sometimes with gerundive  
*desist from*, dēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3  
*despair*, to, despēro, 1; *despair*, despērātio, -ōnis, f. [tuin, 3  
*despise*, contemno, -tempsi, temp-

*despoil*, spōlio, 1; *I despoil you of liberty*, s. tē libertāte  
*destroy*, dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum; *perdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*destructive*, pernīciōsus, -a, -um  
*detain*, dētīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2  
*determine*, stātuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3  
*devastate*, vasto, 1  
*devoid of*, expers, -rtis, *adj.* (*g. gen.*)  
*devote*, dēvōveo, -vōvi, -vōtum, 2  
*devour*, dēvoro, 1  
*Diana*, Diāna, -ae, f.  
*dictator*, dictātor, -ōris, m.  
*dictatorship*, dictatūra, -ae, f.  
*die*, mōrior, mortuus, 3, *dep.*; *he died*, obiit (mortem)  
*difference*, discrīmen, -inis, n.; *it makes a great difference*, multum intērest; *how great a difference there is!* quantum intērest!  
*difficult*, difficīlis, -e (60)  
*difficulty*, difficūltas, -atis, f.; *with difficulty*, vix; *with very great difficulty*, difficillimē  
*dig*, fōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3; *dig up*, effōdio, -fōdi, -fossum, 3  
*dignity*, dignitās, -ātis, f.  
*diligent*, strēnuus, -a, -um; *diligens*, -ntis  
*diminish*, mīnuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3  
*dine*, cēno, 1, *dep. particip.* cēnatus (*less correctly coeno*)  
*Dionysius*, Diōnysius, -i, m.  
*direction*; *in-the-direction-of the Rhine*, Rhēnum versūs  
*disagreeable*, injūcundus, -a, -um  
*disappear*, ēvānesco, -ui, 3 [-is, f.  
*disaster*, damnum, -i, n.; *ciādes*, discern, cerno, 3  
*discharge (duty)*, fungor, functus, 3 *dep. (abl.)*; (*darts*), conjicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3  
*disciple*, discīpulus, -i, m.  
*discipline*, disciplīna, -ae, f.  
*disclose*, dētēgo, -texi, -tectum, 3  
*discord*, discordia, -ae, f.

*discourse*, sermo, -ōnis, m.  
*discover*, invēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *rēperio*, reperī, repertum, 4  
*disease*, morbus, -i, m.  
*disembark*, (*trans. v.*) expōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum, 3  
*disgrace*, dēdēcus, -ōris, n.; *to disgrace*, foedo, 1  
*disgraceful*, turpis, -e  
*dishevelled*, passus, -a, -um  
*dismiss*, dīmitto, -misi, -missum, 3  
*displease*, displiceo, -ui, itum, 2 (*q. dat.*)  
*displeasing*, ingrātus, -a, -um  
*disposition*, indōlēs, -is, f.; *ingēnium*, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.  
*dispute*, a, rixa, -ae, f.; *contentio*, dissemble, dissimūlo, 1  
*dissembler*, dissimulātor, -ōris, m.  
*dissension*, dissensio, -ōnis, f.  
*distant*, to be, absum, āfui, ābesse  
*distasteful*, to become, displiceo, 2  
*distinguished*, insignis, -e; *clārus*, -a, -um  
*distribute*, distribuo, -ui, -ūtum, 3  
*district*, rēgio, -ōnis, f.  
*distrust*, diffīdo, -fīsus, 3, *or* parum credere, confīdere (*dat.*)  
*disturb*, turbo, 1  
*disturbance*, mōtus, -ūs, m.  
*ditch*, fossa, -ae, f.  
*divide*, dīvido, -vīsi, -vīsum, 3  
*divine*, divīnus, -a, -um  
*do*, faciō, feci, factum, 3; *I (can) easily do without wine*, vīno faciēle cāreo  
*dog*, cānis, -is, c.  
*dolphin*, delphīn, -inis, m.  
*domestic*, dōmesticus, -a, -um  
*door*, jānuā, ae, f.; *fōres*, -um, f. pl.; *out of doors (i) (rest)* fōris, (*motion towards*) fōras  
*doubt*, to, dūbīto, 1; *there is no doubt that*, nōn dūbium est quīn, Par. 145; *I have no doubt that*, nōn dūbīto quīn; *without doubt*, sīnē dūbio



*doubtful*, incertus, -a, -um ; dūbius, -a, -um.

*dove*, cōlumba, -ae, f.

*downcast*, dēmissus, -a, -um

*down from*, dē (*g. abl.*)

*drachma*, drachma, -ae, f.

*drag*, trāho, traxi, tractum, 3

*draw* (*a sword*), stringo, -nxi, ictum, 3 ; *draw along*, dūco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw back*, reduco, -xi, -ctum, 3 ; *draw up* (*an army*), instruo, -struxi, -structum, 3 ; *draw lots*, sortior, -tītus, 4, dep. ; *draw water*, I, aquam haurio, hausi, haustum, 4 ; *draw together*, contrāho, -traxi, -tractum, 3

*dread*, to, formīdo, 1

*dreadful*, dīrus, -a, -um

*dream*, a, somnium, -i, n. ; *dream*, to, somnio, 1

*dress*, vestītus, -ūs, m. ; vestis, -is, f.

*drink*, bibo, bībi, bibītum, 3 ; pōto, 1

*drive*, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3 ; pello, pēpūli, pulsum, 3 ; *to drive into exile*, pellere in exilium ; *drive back*, repello, reppūli, repulsum, 3 ; *drive out*, expello, expūli, expulsum, 3 ; *drive down*, depello, dēpūli, depulsum, 3

*drop*, a, gutta, -ae, f.

*drown*, mergo, mersi, mersum, 3

*Druids*, Druīdes, -um, m. pl.

*drunk*, ēbrius, -a, -um

*dry*, siccus, -a, -um ; arīdus, -a, -um

*duck*, ānas, -ātis, c.

*duly*, ritē

*dutiful conduct*, piētās, -ātis, f.

*duty*, officiūm, -ii, n.

*dwelling*, dōmus, -ūs, f.

*dye*, to, tingo, tinxi, tinctum, 3

*Each*, quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, or, when used as n., quicquē, ; foll. superl., suus, &c., (140,

165) ; (*of two*) ūterquē (both are used in sing.)

*cager*, cūpidus, -a, -um

*eagle*, āquīla, -ae, f.

*ear*, auris, -is, f.

*early*, matūrē

*earth*, terra, -ae, f. ; tellūs, -āris, f.

*case*, ōtium, -i, n.

*easily*, faciē ; *more e.*, faciiliūs

*east*, the, oriens, -entis, m.

*easy*, faciilis, -e (60)

*eat*, vescor, 3, dep. (*g. abl.*) ; ēdi, ēdi, ēsum, 3

*educate*, edūco, 1

*effect*, mōdus, -i, m ; *he spoke to this effect*, in hunc mōdum ōratiōnem hābuit ; *effect*, to, efficio

-fēci, -fectum, 3

*egg*, ōvum, -i, n.

*Egypt*, Aegyptus, -i, f.

*Egyptian*, Aegyptius, -a, -um

*eight*, octō, incl.

*eighth*, octāvus, -a, -um

*eighty*, octogintā, incl.

*either*, (conj.) aut, vėl (157a)

*elder*, sēnior, -ōris, adj. used as n. ; also māior nātū (71)

*elect*, elīgo, -lēgi, -lectum, 3

*elephant*, elēphantus, -i, m ; elēphās, -antis, m.

*eloquence*, fācundia, -ae, f.

*eloquent*, fācundus, -a, -um

*else*, (when adj.) ālius, -a, ūd ; or else aut ; elsewhere, ālibī

*embrace*, to, amplector, -plexus, 3, dep. ; *embrace*, amplexus, -ūs, m.

*emperor*, princeps, -īpis, m.

*empire*, impērium, -i, n.

*empty*, vācuus, -a, -um

*enact*, sancio, -xi, -ctum, 4 ; (*"shall and "should," after this v., must be rend. by pres. and imperf. subj.*) it has been enacted that no one shall ride in a carriage, sanctum est nē quis currū vēhātur

*encourage*, hortor, 1, dep.; stīmulō,

1

*end*, to, finio, 4

*end*, finis, -is, m.

*endeavour*, cōnor, 1, dep. (foll. by inf.)

*endowed with*, praeditus, -a, -um (g. abl.)

*endurance*, p̄tinentia, -ae, f.

*endure*, perfero, -tuli, -lātum, -ferre

*enemy*, hostis, -is, m.; (in war, mostly pl.) the enemy's camp, hostium (not hostis) castra; a private enemy, inimicus, -a, -um

*energetic*, strēnuus, -a, -um

*engagement*, certāmen, -inis, n.; pugna, -ae, f.

*England*, Anglia, -ae, f.

*enjoy*, fruor, fruius, 3, dep. (g. abl.)

*enormous*, ingens, -ntis

*enough*, sātis

*enraged*, irātus, -a, -um

*enter*, intro, 1; inco, -ivi or -ii, itum, 4

*enterprise*, cōnātus, -ūs, m.

*enticement*, illēcebrae, -arum, f. pl.

*entirely*, omnino

*entrails*, visēra, -um, n.

*entreat*, oro, 1 (143)

*entrust*, crēdo, -didi, -dītum, 3

*envious*, invidus, -a, -um

*envy*, invidia, -ae, f.; *envy*, to, in-video, -vidi, visum, 3 (g. dat.)

*Epaminondas*, Epāminondās, -ae, m.

*Ephesus*, Ephēsus, -i, f.

*E. icurus*, Epicūrus, -i, m.

*equal*, pār, pārīs

*equally*, pārīter

*equipped*, instructus, -a, -um, part. of instruo

*erect* (build), exstruo, -struxi, -structum, 3; erigo, -rexi, -rectum, 3

*err*, erro, 1

*error*, error, -ōris, m.

*escape*, fūga, -ae, f.; *escape*, to, evādo, -vāsi, -vāsum, 3; effūgio, -fūgi, 3; *escape the notice of*, fallo, fūfelli, falsum, 3 (g. acc.)

*escort*, dēdūco, -dūxi, -ductum, 3

*especially*, maximē; praesertim

*estimate*, aestimo, 1

*eternal*, aeternus, -a, -um

*Europe*, Eurōpa, -ae, f.

*even*, etiam; vėl (141 a); *not even*, nē—quidem (141); *even a boy*,

vėl puer; *even now*, etiam

nunc; *even if*, etiam si

*evening*, vesper, -ōris and -ōri, m.;

*in the evening*, vespere, or adv.

vesperi (not vespere)

*event*, eventus, -ūs, m.

*ever*, unquam; (always) semper;

*if you ever come*, si quando

vēneris; *did you e. come?* num

quando (or equando) vēnisti?

*every, every good man*, omnes bōni,

or optimus quisque (140); *every*

day, quōtidie (or cōtidie)

*everywhere*, passim [mālum, -i, n.

evil, mālus, -a, -um; *an evil*,

examine, investigo, 1

*example*, exemplum, -i, n.

*exceedingly*, valde

*excellence*, virtūs, -utis, f.

*excellent*, egregius, -a, -um (68b);

praestans, -ntis; optimus, -a,

-um

*except*, prep. praeter (g. acc.); conj.

nisi; *why do you fight except to*

*conquer?* cur pugnas nisi ut

vincās?

*excessive*, nimius, -a, -um

*exchange*, mūtō, 1 [-ōnis, f.

*excuse*, excūso, 1; *an e.*, excūsatio,

*exercise*, to, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2

*exhort*, cōhortor, -ātus, 1, dep.

*exile*, exilium, -i, n.; *exile*, an,

exsul, -ūlis, m.

*expectation*, expectatio, -ōnis, f.;

spēs, spei, f.

*expediency*, utilitas, -atis, f.

*expedient*, *utīlis*, -o  
*expense*, *sumptus*, -us, m.  
*experience*, *experientia*, -ae, f.;  
*usus*, -us, m.; *experience*, *to*,  
*experior*, -pertus, 4, dep.  
*explain*, *explico*, 1  
*explore*, *exploro*, 1  
*extend*, *pāteo*, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*);  
*pando*, *pandi*, *passum*, 3 (*trans.*)  
*extent*, *spātium*, -i, n. [3]  
*extinguish*, *extinguo*, -nxi, -netum,  
*extraordinary*, *mīrus*, -a, -um  
*extreme*, *extrēmus*, -a, -um  
*extremely*, *valdē*  
*exult*, *exulto*, 1  
*eye*, *oculus*, -i, m.

*Fabius*, *Fābius*, -i, m.  
*fable*, *fabūla*, -ae, f.  
*face*, *facies*, -ei, f.; *ās*, *oris*, n.;  
*vultus*, -us, m.  
*factions*, *partes*, -ium, f.  
*fact*, *īc*, *rei*, f.; *facts must be*  
*clearly arranged*, *rēs luculenter*  
*sunt digērendae*  
*fail* (*fall short*), *dēsum*, -ui,  
*esse*, (*g. dat.*); (*for sake*), *dēfi-*  
*cio*, -fēci, -fectum, 3; *time*  
*fails me*, *tempus miē dēficiť*  
*faith*, *fidēs*, -ei, f. [-um  
*faithful*, *fidēlis*, -e; *fidus*, -a,  
*fall*, *to*, *cādo*, *cēcidi*, *cāsum*, 3;  
*(in battle)* *occido*, -cidi, -cāsum,  
 3  
*fall asleep*, *to*, *obdormio*, -ii or  
 -ivi, -itum, 4  
*false* (*things*), *falsus*, -a, -um;  
*(persons)*, *mendax*, -ācis  
*falsehood*, *mendācium*, -ii, n.  
*fame*, *fāma*, -ae, f.  
*family*, *fāmilia*, -ae, f.; *dōmus*,  
 -us, f.  
*famine*, *fāmēs*, -is, f.  
*far*, *prōcul*; *longē*; *as far as*,  
*tēnūs* (*g. abl. or gen.*, 178)  
*farm*, *praedium*, -i, n.  
*farthing*, *as*, *assis*, m.; *I do not*

*care a farthing for you*, *nōn*  
*assis tē facio*  
*"farces," the*, *fasces*, -ium, m. pl.  
*the rods which were the signs*  
*of the consul's power*  
*fat*, *pinguis*, -o  
*fate*, *fātum*, -i, n.  
*father*, *pāter*, -tris, m.  
*fault*, *culpa*, -ae, f.  
*furour*, *grātia*, -ae, f.; *farour*, *to*,  
*saveo*, *lāvi*, *lautum*, 2 (*g. dat.*)  
*fear*, *timor*, -oris, m.; *mētus*, -us,  
 m.  
*fearful*, *pāvīdus*, -a, -um  
*fear*, *to*, *timeo*, -ui, 2; *mētuo*, -ui,  
 3; *vēreor*, *vērītus*, dep. 2  
*fearless*, *impāvīdus*, -a, -um  
*feast*, *opūlao*, -ārum, f.  
*feather*, *penna*, -ae, f.; *plūmā*, -ae,  
 f.  
*feature*, *valius*, -us, m.  
*feeble*, *infirmitas*, -a, -um  
*feed*, (*trans.*) *pa-co*, *pāvi*, *pastum*,  
 3; (*intrans.*) *pa-cor*, *pa-sc*.  
*feed on*, *vescor*, 3 dep. (*g. abl.*)  
*feel*, *sentio*, *sensi*, *sensum*, 4  
*feign*, *singo*, *sinsi*, *sietum*, 3  
*fellow*, *hōmo*, -inis, m.: *that*  
*fellow*, *istē*  
*fertile*, *fertilis*, -o  
*fetch*, *see bring*  
*fetter*, *compēs*, -ēdis, f. [-ē  
*fever*, *febris*, -is f. (-iv or -iva, -i or  
*few*, *paucus*, -a, -um, (*mostly pl.*);  
*very few*, *perpauci*  
*field*, *āger*, -grī, m.  
*fierce*, *fērox*, -ācis  
*fifth*, *fiftly*, *see Par. 81*  
*jig*, *jig-tree*, *fiens*, -i, and -ūs, f.  
*fight*, *pugna*, -ae, f.  
*fight*, *to*, *pugno*, 1  
*fill*, *compleo*, -plēvi, -pletum, 2  
*finally*, *dēniquē* (*not to stand first*  
*in a clause*)  
*find*, *invēnio*, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *he*  
*was found guilty of*, *damnātus*  
*est* (*g. gen.*)  
*fine*, *multa*, -ae, f.

*finger*, *to*, multo, 1  
*finger*, *dīgītus*, -i, m.  
*finish*, *conficio*, -fēci, -fectum, 3;  
*pērāgo*, -ēgi, -actum, 3  
*fire*, *ignis*, -is, -m., *abl.* ignī;  
*under fire*, *sub jactu*, or *jactum*,  
*tēli*, (180)  
*firm*, *firmus*, -a, -um  
*first*, *prīmus*, -a, -um; *at f.*;  
*pīlmo* (*adv.*); *T. was the first to*  
*come* (or *who came*), *Tallius*  
*prīmus* *vēnit*  
*fish*, *piscis*, -i, m.  
*fisherman*, *pīcātor*, -ōris, m.  
*fit*, *aptus*, -a, -um; *idōneus*, -a,  
 -um; *for running*, *aptus ad*  
*currendum* (186)  
*five*, *quīnque*, *incl.*; *five hundred*,  
*quīnq̄centi*, -ae, -a  
*fix*, *figo*, -xi, -xum, 3  
*fired*, *certus*, -a, -um; *a certain*  
*fired day*, *certus quīdam dīes*  
*flame*, *flamma*, -ae, f.  
*flatter*, *ādulor*, 1, *dep.*  
*flee*, *fūgio*, *fūgi*, 3  
*fleet*, *clausis*, -is, f.  
*flesh*, *cāro*, *carnis*, f.  
*flight*, *fūga*, -ae, f.; *of a bird*,  
*vōlātus*, -us, m.  
*flight, put to*, *fūgo*, 1  
*flourish*, *flōreo*, -ui, 2  
*flow*, *fluo*, -xi, 3, *fut. part.* *fluxurus*  
*flower*, *flōr*, -ōris, m.  
*fly*, *a*, *musca*, -ae, f.  
*fly, to*, *see flee*; (*of a bird*) *vūlo*, 1  
*foe*, *hostis*, -is, m.  
*follow*, *sequor*, *secutus*, 3, *dep.*  
*follower*, *cōmēs*, -ītis, m.  
*folly*, *stultitia*, -ae, f.  
*food*, *cibus*, -i, m.  
*fond of*, *studiosus*, -a, -um, (*g. gen.*)  
*fool*, *foolish*, *stultus*, -a, -um  
*foolishly*, *stultō*  
*foot*, *pēs*, *pēdis*, m.  
*foot-soldier*, *pēdēs*, -ītis, m.  
*for* (*conj.*) *nam* (*at the beginning of*  
*a clause*); *enim* (*after the first*

*word in a clause*); (*prep.*) *pro*,  
*prae*, (*g. abl.*); *ob*, (*g. acc.*)  
*Par. 178*; (*born, fit, useful, &c.*)  
*for acting*, *ad agendum*; *for a*  
*few days*, *paucos dīes* (262)  
*forbid*, *vēto*, -ui, -itum, 1; *prō-*  
*hibeo*, -ui, -itum, 2  
*force*, *vīs*, *acc.* *vim*, *abl.* *vi*, f.  
*forced marches*, *magna itinēra*  
*forces*, *cōpiae*, -ārum, f.  
*forehead*, *frons*, -ntis, f.  
*foreign*, *externus*, -a, -um; *pere-*  
*grinus*, -a, -um  
*foresee*, *prōvideo*, -vīdi, -visum, 2  
*forest*, *silva*, -ae, f.  
*forget*, *obliviscor*, *oblītus*, 3, *dep.*  
*(g. gen.)*  
*forgetful*, *immēmor*, -ōris (*g. gen.*)  
*form*, *forma*, -ae, f.  
*former*, *prior*, *prīus*; *the former...*  
*the latter*, *ille...hic*  
*formerly*, *quondam*, *olim*  
*fort*, *castrum*, -i, -n.; *castellum*,  
 -i, n.  
*fortify*, *inānio*, -ivi or -ii, -itum 4,  
*fortitude*, *fortitudo*, -inis, f.; *with*  
*fortitude*, *fortiter*  
*fortunate*, *fēlix*, -icis  
*fortune*, *fortūna*, -ae, f.  
*fortunes*, *they distrusted their f.*,  
*rēbus suis diffīci sunt*  
*forty*, *quadrāgintā*, *incl.*  
*forum*, *fōrum*, -i, n.  
*found*, *condo*, -idi, -ditum, 3  
*founder*, *conditor*, -ōris, m.  
*fountain*, *fons*, *fontis*, m.  
*four*, *fourteen, &c.* *see Par. 81*  
*four times*, *quāter*  
*fourth*, *quartus*, -a, -um  
*free*, *liber*, -ēra, -ērum: *f. from*  
*fault*, *culpā vacuus* (279)  
*free, to*, *libēro*, 1, (*acc. & abl.*)  
*freed from debt*, *aere aliēno lib-*  
*erātus*  
*freedom*, *libertās*, -ātis, f.  
*frequent*, *crēber*, -bra, -brum  
*frequently*, *saepē*

*fresh*, rēcens, -ntis; nōvus, -a, -um  
*friend*, āmicus, -i, m.  
*friendly*, āmicus, -a, -um  
*friendship*, āmicitia, -ae, f.  
*frighten*, terreo, -ui, 2  
*frog*, rāna, -ae, f.  
*from*, ā, ē, or ex, dē (*g. abl.*); *from*  
*boyhood*, indē a puēro  
*from a distance*, ēmīnūs  
*front*, in, adversus, -a, -um  
*frost*, gēlū, *indcl.* n.  
*frugality*, parsimōnia, -ae, f.  
*fruit*, fructus, -ūs, m.; *the fruits*  
*(of the earth)*, frūges, -um, f. pl.  
*fruitful*, fertilis, -e; fērax, -ācis  
*fulfil*, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3;  
*expleo*, -plēvi, -plētum, 2  
*full*, plēnus, -a, -um (*g. gen. or abl.*)  
*funeral*, fūnus, -ēris, n.; *funeral*  
*rites*, infēriae, -arum, f.  
*furrow*, sulcus, -i, m.  
*fury*, fūror, -ōris, m.  
*future*, fūturus, -a, -um

Gābii, Gābii, -ōrum, m. pl.  
*gain*, quaestus, -ūs, m.; *lucrum*,  
 -i, n.  
*gain, to, (a victory)* rēportāre, 1;  
*acquirō*, quīsīvi, quīsītum, 3;  
*pāro*, 1  
*gain possession of*, pōtior, -ītus, 4,  
*dep. (g. abl.)* See Par. 207.  
*Gallie*, Gallicus, -a, -um  
*gallows*, crux, crūcis, f.  
*game*, lūdus, -i, m.  
*garden*, hortus, -i, m.  
*garland*, sertum, -i, n.  
*garment*, vestis, -is, f.  
*garrison*, praesidium, -i, n.  
*gate*, porta, -ae, f.  
*gather*, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3; col-  
 ligo, lēgi, lectum, 3  
*Gaul*, Gallia, -ae, f.  
*Gaul, a*, Gallus, -i, m.  
*gem*, gemma, -ae, f.  
*general*, dux, dūcis, m.; *impērator*,  
 -ōris, m.

*generally*, plērumque  
*gentleness*, cōmitas, -ātis, f.  
*gently*, lēniter  
*German*, Germānus, -a, -um  
*Germany*, Germānia, -ae, f.  
*get*, pāro, 1; *ādīpiscor*, *ādeptus*, 3  
*giant*, gīgās, -antis, m.  
*gift*, dōnum, -i, n.  
*gird*, cingo, -nxi, -nctum, 3  
*girl*, puella, -ae, f.  
*give*, do, dēdi, dātum, 1  
*give back*, reddo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*give birth to*, pārio, pepēri, partum,  
 3 (*g. acc.*)  
*give orders to*, impēro, 1 (*g. dat.*)  
*give up*, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*glad*, laetus, -a, -um  
*Glaucus*, Glaucus, -i, m.  
*glitter*, mīco, -ui, 1  
*gloomy*, tristis, e  
*glorious*, praeclārus, -a, -um  
*glory*, glōria, -ae, f.  
*go*, eo, -īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4; *I am*  
*going-to-die*, mōrītūrus sum  
*go away*, ābeo, -ii, -ītum, 4  
*go by*, praetēreō, īvi or -ii, -ītum, 4  
*go forth, or out*, exeo, -ii, -ītum, 4  
*go on*, prōcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3  
*go under*, sūbeo, -ii, -ītum, 4  
*goat*, cāper, -pri, m.  
*god*, deus, dei, m.; *nom. pl. often*  
*dii, or di*  
*goddess*, dea, -ae, f. Par. 311  
*gold*, aurum, -i, n.  
*golden*, aureus, -a, -um  
*good*, bonus, -a, -um  
*goodwill*, bēnēvōlentia, -ae, f.  
*goose*, anser, -ēris, m.  
*govern*, rēgo, rexi, rectum, 3  
*government*, impērium, -i, n.  
*grace*, grātia, -ae, f.  
*grandfather*, āvus, -i, m.  
*grandson*, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.  
*grant (see give)*; *I grant him*  
*pardon*, do ei vēniam  
*grape*, ūva, -ae, f.  
*grass*, herba, -ae, f.

*grateful*, grátas, -a, -um  
*gray*, cānus, -a, -uum  
*great*, magnus, -a, -um; *very great*, permagnus; *with "this,"* tantus; *this great slaughter*, hæc tanta caecidēs  
*greatly*, magnopere, valdū  
*greatness*, magnitudo, -inis, f.  
*Grecian, Greek*, Graecus, -a, -um  
*Greece*, Graecia, -ae, f.  
*greedy*, avidus, -a, -um, avarus, -a, -um (*both g. gen.*)  
*green*, viridis, -o  
*green, to grow*, viresco, 3 [m.  
*grief*, dolor, -oris, m.; luctus, -us, griere, dūleo, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*); angō, 3 (*trans.*)  
*groan*, gēnitus, -ūs, m.  
*groan, to*, gēno, -ui, 3  
*ground*, hūmus, -i, f.; *on the ground*, hūmī  
*grove*, lūcus, -i, m.  
*grow*, cresco, crēvi, cretum, 3  
*guard*, (*a single person*) custōs, -ōdis, m.; (*a garrison*) praesidiū, -i, n.  
*guard, to*, custōdiō, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4; *guard strongly*, firmāre praesidiū  
*guest*, hospēs, -itis, m.  
*guide*, dux, dūcis, m.  
*guide, to*, dūco, duxi, ductum, 3  
*guile*, dōlus, -i, m.  
*guilt*, culpa, -ae, f.; scēlus, -ēris, n.  
*guilty*, reus, -antis; *to be found guilty of*, damnāri (*g. gen.*)

**Habit**, mōs, mōris, m.  
*hail*, grando, -inis, f.  
*hair*, crīnis, -is, m.; *not even a hair's breadth*, nō transversum quīdem unguem, lit. *a nail's breadth*  
*half*, dimīdium, -i, n.  
*halt*, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3  
*hand*, mānus, -ūs, f.; *right hand*, dextra; *left hand*, sinistra; *I*

*am at hand*, adsum, -fui, -esse; *it is in your hands*, pēnes tū est (183)  
*hand down*, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*handsome*, pulcher, -clra, -chrum  
*hang*, pendo, pēpendi, 2 (*intrans.*); pendo, pēpendi, pensum, 3 (*trans.*)  
*Hannibal*, Hannībal, -ālis, m.  
*happen*, (*of ill fortune*) accīdo, -cīdi, 3 (*mostly foll. by* ut; (*of good*) contingo, -tīgī, 3  
*happy*, (*fortunate*) felix, -icis; (*joyful*) laetus, -a, -um; (*blessed*) bēātus, -a, -um  
*harbour*, portus, -ūs, m.  
*hard*, durus, -a, -um  
*harr*, lēpus, -ōris, m.  
*harm*, detrīmentum, -i, n.  
*harmful*, nōxius, -a, -um  
*harp*, cithāra, -ae, f.  
*harrest*, messis, -is, f.  
*Hasdrubal*, Hasdrūbal, -ālis, m.  
*haste*, cē'ūrītās, -ātis, f.; *in haste*, cum cēlērītāte, or cēlērīter, or summā cēlērītāte (181); *make haste*, see hasten  
*hasten*, festīno, 1; prōpēro, 1  
*hastily*, i. e. rashly, tēmērū  
*hate*, odiū, -i, n.  
*hate, to*, ōdi, def. 3; see App. II., page 215  
*hatred*, see hate  
*have*, habeo, -ui, -itum, 2  
*hawk*, accipiter, -tris, m.  
*he*, ille, -a, -ūd; is, ea, id; *he who*, qui (*is being often omitted, or placed after* qui, Par. 107)  
*head*, caput, -itis, n.  
*headlong*, praecipēs, -cīpītis  
*health*, sālūs, -ūtis, f.  
*healthy*, sālūs, -a, -um; *healthful*, sālūber, -bris, -bro  
*heap*, accūvus, -i, m.  
*hear*, aud'ō, -īvi or -īi, -itum, 4  
*hearer*, auditor, -ōris, m.  
*heart*, cōr, -dis, n.

*heart*, *hēarts*, -i, m.  
*heat*, *cālor*, -ōris, m.  
*heaven*, *enclum*, -i, m.  
*heavy*, *grāvis*, -e  
*Hector*, *Hectōr*, *Hectōris*, m.  
*hedge round*, *to*, *saepio*, *saepsi*,  
*saepum*, 4  
*heir*, *hērēs*, -ēdis, m.  
*Helen*, *Hēlēna*, -ae, f.  
*helmet*, *gālea*, -ae, f.  
*help*, *auxilium*, -i, n.  
*help*, *to*, *subvénio*, -véni, -ventum,  
4 (g. dat.)  
*Helvetii*, *the*, *Helvētīi*, -ōrum, -i, m.  
*hemlock*, *cicūta*, -ae, f.  
*hence*, *hinc*  
*herb*, *herba*, -ae, f.  
*Hercules*, *Herculēs*, -is, m.  
*herd*, *pēcūs*, -ōris, n.  
*here*, *hic*; often used for "hither"  
and then to be trans. by *hinc*  
*hero*, *hēros*, -ōis, m. (acc. pl. -ōas)  
*hesitate*, *dūbito*, 1  
*hide*, *to*, *condo*, -dīdi, *dītum*, 3;  
*abdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*hiding place*, *lātebra*, -ae, f.  
*high*, *altus*, -a, -um; *to buy at a*  
*very high price*, *permagnō emēro*  
*highest*, *summus*, -a, -um  
*hill*, *collis*, -is, m.  
*himself*, *ē*, *sul*, &c. See PAR. 94  
*hinder*, *prōhibeo*, 2, *I hindered you*  
*from coming*, *prōhibui quomīnus*  
*vēnīrēs*  
*hinge*, *cardo*, -dīnis, m.  
*hire*, *condūco*, -dūxi, -ductum, 3  
*his*, PAR. 98, 218, 306, and p. 328  
*historian*, *auctor*, -ōris, m.  
*hither*, *hic*; *hitherto*, *adhūc*  
*hold*, *tēneo*, -ui, 2; *hābeo*, -ui,  
-ītum, 2  
*holiday*, *fēriac*, -ārum, f.  
*hollow*, *cāvus*, -a, -um; *to hollow*,  
*cāvāro*  
*holy*, *sācer*, -era, -erum  
*home*, *dōmus*, -ūs, f. (EX.  
LXXXIV.); *at home*, *dōmi* (265)

*Homer*, *Hōmērus*, -i, m.  
*honest*, *prōbus*, -a, -um  
*honesty*, *prōbitas*, -ātis, f.  
*honey*, *mēl*, *mellis*, n.  
*honour*, *hōnor*, -ōris, m.; *to be in*  
*great honour with the Romans*.  
*in magno hōnōre esse apūd*  
*Rōmānos*  
*honourable*, *hōnestus*, -a, -um  
*hoof*, *ungūla*, -ae, f.  
*hook*, *hāmus*, -i, m.  
*hope*, *spēs*, *spei*, f.  
*hope*, *to*, *spēro*, 1; *do you hope to*  
*take the city?* *spērasne tū urbem*  
*captūrum esse?*  
*Horace*, *Hōrātius*, -ii, m.  
*Horatii*, *the*, *Hōrātīi*, -ōrum, m.  
*horn*, *cornū*, -ūs, n.  
*horrible*, *dīrus*, -a, -um; *nēfandus*,  
-a, -um; *h. to relate!* *nēfās*  
*dictū!* (246)  
*horse*, *ēquus*, -i, m.  
*horseman*, *ēquēs*, -ītis, m.  
*hospitality*, *hospitium*, -i, n.  
*host*, *hospēs*, -ītis, m.  
*hostage*, *obses*, -īdis, m.  
*hostile*, *infestus*, -a, -um  
*Hostilius*, *Hostiliūs*, -i, m.  
*hound*, *cānis*, -is, c.  
*hour*, *hōra*, -ae, f.  
*houre*, *dōmus*, -ūs, f. (311); *neder*.  
-ium, f. pl.; *household*, *fāmilīa*,  
-ae, f.  
*how?* *in what way?* *quōmōdo?* *to*  
*how great an extent*, *quam*, *quan*-  
*tum*; *how great or much*, *quan*-  
*tus*, -a, -um; *how many?* *quot?*  
*how often?* *quōtiens?* *how long?*  
*quāmdiu?* *how good, bad, &c.*  
*quam hōnus, mālus, &c.*; *how*  
*few there are who use riches*  
*well!* *quōtus quisque est qui*  
*dīvitiis bēnē utitur!* *for how*  
*much did you buy it?* *quanti id*  
*emisti?* *how important it is!*  
*quantum intērest or rēfert* (329)  
*however*, *tāmen*

huge, ingens, -tis  
 human, hūmānus, -a, -um  
 hundred, centum, indecl. (81)  
 hunger, fāmes, -is, f.  
 hungry, to be, ēsūrio, 4  
 hunt, vēnor, -atus, 1, dep.  
 hunter, huntsman, vēnātor, -ōris, m.  
 hunting, vēnatio, -ōnis, f.  
 hurl, conjicio, -jēci, -jectum, 3  
 hurt, to, nōceo, 2 (g. dat.); laedo, -si, -sum, (g. acc.)  
 hurtful, noxius, -a, um  
 husband, mārītus, -i, m.  
 husbandman, agrīcōla, -ae, m.

I, ēgo; see page 45

Ida, īda, -ae, f.

idle, ignāvus, -a, -um

idleness, ignāvia, -ae, f.

if, sī; if...not, nīsi (125, 295)

ignorant, ignārus, -a, -um (g. gen.);

ignorant of, to be, ignōro, 1;

nescio, -ii, 4 (both g. acc.); are

you ignorant that the man is

here? nescīsne hōmīnem ādesse?

are you ignorant how, &c., nescīs-

ne quōmōdo, foll. by subjunct.

ill (sick), aeger, -gra, -grum;

(subst.) mālum, -i, n.; ill (adv.),

i.e. badly, mālē

illness, morbus, -i, m. [nis, -e

illustrious, clārus, -a, -um; insig-

image, īmāgo, -īnis, f.

imagine, pūto, 1

imitate, īmītor, 1, dep.

immediately, stātīm

immense, ingens, -ntis

immortal, -immortālis, e

immortality, immortālitās, -ātis, f.

impatient, impātiens, -tis

impede, impēdio, -īvi or ii, ītum, 4

impel, impello, -pūli, -pulsum, 3

impious, impius, -a, -um

implore, ōro, 1

important. It is important for

Balbus, Balbiintērest; ("should,"

after this v., is often rendered by

pres. inf.) it is imp. that Catiline  
 should perish, intērest Cātīlinam  
 pērīre; it is i. for me, meā intēr-  
 est; see Par. 329

importune, fātīgo, 1

impose, impōno, -pōsui, -pōsitum,

3; I impose tribute on a nation,

tribūtum genti impōno

improve, to, ēmendo, 1 [er

impudent, impūdēns, -tis; -ly, -ent-

impunity, with, impūnē

impute, he i. this to me as a fault,

hōc mīhi vītīo dat, or vertit

in, in (g. abl.); in the direction of,

versūs (foll. acc.); in the pages

of, āpūd (g. acc.); in the power

of, pēns (g. acc.); in the

presence of, cōram (g. abl.), see

Par. 178-180; in order to, ūt;

in three days, Par. 263; in Gabii,

Par. 265; in haste, Par. 181.

increase, augeo, auxi, auctum, 2

(trāns.); cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3

(intrans.)

incredible, incrēdībīlis, -e

incursion, incursio, -ōnis, f.

indeed, quidem; you i....but I, tū

quidem...ēgo autem, (or vērō)

India, India, -ae, f.

indignation, see anger

indolence, ignāvia, -ae, f. [(dat)

indulge, indulgeo, -lsi, -ltum, 2

industrious, diligens, -ntis

infantry, pēdītes, m. pl.; pēdītātus,

-ūs, m.

infirm, infirmus, -a, -um, -um

influence, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

inform, I informed him, certiore

eum fēcī (gen. or dē.)

in front, adversus, -a, -um, adj.

inglorious, īnhōnestus, -a, -um

inhabit, incōlo, -colui, -cultum, 3;

hābīto, 1

inhabitant, incōla, -ae, m.

injury, nōceo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)

injury, injūria, -ae, f.

injustice, see (34) unjust (things.)



*innocence*, *innocentia*, -ae, f.  
*innocent*, *innocens*, -tis; *insons*,  
 -ntis; *innocent of all fault*, *omni*  
*culpā vacuus* (279)  
*innumerable*, *innūmērābilis*, -e  
*inquire*, *quaero*, *quaesivi*, *quae-*  
*situ*, 3; *rōgo*, 1  
*inquiry*, *quaestio*, *ōnis*, f.  
*insolence*, *insolentia*, -ae, f. [3]  
*inspect*, *inspicio*, -spexi, -spectum,  
*insolent*, *insolens*, -tis  
*instance*, *exemplum*, -i, n.  
*instead of*, *prō* (*g. abl.*)  
*instruct*, *erūdīo*, 4  
*instrument*, *instrūmentum*, -i, n.  
*insufficient*, *impar*, *gen. imparis*  
*insult*, *contūmēlia*, -ae, f.  
*insurrection*, *seditio*, -iōnis, f.  
*integrity*, *prōbitas*, *ātis*, f.  
*intellect*, *ingēnium*, -i, n.  
*intention*, *consilium*, -i, n.  
*inter*, *sūpēlio*, -ivi or -ii, -pultam, 4  
*intercept*, *intercludo*, -si, -sum, 3  
*intercourse*, *consuetudo*, -inis, f.  
*interest*, *it is my i.*, *meā intērest*; *it*  
*is the i. of Tullius*, *Tullii intērest*  
*(see Ex. XCII.)*; (*interests*) *to*  
*consult my*, *Tullius's*, *i.*, *mihi*,  
*Tullio*, *consulere*  
*into*, *in* (*g. acc.*) *Par. 55.* [3]  
*introduce*, *indūco*, -duxi, -ductum,  
*incade*, *invādo*, -si, -sum, 3  
*in turn*, *invicem*  
*in vain*, *frustrā*  
*inventor*, *inventor*, -ōris, m.  
*investigate*, *explōro*, 1  
*invite*, *invito*, 1  
*invoke*, *invōco*, 1  
*Ireland*, *Hibernia*, -ae, f.  
*iron*, (*subst.*) *ferrum*, -i, n.; (*adj.*)  
*ferreus*, -a, -um  
*island*, *insūla*, -ae, f.  
*it*, *see page 46, Par. 219-226*  
*Italy*, *Itālia*, -ae, f.  
*ivory* (*subst.*), *ēbur*, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*)  
*ēburnus*, -a, -um  
*ivy*, *hēdēra*, -ae, f.

*Javelin*, *iāculum*, -i, n.  
*jaw*, *māla*, -ae, f.  
*jest*, *jocus*, -i, m.; pl. -i and -a  
*join*, *jungo*, -nxi, -nctum, 3  
*journey*, *itē*, *itinēris*, n.; *to jour-*  
*ney*, *itē faciēre*; *we shall have t.*  
*journey*, *itē nobis faciendū*  
*erit*  
*joy*, *gaudium*, -i, n.  
*joyful*, *laetus*, -a, -um  
*joyfully*, *laetē*  
*judge*, *iudex*, -īcis, m.; *judge, to*,  
*iudico*, 1  
*judgment*, *iudicium*, -i, n.; *in my*  
*judgment*, *mē iudicē*  
*juice*, *jūs*, *iuris*, n.  
*jump, to*, *salto*, 1  
 *jumper*, *saltator*, -ōris, m.  
*Juno*, *Iūno*, -ōnis, f.  
*Jupiter*, *Iuppiter*, *Iūvis*, m.; *dat.*,  
*acc., abl.*, *Iūvi*, -em, -ē  
*just*, *justus*, -a, -um  
*justice*, *iustitia*, -ae, f.; *jū*, *iuris*,  
 n.

*Keen*, *acer*, -cris, -crē (44, 61)  
*keep*, *tēneo*, -ui, 2; *sorvo*, 1; *I keep*  
*my word*, *fidem praeſto*, -stīti,  
*-stātum & -stītum*, 1; *keep off*,  
*arceo*, -ui, 2  
*keeper*, *custos*, -ōdis, m.  
*key*, *clavis*, -is, f.  
*kill*, *interficio*, -feci, -fectum, 3  
*kind*, *bēnignus*, -a, -um  
*kind*, *gēnus*, -cris, n.; *a barren*  
*kind of style*, *jūanī quaedam*  
*oratio*; *see Ex. LXXXIII. note*  
*310a*  
*kindness*, *bēnignitas*, -ātis, f.  
*kindle*, *incendo*, -di, -sum, 3  
*kindly*, *būignē*  
*kindness*, *a*, *bēnēficiū*, -i, n.  
*king*, *rex*, *rēgis*, m.  
*kingdom*, *regnum*, -i, n.  
*kiss*, *oscūlor*, 1, dep.  
*knee*, *gēnū*, -ūs, n.  
*knife*, *culter*, -tri, m.

*knight*, *equēs*, -ītis, m.  
*know*, *scio*, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4;  
*nōvi*, *see nosco*; *I do-not-know*,  
*nescio*, -scīvi -scītum, 4  
*knowledge*, *scientia*, -ae, f.; *with-*  
*out his knowledge*, *clam eo*  
*known*, *nōtus*, -a, -um; *it is well*  
*known*, *constat*

*Labienus*, *Lābiēnus*, -i, m.  
*labour*, *lābor*, -ōris, m.  
*lady*, *mūlier*, -ōris, f.  
*lake*, *lācus*, -ūs, m.  
*lamb*, *agnus*, -i, m.  
*lame*, *claudus*, -a, -um  
*lament*, *lūgeo*, -xi, -ctum, 2 (*trans.*);  
*dōleo*, -ui, 2 (*intrans.*) [*grief*]  
*lamentation*, *maeror*, -ōris, m., *see*  
*lance*, *hasta*, -ae, f.  
*land*, *terra*, -ae, f.; *lands* (*as*  
*possessions*), *āger*, -gri, m.;  
*lines*, -ium, m. pl.; *land* (*adj.*)  
*terrestri*, -e  
*large*, *magnus*, -a, -um (*for comp.*  
*and superl. see Par. 68*), *a l.*  
*sum of money*, *grandis pecūnia*  
*lashes*, *verbera*, -um, n. pl.  
*last* (*as opp. to first in a race*),  
*extrēmus*, *see Par. 69*; *at last*,  
*tandem*  
*lasting*, *pērennis*, -e  
*late*, *sērus*, -a, -um; *late*, *adv.*  
*sērō*; *rather late, too late*, *sērius*  
*late*, *nūper*  
*Latin*, *Latīnus*, -a, -um  
*latter*, *hic*; *the former...the latter*,  
*ille...hic*  
*Latōna*, *Lātōna*, -ae, f.  
*laugh*, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*, 2; *laugh*  
*at, mock* (*a person*), *irrideo*, -si,  
*-sum*, 2 (*g. dat.*); (*a thing*)  
*rideo* (*g. acc.*), *gentler than*  
*irrideo*  
*laughing-stock*, *lādibrium*, -i, n.  
*laurel*, *laurus*, -i, f.  
*law*, (*a statute*), *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.; (*the*  
*laws*) *jūs*, *jūris*, n.; *the laws of*

*men and God*, *jūs et fas*; *against*  
*the laws*, *contrā jūs* [*in*]  
*lawful*, *it is*, *licet*, -uit, 2, *imp.*  
*lay aside*, *pōno*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*,  
 3; *lay down*, *dēpōno*, -pōsui,  
 -pōsitum, 3; *lay waste*, *vasto*, 1  
*laziness*, *inertia*, -ae, f.  
*lazy*, *segnis*, -e; *iners*, -tis  
*lead*, *dūco*, -xi, -ctum, 3; *lead*  
*out*, *ēdūco*, -xi, -ctum, 3  
*leader*, *dux*, *dūcis*, m.  
*leaf*, *frons*, -dis, f.  
*lean*, *adj.*, *mācer*, -era, -crum  
*leap*, *to*, *sālio*, -ii or -ūi, -saltum.  
 4; *leap across*, *transilio*, -ui,  
 -sultum, 4; *leap down*, *dēsilio*,  
 -sili, -sultum, 4; *leap out*,  
*exsilio*, -silai, -sultum, 4, *fol.*  
 1y *dē* or *ē*  
*learn*, *disco*, *dīdici*, 3.  
*learned*, *doctus*, -i, -um; *learned*  
*in the law*, *jūris perītus* (287)  
*learning*, *doctrīna*, -ae, f. [*"at"*]  
*least*, *minimus*, -at, -um; *at l.*, *see*  
*leave*, *to*, *linquo*, *liqui*, *lictum*, 3;  
*relinquo*, -liqui, -lictum, 3; *I*  
*leave (by will)*, *lēgo*, 1; *leave*,  
*pōtestās*, -ātis, f.  
*left*, *rēliquus*, -a, -um; *left (hand)*,  
*sinister*, -tri, -trum  
*leg*, *crās*, *crūris*, n.  
*legion*, *lēgio*, -ōnis, f.  
*leisure*, *ōtium*, -i, n.; *leisure, to*,  
*have*, *vāco*, 1  
*Lemnos*, *Lemnos*, -i, f.  
*lend*, *crēdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*length*, *longitūdo*, -inis, f.;  
*length*, *tandem*  
*Lentulus*, *Lentūlus*, -i, m.  
*Leonidas*, *Leōnīdas*, -ae, m.  
*less*, *minor*, -is; *it was sold for*  
*less* (*Ex. LXX.*), *minōris ven-*  
*dītum est*; *it is less honourable*,  
*minūs hōnestum est*  
*lest*, *nē*  
*let*; (*oft. rend. by subjunct.*) *let*  
*them love, hate, &c.*, *āment*,

odērint; *let this be an example to you*, sit tibi hōc exemplo; (or by sic ut, cūrā ut) *let your conduct be improved*, fac ut mōres tui emendentur; *let them murmur*, licet frēmant (227)  
*letter*, littērae, -arum, f. pl.; *letter of the alphabet*, littēra, -ae, f.; *ēpistōla* (or *ēpistūla*) -ae, f.  
*level*, aequus, -a, -um; *level*, to, aequo, 1  
*levy*, a, delectus, -ūs, m.; *levy*, to, conscribo, -psi, -ptum, 3  
*liar*, mendāx, -ācis  
*liberate*, libēro, 1 (g. abl. of thing)  
*liberty*, libertās, -ātis, f.  
*liCTOR*, liCTOR, -ōris, m.  
*lie* (to tell lies), mentior, -ītus, 4, dep.; *lie down*, jāceo, -ui, 2; *lie hid*, lāteo, -ui, 2; *lie in ambush*, in wait for, insīdior, 1, (g. dat.)  
*life*, vita, -ae, f.  
*light*, lux, lūcis, f.; lūmen, -inis, n.; *light*, lēvis, -e [-inis, n.  
*lightning*, fulgūr, -ūris, n.; fulmen, -inis, n.  
*like*, similis, -e; *I like to walk*, me jūvat, or mihī placet, ambūlare  
*likeness*, similitūdo, -inis, f.  
*limb*, membrum, -i, n.  
*limit*, finis, -is, m.; limēs, -ītis, m.  
*line* (of battle), ācies, -ēi, f.  
*lion*, leo, -ōnis, m.  
*lip*, labrum, -i, n.  
*listen to*, audio, -īvi or -īi, -ītum, 4  
*little*, parvus, -a, -um; *I have too l. strength*, pārū viriū hābeo; *it matters l.* paulum refert  
*live*, to, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3; (*dwell*) habitāre or vitā agere; *I live on bread*, vescor, (3, dep.)-pāne (207)  
*load*, ōnus, -ōris, n.  
*lofty*, altus, -a, -um  
*log*, lignum, -i, n.  
*long*, longus, -a, -um; *long*, adv. diu; *longer*, adv. diūtius; *how*

*long?* quamdiu? *I have long been desiring*, jampridem (or jamdūdum) cūpio; *no longer*, non jam  
*look*, look at, aspicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3; *look for*, quaero, quae-sīvi, quaesītum, 3; *look*, a (of the human countenance), vultus, -ūs, m.; *look round*, circum-spicio, -spexi, -spectum, 3  
*lord*, dōminus, -i, m.  
*lose*, amitto, -misi, -missum, 3; *perdo*, -didi, -dītum, 3  
*loss*, damnum, -i, n.  
*lot*, sors, -tis, f.; *to draw lots about*, sortiri dē  
*lovable*, amābilis, -e  
*love*, amor, -ōris, m.; *love*, to, amo, 1; diligo, -lexi, -lectum, 3  
*loving*, amans, -tis  
*low*, lowly, hūmilis, -e  
*lower*, inferior, -us; *the lowest of the citizens*, cīvium infimī  
*luck*, fortuna, -ae, f.  
*lucky*, felix, -icis; faustus, -a, -um  
*luxury*, luxūria, -ae, f.  
*Lydia*, Lȳdia, -ae, f.  
*lying*, mendāx, -ācis  
*lyre*, lȳra, -ae, f.  
*Macedonians*, the, Mācēdōnēs, -ōnum, m.  
*machine*, mächina, -ae, f.  
*mad*, insānus, -a, -um; amens, -tis; *mad*, to be, fūro, 3; insānio, -īvi or -īi, 4 [-ae, f.  
*madness*, insānia, -ae, f.; āmentia, -iae, f.  
*magic*, māgicus, -a, -um  
*magistrate*, māgistrātus, -ūs, m.  
*maiden*, virgo, -inis, f.  
*make*, facio, feci, factum, 3; *make peace*, pācem ferire; *make haste*, see hasten  
*man*, (hero, &c.), vir, -i, m.; (*human being*) hōmo, -inis, m.; *all to a man*, omnes ad finem  
*manage*, administro, 3

*manifest*, mănifestus, -a, -um  
*manner*, mūs, mōris, m.; mōdus, -i, m.

*many*, multus, -a, -um, *very* m. permulti, or plūrīmi; so m. tot  
*marble*, marmor, -ōris, n.; (*adj.*) marmōreus, -a, -um  
*march*, to, (*set out*) prōficiscor, -fectus, 3, dep.; contendo, -di, -tum, 3; *march*, a, iter, itinēris, n.

*Marcus*, Marcus, -i, m.

*Marcus*, Marcus, -i, m.

*mark*, signum, -i, n.; nōta, -ae, f.; *it is the m. of*, est (*fol. by gen.*); see Par. 289.

*Māro*, Māro, -ōnis, m., Publius Vergīlius Māro, *commonly called Virgil*

*marriage*, mātīmōnium, -ii, n.

*marry* (of men), dūco, duxi, ductum, 3; (*of women*), nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, 3 (*g. dat.*); *he married Tullia*, Tulliam duxit; *she married Tullius*, Tullio nupsit

*Mars*, Mars, Martis, m.

*marsh*, pālūs, -ūdis, f.

*master*, dōmīnus, -i, m.; *of a school*, māgister, -tri, m.

*matter*, rēs, rei, f.

*matters*, it, rēfert, *impers.* (Ex. XCII.); *what does it matter?* quid rēfert? *it matters little what you think*, paulum rēfert quid (240a) sentias

*may*, *he may come, to be rendered by licet*, possum, fieri potest ut, &c., *according to the sense*; *some-one may (be inclined to) say*, dixerit aliquis

*meadow*, prātum, -i, n.

*means*, ōpes, -um, f. pl.; cūpia, -ae, f.

*meanwhile*, intērea, intērim

*measure*, mōdus, -i, m.; *beyond measure*, praeter mōdum; *to measure*, mētor, mensus, 4, dep.

*meat*, cāro, carnis, f.

*medicine*, mēdicīna, -ae, f.

*meditate*, mēditor, -ātus, *v. dep.*

*meet*, to, occurro, -curri, -cursum, 3 (*dat.*); *to meet death*, ōbīro mortem; (*adv.*) obviam (*dat.*); *he met me*, obviam mihi factus est

*memorable*, insignis, -e

*memory*, mēmōria, -ae, f.

*Menenius*, Mēnēnius, -i, m.

*mention*, mentio, -ōnis, f.

*merchant*, mercātor, -ōris, m

*mercy*, clēmētia, -ae, f.

*merited*, mērītus, -a, -um

*message*, nuntius, -i, m.

*messenger*, nuntius, -i, m.

*metal*, mētallum, -i, n.

*Metellus*, Mētellus, -i, m.

*middle*, midst, mēdius, -a, -um; *the middle of the night*, mēdia nox; *he rushed into the midst of the foe*, in mēdios hostes ruit *might* (i.e. *had the right to*) licuit; *you m. have come*, l. tibi vēnīre; (*had the ability to*) pōtūisti vēnīre

*mighty*, pōtens, -tis; ingens, -tis

*migrate*, mīgro, 1

*mildness*, lēnitas, -ātis, f.

*mile*, a, millo pāssus; *three miles*, tria milia passuum

*Milvus*, Mīlētus, -i, f.

*military*, mīlītāris, -o

*milk*, lāc, -tis, n.

*Milo*, Mīlo, -ōnis, m.

*mind*, mens, -tis, f., ānīmus, -i, m.

*mindful*, mēmōr, -ōris (*g. gen.*)

*mine*, meus, -a, -um

*mine*, a, mētallum, -i, n.; *he was condemned to the mines*, in mētalla damnātus est

*minge*, misceo, -ui, -xtum, 2

*mirh*, laetitia, -ae, f.

*misbecome*, it misbecomes, dēdēcet, -uit, 2, *impers.* (220)

*miserable*, miser, -ōra, -ērum

*misfortune*, mālum, -i, n. ; cālūmī-  
tās, -ātis, f.

*mistake*, error, -ōris, m.

*mix*, see *mingle*

*mob*, turba, -ae, f.

*mock*, lādo, -si, -sum, 3

*mockery*, lādibrium, -i, n.

*modest*, mōdestus, -a, -um

*modesty*, mōdestia, -ae, f.

*moist*, hūmīdus, -a, -um

*moisture*, hūmor, -ōris, m.

*money*, sum of money, pēcūnia, -ae, f.

*monster*, monstrum, -i, n.

*monstrous*, nēfās (indecl.); (used in  
opposition to statements) the  
woman (monstrous to relate)  
slew her son, mūlier (nēfās dictu)  
filium suum interfecit

*month*, mensis, -is, m.

*monument*, mōnūmentum, -i, n.

*moon*, lūna, -ae, f.

*morals*, mōres, -um, m. pl.

*more*, (adj.) plūs, plūris (72); he said  
no more, nec plūra dixit; (adv.)  
mūgis with adj. (to a greater  
degree), plūs with verbs (to a  
greater extent); more than, plūs-  
quam (adv.); it was not divided  
into more than three parts, non  
plusquam in tres partes divisum  
est; let no ship have more than  
thirty oars, nulla nāvis plusquam  
trīginta rēmis ūgātur; suprā  
(prep.); more than twenty thou-  
sand fell that day, caesa eo die  
suprā milia vīginti

*moreover*, praeterea

*morning*, in the, mānē, (adv. indecl.)

*mortal*, mortālis, -e.

*most*, most men, plērique; most of  
the sheep, plēraque ovium

*mother*, māter, -tris, f.

*motion*, mōtus, -ūs, m.

*mound*, agger, -ēris, m.

*mount*, ascendo, -di, -sum, 3; con-  
scendo, -di, -sum, 3

*mountain*, mons, -tis, m.

*mourn*, lūgeo, -xi, -ctum, 2

*mournful*, muestus, -a, -m.

*mourning*, luctus, -ūs, m.

*mouse*, mus, mūs, c.

*mouth*, ōs, ōris, n.

*more*, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

*much*, multus, -a, -um; (adv.)  
multum, sometimes used as a  
noun, Par. 71; much, very much,  
as (or so) much, money, multum,  
plūrimum, tantum, pēcūniae;  
for how much did you buy it?  
quanti id ēmisti? with comp.  
e.g. (by) much better, multo  
mēlior (274)

*Mucius*, Mūcius, -i, m.

*multitude*, multitudo, -inis, f.

*Mummius*, Mummīus, -i, m.

*munificence*, mūnīficientia, -ae, f.

*murder*, caedēs, -is, f.; to murder,  
interficio, -feci, -fectum, 3;  
trucido, 1

*murmur*, murmur, -ūris, n.; to

murmur, frēmo, -ui, -itum, 3;

let them murmur, licet frēmant

*music*, mūsica, -ae, f.

*must* (163), and see nēcessē, oportet

*my*, meus, -a, -um; voc. mī

*myrrh*, myrrha, -ae, f.

*myrtle*, myrtus, -i, f.

*Naked*, nūdus, -a, -um

*name*, nūmen, -inis, n.; to name,

nūmīno, 1; vōco, 1

*narrate*, narro, 1

*narrow*, angustus, -a, -um

*nation*, gens, -tis, f.; pōpulus, -i, m.

*native*, a, incōla, -ae, m.; native-

land, patria, -ae, f.

*nature*, nātūra, -ae, f.

*naval*, nāvālis, -e

*near*, prōpinquus, -a, -um; (prep.)

prōpē (g. acc.); ād (g. acc.);

nearer, nearest, see Par. 69

*nearly*, fērē, paenē

*necessary*, nēcessārius, -a, -um; it  
is n. see nēcesso and ōpus

*necessity*, nēcessitas, -ātis, f.  
*neck*, collum, -i, n.  
*need, to*, ēgeo, -ui, 2 (*abl.*); *there is no need of words*, non ōpus est verbis  
*needle*, ācus, -ūs, f.  
*neglect*, negligō, -lēxi, -lectum, 3  
*negligence*, incūria, -ae, f.  
*neighbour, neighbouring*, vicinus, -a, -um; *inītinus*, -a, -um  
*neither*, (*pron.*) neuter, -tra, -trum, Par. 85; (*conj.*) nēc, nēquo  
*nephew*, nēpōs, -ōtis, m.  
*Neptune*, Neptūnus, -i, m.  
*Nero*, Nēro, -ōnis, m.  
*nest*, nidus, -i, m.  
*net*, rēte, -is, n.  
*never*, nunquam; *nevertheless*, tamen (*at the beginning of a clause, or after an emphatic word*).  
*new*, novus, -a, -um; *news*, nuntius, -i, m.  
*next*, proximus, -a, -um; *on the next day*, postēro (*more rarely proximo*) diē; *we shall know all within the next five hours*, his quinquē hōris omnia comperta habēbimus  
*night*, nox, noctis, f.; *by n. noctu*  
*nightingale*, philōmēla, -ae, f.  
*Nile*, Nilus, -i, m.  
*nine*, novem, indcl.  
*no (adj.)*, (*with things*) nullus, -a, -um; (*with persons*) nēmo; *no poet*, nēmo pōeta; *no one*, nēmo (Par. 92); *and no...* nēque ullus; *and no one*, nēc quisquam; *there is no need of words*, nōn ōpus est verbis; *by no means all came*, nēquāquam omnes vēērunt  
*no (adv.)*, *no longer*, nōn jam; *no better i.e. better by nothing*, nihilo, or nēquāquam melior; *he said no more*, nēc plūra dixit  
*nobility*, nobilitas, -ātis, f.

*noble*, nobilis, -e  
*noise*, sōnus, -i, m.; *clamor*, -ōris, m.  
*nor*, nēquē, nēc  
*nose*, nāsus, -i, m.  
*not*, nōn; *not even*, (141); *see also* 129, 143; *if... not*, nīsi; *not yet*, nōndum  
*nothing*, nihil or nīl, n. indcl.  
*notice*, ānimadvertō, -ti, -sum, 3  
*notwithstanding*, tamen  
*nourish*, nūtrio, -ivi and -iī, -itum, 4  
*novelty*, novitās, -ātis, f.  
*now*, nunc; *meaning already or by this time*, jam.  
*nowhere*, nusquam  
*Numa*, Nūma, -ae, m.  
*number*, nūmērus, -i, m.  
*nurse*, nūtrix, -icis, f.  
*nut*, nux, nūcis, f.  
*nymph*, nympha, -ae, f.

O! O! (*fol. by Acc.*, 205); O that! ūtinam (330)  
*oak*, quercus, -ūs, f.  
*oar*, rēmus, -i, m.  
*oath*, iusjurandum, iurisjurandi, n.; (*military*) sacramentum, -i, n.  
*obedient*, obēdiens, -tis (*g. dat.*)  
*obey*, pāreo, -ui, 2, (*g. dat.*)  
*obtain*, pāro, 1; *compāro*, 1; *adipiscor*, ādeptus, 3, (*by entreaty*), impetro, 1; (*by lot*), sortior, -itus, 4.  
*occasion*, tempus, -ōris, n.  
*ocean*, ōcēānus, -i, m.  
*odour*, ōdor, -ōris, m.  
*of* (282-90); *the town (of) Corioli*, Cōrīōli oppidum; *both of us wept*, ambo flēvīmus; *the top of the mountain*, suūmus mons  
*offer*, offēro, obtūli, oblātum, offerre (238); *offering*, dōnum, -i, n.  
*office*, mānus, -ēris, n.  
*offspring*, prōlēs, -is, f.  
*often*, saepē; *how often*, quōtiēns  
*old*, antiquus, -a, -um; *vētus*, -ēris; *an old soldier*, vētus milēs (61);

*old age*, sēnectūs, -ūtis, f.; *old man*, sēnex, sēnis, m.; *old woman*, ānus, -ūs, f.; *older men*, sēniōres, or māiōres nātū; *older, oldest*, māior, maximus nātū.

*omen*, ōmen, -īnis, n.

*omit*, ōmitto, -mīsi, -missum, 3

*on*, in (g. abl.); (*upon*) sūper; *on account of*, ob, propter (g. acc.)

*once*, (meaning "once for all") sēmel; (*formerly*) ōlim, quondam; (*once upon a time*) fortē; *at once*, stātīm

*one (only one)*, unus, -a, -um; *one by one*, singūli, -ae, -a; *a certain one*, quidam (310a); *one...another*, ālius...ālius; *the one...the other*, alter...alter (86)

*only*, (adj.) sōlus, -a, -um; *only Tullius dissented*, unī Tullio āliter vīsum est; *not only...but also*, non sōlum...sed ētiam, or cum...tum; *he lived only ten years*, sōlos dēcem annos vixit; *if only*, sī mōdo

*onset*, impētus, -ūs, m.

*open*, to, āpērio, -ui, -rtum, 4

*opinion*, sententia, -ae, f.

*opponent*, adversārius, -i, m.

*opportunity*, occāsio, -ōnis, f.

*oppose*, obsisto, -stiti, -stitum, 3 (g. dat.); *if oppōno is used, note that it means "I place against"*; *he opposed the enemy*, oppōsuit sēsū hosti [sum, 3]

*oppress*, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-or, (i) *in statements and commands*, vcl, aut (157a); (ii) *in alternative questions* (171), ān, preceded by utrum or -nē; (a) (*Whether*) *do you prefer this or that?* Utrum hoc (or hocnē) ān illud mavultis? (b) *I asked whether...or, interrogāvi utrum...ān; whether...or not...annōn, or necnē*

*crator*, ōrātor, -ōris, m.

*order (a command)*, mandatum, -i,

n.; *jussam*, -i, n.; *to give orders (in war)*, impēro, 1, with dat., ut, and subjunctive; *to order*, jūbeo, jussi, jussum, 2 (acc. and inf.); *impēro*, 1 (g. dat. and ut.); *order (a rank)*, ordo, -īnis, m.; *the order of the knights*, ēquestis ordo; *in order to*, ut

*ornament*, ornātus, -ūs, m.

*other*, ālius, -a, -nd; *the other*, alter (86); *the wealth of-others*, āliēnae divitiāe

*ought*, dēbeo, -ui, -itum, 2; *you ought to fight*, pugnāre dēbes; *you ought to have fought*, pugnāre dēbuisti (223)

*our* (87) noster; *our men* (34) nostri

*out of*, ē, ex (g. abl.); (meaning "outside") extrā; *out of shot*, extrā jactum; *outer*, adj. extērior, neut. -ius (63); *outside*, prep. extrā (g. acc.)

*over*, sūper; *across*, trans (g. acc.)

*overcome*, sūpero, 1

*overthrow*, see *overcome*

*overturn*, subverto, -verti, -versum, 3 [sum, 3]

*overwhelm*, opprīmo, -pressi, -pres-ove, dēbeo, -ui, -itum, 2

*own* (see Par. 98); *your or my own name*, tuum or meum, ipsius, nōmen (*where ipsius agrees with the gen. tui or mei implied in tuum or meum*)

*owner*, dōmīnus, -i, m.

*ox*, bōs, bōvis, c. See Par. 311

*Pace*, passus, -ūs, m.

*pain*, dōlor, -ōris, m.

*paint*, pingo, -nxi, -ctum, 3

*painter*, pictor, -ōris, m.

*painting*, pictūra, -ae, f.

*palace*, palātium, -i, n.

*Pallas*, Pallās, -ādis, f.

*palm*, palma, -ae, f.; *to carry off the palm*, palmam ferre

*panic*, pavor, -ōris, m.

*parched*, aridus, -a, -um; tostus, -a, -um

*pardon*, vēnia, -ae, f.; *I grant him*

*pardon*, do ei veniam; *to par-*

*don*, ignosco, -nūvi, -nōtum, 3, g. dat.

*parent*, pārens, -tis, c.

*Paris (of Troy)*, Pāris, -idis, m.

*parricide*, parricida, -ae, m.

*part*, pars, -tis, f.; *it is the p. of an orator*, oratoris est (289); *to take part in a battle*, interesse praelio; *for my part*, equidem (139)

*partner*, socius, -i, m.

*pass*, *pass by*, *pass on*, praetereo, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4

*path*, callis, -is, m.

*past*, praeteritus, -a, -um

*patience*, patientia, -ae, f.

*patient*, pātiens, -ntis (g. gen.)

*patiently*, patienter

*patrician*, patricius, -a, -um

*pay*, stipendium, -i, n.; *to pay*, solvo, -vi, -ūtum, 3; *pendo*, pēpendi, pēsum, 3; *pay attention*, operam dare; *pay penalty*, poenas dare; *pay tribute*, tributum pendere; *able to pay*, par (gen. pāris) solvendo, i.e. equal to paying

*peace*, pax, pācis, f.

*penalty*, poena, -ae, f.; *to pay penalty*, poenas dare

*penetrate*, pūnetro, 1

*penitence*, poenitentia, -ae, f. [m.

*penny*, dēnarius, -i, m.; as, assis,

*people*, pōpulus, -i, m.

*perfidy*, perfidia, -ae, f.

*perform*, perficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3

*perfume*, odor, -ōris, m.

*perhaps*, fortasse, forsitan (forsitan gen. takes the subjunctive)

*peril*, pūriculum, -i, n.

*perish*, pereo, -ivi or -ii, 4

*permission*, pūtestas, -ātis, f.

*permit*, pātior, passus, 3, dep.

*perseverance*, persēverantia, -ae, f.

*persevere*, persēvĕro, 1

*Persian*, Persa, -ae, m.

*person*, hōmo, -inis, m.

*persuade*, persuādeo, -si, -sum (g. dat. of person) (i) *I p. him to come*, p. ei ut vēniat; (ii) *I p. him (or am persuaded) that this is true*, p. ei (or persuasum est mihi) hōc vĕrum esse

*Philip*, Philippus, -i, m.

*Philoctetes*, Philoctētes, -ae, m.

*philosopher*, philōsōphus, -i, m.

*philosophy*, philōsōphia, ae, f.

*physician*, mēdicus, -i, m.

*picture*, tābula, -ae, f.

*pierce*, transfigo, -xi, -xum, 3

*pig*, porcus, -i, m.

*pigeon*, cōlumba, -ae, f.

*pile up*, exstruo, -struxi, -struc-tum, 3

*pilot*, gūbernātor, -ōris, m.

*pine tree*, pīnus, -ūs, f.

*pious*, pius, -a, -um, no superl.

*pirate*, praedo, -ōnis, m.

*pitch (a camp)*, pūno, pūsui, pūsītum, 3

*pitiful*, mīserīcors, -cordis

*pity*, mīserīcordia, -ae, f.; *feel*

*pity for*, mīserēor, -sērītus or -sertus, 2, dep. (g. gen.); *show*

*pity to*, mīseror, 1 (g. acc.)

*place*, lōcus, -i, m.; *plural*, loca,

n. pl.; *place to*, pūno, pūsui,

pūsītum, 3; *place before*, antē-

pono, -pōsui, -pōsītum, 3; *vir-*

*tutem voluptātī antēpūno*, *I p.*

*virtue before pleasure*

*plain*, campus, -i, m.

*plan*, consilium, -i, n.

*plant*, planta, -ae, f.; *plant to*, seo sōvo

*Plataea*, Plātācae, arum, f. pl.

*Plato*, Plāto, -ōnis, m.

*play*, ludus, -i, m.; *play to*, ludo,

-si, -sum, 3



*plead, a cause, agġero causam*  
*pleasant or pleasing, grātus, -a, -um;*  
*ŷucundus, -a, -um; dulcis, -o*  
*please, plāceo, -ui, -itum 2 (g. dat.)*  
*pleasure, vōluptas, -ātis, f.*  
*pledge oneself, to, I p. myself to*  
*pay, spondeo (spōndi, spon-*  
*sum, 2) me solūtum esso*  
*plot, dŷlus, -i, m.*  
*plough, āratrum, -i, n.; plough, to,*  
*āro, 1*  
*ploughman, ārātor, -ōris, m.*  
*ploughshare, vōmer, -ōris, m.*  
*pluck, carpo; -psī, -ptum, 3*  
*plunder, praeda, -ae, f.; plunder,*  
*to, diripio, -ripui, -reptum, 3*  
*plunge, v. trans. mergo, -si, -sum,*  
*3; he plunged into the water, in*  
*āquam (or aquā) sē inersit*  
*Pluto, Plāto, -ōnis, m.*  
*poem, carmen, -inis, n.*  
*poet, pōeta, -ae, m.*  
*point, on the point of, in eo ūt,*  
*see Par. 166*  
*point out, monstro, 1*  
*poison, vēnġnum, -i, n.*  
*pollute, polluo, -ui, -ūtum, 3*  
*pomp, pompa, -ae, f.*  
*Pompeius, Pompeius, -i, m.*  
*Pontius, Pontius, -i, m.*  
*poor, (i.e. not rich) pauper, -ōris (61)*  
*poppy, pāpāver, -ōris, n.*  
*popular, vulgus, -i, n. or m.*  
*populous, frġuens, -tis*  
*porch, porticus, -ūs, f.*  
*Porsena, Porsġna, -ae, m.*  
*port, portus, -ūs, m.*  
*portent, prōdigium, -i, n.*  
*portion, pars, -tis, f.*  
*portrait, offigġes, -ēi, f.*  
*Porus, Pōrus, -i, m.*  
*position, lŷcus, -i, m.*  
*possess, hābeo, -ui, -itum, 2; (land)*  
*possideo, possēdi, possum, 2*  
*possession of, to take, occūpo, 1; to*  
*gain possession of, pŷtior, pŷtitus,*  
*4, dep. (g. abl.) see Par. 207*

*possible, it is p. that, fieri pŷtent ut*  
*(299); as great as possible, quam*  
*maximū; as well as possible;*  
*quam optimē*  
*posterity, postġri, -ōrum, m. pl.*  
*pour, fundo, fudi, fūsum, 3*  
*poverty, paupertas, -ātis, f.*  
*power, pŷtestas, -ātis, f.; in the*  
*power of, pŷnġs (g. acc.)*  
*powerful, pŷtens, -tis*  
*practice, usus, -ūs, m.*  
*practise, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2*  
*practor, practor, -ōris, m.*  
*praise, laus, -dis, f.; praise, to,*  
*laudo, 1*  
*pray, ōro, 1; prġcor, 1, dep. (soll.*  
*by ut)*  
*prayer, prġces, -um, f.*  
*precept, praeceptum, -i, n.*  
*precious, prġtiosus, -a, -um*  
*predict, praedico, -dixi, -dictum, 3*  
*prefer, mālō, -ui, -malle, soll. by*  
*quam, pāgo 230; antġpono,*  
*-pŷsui, -pŷsitum, 3 (g. acc. and*  
*dat.)*  
*preparation; I have made every p.,*  
*omnia pāravī*  
*prepare, pāro, 1*  
*presence of, in the, cŷram (g. abl.)*  
*present, to be, adsum, -fui, -esse (g.*  
*dat.)*  
*present, a, dŷnum, -i, n.; minus,*  
*-ōris, n.; present, to, dŷno, 1*  
*(g. acc. and dat. or abl. and*  
*acc.); I p. you with a horse,*  
*ġquo tġ dŷno*  
*preserve, servo, 1*  
*press, prġmo, pressī, pressum, 3*  
*pretence, spġcies, -ei, f.; sġmŷlātio,*  
*-ōnis, f.*  
*pretend, sġmŷlo, 1*  
*prevent, prŷhibeo, -ui, -itum, 2;*  
*impġdio, -ivi or -iī, itum, 4;*  
*obsto, -stāre, -stāti, -stātum, g.*  
*dat.; what prevents you from*  
*coming? quid obstat (or prŷhibet)*  
*quŷminus vġnġas?*

*previously*, antē, antea  
*prey*, praeda, -ae, f.  
*Príam*, Príamus, -i, m.  
*price*, pretium, -i, n.; *at a great*,  
*small price*, &c., see Par. 284  
*pride*, superbia, -ae, f.  
*priest*, *priestess*, sacerdos, -ōtis, o.  
*prison*, carcer, -is, m.  
*prisoner*, captivus, -i, m.  
*private*, privatus, -a, -um  
*prize*, praemium, -i, n.  
*proceed*, progredior, -gressus, 3,  
 dep.  
*proclaim*, pronuntio, 1; edico,  
 -dixi, -dictum, 3  
*proconsul*, proconsul, -ulis, m.  
*procure*, pāro, 1  
*prodigal*, prodigus, -a, -um  
*produce*, pārio, pēpēri, partum, 3  
*profit*, quaestus, -ūs, m.  
*profuse*, see *prodigal*  
*promise*, prōmissum, -i, n.; *to make*  
*many*, *large*, *false*, &c., *promises*,  
*multa*, *magna*, *falsa*, &c., prō-  
 mittere; *promise*, *to*, polliceor,  
 -cītus, 2, dep.; prōmitto, -misi,  
 -missum, 3; *I p. to come*, p.  
 me ventūrum esse (280); *I pro-*  
*mise (in marriage)*, spondeo,  
 spūpondi, sponsum, 2  
*prone*, prōnus, -a, -um  
*property*, rēs, rei, f.; būna, -ūrum,  
 n. pl.  
*prophet*, vātēs, -is, m.  
*propitious*, propītius, -a, -um  
*propose*, (*a law*) rōgo, 1 [3  
*proscribe*, proscribo, -psi, -ptum,  
*prosperity*, rēs secundae  
*prosperous*, (*of winds*, &c.) sēcun-  
 dus, -a, -um; *a prosperous city*,  
 urbs florentissima  
*prosperously*, felicitē; *very pros-*  
*perously*, felicissimē  
*protection*, praesidium, -i, n.  
*protest*, *to*, rēclāmo, 1  
*proud*, superbus, -a, -um  
*prove*, dēmonstro, 1

*provided that*, dum mōdo, or dum-  
 mōdo (*all g. subj.*)  
*province*, prōvincia, -ae, f.  
*provisions*, comestus, -ūs, m.  
*provoke*, lācesso, -īvi, -itum, 3  
*prudence*, prudentia, -ae, f.  
*prudent*, prudens, -tis  
*public*, publicus, -a, -um  
*Publius*, Publius, -i, m.  
*pull*, trāho, -xi, -ctum, 3  
*punish*, castigo, 1; pūnio, -īvi or  
 -ii, itum, 4; *punishment*, sup-  
 plīcium, -i, n.; poena, -ae, f.  
*pure*, pūrus, -a, -um  
*purple*, purpūreus, -a, -um  
*purpose*, *to*, habēre in animo  
*pursue*, sēquor, -cītus, 3, dep.  
*push down*, dētrādo, -si, -sum, 3  
*put*, pūno, pūsui, pūsītum, 3; *put*  
*over*, praeficio, -fēcī, -fectum,  
 3 (*g. dat.*); *put to death*, inter-  
 ficere, morte afficere; *put to*  
*flight*, fūgo, 1; *in fūgam verto*,  
 see verto  
*Pyrrhus*, Pyrrhus, -i, m.

*Quaestor*, quaestor, -ōris, m.  
*quantity*, cōpia, -ae, f.; vīs, vim,  
 vī, f. [n.  
*quarters*, winter, hiberna, -ūrum,  
*queen*, rēgina, -ae, f.  
*quench (thirst)*, restinguo, -stinxi,  
 -stinctum, 3  
*question*, *to*, interrōgo, 1; rōgo, 1  
*quick*, cēler, -ēris, -e; *quickly*, cē-  
 lērīter; *very quickly*, cēlerrimē;  
*quickness*, cēlērītās, -itās, f.  
*quiet*, tranquillus, -a, -um; quīētus,  
 -a, -um  
*quite*, omnīno  
*Quirinus*, Quīrinus, -i, m.

*Race*, gēnus, ēris, n.  
*rage*, ira, -ae, f.; fūror, -ōris, m.;  
 rage, *to*, saevio, -īi, -itum, 4  
*rain*, imber, -bris, m.; plūvia,  
 -ae, f.

*raise*, *tollo*, *sustūli*, *sublātum*, 3  
*rampart*, *vallum*, -i, n.  
*rank*, *ordo*, -inis, m.  
*rapacious*, *rāpāx*, -ācis [-is, -o  
*rapid*, *rāpīdus*, -a, -um; *cōler*,  
*rapidity*, *cēlērītās*, -ātis, f.  
*rare*, *rārus*, -a, -um  
*rashly*, *tēmērū*  
*rashness*, *tēmērītās*, -ātis, f.  
*rate*, *to value at a very high rate*; *per-*  
*permagni aestimāre*  
*rather*, *pōtius*; *rather slow, quick*,  
*&c.*, *tardior*, *cēlērior*; (Par. 65)  
*ravage*, *vasto*, 1  
*raven*, *corvus*, -i, m.  
*raw*, *crūdus*, -a, -um  
*ray*, *rādus*, -i, m.  
*reach*, *atingo*, -āgi, -tactum, 3 (g.  
*acc.*); *pervēnio*, -vēni, -ventum,  
 4 (foll. by *ad*)  
*read*, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, 3  
*readily*, *libenter*  
*ready*, *pārātus*, -a, -um; *ready to*  
*fight*, *ad pugnandum*; *I am*  
*ready to die*, *nōn recūso mōri*  
*real*, *vērū*, -a, -um  
*reality*, *vērītās*, -ātis, f.  
*really*, *vērū*  
*reap*, *mētō*, *messui*, *messum*, 3  
*rear*, *ālō*, *ālui*, *altum*, 3  
*reason (cause)*, *causa*, -ae, f.; *by*  
*reason of*, *ob*, *propter* (both g.  
*acc.*)  
*rebuke*, *incrēpo*, -ui, -itum, 1  
*recall*, *rēvōco*, 1  
*receive*, *accipio*, -cēpi, -ceptum,  
 3 [not *rēcipio*]  
*recent*, *rēcens*, -tis; *nōvus*, -a,  
 -um  
*recently*, *nūper*  
*reckon*, *nūmēro*, 1  
*recline (at meals)* *discumbo*, -cū-  
*bui*, -cūbitum, 3 [3  
*recognise*, *agnosco*, -nōvi, -nītum,  
*recollect*, *rēcorder*, *rēcorderātus*, 1,  
*dep.*; *mēmīni*, see Appendix II.,  
 p. 215

*recollection*, *mēmōria*, -ae, f.  
*recoiler*, *rēcūpēro*, 1; *recipio*, -cēpi,  
 -ceptum, 3  
*recount*, *narro*, 1  
*refrain (oneself) from*, *abstīneo*,  
 -ui, -tentum, 2; *I abstained*  
*from food*, *cūbo mē abstīnēbam*  
*refer*, *rēfēro*, *rettuli*, *rēlātum* (238);  
*I referred the subject of the host-*  
*ages to the senate*, *de obsīdībns*  
*ad Patres rettūli*  
*refuge*, *perfūgium*, -i, n.  
*refuse*, *rēcūso*, 1; g. *acc.*; or *inf.*;  
*or foll. by quīn with subjunctive*  
*regard*, *have regard to*, *respicio*,  
 -spexi, -spectum, 3 (g. *acc.*)  
*region*, *rēgio*, -ōnis  
*regret*, *dēsīdērium*, -i, n.; *regret*,  
*to*, *dēsīdēro*, 1  
*Regulus*, *Rēgūlus*, -i, n.  
*reign*, *regnum*, -i, n.; *during his*  
*reign*, *eo regnante* or *rēge* (197);  
*reign to*, *regno*, 1 (*intr.*); *impēro*  
 (g. *dat.*)  
*rein*, *hūbūna*, -ae, f.  
*reinforcement*, *subsīdium*, -i, n.  
*reject*, *rējicio*, *rējēci*, *rējectum*, 3  
*rejoice*, *gaudeo*, *gāvīsus*, 2, *dep.*  
*relate*, *narro*, 1; *horrible to relate!*  
*nēfās dictū!*  
*relation*, *prōpinquus*, -i, m.  
*relieve*, *the city was relieved from*  
*the siege*, *obsīdīōne urbs lēvā-*  
*ta est* (279)  
*religion*, *religio*, -ōnis, f.  
*relying*, *frētus*, -a, -um (g. *abl.*)  
*remain*, *māneo*, -mansī, -nsūm, 2;  
*remain over*, *sūpersum*, -fui, -esse  
*remaining*, *rēlīquus*, -a, -um  
*remarkable*, *īnīgnis*, -o; *to a r.*  
*degree*, *īnīcū*  
*remedy*, *rēmēdium*, -i, n.  
*remember*, (1) *rēcorder*, -ātus, 1,  
*dep.*; *reminiscor*, -i (g. *acc.*,  
*but sometimes gen.*); (2) *mēmīni*  
 (*def.*); see p. 215  
*remembrance*, *mēmōria*, -ae, f.

*remind*, admōneo, -ui, -itum, 2  
*remove*, amōveo, -inōvi, -mōtum, 2  
*remorse*, dōlor, -ōris, m.; poenitentia, -ae, f.  
*render*, reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3  
*renew*, rēnovo, 1  
*renown*, fama, -ae, f.  
*renowned*, clārus, -a, -um  
*repair*, rēficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3  
*repeat*, itero, 1  
*repel*, repello, -pulsum, reppūli, 3  
*repent*, poenitet, -uit, 2, impers.  
*(see Par. 219 and foll.)*  
*repentance*, poenitentia, -ae, f.  
*reply*, respondo, -ui, -i, n.; *reply*, to, respondeo, -ui, -sum, 2  
*report*, fama, -ae, f.; rāmor, -ōris, m.; *report*, nuntio, 1; *it is reported*, Tullius said, fertur Tullius dixisse  
*repose*, quies, -ētis, f.  
*republic*, rēspública, reipublicae, f.  
*repulse*, prōpulso, 1  
*reputation*, fama, -ae, f. [dat.]  
*resist*, rēsisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3 (g.)  
*resolve*, constituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3  
*resources*, ōpes, -um, f. --  
*response*, responsum, -i, n.  
*rest*, quies, -ētis, f.; *rest*, the, [cōter] -ūra, -ūrum, mostly pl.; (*residue*) rēliquus, -a, -um; *rest*, to, quiesco, -evi, -ētum, 3  
*restore*, reddo, -didi, -ditum, 3; restituo, -ui, -ūtum, 3  
*restrain*, coerceo, 2  
*result*, ēventus, -ūs, m.  
*retain*, rētīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2  
*retake*, rēcīpio, -cēpi, -ceptum, 3  
*retire*, rēcēdo, -cessi, -cessum, 3; *the soldiers retire*, milites sē rēcīpiunt  
*retreat*, rēcēptus, -ūs, m.; *retreat*, to, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3  
*return*, rēditus, -ūs, m.; *return*, to, rēdeo, -ii, -itum, 4; *rēvertor*, -versus, 3, dep.; *to return thanks*, grātiūs agere

*reveal*, pātēfācio, -fēci, -factum, 3  
*revenge*, ultio, -ōnis, f.; *revenge*, to, ulciscor, ultus, 3, dep.  
*revenue*, vēcīgāl, -ālis, n.  
*reverence*, rēvērentia, -ae, f.  
*revere*, reverence, vērēror, -atus, 1, dep.; vērōor, -itus, 2, dep.  
*revolt*, sēditio, -ōnis, f.; *revolt*, to, rēficio, -fēci, -fectum, 3  
*reward*, praemium, -i, n.; mercēs, -ēdis, f.  
*Rhodes* (island), Rhōdus, -i, f. (265)  
*rich*, divēs, -itis, reg. comp. (*not* ditior, ditissimus, *except in poetry*)  
*riches*, divitiae, -arum, f.; ōpes, -um, f.  
*ride*, ūquīto, 1; vēhor, vectus, 3  
*rider*, ēquēs, -itis, m.  
*ridiculous*, rīdicūlus, -a, -um  
*right*, rectus, -a, -um; *right*, jās, jūris, n.; fās, indel.  
*right-hand*, dexter, -tra, -trum, (noun), dextra or dextēra, -ae, f.  
*rightly*, jūre (Par. 182)  
*ring*, ānūlus, -i, m.  
*ripe*, mātūrus, -a, -um  
*rise* (from bed), surgo, surrexi, -rectum, 3; ōrior, ortus, 4 dep.  
*risk*, pēricūlum, -i, n.  
*rite*, rītūs, -ūs, m.  
*rival*, aemūlus, -a, -um (*used as a n.*); *he had many rivals*, multos sibi aemūlos hābuīt  
*rivalry*, aemulatio, -ōnis, f.  
*river*, flūmen, -īnis, n.; amnis, -is, m.; flūvius, -i, m.  
*road*, via, -ae, f.; iter, itinēris, n.  
*rob*, spōlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl. of thing)  
*robber*, latro, -ōnis, m.  
*rock*, scōpūlus, -i, m.; rūpēs, -is, f.  
*roll*, volvo, -vi, volūtum, 3 (*trans.*); *the stone is rolling*, lāpis volvitur  
*Rome*, Rōma, -ae, f.  
*Roman*, Rōmānus, -a, -um  
*Romulus*, Rōmūlus, -i, m.

*roof*, tectum, -i, n.  
*root*, radix, -icis, f.  
*rope*, funis, -is, m.  
*rose*, rōsa, -ae, f.  
*rough*, asper, -ēra, -ērum  
*round*, rotundus, -a, -um; tēres, -ētis  
*round (prep.)*, circum (g. acc.)  
*rouse*, excito, 1  
*rout*, fūgo, 1; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3  
*royal*, rēgālis, -o; rēgius, -a, -um  
*rudc*, rūdis, -o; incultus, -a, um  
*rugged*, asper, -ēra, -ērum  
*ruin (destruction)*, exītiūm, -i, n.  
*rule*, to, rūgo, -xi, -ctum (g. acc.); impēro, 1 (g. dat.)  
*rule*, impēriūm, -i, n.  
*rumour*, fūma, -ae, f.; rūmor, -ōris, m.  
*run*, curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3  
*run up*, accurro, -curri, -cursum, 3  
*run away*, aufūgio, -fūgi, 3  
*running*, cursus, -ūs, m.  
*rush*, impētus, -ūs, m.  
*rush*, to, rūo, -ui, 3 [3  
*rush forth*, erumpo, -rūpi, -ruptum,  
*rustic*, rusticus, -a, -um

*Sabine*, Sibīnus, -a, -um  
*sacred*, sācer, -era, -erum  
*sacrifice*, sacrificiūm, -i, n.  
*sacrifice*, to, sacrifico, 1  
*sad*, tristis, -o  
*safe*, tātus, -a, -um; saluus, -a, -um; incūlūmis, -o  
*safely*, tāto  
*safety*, sālus, -ātis, f.  
*sagacious*, sāgax, -ācis  
*sail*, a, vēlum, -i, n.  
*sail*, to, nāvigo, 1  
*sailor*, nauta, -ae, m.  
*sake*, for the, causā (adverbial abl. foll. by gen. of gerundive)  
*salt*, sal, sālis, m.  
*salutation*, salūtātiō, -ōnis, f.  
*salute*, salūto, 1

*same*, idem, eūdem, īdem (103)  
*Samos*, Sīmos, -i, f.  
*Samnites*, Samnites, -ium, m.  
*sand*, ārena, -ae, f.  
*sate*, satiate, sātio, 1; expleo, -plēvi, -pletum, 2  
*satisfy*, sātisfācio, -fēcī, -factum, 3 (g. dat.)  
*savage*, saevus, -a, -um; fērus, -a, -um  
*savageness*, fūrītās, -ātis, f.  
*save* (i.e. preserve), servo, 1  
*say*, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; say...not, nēgo, 1; do you say it is not so? nēgasnū ita esso? I say I cannot come, nēgo mē venīre posse; said he, I say (used parenthetically) inquit, inquam; see page 315; it is said that Balbus lies, dicitur Balbus mentiri (Par. 177).  
*saying*, dictum, -i, -n  
*scanty*, exīguus, -a, -um  
*scarcely*, vix  
*scarcity*, inōpia, -ae, f.  
*scatter*, spargo, -rsi, -rsum, 3; fundo, fūdi, fusum, 3  
*scent*, ōdor, -ōris, m.  
*science*, scientia, -ae, f.  
*Scipio*, Scīpio, -ōnis, m.  
*scorch*, adūro, -ussi, -ustum, 3; torreo, -ui, tostum, 2  
*scorn*, aspernor, 1, dep.; sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3  
*scourge*, to, virgis caedēre, lit. to strike with rods; (virga, -ae, f.)  
*scout*, explōrātor, -ōris, m.  
*sculptor*, sculptor, -ōris, m.  
*sculpture*, sculptūra, -ae, f.  
*Scythia*, Scythia, -ae, m.  
*sea*, māre, -is, n.; pēlīgus, -i, -n. (adj.) mārinus, -a, -um; nāvālis, -o  
*search*, explōre, 1; quaero, -sivi, -situm, 3  
*season*, tempus, -ōris, n.; tempes-tās, -ātis, f.

seasonable, opportunus, -a, -um  
 seat, sedēs, -is, f.  
 second (in ordinary numeration),  
 secundus, -a, -um; (a, or the  
 second, where only two are contem-  
 plated), alter, -ēra, -ērū; a  
 second time, iterum; a friend is  
 a second self, amicus est alter  
 ego  
 secret, secretus, -a, -um  
 secretary, scriba, -ae, m.  
 secretly, clam  
 secure, securus, -a, -um; see safe  
 security, see safety  
 sedition, seditio, -ōnis, f.  
 see, video, vidi, visum, 2; to see-to  
 this being done, curare hoc faci-  
 endum  
 seed, semen, -inis, n.  
 seek, quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum,  
 3; (peace) peto, -ivi or -ii,  
 -itum, 3  
 seem, videor, visus, 2 dep.  
 seize, occupo, 1; corripio, -ripui,  
 -reptum, 3  
 seldom, raro  
 self, ipsē, -a, -um, (106, 308); -se  
 (94, 218, 305-8)  
 sell, vendo, -didi, -ditum, 3  
 seller, venditor, -ōris, m.  
 senate, senatus, -ūs, m.; also  
 Patres, -rum; it was referred to  
 the s., ad Patres relatum est  
 senate-house, curia, -ae, f.  
 senator, senator, -ōris, m.  
 send, mitto, misi, missum, 3 (to, ad)  
 send away, dimitto, misi, missum,  
 3  
 send for, arcesso, -ivi, -itum, 3 [3  
 send on, praemitto, -misi, -missum,  
 sentinel, vigil, -ilis, m.  
 separate, separo, 1  
 serious, gravis, -e  
 serpent, serpens, -tis, c.  
 servant (slave), servus, -i, m.;  
 (attendant) minister, -ri, m.  
 serve, servio, -ivi or -ii, -itum, 4

(g. dat.): to s. (as a soldier),  
 stipendium merere  
 service, (benefit), beneficium, -i, n.;  
 to perform military service, sti-  
 pendium merere  
 servile, servilis, -e  
 servitude, servitium, -i, n.; (but in  
 Cicero) servitus, -utis, f.  
 set, (of the sun) occido, -oldi,  
 -cāsum, 3; set out, praeficiſcor,  
 -fectus, 3, dep. ("for" after this  
 v. must be rendered ad; but see  
 Par. 219); set an example, ex-  
 emplum praebere; set on fire,  
 incendio, -cendi, -censum, 3  
 setting, occasus, -ūs, m.  
 seven, septem, indecl.; see Par. 81  
 several, plures, -a, (72)  
 severe, gravis, -e; severely, graviter  
 severity, severitas, -atis, f.  
 shade, shadow, umbra, -ae, f.  
 shady, umbrōsus, -a, -um  
 shake, quatio, quassum, 3; I shake  
 off sleep, somnum excutio, -cussi,  
 -cussum, 3  
 shame, pudor, -oris, m.  
 shameful, turpis, -e  
 shameless, impudens, -tis  
 shamelessness, impudentia, -ae, f.  
 shape, forma, -ae, f.  
 share, pars, -tis, f.  
 share, to, divido, -si, -sum, 3  
 sharp, acutus, -a, -um; acer, acris,  
 -acre  
 sharpen, acuō, -ui, -utum, 3  
 shave, rado, -si, -sum, 3  
 she, see he  
 shear, tondeo, tondidi, tonsum, 2  
 sheep, ovis, -is, f.  
 shepherd, pastor, -ōris, m.  
 shield, scutum, -i, n.; clipeus, -i, m.  
 shine, luceo, -xi, 2; (of a meadow)  
 niteo, -ui, 2 [ga  
 ship, navis, -is, f.; (of war) n. lon-  
 shipwreck, naufragium, -i, n.  
 shirt, tunica, -ae, f.  
 shock, impetus, -ūs, m.

*shore*, litus, -ūris, n.; ūra, -ae, f.  
*short*, brēvis, -e; *for a short time*  
 paulisper  
*shoulder*, (h)ūmērus, -i, m.  
*shout*, clāmor, -ōris, m.  
*shout, to*, clāmo, 1  
*show, to*, monstro, 1  
*shower*, imber, -bris, m.  
*shrub*, frūtex, -icis, m.  
*shun*, fūgio, fūgi, 3; vīto, 1  
*shut, shut in*, claudo, -si, -sum, 3  
*Sicily*, Sicīlia, -ae, f.  
*sick, sickly*, uoger, -gra, -grum;  
 infirmus, -a, -um  
*side*, lātus, -ūris, n.; *on this side*,  
 citrā, cis (g. acc.); *on one side...*  
*on the other side*, hinc...illinc;  
*sides, on all*, passim; *sides, from*  
*all*, undīquo  
*sight*, vīsus, -ūs, m.; conspectus,  
 -ūs, m.; *in the sight of the*  
*people*, pūlam pūpūlo  
*sign, signal*, signum, -i, n.  
*silence*, silentium, -i, n.  
*silent*, silens, -tis; tacītus, -a, -um;  
*silently*, tacītū  
*silent, to be*, taceo, -uī, -itum, 2;  
 sileo, -uī, 2  
*silver*, argentum, -i, n.; (adj.)  
 argenteus, -a, -um  
*simple*, simplex, -icis  
*sin, peccatum*, -i, n.; scēlus, -ūris, n.  
*sin, to*, pecco, 1  
*since*, quōniā (with indic.); cum  
 (with subj.); *since this is so*, quae  
 cum itā sint (151)  
*sing*, canto, 1; cāno, cecīni, can-  
 tum, 3  
*single*, ūnus, -a, -um  
*sink*, mergo, -rē, -rsum, 3 (trans.);  
 mergor (intrans.)  
*sister*, sūror, -ōris, f.  
*sit*, sūdeo, sūdi, sessum, 3  
*sit down*, considō, -sēdi, -sessum, 3  
*six, sixty, &c.* See Par. 81  
*size*, magnitūdo, -īnis, f.  
*skilful, skilled*, pēritus, -a, -um

*skill*, pēritia, -ae, f.  
*skin*, cūtis, -is, f.; pellis, -is, f.  
*sky*, caelum, -i, n.  
*slander*, mālēdico, -xi, -ctum, 3 (g.  
 dat.)  
*slaughter*, caedēs, -is, f.  
*slave*, servus, -i, m.; *to be a slave*,  
 servīro  
*slavery*, servitūs, -utis, f.  
*slay*, interficio, -fēcī, -fectum, 3;  
 occīdo, -cīdi, -ctum, 3  
*sleep*, somnus, -i, m. [4  
*sleep, to*, dormio, -ivi or -ii, -itum,  
*slender*, grācilis, -e (60); tēnuis, -e  
*slight*, lēvis, -o  
*slip*, labor, lap-us, 3 dep.  
*slip down*, dēlabor, -lapsus, 3, dep.  
*sloth*, ignāvia, -ae, f.  
*slow*, tardus, -a, -um  
*slowly*, tardē  
*slumber*, somnus, -i, m.  
*small*, parvus, -a, -um  
*smear*, obliño, -lēvi, -lītum, 3  
*smell*, ōdor, -ōris, m.  
*smile*, rīdeo, -si, -sum, 2  
*snake*, cōlūber, -bri, m. (rare);  
 anguis, -is, m.  
*snare*, insidiā, -arum, f.  
*snatch*, rāpio, -uī, -ptum, 3; *snatch*  
*from*, erīpio, -rīpui, -eptum, g.  
 dat. of pers. (192) [3  
*snatch away*, abrīpio, -uī, -reptum,  
*snow*, nix, nivis, f.  
*so, (with adj.)* tam; *so good*, tam  
 bōnus; itā; *and so, i.e. there-*  
*upon*, itāquē; (*in this way*) sic  
 (*to such an extent*) tam  
*so great, large*, tantus, -a, -um  
*so many*, tōt, incl.  
*so much (money, &c.)*, tantum  
 (pecūniae, &c.)  
*Socrates*, Socrātēs, -is, m.  
*soft*, mollis, -o  
*soften*, mollio, -īvi or -ii, -itum, 4  
*soil*, solum, -i, n.; hūmus, -i, f.  
*soldier*, milēs, -ītis, m.  
*sole*, ūnus, -a, -um; ūnicus, -a, -um

*some*, nonnullus, -a, -um; *some...*  
*others*, alii...alii; *there is some-*  
*thing after death*, est aliquīd  
 post mortem; *I fear something*  
*has happened*, vereor nē quid  
 accidērit; *some poet says*, pōeta  
 quidam dicit; *there is some (i.e.*  
*something of) art in writing*, est  
 aliquīd artis in scribendo; *there*  
*are (some) who say*, sunt qui  
 dicant

*sometimes*, interdum, aliquando  
*somewhat (with adj.)* see Par. 65

*son*, filius, -i, m.; *listen, my son*,  
 audi, mi fili (13)

*son-in-law*, gēner, -ēri, m.

*song*, carmen, -inis, n.; *cantus*, -ūs,  
 m.

*soon*, mox

*soothsayer*, hāruspex, -icis, m.

*sorrow*, dōlor, -ōris, m.

*sort*, gēnus, -ēris, n.

*soul*, ānīma, -ae, f.

*sound*, a, sōnus, -i, m; sōnītus, -ūs,  
 m.

*sound*, to, sūno, -ui, -ītum, 1; *the*  
*trumpet sounds*, tūba cānit

*sour*, ācerbus, -a, -um

*source*, fons, -ntis, m.

*sow*, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.

*space*, spātium, -i, n.

*Spain*, Hispānia, -ae, f.

*spare*, parco, pēperci, parsum, 3  
 (g. dat.)

*Sparta*, Sparta, -ae, f.

*speak*, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3; lōquor,  
 -cūtus, 3 dep.

*spear*, hasta, -ae, f.

*spectacle*, spectācūlum, -i, n.

*spectre*, spectrum, -i, n. [-ōnis, f.

*speech*, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.; contio,

*speed*, cēlērītās, -ātis, f.; *with*

*speed*, speedily, cēlērīter

*spend*, consūmo, -sumpsi, -sump-  
 tum, 3 [m.

*spirit*, spīritus, -ūs, m.; ānīmus, -i,

*splendid*, splendīdus, -a, -um

*splendour*, splendor, -ōris, m.

*spoil*, spōlio, 1 (acc. of pers., abl.  
 of thing)

*spoils*, spōlia, -ōrum, n.

*sport*, lūdus, -i, m.

*spot*, lōcus, -i, m.; plur. lōca

*spring*, vēr, vēris, n.

*spring forward*, prōsīlio, -sīlui,  
 -sultum, 4

*spur*, calcar, -āris, n. (39)

*spurn*, sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, 3

*spy*, explorātor, -ōris, m.

*squander*, dissipō, 1.

*stab*, confūdō, -fūdī, -fossūm, 3

*stag*, cervus, -i, m.

*stand*, sto, stēti, statum, 1

*stand up*, consurgo, -surrexi, 3

*standard*, signum, -i, n.

*star*, stella, -ae, f.; sīdus, -ēris, n.

*state*, cīvītās, -ātis, f.; respublica,  
 reipublicae, f.

*station*, to, lōco, 1

*statue*, stātua, -ae, f.

*stay*, māneo, -nsi, -nsum, 2; mōror,  
 -ātus, 1 dep.

*steadily*, constāny... [-ōcis

*stern*, sēvērus, -a, -um; atrox,

*sternness*, sēvēritās, -ātis, f.

*stick*, bācūlus, -i, m.

*still* (i. e. yet), adhūc

*stir*, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2

*stomach*, venter, -tris, m.

*stone*, lāpis, -īdis, m.; saxum, -i,  
 n.

*stop*, consisto, -stīti, -stītum, 3

*stop*, (trans.) mōror, 1, dep.

*storm*, prōcella, -ae, f.; tempestās,  
 -ātis, f.

*storm*, to, expugno, 1

*story*, fābūla, -ae, f.

*straight*, rectus, -a, -um

*strange*, mīrus, -a, -um

*stranger*, hospēs, -ītis, m.; advēna,  
 -ae, m.

*stratagem*, dōlus, -i, m.

*stream*, flūmen, -inis, n.; rīvus, -i,  
 m.



street, vicius, -i, m.  
 strength, vires, -ium, f. pl.  
 strengthen, firmo, 1  
 stretch out, extendo, -di, -sum, 3  
 strew, sterno, strāvi, strātum, 3  
 strike, strike down, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3; *having been struck by lightning*, fulmīno ictus (-a, -um)  
 strive, (i.e. endeavour) nitor, nisus or nixus, 3, dep. (*with ut and subjunctive*); (i.e. fight) certo, 1; *we strive for mastery with the Roman people*, de impērio cum pōpulo Rōmāno armis certāmus (*constr. with inf., and with dat. for cum, is mostly poetical*)  
 strong, vātūds, -a, -um  
 struggle, certāmen, -inis, n.  
 struggle, to, luctor, 1 dep.  
 study, stūdiūm, -i, n.  
 study, to, stūdeo, -ui, 2 (g. dat.)  
 stuff, to, surcio, farsī, fartum, 4  
 stupid, stultus, -a, -um  
 subdue, subjugate, subīgo, -ēgi, -actum, 3  
 subtle, callidus, -a, -um  
 subtract, dēmo, dempsi, demptum, 3 (*coll. by de; or dat. of pers., acc. of thing*)  
 succeed, I succeed, i.e. I prosper, rēs nūllā bēnē succēdit, or rem bēnē gēro. N.B. not, in this sense, succēdo, -si, -sum, 3, which is only used for "take the place of," and g. dat.; *fresh men succeeded the weary*, integri dēfātīgātis succēserunt  
 success, victōria, -ae, f.; *they returned without s.*, rē infectā rēdierunt  
 successfully, feliciter; more successfully, felicius  
 succumb, succumbo, succūbui, succūbūtum, 3 (g. dat.)  
 such, talis, -o  
 sudden, subītus, -a, -um

suddenly, rēpentē, subīto, stātīm  
 Succi, Suēvi, -drum, m.  
 suffer, pātior, passus, 3 dep.  
 sufficient, sātis, indecl.; *idoneus*, -a, -um; *sufficiently good*, sātis bonus  
 suited for, suitable, aptus, -a, -um, idoneus, -a, -um (*with dat. or ad; aptus, with persons, dat.*)  
 sum of money, pēcūnia, -ae, f.  
 summer, aestas, -ātis, f.  
 summit, culmen, īnis, n.  
 summon, vōco, 1; convōco  
 sun, sōl, sōlis, m.  
 sunrise, lux, lūcis, f.; sōlis ortus  
 sunset, sōlis occāsus  
 sup, cēno, 1  
 superstition, sūperstītio, -ōnis, f.  
 supper, cēna, -ae, f.  
 suppliant, supplex, -icis  
 supplies, comēctus, -as, m.; *we are hindered from getting s.*, prōhibemur comēctū  
 support (nourish), nūtrio, -īvi, -ītum, 4; sustīneo, -ui, -tentum, 2; sustento, 1  
 suppose, pūto, 1  
 supreme, supīmus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um  
 sure, certus, -a, -um  
 surname, cognōmen, -inis, n.  
 surrender, trālo, -didi, -ditum, 3; also (*but most frequ. of s. persons*) dēdo, dēdidi, dēditum, 3  
 surround, circūdo, -dēdi, -dītum, dāro (*acc. and abl. or acc. and dat.; see Ex. LXII.*) [*dat.*]  
 survive, sūpersūm, -īvi, -esse (g.  
 suspicion, suspīcio, -ōnis, f.  
 sustain, sustīneo, 2; (*nourish*), nūtrio, -īvi, -ītum, 4  
 swallow, hīrundo, -inis, f.  
 swan, cycinus, -ī, m.  
 swear, jūro, 1; *I swear to come*, j. mo ventūrum esse; *I s. to obey a law*, j. in lēgem.  
 sweat, sūdor, -ōris, m.

*sacēt*, dulcis, -e; suāvis, -e  
*sacīfī*, cūler, -is, -o  
*sacīfily*, celērīter  
*sacīstacer*, celērītās, -ātis, f.  
*swim*, to, nō, nāvi, nātum, 1  
*sword*, glādius, -i, m.; *with fire*  
*and sword*, ferro atque igni  
*Syracuse*, Sŷr.cūcae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*Syria*, Sŷria, -ae, f.

*Table*, mēsa, -ae, f.

*take*, cūpio, cēpi, captum, 3; *take*

*away*, adīmo, -ēmi, -emptum, 3;  
*aufero*, abstoli, ablātum, auferre;  
*take by storm*, expugno, 1; *take*  
*care of*, cūro, 1 (g. acc.); *take*  
*care to*, cūrā ut; *take place*, see  
*happen*

*talk*, lūquor, lōcūtus, 3 dep.

*talkative*, lōquāx, -ācis [-um]

*tall*, prōcerus, -a, -um; *altus*, -a,

*tame*, manenētus, -a, -um; *to tame*,

dūmo, -ui, -itum, 1

*Tarquin*, Tarquīnius, -i, m.

*task*, ōpus, -eris, n.

*taste*, gusto, 1

*tasteful*, glēgans, -ntis; *tastefully*,  
*ēlēganter*

*Tatius*, Tātius, -i, m.

*Taurus*, mount, Taurus, -i, m.

*tax*, tribūtum, -i, n.; *vocīgal*,  
 -ālis, n.

*teach*, doceo, -ui, -ctum, 2 (g. two  
 acc.) See Par. 312

*teacher*, māgister, -tri, m.

*tear*, lācrima, -ae, f.

*tear*, to, scindo, scīdi, scissum, 3;

*tear away*, āvello, -velli, -vulsum,

3; *tear out*, ēvello, -velli, -vulsum,

3; *to tear away from one's em-*

*brace*, āvellere de-plexu

*tell*, dico, -xi, -ctum, 3, dat. & acc.

*temerity*, tēmērītās, -ātis, f.

*temper*, ānīmus, -i, m.

*tempest*, tempestās, -ātis, f.; *prō-*  
*cella*, -ae, f.

*temple*, templum, -i, n.; *aedes*, -is  
 f.

*ten*, dēcem, indecl.; (distr.) dēnus  
 -a, -um; see Par. 314

*tender*, tēnor, -ēra, ērum (61)

*tent*, tentōrium, -i, n.

*tenth*, dēcīmus, -a, -um

*terminate*, finio, 4

*terrible*, dīrus, -a, -um

*terrify*, terreo, -ui, -itum, 2

*territories*, fines, -ium, m.

*terror*, terror, -ōris, m.

*Thames*, Tāmēsis, -is, m.

*than*, (62, 63) quam

*thanks*, grātiae, -ārum, f.; *I return*  
 t., grātias āgo

*that* (dem. pron.), illē, -a, -ud; *is*,  
 ūa, id; *that of yours*, istē, -a,  
 -ud (if used with adj. and nouns  
 the position of illē, *is*, istō *is like*  
*that of hic*; see "this")

*that* (rel. pron.) qui; *that* (nom. or  
 abl.) . . . not, quā (145, 300);  
*there was no one that did not hate*  
*you*, nēmo erat quā tē ōdisset

*that* (conj.) ut; *that not*, nē (131);  
 (with comp.) quo (303); *that*  
*they might the more easily go*, quo  
 fācīlius irent. N.B. Unless "that"  
 denotes purpose or consequence, it  
 must not be rendered by ut

*theatre*, theātrum, -i, n.

*Theban*, Thēbānus, -i, m.

*Thebes*, Thēbae, -ārum, f.

*theft*, furtum, -i, n.

*their*, eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*own*)  
 suus, -a, -um

*Themistocles*, Thēmistoclēs, -is, m.

*then*, tūm; *tunc*; *deinde*; see *tūm*,

*tūno* in L. Vocab.

*thence*, indū

*there*, ibi, illīc; *often not trans. in*  
*Lat.*, e.g. *there are some who say*  
*sunt qui dicant* [Vocab.]

*therefore*, igitur, itāquē; see *Lat.*

*Thermopylae*, Thermōpŷlae, -ārum,  
 f.

*Thetis*, Thētis, -īdis, f.  
*thick*, (of garments) *crassus*, -a, -um; *densus*, -a, -um  
*thicket*, dūnētum, -i, n.  
*thief*, fūr, -is, m.  
*thin*, mācer, -era, -erum; *tenuis*, -o

*thing*, rēs, rei, f.  
*think*, pūto, 1; existō, 1; cōgito, 1; reor, rātus, rēri; *thinking that the enemy were at hand*, rātus hostes ādēssō; *I thought to myself*, mēcum cōgītābam

*third*, tertius, -a, -um  
*thirst*, sītis, -is, f. acc. -im, abl. -i; *to die of thirst*, sītī mōri  
*thirteen*, trēdecim, indecl.  
*thirty*, trīgintā, indecl.

*this*, hic, haec, hōc (if used with Adj. and Noun, mostly comes between the two; *this sad calamity*, tristis haec cālūmītās; or else tam, "so" is inserted, haec tam tristis c.; *this great army*, hic tantus exercītus). N.B. the same rule applies to the pron. adj. generally, illū, istū, mōus, tuus, &c.

*thither*, eo, illūc  
*thou*, tū, see p. 45  
*though*, quamvis (g. subj.); quamquam (g. ind.), see Par. 323  
*thousand*, see Par. 80  
*threat*, mīna, -ae, f.

*threaten*, mīnor, 1, dep. (g. acc. of thing and dat. of person); *I threaten you with death*, mīnor tībī mortem

*three*, trēs, tria (78); *three hundred*, trēcenti, -ae, -a; *three hundred apiece*, trēcēni, -ae, -a (314); *three times*, thrice, ter; *three days*, tridūm, -i, n.; *three years*, triennium, -i, n.

*thrifty*, parcus, -a, -um  
*throat*, guttur, -ūris, n.  
*throne*, sōlium, -i, n.

*through*, pēr (g. acc.)  
*throw*, conjicio, -jēcī, -jectum, 3  
*thrush*, turdus, -i, m.

*thumb*, pollex, -īcis, m.  
*thunder*, to, tūno, -ui, -itum, 1  
*thunderbolt*, fulmen, -īnis, n.

*thus*, sic, itā  
*thy*, tuus, -a, -um  
*Tiber*, Tiberis, -is, m.

*tide*, aestus, -ūs, m.  
*tiger*, tigris, -is or -īdis, c.  
*till*, donec, dum, quoad; *to till*, cōlo, -ui, cultum, 3

*time*, tempus, -ūris, n.; *a second time*, iterum; *by this time*, jam; *four times*, quōr "four"

*timely*, opportunus, -a, -um  
*timid*, timīdus, -a, -um  
*Titus*, Titus, -i, m.

*to*, in, ad (g. acc.). N.B. (1) "to" before a verb is never to be rend. by the Lat. inf. unless the inf. is the subj. or obj. of another verb; (2) nor by the supine except after a verb of motion; (3) it is rendered by the subjunctive when meaning "in order to," and also after verbs of asking, &c. (143); (4) see also ad and gerundire (186)

*to-day*, hōdiē  
*together*, sīmul, una; *having conversed*, inter sēsē collōcūtī

*toil*, lābor, -ōris, m.  
*token*, indicium; -i, n.; *pledge*, pignus, -ōris, n.

*tolerate*, patiōr, passus, 3 dep.  
*tomb*, sēpulcrum, -i, n.; *tumulus*, -i, m.

*to-morrow*, crās

*tongue*, lingua, -ae, f.

*too*, too much, (adv.) nimis, nīmium; *too little*, pārūm (adv. used also as a noun); *he has too little strength*, pārūm vīrium hābet; *this task is too difficult for you to accomplish*, hōc ōpus difficīlius est quam quod (or ut

hōc) perficiās; *see also* Par. 64, 149  
*tooth*, dens, -tis, m.  
*top*, vertex, -icis, m.; *the top of the mountain*, mons summus  
*torch*, taeda, -ae, f.; fax, -fācis, f.  
*torn*, lacer, -āra, -ērūm  
*torture*, cruciātus, -ūs, m.  
*touch*, tango, tetigi, tactum, 3  
*towards*, versus (of places); ergā (of conduct towards persons); ad (all g. acc.), *see* Par. 183  
*tower*, turris, -is, f.  
*town*, oppidum, -i, n.  
*truce*, vestīgium -i, n.  
*ruin*, exerceo, -ui, -itum, 2; (educate) erūdīo, -ivi, -itum, 4  
*traitor*, proditor, -ōris, m.  
*tranquil*, tranquillū, -a, -um  
*tranquillity*, tranquillitas, -ātis, f.  
*transfer*, ago, ēgi, actum, 3  
*transport*, transfēro, -tūi, -lātum, -ferre  
*travel*, iter facio  
*traveller*, viātor, -ōris, m.  
*treacherous*, perfidus, -a, -um; *treacherously*, per dōlum  
*treachery*, perfidia, -ae, f.; dōlus, -i, m.  
*treason*, (military) proditio, -ōnis, f.; (civil) mājestas, -atis, f.  
*treasure*, thēsaurus, -i, m.  
*treasury*, aerārium, -i, n.  
*treaty*, foedus, -ēris, n.  
*tree*, arbor, -ōris, f.  
*tremble*, trēmo, -ui, 3; (from top to toe) contrēmo, -ui, 3  
*tribe*, tribus, -ūs, f.  
*tribunal*, tribūnal, -ālis, n.  
*tribune*, tribūnus, -i, m.  
*tribuneship*, tribūnātus, -ūs, m.  
*tribute*, tribūtum, -i, n.  
*trick*, dōlus, -i, m.  
*trifles*, nūgae, -ārum, f. pl.  
*triumph*, triumphus, -i, m.; *to triumph*, triumpho, 1  
*Trojan*, Trojānus, -i, m.

*troop* (of horse), turma, -ae, f.  
*troops*, cōpiae, -ārum, f.  
*trophy*, trōpaeum, -i, n.  
*trouble*, ōpēra, -ae, f.; *to trouble*, turbo, 1  
*troublesome*, mōlestus, -a, -um  
*Troy*, Troja, -ae, f.  
*true*, vērū, -a, -um; *truly*, i.e. truthfully, vērū  
*trumpet*, tūba, -ae, f.  
*trunk*, truncus, -i, m.;  
*trust*, to, crēdo, -dīdi, -dītum, 3 (dat.); confido, -fīsus sum, 3 (dat. of pers., abl. of thing); *trusting in the nature of their position*, naturā loci confisi;  
*trust*, fīdes, -ei, f.  
*trusty*, fidēlis, -e; fidus, -a, -um  
*truth*, (abstract) vērītās, -ātis, f.; (what is true, fact) vērūm, -i, n.; *if you will have the truth*, si vērūm audire vis; *you have spoken the truth*, vērā dixisti  
*try*, cōnor, 1, dep. (with inf.); *make proof of*, tento, 1; *we have tried this danger*, tēntāvimus hoc pericūlum  
*Tullius*, Tullius, -i, m. (3)  
*Tullia*, Tullia, -ae, f.  
*Tulliola*, Tulliola, -ae, f., i.e. the little Tullia (a child's name)  
*Tullus*, Tullus, -i, m.  
*tumult*, tūmultus, -ūs, m.  
*turn*, verito, -ti, -sum, 3; *he turned to* (in speaking), se convertit ad; *the enemy turned their backs*, i.e. fled, terga dēderunt; *turn out*, evēnio, -vēni, -ventum, 4; *in turn*, invicem  
*twelve*, *see* Par. 81; distrib. 314  
*twenty*, twentieth, *see* Para. 81, 314  
*twice*, bis  
*twist*, torqueo, -si, -tum, 2  
*two*, duo, -ae, -o (78, 314); *two hundred*, dūcenti, -ae, -a; *two days*, bīdium, -i, n.  
*tyrant*, tērannus, -i, n.

**Ugliness**, *dēformitas*, -ātis, f.  
*ugly*, *turpis*, -e  
*Ulysses*, *Ūlysses*, -is, m.  
*unable*, *I am*, *nēqueo*, -quīvi, 4;  
*imperf.* *nequibam*; *see* L. Vocab.  
*unaccustomed*, *insōlītus*, -a, -um  
*unarmed*, *inermis*, -e  
*uncertain*, *incertus*, -a, -um (*g.*  
*gen.*)  
*uncultivated*, *incultus*, -a, -um  
*under*, *sūb*, Par. 180 (*g. abl. or*  
*acc.*); *under Caesar (as general)*,  
*Caesāre dūce* (197)  
*undergo*, *sūbeo*, -īvi or -īi, 4  
*understand*, *intellēgo*, -lēxi, -lec-  
*tum*, 3  
*undertake*, *suscipio*, -cēpi, -cep-  
*tum*, 3; *to undertake politics*,  
*cāpēssere rem-publicam*  
*undeserving*, *indignus*, -a, -um (*g.*  
*abl.*)  
*unequal*, *impār*, -pāris  
*unfair*, *iniquus*, -a, -um  
*unfortunate*, *infēlix*, -īcis  
*unfriendly*, *inimicus*, -a, -um  
*ungrateful*, *ingrātus*, -a, -um  
*unhappy*, *infēlix*, -īcis  
*unity*, *concordia*, -ae, f.  
*universal*, *unīversus*, -a, -um  
*unjust*, *injustus*, -a, -um  
*unknown*, *ignōtus*, -a, -um  
*unlearned*, *indoctus*, -a, -um  
*unless*, *nīsi* (*same construction as si*,  
*see* Par. 125, 295)  
*unlike*, *dissimilis*, -e  
*unlucky*, *infēlix*, -īcis; *infaustus*,  
-i, -um [*gen.*]  
*unmindful*, *immēmor*, -ōris, (*g.*  
*unpleasant*, *ingrātus*, -a, -um  
*unseasonable*, *inopportūnus*, -a,  
-um  
*unsuccessfully*, *infelicitēr*  
*until*, *dum*; *dūnēc*; *quoad*; *not*  
*until*, *nōn antēquam*; *he did not*  
*answer until I twice questioned*  
*him*, *nōn antē respondit quam*  
*his eum interrōgāvi*

*unwarlike*, *imbellis*, -e  
*unwilling*, *I am u. to come*, *nōlo*  
*(nōlui, nolle, 234) vēnīre*; *she*  
*came unwillingly*, *invīta* (-a,  
-um) *vēnit*. N.B. *This adj. agrees*  
*with its noun, but is only used*  
*adverbially*; *invitus est is not*  
*Latin* [*abl.*]  
*unworthy*, *indignus*, -a, -um (*g.*  
*uphold*, *sustīneo*, -ui, -tentum, 2  
*upon*, *sūper* (180)  
*uprightness*, *prōbitās*, -ātis, f  
*up to*, *tēnus* (178)  
*urge*, *urgeo*, *ursi*, 2  
*us*, *see* Par. 90, 93  
*use*, *to*, *utor*, *usus*, 3, *dep.* (*g. abl.*)  
*used*, *he, they, used to, &c. (turn by*  
*imperf. indic. or by sōleo, sōlī-*  
*tus, 2, dep.)*  
*useful*, *ūtilis*, -e  
*useless*, *inūtilis*, -e  
*usual*, *sōlītus*, -a, -um  
*usually*, *fērē*, *plērumquē*  
*utter*, *ēdo*, -dīdi, -dītum, 3  
*utterly*, *omnīno*; *utterly destroy*,  
*dēleo*, -ēvi, -ētum, 2 (*for other*  
*verbs used with "utterly," see the*  
*verbs themselves*)

*Vain*, *vānus*, -a, -um; *inānis*, -e  
*vainly*, *in vain*, *frustrā*; *nēquī-*  
*quam*  
*valley*, *vallis*, -is, f.  
*valour*, *virtus*, -ūtis, f.  
*value*, *prētium*, -ī, n.; *to estimate*  
*at a high value*, *magnī aestīmāre*;  
*to value*, *aestīmo*, 1 (283, 284)  
*valuable*, *prētiosus*, -a, -um  
*vanish*, *evānesco*, *evānui*, 3  
*vanguish*, *vinco*, *vīci*, *victum*, 3  
*variety*, *vāriētās*, -ātis, f.  
*various*, *vāriūg*, *vārius*, -a, -um  
*vast*, *ingens*, -tis  
*venerate (worship)*, *vēnēror*, 1, *dep.*  
*venom*, *vīrus*, -ī, n.  
*venture*, *audeo*, *ausus*, 2, *dep.*  
*Venus*, *Vēnus*, -ēris, f.

*verse*, *versus*, -ūs, m.  
*very*, *ipsē*, -a, -um; *your very life*,  
*vita tua ipsa*; *very small*, *par-*  
*vulus*, -a, -um; *very great*, *very*  
*many*, &c., *permagnus*, *per-*  
*multi*, &c.  
*vessel*, *nāvis*, -is, f.; *nāvigium*, -i,  
 n.  
*Vesta*, *Vesta*, -ae, f.  
*vice*, *vītiūm*, -i, n.  
*vicious*, *prāvus*, -a, -um  
*victim*, *victīma*, -ae, f.  
*victor*, *victor*, -ōris, m.  
*victorious*, *victor*, -ōris, m.; *victrix*,  
 -icis, f.  
*victory*, *victōria*, -ae, f.  
*vigour*, *vīgor*, -ōris, m.; *vīres*, -ium,  
 f.  
*village*, *vīcus*, -i, m.  
*villain*, *scēlestus*, -a, -um  
*vine*, *vītis*, -is, f.  
*vineyard*, *vinca*, -ae, f.  
*violate*, *viōlo*, 1  
*violence*, *vīs*, acc. *vim*, abl. *vi*, f.;  
 by *v.*, per *vim*, or *vī*  
*violent*, *viōlentus*, -a, -um  
*violently*, *viōlenter*, or *vi*  
*Virgil*, *Vergīlius*, -i, m.  
*virgin*, *virgo*, -inis, f.  
*virtue*, *virtūs*, -ūtis, f.  
*virtuous*, *prōbus*, -a, -um  
*vision*, *visus*, -ūs, m.; *dream*, *som-*  
*nium*, -i, n.  
*visit*, *visō*, -si, 3; *visit* (*with punish-*  
*ment*), *afficio*, -fēcī, -fectum, 3  
*voice*, *vōx*, *vōcis*, f.  
*void*, *expers*, -tis  
*vomit forth*, *evōmo*, -ui, -itum, 3;  
 (*against any one*, in *with acc.*)  
*vow*, *vōtum*, -i, n.; *vow*, *to*, *vōveo*,  
*vōvi*, *vōtum*, 2  
*Vulcan*, *Vulcānus*, -i, m.  
*vulture*, *vultur*, -ūris, m.

*Wage*, *gūro*, *gessi*, *gestum*, 3; *I*  
*wage war*, *bellum gēro*

*wait*, *māneo*, -nsi, -nsum, 2; *wait*  
*for*, *expecto*, 1  
*wall*, *ambulo*, 1  
*wall*, *mūrus*, -i, m.; *town walls*,  
*moenia*, -ium, n. pl.  
*wander*, *erro*, 1; *vāgor*, *pālor*, 1,  
 dep.  
*wandering*, *error*, -ōris, m.  
*want*, *inopia*, -ae, f.  
*wanting*, *to be*, *dēsum*, -fui, -esse  
*war*, *bellum*, -i, n.; *in war and in*  
*peace*, *dōmi bellique*, or (*more*  
*commonly*) *militiaeque* (265); *a*  
*ship of war*, *nāvis longa*  
*warlike*, *bellicōsus*, -a, -um  
*warm*, *cālidus*, -a, -um; *warm*, *to*  
*grow*, *cālesco*, 3  
*warmth*, *cālor*, -ōris, m.  
*warn*, *mōneo*, -ui, -itum, 2 (143)  
*wash*, *lāvo*, *lāvi*, *lōtum*, 1  
*waste*, *lay waste*, *vasto*, 1; *to waste*  
*time*, *tempus tēre*, -trivi, -tri-  
 tum, 3; *waste* (*adj.*), *a w. district*,  
*rēgio inculta*  
*watch*, *vīgilia*, -ae, f.; *watch*, *to*,  
*vīgilō*, 1  
*water*, *āqua*, -ae, f.; *water*, *to*,  
*rīgo*, 1; *a river waters this*  
*valley*, *amnis hanc vallem rīgat*  
*wave*, *fluctus*, -ūs, m.  
*way*, *via*, -ae, f.; *iter*, *itinēris*, n.;  
*manner*, *mōdus*, -i, m.; *in what*  
*way?* *quōmōdo?*  
*we*, see page 45  
*weak*, *infirmus*, -a, -um  
*weaken*, *mīnuo*, -ui, -itum, 3  
*weakness*, *dūbilitās*, -ātis, f.  
*wealth*, *divitiae*, -arum, f.; *opes*,  
 -um, f.  
*wealthy*, *divēs*, -itis  
*weapon*, *tēlum*, -i, n.  
*weary*, *fessus*, -a, -um; *I am weary*  
*of*, *taedet mē* (*g. gen.*) Par. 222  
 and foll.  
*weave*, *texo*, -ui, -xtum, 3  
*wel*, *tēla*, -ae, f.  
*weep*, *fleo*, *flēvi*, *flētum*, 2

*weight*, pondus, -ūs, n.

*weighty*, grāvis, -e

*well*, a. pūteus, -i, m.; (adv.) bēnē;  
*well*, to be, vāleo, -uī, 2; *well*  
*known*, it is, constat, 1, im-  
 pers.

*west*, occīdens, -tis, m.

*wet*, mādīdus, -a, -um

*whale*, bālæna, -æ, f.

*what*? quīd? (that which) quod;  
*what was good for one was bad*  
*for another*, quod ālii prōfuit,  
 ālii obfuit; *what deed?* s. c.  
 Par. 111

*what* (in order of number)? quōtus,  
 -a, -um? *what o'clock?* quōtu  
 hōra?

*whatever*, quisquīs, quicumquē;  
*w. he said, was false*, quodcum-  
 quē dixit, falsum erat; (ofl. used  
 partitively) *whatever arms we*  
*had, were given up to the enemy*,  
 quidquid (or quodcumquē) armō-  
 rum hābuimus, hostibus trādī-  
 tum est

*when*, (1) cum,<sup>1</sup> ūbi; (2) (inter-  
 rogative), quando? (also used  
 dependently); *tell me when you*  
*will come*, dic mīhi quando  
 ventūrus sīs

*whence*, undē [ūbi?

*where*, quā, ūbi; (interrogative)

*whether*, conj. (1) (in dep. quest.)

num, nōnne (135); *whether...or*,

(a) utrum...ūn, (b) -nē...ūn (171);

*I do not know w.*, nescio ūn (302)

*whether*, conj. (2) (in alternative-sup-

positions), *whether...or* (a) sive...

sive, (b) seu...seu; *whether this*

*is true or false*, I shall go to

*Rome*, ēquidem, sive hæc vĕra

sunt, sive falsa, Rōmam ibo

*whether* (archaic pron.) *whether of*  
*the two?* ūter? utra? utrum?

*which*, quī, quæ, quod; (of the  
 two) ūter, utra, utrum, s. c. Par.  
 85

*while*, dum (272). foll. by indic.

*white*, candidus, -a, -um

*whither*, quō; *whither in the world?*  
 quonam terrārum?

*who*, quī, quæ, quod; *T. was the*  
*first who did this*, T. prīmus hūc  
 fēcit; (interrogative) quīs, quīd  
*whole*, tōtus, -a, -um (85); *the whole*  
*of the valley*, vallis tōta

*why*, cur?

*wicked*, impius, -a, -um

*wickedness*, impietas, -ēris, n.

*wide*, lātus, -a, -um

*wife*, uxor, -ōris, f.

*wild*, fĕrus, -a, -um; *w. beast*, fĕra,

-æ, f.; *wild boar*, āper, -pri, m.

*will*, vōluntas, -ātis, f.

*willing*, to be, vōlo, vōlui, vello

*willingly*, libenter

*wind*, ventus, -i, m.

*wine*, vīnum, -i, n.

*wing*, āla, -æ, f.; *of an*

cornū, -ūs, n.

*winter*, hiemps, -ēmis, f.; *war*

*quarters*, hiberna, -ōrum

*wisdom*, sapiētia, -æ, f.; (not to be con-

as distinct from "valour," consi-

lium, -i, n.

*wise*, sapiēns, -tis

*wish*, vōluntās, -ātis, f.; stūdiūm,

-i, n.; *wish, to, or wish for*, vōlo,

velle, vōlui; pp. 128, 129

*with*, cum (g. abl.); (in-the-house-

of) apūd (178)

*withdraw* (trans.), detrāho, -traxi,

-tractum, 3; (intrans.) recēdo,

-cessi, -cessum, 3

<sup>1</sup> The form quum, which is still erroneously retained in some modern editions of classical authors, has no authority. It is "of the rarest possible occurrence even in late MSS." and was long ago described by an eminent grammarian as "dead and buried."

*within*, intrā (*g. acc.*); (*adv.*) *in*-  
tus; *w. three days*, tribus his  
diebus (263a)  
*without*, sinē (*g. abl.*); (*outside*),  
extrā (*g. acc.*), (*adv.*) extrā;  
*without accomplishing anything*,  
rē infectā; *without the know-*  
*ledge of*, clam (*g. abl.*)  
*withstand*, rēsi-to, -stīti, -stītum,  
3 (*g. dat.*)  
*witness*, testis, -is, m.; *witness, call*  
*to*, testor, 1, dep.  
*witty*, lepīdus, -a, -um  
*woe!* vae! (*interjection*)  
*wolf*, lūpus, -i, m.  
*woman*, mūlier, -ēris, f.; fēmina,  
-ae, f.  
*womanish*, mūlieb-, -o  
*wonder, wonder at*, mīror, 1, dep.  
*wonderful*, mīrus, -a, -um  
*wont, to be*, sōleo, sōlītus, 2; (*also*  
*rend. by imperf. indic.*) *the land*  
*was wont to be laid waste*, āger  
vastābātur  
*wood*, a, silva, -ae, f.; *wood*,  
mātēric, ēi, f.  
*wooden*, ligneus, -a, -um  
*wooden*, ligna, -ae, f.  
*wrap*, arborum, -i, n.; *to keep one's*  
*word*, fidem praestāre; *to bring*  
*up*, rēnūntiāro  
*work*, ōpus, -ēris, n.  
*workman*, fāber, -ri, m.  
*world, where, whither, &c., in the*  
*world?* ubi, quonam, &c., terrā-  
rum? *the world*, (terrārum) orbis,  
-is, m.; N.B. mundus, -i, m.  
*means* "universe" incl. the stars;  
*the Campanian country is the*  
*most beautiful in the world*, āger  
Campānus orbis (*gen.*) terrārum  
pulcherrīmus est  
*worm*, vermis, -is, m.  
*worn out*, confectus, -a, -um  
*worse*, pūjor, -ōris (68)  
*worship*, cōlo, -ui, -cultum, 3  
*worst*, pessīmus, -a, -um (69)

*worth, to be*, vāleo, -ui, 2  
*worthless (of men)*, nūquam, indecl.;  
*more w., most w., see Par. 68*  
*worthy*, dignus, -a, -um (*g. abl.*);  
*the worthy Tullius, T., vir*  
*optīmus*; *worthy, to deem*, dig-  
nor, 1, dep. (*g. abl.*)  
*would, he would not (i.e. wished*  
*not to) come*, nōluit venīre; *he*  
*would (i.e. he was determined to)*  
*come*, vōluit venīre  
*would that*, ūtīnam (*g. pres. subj.*  
*of possible, imperf. subj. of im-*  
*possible wishes*; *see Par.*  
*295*)  
*wound*, vulnus, -ēris, n.; *wound*,  
*to*, vulnēro, 1  
*wrath*, ira, -ae, f.  
*wreck*, naufrāgium, -i, n.  
*wreath*, sertum, -i, n.  
*wrest, to*, extorqueo, -torsi, -tortum,  
2 (*dat. of pers. or abl. with a*)  
*wretched*, miser, -ēra, -ūrum  
*write*, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3  
*writer*, scriptor, -ōris, m.  
*wrong*, a, iniūria, -ae, f.

*Xenophon*, Xēnōphon, -phontis,  
m.

*Xerxes*, Xerxēs, -is, m.

*Year*, annus, -i, m.

*yearly, every year*, quōtannis

*yesterday*, hēri; *yesterday night*,  
nox hesternā

*yet, as yet*, adhūc; *nevertheless*,  
tūmen (*at the beginning of a*  
*clause, or after an emphatic word*);  
*not yet*, nōndum

*yield*, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3 (*g. dat.*)

*yoke*, iūgum, -i, n.; *to send under*  
*the yoke*, sub iūgum mittēre

*you*, vōs; *see page 45*

*young (man)*, iūvenis, -is, -m.; *adū-*  
*lescens*, -tis, m.; (*boys*), puēri



parvūli; *young (ones)*, pulli,  
-ūrum, m. ; 'the young' may be  
transl. jūniōres or pūēri  
*younger, junior, -ioris (69) ; young-*  
*est, minimus nātū*  
*your, vester, -tra, -trum*

*yourself*, see Par. 105 (*yourself*,  
*youth, iūvēntūs, -ūtis,*  
*juvēnis, -is, m.*

*Zeal, stūdiūm, -i, n.*  
*cum (or summo) stū-*

### NOTE ON SE, SUUS, &c.

**Sē, suus** are used (not **eum, eius**) only when the Pronoun (1) refers to the Principal Subject ; (2) is in a Subordinate Clause. Unless both these conditions are satisfied, **sē, suus** must not be used.

I. In the following examples condition (1) is satisfied, but (2) is not :  
(a) *T. thanks me, for I helped him*, T. grātiās mīhi agīt, nam ei subvēni ;  
(b) *T. loves me, and I forgive him*, T. mē amat, et ei ignosco ; (c) *T. and his brother came*, T. et frāter eius vērērunt.

II. In the following, (2) is satisfied, but (1) is not : (a) *I know that he rejoices* ; Scio eum gaudēre ; (b) *I said that his brother had come*, Dixi frātreē eius vērīse.

III. In the following, both conditions are satisfied : (a) *He begs me to pardon him (i.e. himself)*, Ūrat ut sibi ignoseam ; (b) *He asks whether you saw his brother*, Querit num frātrem suum vidēris.

